



Proposed Otago Regional Policy Statement June 2021

Integrating the management of Otago's natural and physical resources

978-0-908324-70-5 Print version
978-0-908324-71-2 Web version

PART 1 – INTRODUCTION AND GENERAL PROVISIONS

Foreword or mihi

Regional policy statements are significant planning tools; overarching documents that identify our most pressing environmental issues and provide direction to district plans and other resource management plans on how we will manage them. Developing this new Regional Policy Statement (RPS)¹ has provided an opportunity for renewed partnership between Kāi Tahu in Otago and Southland,² and the Otago Regional Council (ORC)³. We present this foreword to the notified version together, in recognition of that partnership and in anticipation of the work to come.

ORC didn't expect to find itself writing another Regional Policy Statement so soon. The ink is hardly dry on the 2019 Partially Operative Regional Policy Statement (in fact, as the name suggests, all the ink isn't even there yet), and here is the notification for the next. Nonetheless, a 2019 review of ORC's water management framework and a slew of new national regulation meant a new RPS was needed to set the scene for work on a new Land and Water Regional Plan.

Having this new RPS developed so soon after the last has allowed it to build directly on the previous process. With issues and concerns still fresh, more refinement has been possible, building better processes and driving rapid progress on significant issues facing the region, including resilience to climate change and natural hazards, managing urban development, improving freshwater and coastal environmental management, and supporting biodiversity. Mana whenua, the community⁴ and ORC have faced this planning challenge together. ~~We have placed the environment at the centre of all we do in~~ Our long-term vision recognises that use of resources and protection of the environment must occur in an integrated, sustainably managed way.⁵

The management of natural and physical resources in Otago,⁶ by and for the people of Otago, including in partnership with⁷ Kāi Tahu, and as expressed in all resource management plans and decision-making,⁸ achieves a healthy, and resilient, and safeguarded⁹ natural systems environment,¹⁰ and including¹¹ the ecosystem services they offer it provides,¹² and supports the well-being of present and future generations, (mō tātou, ā, mō kā uri ā muri ake nei).¹³

¹ Clause 16(2), Schedule 1, RMA

² 00223.007 Ngāi Tahu ki Murihiku

³ Clause 16(2), Schedule 1, RMA

⁴ 004200.004 Jim Hopkins

⁵ Clause 10(2)(b)(i) – consequential amendment

⁶ 00239.034 Federated Farmers

⁷ 00226.085 Kāi Tahu ki Otago

⁸ 00121.015 Ravensdown

⁹ 00211.004 LAC, 00210.004 Lane Hocking, 00209.004 Universal Developments, 00118.005 Maryhill, 00014.005 Mt Cardrona Station

¹⁰ 00231.03 Fish and Game

¹¹ 00139.022 DCC

¹² 00239.034 Federated Farmers

¹³ 00239.034 Federated Farmers

This statement reflects that a healthy, flourishing environment is fundamental to our well-being. Integration is the central tenet, seeing the environment as a single connected system, ki uta ki tai, and weaving this into the RPS fabric.

Our long-term vision takes its cue from the holistic perspective of Te Mana o te Wai in the National Policy Statement for Freshwater Management 2020. Guided by the need to give effect to Te Mana o te Wai we have worked with mana whenua and the wider community to develop long-term visions for Otago's water bodies. The purpose of these visions is to protect the well-being¹⁴ ~~mauri~~ of water bodies in Otago, so as to protect their mauri,¹⁵ a responsibility shared by all. The aim is to achieve positive outcomes for water and habitat that also address the community's needs and interests.

A broad section of people from all walks of life have contributed to developing the Regional Policy Statement. Through a variety of means, including in-person public workshops, community reference groups, online surveys, and reports, people have helped shape policy development in its earliest stages and fed into the long-term freshwater visions for their own parts of Otago.

Thank you to all who have been involved in bringing this RPS to notification: mana whenua; staff from ORC, Aukaha, and Te Ao Marama Inc; councillors; stakeholders; and community members.

The objectives and policies in this RPS signal a significant step change in Otago, mindful of the need to consider the environment that will be inherited by future generations. We are asking our communities to join us in that change, to create a future of opportunity and security for all of us.

¹⁴ Clause 10(2)(b)(i) – consequential amendment arising from FPI024.015 DairyNZ

¹⁵ Clause 10(2)(b)(i) – consequential amendment arising from FPI024.015 DairyNZ

Contents

Part 1 – INTRODUCTION AND GENERAL PROVISIONS	2
Foreword or mihi	2
Contents	4
Purpose	5
Description of the Region	6
How the policy statement works	9
Interpretation	14
National direction instruments.....	45
MW – <i>Mana whenua</i>	47
PART 2 – RESOURCE MANAGEMENT OVERVIEW	64
SRMR – Significant resource management issues for the region.....	64
RMIA – Resource management issues of significance to iwi authorities in the region.....	86
IM – Integrated management.....	96
PART 3 – DOMAINS AND TOPICS	103
Domains	103
AIR – Air.....	103
CE – Coastal environment.....	108
LF – <i>Land and freshwater</i>	121
Topics	142
ECO – Ecosystems and indigenous <i>biodiversity</i>	142
EIT – Energy, infrastructure and transport	151
HAZ – Hazards and risks.....	165
HCV – Historical and cultural values	175
NFL – Natural features and landscapes	182
UFD – Urban form and development	186
PART 4 – EVALUATION AND MONITORING	198
Monitoring the efficiency and effectiveness of the policy statement.....	198
PART 5 – APPENDICES AND MAPS	200
Appendices.....	201
Maps	218

Purpose

As a community, we in Otago are moving into an age that requires solutions to both entrenched legacy issues and significant emerging issues in order to promote positive sustainable change while also enabling the Otago community to flourish, and to enjoy all that the region has to offer.

The Otago Regional Policy Statement (ORPS) provides a policy framework that aims to achieve long-term environmental sustainability by integrating the protection, restoration, enhancement, and use and development¹⁶ of Otago's natural and physical resources. The ORPS also aims to provide communities, including mana whenua, with opportunities to carry out their activities to achieve their economic, cultural and social needs and intentions, while at the same time promoting a thriving and healthy natural environment as being vital to sustaining our wellbeing.¹⁷

The ORPS responds to identified significant regional values and resource management issues relating to Otago's *environment, historic heritage, economy, food production*¹⁸ and recreational opportunities and communities. The ORPS sets out objectives, policies, and methods to address and¹⁹ resolve, over time, the identified issues as effectively and efficiently as possible. The ORPS gives effect to the statutory requirements set out in the Resource Management Act 1991 (RMA ~~1991~~²⁰), as well as relevant national direction instruments, and is informed by²¹ iwi authority planning documents. *Regional plans*²² and *district plans* must give effect to the ORPS.

¹⁶ 00213.003 Fonterra

¹⁷ 00239.002 Federated Farmers

¹⁸ 00236.007 Horticulture NZ

¹⁹ 00213.003 Fonterra

²⁰ Clause 16(2), Schedule 1, RMA

²¹ 00223.008 Ngāi Tahu ki Murihiku

²² Clause 16(2), Schedule 1, RMA

Description of the Region²³

At 32,000 km², the Otago region is the second largest region in New Zealand, making up 12% of New Zealand's land mass.

The region's eastern edge is entirely marine, extending 12 nautical miles out to sea from a scenic and varied coastline. Otago meets Canterbury at the southern bank of the Waitaki River, its northern border following the river upstream then branching off along Awamoko Stream, following the north branch of the Kakanui River before heading inland once again along the Hawkdun Range, following catchment boundaries and ridgelines into the Southern Alps at Otago's westernmost border. In the south, beginning at Brother's Point in the scenic Catlins, the border with Southland trends northeasterly, taking in the Pomahaka ~~Pomohaka~~²⁴ River catchment, and Umbrella and Kōpūwai ~~Kopuwai~~²⁵ Ranges to encompass the headwaters of the glacial alpine lakes, Whakatipu-wai-māori (Lake Wakatipu), Wānaka ~~Wanaka~~,²⁶ and Hāwea.

Otago is made up of five *territorial authorities*: Dunedin City Council, and Queenstown Lakes, Waitaki, Central Otago, and Clutha District Councils.

Otago's population at the 2018 Census was 225,186²⁷. Dunedin City has the largest population of the Otago *territorial authorities* at 126,255, followed by Queenstown Lakes District at 39,153, Waitaki District at 22,308, Central Otago District at 21,558, and Clutha District at 17,667. Growth is not evenly distributed across the region, with the fastest growing district being Queenstown Lakes.

Otago's history recognises the early exploration and occupation of Otago by Māori followed by the arrival of settlers from Europe and Asia.²⁸ Otago's economy centres around construction, primary production, agriculture, tourism, mineral mining²⁹, and education. The construction industry is a major contributor to employment numbers in Otago, supported by the region's population growth. The primary production sector is a source of domestic and export revenue and employment for the districts and the wider region and the nation. Otago's farms are also a key contributor to the national food supply network.³⁰ The University of Otago enrolls approximately 20,000 students each year from around New Zealand and internationally, contributing to annual population spikes in Dunedin and significantly boosting the economy. Tourism ~~has~~³¹ also ~~has~~³² a significant impact on the regional economy, contributing about a quarter of the region's total gross domestic product. This is the highest of any region in New Zealand, and primarily concentrated in the Queenstown Lakes District.

Renewable energy generation facilities³³ meet a large portion of regional and national energy requirements. Significant hydroelectric generation facilities in Otago are located in the Central Otago, Clutha, and Queenstown Lakes Districts. Additionally, Otago has two wind farms, located in the Clutha District.

²³ Clause 16(2), Schedule 1, RMA

²⁴ 00223.009 Ngai Tahu ki Murihiku

²⁵ 00226.024 Kāi Tahu ki Otago

²⁶ 00226.024 Kāi Tahu ki Otago

²⁷ 2018 Census place summaries: Stats NZ. (n.d.). <https://www.stats.govt.nz/tools/2018-census-place-summaries/otago-region> (accessed 26 May 2021)

²⁸ 00212.005 Central Otago Heritage Trust

²⁹ 00140.001 Waitaki DC

³⁰ 00239.002 Federated Farmers, 00236.008 Horticulture NZ, 00240.002 NZ Pork, 00140.001 Waitaki DC

³¹ 00206.006 Trojan, 00411.001 Wayfare

³² 00206.006 Trojan, 00411.001 Wayfare

³³ Fitzgerald, W. (2019). *Dunedin Energy Study 2017-2018*. University of Otago

Otago is home to important indigenous biodiversity for Aotearoa, some of which is specific to Otago. Nationally significant indigenous biodiversity features include inland saline habitats, ephemeral wetlands, endemic and threatened inland galaxiid fish and lizard populations, western forest habitats, and coastal fauna.³⁴

Climate

The Otago region experiences two distinct climates due to the geographic variety between the temperate coastal areas, and the almost continental inland areas. The coastal settlements experience a cyclic weather pattern that alternates frequently between a warmer and drier climate, and a cooler, damper climate. Central Otago's climate is characterised by hot, dry summers and contrastingly cold, frosty winters. The unique climate supports many of the diverse industries in Otago.³⁵

General temperature ranges for the region fall between 18°C and 24°C on summer afternoons, and -2°C and 3°C during winter nights.³⁶ The mean daily temperatures in summer in Central Otago range between approximately 10°C and 25°C, while the mean daily temperatures in winter range between approximately -1°C and 10°C.³⁷ Central Otago has held national records for both the hottest and coldest temperature readings in New Zealand. Ophir, a small settlement in Central Otago, has recorded temperatures of 35.2°C in 1959 and -21.6°C in 1995. Significant rises in the use of heating sources occur during the drastically colder winter periods. The highest regional rainfalls, averaging 2000mm per year, occur typically over western areas of Otago such as around the Lakes District and Southern Alps. In contrast, the average rainfall in Central Otago is the lowest in New Zealand averaging around 400-500mm per year.

Coast

The Otago coastline stretches for 480 km and is extremely diverse, encompassing pebble and sandy beaches, basalt formations, dune systems, eelgrass and saltmarshes, estuaries, rolling downlands, and striking cliff heads. Working farms abut most of the coastline, while remnant swathes of native bush clad coastline are a distinct feature of the Catlins area, and significant coastal settlements include Dunedin and Ōamaru.³⁸ ~~with t~~³⁹ The Otago port is based in Port Chalmers, ~~within the Otago Harbour,~~⁴⁰ and Otago Harbor⁴¹ is the region's only commercial freight handling harbour. ~~It~~⁴² However⁴² commercial fishing ramps (supporting fishing fleets)⁴³ are present in ~~Oamaru~~ Ōamaru,⁴⁴ Moeraki, ~~Karitane~~ Karitāne,⁴⁵ and Taieri Mouth. Coastal erosion and the decline of the regional coastline is well documented, posing a long-term threat to residential and commercial coastal developments and historic heritage, particularly wāhi tūpuna.⁴⁶

Otago's benthic and marine ecosystems are varied and diverse including rocky reef systems, sponge gardens, bryozoan and horse mussel beds, biogenic reefs, kelp forests and submarine canyons within 12 nautical miles of the shore. More than thirty species of seabird are regularly found off the coast of

³⁴ 00137.004 DOC

³⁵ 00235.006 OWRUG

³⁶ Macara, G. R. (2015). The Climate and Weather of Otago, Second Edition. NIWA SCIENCE AND TECHNOLOGY SERIES, 67th ser.

³⁷ Central Otago Climate. (n.d.). <https://centralotagoz.com/opportunities/working-here> (accessed 26 May 2021)

³⁸ 00223.009 Kāi tahu ki Murihiku

³⁹ 00411.012 Wayfare

⁴⁰ 00411.012 Wayfare

⁴¹ 00223.010 Ngai Tahu ki Murihiku, 00411.011 Wayfare

⁴² 00411.012 Wayfare

⁴³ 00411.012 Wayfare

⁴⁴ 00226.024 Kāi Tahu ki Otago

⁴⁵ 00226.024 Kāi Tahu ki Otago

⁴⁶ 00123.008 Heritage NZ

Otago. Rare sea birds such as the Royal Albatross and hoiho (Yellow-eyed penguin) can be found along the landward coastal environment. Surfing is a significant recreational activity, in Dunedin particularly, and there are four *surf breaks* of national significance along the Otago coastline.

Water bodies

The Otago region has significant *freshwater* resources in the form of surface water, natural and artificial *lakes*, *groundwater*, and *wetlands*. Otago's communities are reliant on the use of these *water* resources for their social, cultural and economic well-being. *Rivers* and *lakes* make up most of the regional surface *water*. The big *lakes*, such as Wanaka, Whakatipu-wai-māori (Lake Wakatipu) and Hāwea and including artificial *lakes* Dunstan, Roxburgh and Onslow, constitute about 23% of New Zealand's total *lake* surface area. The primary catchments are Lakes Wanaka, Whakatipu-wai-māori (Lake Wakatipu) and Hāwea, which feed into Otago's largest *river*, the Clutha River/Mata-Au. Otago also has many *groundwater* sources. *Wetlands* make up many significant landscape and ecosystem elements in Otago, including blanket and string bogs, saline areas, swamp forest remnants, shallow *lake* complexes, estuarine saltmarshes, and valley floor swamps.

Natural character and landscapes

Otago's landscapes are diverse. Moving inland from Otago's diverse and varied coastline, the landscapes change dramatically. Rolling plains separated by mountain ranges, steep hillsides of tussock, and deep gorges make up a lot of rural Otago South and Central Otago⁴⁷. This *land* is dissected by flowing bodies of water, towering mountainscapes, and fascinating geological formations. Modified landscapes encompassing farmland and remnants of the region's early gold mining activity are ever-present, creating a rich sense of heritage and regional identity. National Parks and other Public Conservation areas provide important areas of unmodified *land* and *water*.⁴⁸

Urban form

Urbanised areas in Otago occupy only about 1% of total *land* area, however 87% of people live in urban settlements. Dunedin is Otago's largest urban area, surrounded by hills and harbour ~~harbor~~,⁴⁹ and has a large suburban area and commuter catchment especially to the south, with more recent expansion moving out to connect with an expanding Mosgiel. The Queenstown Lakes District population is approximately 91% urban. Its outstanding landscape has ~~historically determined~~, and will continue to, influence ~~determine~~,⁵⁰ how urban form develops.

In the remainder of the region, smaller urban settlements are geographically scattered, maintaining clear distinctions between rural and urban forms, and with significant variability in growth pressures and infrastructure capacity. Growth in overall numbers of people is not the only driver of urban change pressures in Otago; many areas face low or no growth, and all areas are expected to have an aging population.

⁴⁷ 00140.001 Waitaki DC

⁴⁸ 0.0206.007 Trojan, 00411.013 Wayfare

⁴⁹ 00120.007 Yellow-eyed Penguin Trust

⁵⁰ 00206.008 Trojan, 00411.014 Wayfare

How the policy statement works

Statutory context

Resource Management Act 1991

The Resource Management Act 1991 (~~RMA 1991~~)⁵¹ is the primary resource management statute in New Zealand and sets out the related responsibilities and powers of national, regional, and city/district government.

The RMA ~~1991~~⁵² requires regional councils to have a regional policy statement (RPS) under Section 60, prepared in accordance with the process set out in Schedule 1. The purpose of the RPS, as set out in Section 59 of the RMA, is to provide an overview of the specific resource management issues for the region and establish policies and methods to achieve the integrated management of both the *natural and physical resources* of the region. The RPS must be prepared in accordance with and contain the matters set out in Sections 30, 60, 61, and 62 of the RMA ~~1991~~.⁵³

The regional policy statement must be prepared in accordance with and/or⁵⁴ give effect to higher order national direction instruments, including any regulations ~~National Environmental Standards (NES)~~,⁵⁵ National Policy Statements (NPS), the New Zealand Coastal Policy Statement (NZCPS) and be written to comply with the National Planning Standards. Further ORC must observe and enforce observance of any National Environmental Standards (NES) to the extent to which their powers enable them to do so.⁵⁶ The RPS sets out requirements that *regional plans, district plans*, and regional coastal plans must give effect to. More information about the relevant national direction instruments can be found in the 'national direction instruments' section of this Regional Policy Statement.

*Figure 2 – Position of the Regional Policy Statement within the resource management planning framework 1 – Statutory framework*⁵⁷

⁵¹ Clause 16(2), Schedule 1, RMA

⁵² Clause 16(2), Schedule 1, RMA

⁵³ Clause 16(2), Schedule 1, RMA

⁵⁴ 00239.004 Federated Farmers

⁵⁵ 00239.004 Federated Farmers

⁵⁶ 00239.004 Federated Farmers

⁵⁷ 00213.004 Fonterra

Te Tiriti o Waitangi 

Resource Management Act 1991 

National Policy Statements, Environmental Standards and Regulations 

Coastal Policy Statement 

Regional Policy Statement  Otago Regional Council

Regional Plans 

District Plans 

Partnership, Te Tiriti o Waitangi and Kāi Tahu⁵⁸

The Otago Regional Policy Statement has been developed in partnership with Kāi Tahu, the iwi and *tangata whenua* of Otago. The partnership between the Otago Regional Council and Kāi Tahu is an important and valuable relationship, evident throughout the ORPS and woven into its provisions. The RMA 1991⁵⁹ requires Regional and Local Councils to address matters of National Importance, including matters associated with Te Tiriti o Waitangi (The Treaty of Waitangi) and key issues and concerns of iwi.⁶⁰

The ORC has also considered the Kāi Tahu ki Otago 2005 Resource Management Plan and Te Tangi a Taura: Ngāi Tahu ki Murihiku Natural Resource and Environmental Iwi Management Plan 2008. ORPS chapters on Significant Resource Management Issues for Iwi and on *Mana Whenua* provide an in-depth discussion of iwi issues and set a basis for the remaining policy framework.

The key issues identified by Kāi Tahu include:

- recognising the rights and interests of Kāi Tahu in natural and resource management processes;
- recognising the important role of mātauraka in natural resource management;
- recognising the integral relationship of Kāi Tahu with *natural and physical resources*, including the coast, waterways, lakes, wetlands and indigenous flora and fauna, protecting these resources from degradation, improving them where they have been degraded, and sustaining them for future generations;
- protecting and restoring the abundance of *mahika kai mahika kai*⁶¹ and restoring access to *mahika kai mahika kai*⁶² areas;
- protecting the values of *wāhi tūpuna* and the ability for Kāi Tahu to maintain their relationship with these areas;
- enabling development of *land* and resources within native reserves, including *papakāika housing*⁶³ and
- the need for integrated management that recognises the interconnections between resources and across different parts of the environment.

Cross-boundary matters

Ecosystems and human activities cross jurisdictional boundaries. When different jurisdictions manage similar activities or resources in different ways there is potential for inconsistent outcomes, resulting in inefficient and ineffective management.

To achieve integration, those involved in resource management need to coordinate their policies, plans and actions. This is encompassed by the philosophy “*ki uta ki tai*” – often translated as “from

⁵⁸ In the South Island, the local Māori dialect uses a ‘k’ interchangeably with ‘ng’. The preference in Otago is to use a ‘k’ so southern Māori are known as Kāi Tahu, rather than Ngāi Tahu. In this RPS, the ‘ng’ is used for iwi in general or where there is reference to Ngāi Tahu ki Murihiku (Southland).

⁵⁹ Clause 16(2), Schedule 1, RMA

⁶⁰ These matters are addressed throughout the Resource Management Act 1991, see in particular sections 6, 8 and 62.

⁶¹ Clause 10(2)(b)(i) – consequential amendment arising from 00226.038 Kāi Tahu ki Otago

⁶² Clause 10(2)(b)(i) – consequential amendment arising from 00226.038 Kāi Tahu ki Otago

⁶³ Clause 16(2), Schedule 1, RMA

the mountains to the sea".⁶⁴ Accordingly, section 62 of the RMA 1991 requires regional councils to include in the RPS the processes to be used to deal with issues that cross *local authority* boundaries, and issues between *territorial authorities* or between regions.

Cross-boundary issues can arise in several ways, and generally manifest in issues for either plan preparation and review, or plan administration and the processing of applications for *resource consents*. Otago's cross-boundary matters include:

- ~~adverse~~⁶⁵ *effects* in one jurisdiction due to the activities in another, particularly including⁶⁶ where *territorial authority* boundaries do not match catchment boundaries, as with the Clutha Mata-au, or the Waitaki River catchment over which Otago and Canterbury Regional Councils share jurisdiction, or Otago's coastal environment, which covers three *territorial authorities'* jurisdictions, and may be affected by *land uses and dam structures*⁶⁷ in the other two (through sediment flowing down the Clutha Mata-au, for instance). Effects within the Otago Coastal environment may also have effects on adjoining regional council jurisdiction,⁶⁸
- Kāi Tahu interests, which span Otago as a whole, across *local authority* boundaries;
- natural⁶⁹ resources that cross *local authority* boundaries which must be managed in a uniform manner, such as water,⁷⁰ outstanding natural features, outstanding natural landscapes and *significant natural areas*;
- differences in policies or methods across plans, particularly where *district plans*⁷¹ and *regional plans* are at different planning stages and may be out of step with current regulation;
- physical resources such as⁷² local, *regionally significant infrastructure*⁷³ or *nationally significant infrastructure being developed and operated* ~~operating~~⁷⁴ across *local authority* boundaries, as with transport and electricity ~~supply~~ networks, and potentially shared services such as waste management and minimisation ~~waste disposal~~⁷⁵; and
- duplicated effort for *local authorities* and increased cost for people seeking consents for activities that occur across *local authority* boundaries or require *resource consent* from two or more consent authorities.

Processes that will be used to address these matters are described in the sections below.

Clear direction in the ORPS

The ORPS provides a vision and broad policy framework for all resource management in Otago, including various methods that require *local authorities* to work together to achieve good outcomes and, in some cases, set implementation timeframes. *Regional plans*⁷⁶ and *district plans* as they develop over the next 10 years and beyond, are required to give effect to the ORPS. In doing so one result

⁶⁴ 00223.012 Ngāi Tahu ki Murihiku

⁶⁵ 00314.002 Transpower

⁶⁶ 00314.002 Transpower

⁶⁷ 00139.003 DCC

⁶⁸ 00013.001 ECan

⁶⁹ 00314.002 Transpower

⁷⁰ 00236.009 Horticulture NZ

⁷¹ Clause 16(2), Schedule 1, RMA

⁷² 00314.002 Transpower

⁷³ Clause 16(2), Schedule 1, RMA

⁷⁴ 00314.002 Transpower

⁷⁵ 00139.004 DCC

⁷⁶ Clause 16(2), Schedule 1, RMA

should be consistency between them. The ORPS has been drafted using direct language and clarity of outcomes sought.

ORPS methods also indicate actions that fall outside the RMA 1991⁷⁷ framework. This recognises that only *district plans*⁷⁸ and *regional plans* are required to give effect to a regional policy statement, and non-regulatory methods may sometimes be useful to help address cross-boundary matters and achieve desired outcomes.

Cooperation and partnerships with stakeholders

Stakeholders, ~~from~~ including Government agencies,⁷⁹ industry representatives, landowners, and ~~to~~⁸⁰ community-based volunteer groups, provide valuable strategic input to planning and decision-making. Inter-agency groups, such as Te Roopu Taiao, can assist with managing cross-boundary issues and issues affecting people across Otago strategically and collaboratively.

ORC will seek to establish and build upon working relationships with other resource management stakeholders. This will help ensure that the processes it undertakes are efficient and, wherever possible, reduce duplication of effort. As new issues emerge in the region and work on existing issues continues, they are best managed through collaboration, which will improve effectiveness and deliver better outcomes. This is particularly important for enhancing and managing important region-wide matters such as⁸¹ *regionally significant infrastructure* and *significant natural areas*.

Cooperation and partnerships with other local authorities

There are many opportunities to work more closely with other *local authorities* to achieve a consistent and integrated approach to managing *natural and physical resources*.

Local authorities together can:

- share information, for instance to understand the long-term growth and economic development opportunities and threats and the spatial pattern of *land use* and development, or to ensure natural resources are not artificially fragmented;
- hold joint processes for processing *resource consents* and associated hearings where activities or *effects* cross jurisdictional boundaries. This allows all *effects* of ~~new~~⁸² activities to be considered holistically at the same time, including any cumulative *effects*. Joint processes could also reduce the processing cost (in both money and time) for the applicant;
- work collaboratively on plan changes and develop combined planning documents for shared areas of responsibility;
- clearly define their resource management roles and responsibilities to reduce duplication of effort and streamline processes for Otago's communities; and
- cooperate and budget for joint processes and major projects through Annual and Long-term Planning processes under the LGA Local Government Act 2002 (LGA 2002).⁸³ This allows pooling

⁷⁷ Clause 16(2), Schedule 1, RMA

⁷⁸ Clause 16(2), Schedule 1, RMA

⁷⁹ 00137.005 DOC

⁸⁰ 00239.005 Federated Farmers

⁸¹ 00239.005 Federated Farmers

⁸² 00223.013 Ngāi Tahu Ki Murihiku

⁸³ Clause 16(2), Schedule 1, RMA

resources, reducing inefficiency and integrating management approaches through time, to ensure that cooperation between agencies is budgeted for, including setting up structures and processes for joint management.

These approaches are more likely to properly address cross-boundary issues and *effects* than *local authorities* working alone.

Triennial agreement

Triennial agreements under the LGA 2002⁸⁴ are an opportunity for *local authorities* within a region to set out processes for consultation, protocols and processes for resolving cross-boundary issues.

Cooperation at a national level

Cross-boundary issues may arise that are significant at a national level. This is particularly likely when addressing nationally significant important⁸⁵ infrastructure such as the National Grid electricity transmission grid⁸⁶ or *land* transport infrastructure.

In such cases, ORC will advise and work with the Minister for the Environment, the Minister of Conservation in the *coastal marine area* and any other relevant agency to identify and resolve cross boundary issues or proposals, to ensure that consideration of the matter occurs in a transparent and timely manner. ORC will endeavour ~~endeavor~~⁸⁷ to represent its communities' interests in such situations.

Transferring and delegating functions, powers and duties to other authorities

The RMA enables ORC to transfer its powers, functions and duties to another public authority, including an iwi authority or other statutory body. It may also delegate these to committees, community boards, commissioners or employees. ORC can also enter joint management agreements with other statutory bodies and an iwi authority (such as Te Rūnanga o Ngāi Tahu). ~~The RMA 1991 enables ORC to transfer or delegate its powers to another public authority, community boards, commissioners or employees. ORC can also enter joint management agreements with other statutory bodies (such as Te Rūnanga o Ngāi Tahu).~~⁸⁸

These tools can be used to achieve integrated management and to reduce duplication of effort by local and public authorities, and to enable a Treaty partnership approach to resource management.⁸⁹ Joint management agreements enable iwi partners and⁹⁰ important stakeholders to have an active role in the management of specific resources, and for specific purposes. They can also be used to build community capacity and share understanding in resource management.

Helping to build capacity for, and improve, *takata whenua* involvement

Takata whenua have the prerogative to express and explain how their tikaka and mātauraka should be realised in resource management. Councils have a vital role in assisting this process through finding

⁸⁴ Clause 16(2), Schedule 1, RMA

⁸⁵ 00314.002 Transpower

⁸⁶ 00314.002 Transpower

⁸⁷ Clause 16(2), Schedule 1, RMA

⁸⁸ 00509.013 Wise Response

⁸⁹ 00223.015 Ngāi Tahu ki Murihiku

⁹⁰ 00223.015 Ngāi Tahu ki Murihiku

ways to partner, resource, and upskill rūnaka so they can be fully involved in the resource management partnership.

Establishing and implementing relationship agreements such as Mana Whakahono a Rohe agreements, protocols and charters can provide a framework for the council to provide necessary support. Increasing skills and capacity within council staff and decision-makers through training in Te Tiriti o Waitangi, locally relevant Treaty Settlement mechanisms and tikanga Māori, and developing familiarity with Kāi Tahu documents, are also important means of improving takata whenua involvement in council processes.⁹¹

⁹¹ 00223.016 Ngāi Tahu ki Murihiku

Interpretation

Definitions

Term	Definition
1990 mean sea level (Otago Metric Datum)	means the fixed level for basing subsequent level measurements on. In this case Otago Metric Datum is the Dunedin Vertical Datum (DVD 1958) plus 100 metres. ⁹²
Active transport	<p>has the same meaning as in clause 1.3 of the National Policy Statement on Urban Development 2020 (as set out in the box below)</p> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px;"> <p>means forms of transport that involve physical exercise, such as walking or cycling, and includes transport that may use a mobility aid such as a wheelchair</p> </div>
Additional infrastructure	<p>has the same meaning as in clause 1.3 of the National Policy Statement on Urban Development 2020 (as set out in the box below)</p> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px;"> <p>means:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (a) public open space (b) community infrastructure as defined in section 197 of the Local Government Act 2002 (c) land transport (as defined in the Land Transport Management Act 2003) that is not controlled by local authorities (d) social infrastructure, such as schools and healthcare facilities (e) a network operated for the purpose of telecommunications (as defined in section 5 of the Telecommunications Act 2001) (f) a network operated for the purpose of transmitting or distributing electricity or gas </div>
Airshed	<p>has the same meaning as in regulation 3 of the Resource Management (National Environmental Standards for Air Quality) Regulations 2004 (as set out in the box below)</p> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px;"> <p>airshed⁹³ means—</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (a) the region of a regional council excluding any area specified in a notice under paragraph (b): (b) a part of the region of a regional council specified by the Minister by notice in the Gazette to be a separate airshed </div>

⁹² 00239.006 Federated Farmers

⁹³ Clause 16(2), Schedule 1, RMA

Term	Definition
Afforestation	<p>has the same meaning as in regulation 3 of the Resource Management (National Environmental Standards for <u>Commercial Plantation</u>⁹⁴ Forestry) Regulations 2017 (as set out in the box below)</p> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px;"> <p>(a) means planting and growing plantation forestry trees on land where there is no plantation forestry and where plantation forestry harvesting has not occurred within the last 5 years; but</p> <p>(b) does not include vegetation clearance from the land before planting</p> </div>
Ambient air quality standards	<p>has the same meaning as in regulation 3 of the Resource Management (National Environmental Standards for Air Quality) Regulations 2004 (as set out in the box below)</p> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px;"> <p>means the standard prescribed by regulation 13(1)</p> </div>
Amenity values	<p>has the same meaning as in section 2 of the Resource Management Act 1991 (as set out in the box below)</p> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px;"> <p>means those natural or physical qualities and characteristics of an area that contribute to people’s appreciation of its pleasantness, aesthetic coherence, and cultural and recreational attributes</p> </div>
Ancillary activity	<p>has the same meaning as in Standard 14 of the National Planning Standards 2019 (as set out in the box below)</p> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px;"> <p>means an activity that supports and is subsidiary to a primary activity</p> </div>
Aquaculture activities	<p>has the same meaning as in section 2 of the Resource Management Act 1991 (as set out in the box below)</p> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px;"> <p>(a) means any activity described in section 12 done for the purpose of the breeding, hatching, cultivating, rearing, or ongrowing of fish, aquatic life, or seaweed for harvest if the breeding, hatching, cultivating, rearing, or ongrowing involves the occupation of a coastal marine area; and</p> <p>(b) includes the taking of harvestable spat if the taking involves the occupation of a coastal marine area; but</p> <p>(c) does not include an activity specified in paragraph (a) if the fish, aquatic life, or seaweed—</p> <p style="margin-left: 20px;">(i) are not in the exclusive and continuous possession or control of the person undertaking the activity; or</p> <p style="margin-left: 20px;">(ii) cannot be distinguished or kept separate from naturally occurring fish, aquatic life, or seaweed; and</p> <p>(d) does not include an activity specified in paragraph (a) or (b) if the activity is carried out solely for the purpose of monitoring the environment</p> </div>

⁹⁴ Clause 16(2), Schedule 1, RMA

Term	Definition
Aquatic compensation	<p>has the same meaning as in clause 3.21(1) of the National Policy Statement for Freshwater Management 2020 (as set out in the box below)</p> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px;"> <p>means a conservation outcome resulting from actions that are intended to compensate for any more than minor residual adverse effects on a wetland or river after all appropriate avoidance, minimisation, remediation, and aquatic offset measures have been sequentially applied</p> </div>
Aquatic offset	<p>has the same meaning as in clause 3.21(1) of the National Policy Statement for Freshwater Management 2020 (as set out in the box below)</p> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px;"> <p>means a measurable conservation outcome resulting from actions that are intended to:</p> <p>(a) redress any more than minor residual adverse effects on a wetland or river after all appropriate avoidance, minimisation, and remediation, measures have been sequentially applied; and</p> <p>(b) achieve no net loss, and preferably a net gain, in the extent and values of the wetland or river, where:</p> <p>(i) no net loss means that the measurable positive effects of actions match any loss of extent or values over space and time, taking into account the type and location of the wetland or river, and</p> <p>(ii) net gain means that the measurable positive effects of actions exceed the point of no net loss</p> </div>
Archaeological site ⁹⁵	<p>has the same meaning as in section 6 of the Heritage New Zealand Pouhere Taonga Act 2014 (as set out in the box below)</p> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px;"> <p><u>means</u></p> <p>(a) <u>any place in New Zealand, including any building or structure (or part of a building or structure), that—</u></p> <p style="padding-left: 20px;">(i) <u>was associated with human activity that occurred before 1900 or is the site of the wreck of any vessel where the wreck occurred before 1900; and</u></p> <p style="padding-left: 20px;">(ii) <u>provides or may provide, through investigation by archaeological methods, evidence relating to the history of New Zealand; and</u></p> <p>(b) <u>includes a site for which a declaration is made under section 43(1) of the Heritage New Zealand Pouhere Taonga Act 2014.</u></p> </div>

⁹⁵ 0123.006 Heritage New Zealand Pouhere Taonga

Term	Definition
Attribute (in relation to freshwater)⁹⁶	<p>has the same meaning as in clause 1.4 of the National Policy Statement for Freshwater Management 2020 (as set out in the box below)</p> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px;"> <p>means a measurable characteristic (numeric, narrative, or both) that can be used to assess the extent to which a particular value is provided for</p> </div>
Bed	<p>has the same meaning as in section 2 of the Resource Management Act 1991 (as set out in the box below)</p> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px;"> <p>means,—</p> <p>(a) in relation to any river—</p> <p style="padding-left: 20px;">(i) for the purposes of esplanade reserves, esplanade strips, and subdivision, the space of land which the waters of the river cover at its annual fullest flow without overtopping its banks:</p> <p style="padding-left: 20px;">(ii) in all other cases, the space of land which the waters of the river cover at its fullest flow without overtopping its banks; and</p> <p>(b) in relation to any lake, except a lake controlled by artificial means,—</p> <p style="padding-left: 20px;">(i) for the purposes of esplanade reserves, esplanade strips, and subdivision, the space of land which the waters of the lake cover at its annual highest level without exceeding its margin:</p> <p style="padding-left: 20px;">(ii) in all other cases, the space of land which the waters of the lake cover at its highest level without exceeding its margin; and</p> <p>(c) in relation to any lake controlled by artificial means, the space of land which the waters of the lake cover at its maximum permitted operating level; and</p> <p>(d) in relation to the sea, the submarine areas covered by the internal waters and the territorial sea</p> </div>
Biodiversity	see <i>biological diversity</i>
Biological diversity	<p>has the same meaning as in section 2 of the Resource Management Act 1991 (as set out in the box below)</p> <p>means the variability among living organisms, and the ecological complexes of which they are a part, including diversity within species, between species, and of ecosystems</p>

⁹⁶ Clause 16(2), Schedule 1, RMA

Term	Definition
<u>Biodiversity compensation</u> ⁹⁷	<p>has the same meaning as in the National Policy Statement for Indigenous Biodiversity 2023 (as set out in the box below)</p> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px;"> <p><u>means a conservation outcome that meets the requirements in Appendix 4 and results from actions that are intended to compensate for any more than minor residual adverse effects on indigenous biodiversity after all appropriate avoidance, minimisation, remediation, and biodiversity offsetting measures have been sequentially applied</u></p> </div>
<u>Biodiversity offset</u> ⁹⁸	<p>has the same meaning as in the National Policy Statement for Indigenous Biodiversity 2023 (as set out in the box below)</p> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px;"> <p><u>means a measurable conservation outcome that meets the requirements in Appendix 3 and results from actions that are intended to:</u></p> <p><u>(a) redress any more than minor residual adverse effects on indigenous biodiversity after all appropriate avoidance, minimisation, and remediation measures have been sequentially applied; and</u></p> <p><u>(b) achieve a net gain in type, amount, and condition of indigenous biodiversity compared to that lost.</u></p> </div>
Building	<p>has the same meaning as in Standard 14 of the National Planning Standards 2019 (as set out in the box below)</p> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px;"> <p>means a temporary or permanent movable or immovable physical construction that is:</p> <p>(a) partially or fully roofed; and</p> <p>(b) fixed or located on or in land;</p> <p>but excludes any motorised vehicle or other mode of transport that could be moved under its own power</p> </div>
Business land	<p>has the same meaning as in clause 1.3 of the National Policy Statement on Urban Development 2020 (as set out in the box below)</p> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px;"> <p>means land that is zoned, or identified in an FDS or similar strategy or plan, for business uses in urban environments, including but not limited to land in the following:</p> <p>(a) any industrial zone</p> <p>(b) the commercial zone</p> <p>(c) the large format retail zone</p> <p>(d) any centre zone, to the extent it allows business uses</p> <p>(e) the mixed use zone, to the extent it allows business uses</p> <p>(f) any special purpose zone, to the extent it allows business uses</p> </div>

⁹⁷ 00139.129 DCC, 00237.049 Beef & Lamb NZ

⁹⁸ 00139.129 DCC, 00237.049 Beef & Lamb NZ

Term	Definition
Cascading hazards	means where the occurrence of one natural hazard is likely to trigger another natural hazard event e.g. an earthquake triggering a landslide which dams a river causing flooding.
Certified freshwater farm plan	<p>has the same meaning as section 217B of the Resource Management Act 1991 (as set out in the box below)</p> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px;"> <p>means a freshwater farm plan certified under section 217G, as amended from time to time in accordance with section 217E(2) or (3)</p> </div>
Climate change	<p>has the same meaning as in section 2 of the Resource Management Act 1991 (as set out in the box below)</p> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px;"> <p>means a change of climate that is attributed directly or indirectly to human activity that alters the composition of the global atmosphere and that is in addition to natural climate variability observed over comparable time periods</p> </div>
<u>Climate change adaptation</u> ⁹⁹	<u>means the process of adjustment to actual or expected climate and its effects</u>
<u>Climate change mitigation</u> ¹⁰⁰	<u>means a human intervention to reduce the sources of, or enhance the sinks of greenhouse gases</u>
<u>Coastal hazard</u> ¹⁰¹	<u>means a subset of natural hazards covering tidal or coastal storm inundation, rising sea level, tsunami or meteorological tsunami inundation, coastal erosion (shorelines or cliffs), rise in groundwater levels from storm tides and sea-level rise (plus associated liquefaction), and salinisation of surface fresh waters and groundwater aquifers</u>
Coastal marine area	<p>has the same meaning as in section 2 of the Resource Management Act 1991 (as set out in the box below)</p> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px;"> <p>means the foreshore, seabed, and coastal water, and the air space above the water—</p> <p>(a) of which the seaward boundary is the outer limits of the territorial sea:</p> <p>(b) of which the landward boundary is the line of mean high water springs, except that where that line crosses a river, the landward boundary at that point shall be whichever is the lesser of—</p> <p style="padding-left: 20px;">(i) 1 kilometre upstream from the mouth of the river; or</p> <p style="padding-left: 20px;">(ii) the point upstream that is calculated by multiplying the width of the river mouth by 5</p> </div>

⁹⁹ 00509.015 Wise Response

¹⁰⁰ 00509.015 Wise Response

¹⁰¹ 00301.047 Port Otago

Term	Definition
Coastal water	<p>has the same meaning as in section 2 of the Resource Management Act 1991 (as set out in the box below)</p> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px;"> <p>means seawater within the outer limits of the territorial sea and includes—</p> <p>(a) seawater with a substantial fresh water component; and</p> <p>(b) seawater in estuaries, fiords, inlets, harbours, or embayments</p> </div>
Commercial activity	<p>has the same meaning as in the Standard 14 of the National Planning Standards 2019 (as set out in the box below)</p> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px;"> <p>means any activity trading in goods, equipment or services. It includes any ancillary activity to the commercial activity (for example administrative or head offices)</p> </div>
Commercial port activity	<p>means commercial shipping operations associated with the Otago Harbour¹⁰² and the activities carried out at the ports at Port Chalmers and Dunedin, (including the wharf at Ravensbourne)¹⁰³ which include:</p> <p>(a) Operation of commercial ships in Otago Harbour; Harbor¹⁰⁴</p> <p>(b) Loading and unloading of goods and passengers carried by sea (expect for loading and unloading of passengers at Ravensbourne);¹⁰⁵</p> <p>(c) Facilities for the storage of goods carried by sea (except at Ravensbourne);¹⁰⁶</p> <p>(d) Buildings, installations, other structures or equipment at or adjacent to a port and used in connection with the ports' operation or administration (except at Ravensbourne);¹⁰⁷</p> <p>(e) Structures, facilities and pipelines for fuel storage, and refuelling of ships;</p> <p>(f) Provision, maintenance and development of shipping channels and swing basins;</p> <p>(g) Disposal of dredged materials at AQA0¹⁰⁸ Heyward Point, Aramoana and Shelly Beach referred to at MAP2;¹⁰⁹</p> <p>(h) Installation and maintenance of beacons and markers for navigation safety; and</p> <p>(i) Provision and maintenance of the mole at Aramoana.</p>
Competitiveness margin	<p>has the same meaning as in clause 3.22 of the National Policy Statement on Urban Development 2020 (as set out in the box below)</p> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px;"> <p>means a margin of development capacity, over and above the expected demand that tier 1 and tier 2 local authorities are required to provide, that is required in order to support choice and competitiveness in housing and business land markets</p> </div>

¹⁰² 00120.007 Yellow-eyed Penguin Trust

¹⁰³ 00121.004 Ravensdown

¹⁰⁴ 00120.007 Yellow-eyed Penguin Trust

¹⁰⁵ 00121.004 Ravensdown

¹⁰⁶ 00121.004 Ravensdown

¹⁰⁷ 00121.004 Ravensdown

¹⁰⁸ 00137.007 DOC, 00223.017 Ngāi Tahu ki Murihiku

¹⁰⁹ 00137.007 DOC, 00223.017 Ngāi Tahu ki Murihiku

Term	Definition
Contaminant	<p>has the same meaning as in section 2 of the Resource Management Act 1991 (as set out in the box below)</p> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px;"> <p>includes any substance (including gases, odorous compounds, liquids, solids, and micro-organisms) or energy (excluding noise) or heat, that either by itself or in combination with the same, similar, or other substances, energy, or heat—</p> <p>(a) when discharged into water, changes or is likely to change the physical, chemical, or biological condition of water; or</p> <p>(b) when discharged onto or into land or into air, changes or is likely to change the physical, chemical, or biological condition of the land or air onto or into which it is discharged</p> </div>
Contaminated land	<p>has the same meaning as in section 2 of the Resource Management Act 1991 (as set out in the box below)</p> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px;"> <p>means land that has a hazardous substance in or on it that—</p> <p>(a) has significant adverse effects on the environment; or</p> <p>(b) is reasonably likely to have significant adverse effects on the environment</p> </div>
Critical buildings	<p>for the purposes of the consequence table within APP6, these are buildings which have a post-disaster function. These include:</p> <p>(a) Buildings and facilities designed as essential facilities;</p> <p>(b) Buildings and facilities with special post-disaster function;</p> <p>(c) Medical emergency or surgical facilities;</p> <p>(d) Emergency service facilities such as fire and police stations;</p> <p>(e) Designated emergency shelters;</p> <p>(f) Designated emergency centres and ancillary facilities; and</p> <p>(g) Buildings and facilities containing hazardous materials capable of causing hazardous conditions that extends beyond the property boundaries.</p>
Degraded (in relation to freshwater)¹¹⁰	<p>where it is used in the <i>LF – Land and freshwater</i> chapter, has the same meaning as in clause 1.4 of the National Policy Statement for Freshwater Management 2020 (as set out in the box below)</p>

¹¹⁰ Clause 16(2), Schedule 1, RMA

Term	Definition
	<p>in relation to an FMU or part of an FMU, means that as a result of something other than a naturally occurring process:</p> <p>(a) a site or sites in the FMU or part of the FMU to which a target attribute state applies:</p> <p>(i) is below a national bottom line; or</p> <p>(ii) is not achieving or is not likely to achieve a target attribute state; or</p> <p>(b) the FMU or part of the FMU is not achieving or is not likely to achieve an environmental flow and level set for it; or</p> <p>(c) the FMU or part of the FMU is less able (when compared to 7 September 2017) to provide for any value <u>described in Appendix 1A or any other value</u> identified for it under the NOF</p>
Depositional landform ¹¹¹	<p>has the same meaning as in the National Policy Statement for Indigenous Biodiversity 2023 (as set out in the box below);</p> <p><u>means a landform that is alluvial (matter deposited by water, (eg, fans, river flats, and terraces), colluvial (matter deposited by gravity at the base of hillslopes, (eg, talus), or glacial (matter deposited by glaciers, (eg, moraines and outwash).</u></p>
Development capacity	<p>has the same meaning as in clause 1.4 of the National Policy Statement for Urban Development 2020 (as set out in the box below)</p> <p>means the capacity of the land to be developed for housing or for business use, based on:</p> <p>(a) the zoning, objectives, policies, rules, and overlays that apply in the relevant proposed and operative RMA planning documents; and</p> <p>(b) the provision of adequate development infrastructure to support the development of land for housing or business use</p>
Development infrastructure	<p>has the same meaning as in clause 1.4 of the National Policy Statement for Urban Development 2020 (as set out in the box below)</p> <p>means the following, to the extent that they are controlled by a local authority or council controlled organisation (as defined in section 6 of the Local Government Act 2002):</p> <p>(a) network infrastructure for water supply, wastewater, or stormwater</p> <p>(b) land transport (as defined in section 5 of the Land Transport Management Act 2003)</p>
Discharge	<p>has the same meaning as in section 2 of the Resource Management Act 1991 (as set out in the box below)</p> <p>includes emit, deposit, and allow to escape</p>

¹¹¹ 00139.129 DCC, 00237.049 Beef & Lamb NZ

Term	Definition
Distribution network	<p>has the same meaning as in regulation 3 of the Resource Management (National Environmental Standards for Freshwater) Regulations 2020 (as set out in the box below)</p> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px;"> <p>(a) means lines and associated equipment that are used for conveying electricity and are operated by a business engaged in the distribution of electricity; but</p> <p>(b) does not include lines and associated equipment that are part of the national grid</p> </div>
District plan	<p>has the same meaning as in section 43AA of the Resource Management Act 1991 (as set out in the box below)</p> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px;"> <p>(a) means an operative plan approved by a territorial authority under Schedule 1; and</p> <p>(b) includes all operative changes to the plan (whether arising from a review or otherwise)</p> </div>
Drinking water	<p>has the same meaning as in Standard 14 of the National Planning Standards 2019 (as set out in the box below)</p> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px;"> <p>means water intended to be used for human consumption; and includes water intended to be used for food preparation, utensil washing, and oral or other personal hygiene</p> </div>
Dwelling	<p>has the same meaning as that given for dwellinghouse in section 2 of the Resource Management Act 1991 (as set out in the box below)</p> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px;"> <p>means any building, whether permanent or temporary, that is occupied, in whole or in part, as a residence; and includes any structure or outdoor living area that is accessory to, and used wholly or principally for the purposes of, the residence; but does not include the land upon which the residence is sited</p> </div>
Earthworks	<p>has the same meaning as in Standard 14 of the National Planning Standards 2019 (as set out in the box below)</p> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px;"> <p>means the alteration or disturbance of land, including by moving, removing, placing, blading, cutting, contouring, filling or excavation of earth (or any matter constituting the land including soil, clay, sand and rock); but excludes gardening, cultivation, and disturbance of land for the installation of fence posts</p> </div>
<u>Ecological district</u> ¹¹²	<p><u>has the same meaning as in the Interpretation section of the National Policy Statement for Indigenous Biodiversity 2023, adapted to apply to the Otago context (as set out in the box below):</u></p> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px;"> <p><u>means: the ecological districts as shown in McEwan, W Mary (ed), 1987. <i>Ecological regions and districts of New Zealand</i>. Wellington: Department of Conservation.</u></p> </div>

¹¹² 00139.129 DCC, 00237.049 Beef & Lamb NZ

Term	Definition
<u>Ecosystem function</u> ¹¹³	<p>has the same meaning as in the Interpretation section of the National Policy Statement for Indigenous Biodiversity 2023 (as set out in the box below):</p> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px;"> <p><u>means the abiotic (physical) and biotic (ecological and biological) flows that are properties of an ecosystem</u></p> </div>
Effect	<p>has the same meaning as in section 3 of the Resource Management Act 1991 (as set out in the box below)</p> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px;"> <p>In this Act, unless the context otherwise requires, the term effect includes—</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (a) any positive or adverse effect; and (b) any temporary or permanent effect; and (c) any past, present, or future effect; and (d) any cumulative effect which arises over time or in combination with other effects— <p>regardless of the scale, intensity, duration, or frequency of the effect, and also includes—</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (e) any potential effect of high probability; and (f) any potential effect of low probability which has a high potential impact </div>
<u>Effects management hierarchy (in relation to natural inland wetlands and rivers)</u> ¹¹⁴	<p>has the same meaning as in clause 3.21 of the National Policy Statement for Freshwater Management 2020 (as set out in the box below) and in this RPS also applies to natural wetlands¹¹⁵</p> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px;"> <p>in relation to natural inland wetlands and rivers, means an approach to managing the adverse effects of an activity on the extent or values of a wetland or river (including cumulative effects and loss of potential value) that requires that:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (a) adverse effects are avoided where practicable, (b) where adverse effects cannot be avoided, they are minimised where practicable, (c) where adverse effects cannot be minimised, they are remedied where practicable, (d) where more than minor residual adverse effects cannot be avoided, minimised, or remedied, aquatic offsetting is provided, and (e) if aquatic compensation is not appropriate, the activity itself is avoided </div>

¹¹³ 00139.129 DCC, 00237.049 Beef & Lamb NZ

¹¹⁴ Clause 10(2)(b)(i), Schedule 1, RMA – consequential amendment arising from 00315.014 Aurora Energy, 00235.125 OWRUG, 00511.012 PowerNet, 00320.012 Network Waitaki

¹¹⁵ Clause 10(2)(b)(i), Schedule 1, RMA – consequential amendment arising from 00315.014 Aurora Energy, 00235.125 OWRUG, 00511.012 PowerNet, 00320.012 Network Waitaki

Term	Definition
<p><u>Effects management hierarchy (in relation to indigenous biodiversity)</u>¹¹⁶</p>	<p>means an approach to managing the adverse effects of an activity of <i>indigenous biodiversity</i> that requires that:</p> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 10px;"> <p>(a) <u>adverse effects are avoided where practicable; then</u></p> <p>(b) <u>where adverse effects cannot be avoided, they are minimised where practicable; then</u></p> <p>(c) <u>where adverse effects cannot be minimised, they are remedied where practicable; then</u></p> <p>(d) <u>where more than minor residual adverse effects cannot be avoided, minimised, or remedied, <i>biodiversity offsetting</i> is provided where possible; then</u></p> <p>(e) <u>where <i>biodiversity offsetting</i> of more than minor residual adverse effects is not possible, <i>biodiversity compensation</i> is provided; then</u></p> <p>(f) <u>if <i>biodiversity compensation</i> is not appropriate, the activity itself is avoided, unless the activity is <i>regionally significant infrastructure</i> and <i>nationally significant infrastructure</i> that is either <i>renewable electricity generation</i> or the <i>National Grid</i> then:</u></p> <p>(g) <u>if compensation is not appropriate to address any residual adverse effects:</u></p> <div style="margin-left: 20px;"> <p>(i) <u>the activity must be avoided if the residual adverse effects are significant; but</u></p> <p>(ii) <u>if the residual adverse effects are not significant, the activity must be enabled if the national significance and benefits of the activity outweigh the residual adverse effects.</u></p> </div> </div>
<p>Electricity sub-transmission infrastructure</p>	<p>means electricity infrastructure which conveys electricity between energy generation sources, the National Grid and zone substations and between zone substations.</p>
<p>Environment</p>	<p>has the same meaning as in section 2 of the Resource Management Act 1991 (as set out in the box below)</p> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 10px;"> <p>includes—</p> <p>(a) ecosystems and their constituent parts, including people and communities; and</p> <p>(b) all natural and physical resources; and</p> <p>(c) amenity values; and</p> <p>(d) the social, economic, aesthetic, and cultural conditions which affect the matters stated in paragraphs (a) to (c) or which are affected by those matters</p> </div>

¹¹⁶ 00139.129 DCC, 00237.049 Beef & Lamb NZ

Term	Definition
Environmental outcome	<p>has the same meaning as in clause 1.4 of the National Policy Statement for Freshwater Management 2020 (as set out in the box below)</p> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px;"> <p>means, in relation to a value that applies to an FMU or part of an FMU, a desired outcome that a regional council identifies and then includes as an objective in its regional plan(s)</p> </div>
Esplanade reserve	<p>has the same meaning as in section 2 of the Resource Management Act 1991 (as set out in the box below)</p> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px;"> <p>means a reserve within the meaning of the Reserves Act 1977—</p> <p>(a) which is either—</p> <p style="margin-left: 20px;">(i) a local purpose reserve within the meaning of section 23 of that Act, if vested in the territorial authority under section 239; or</p> <p style="margin-left: 20px;">(ii) a reserve vested in the Crown or a regional council under section 237D; and</p> <p>(b) which is vested in the territorial authority, regional council, or the Crown for a purpose or purposes set out in section 229</p> </div>
Esplanade strip	<p>has the same meaning as in section 2 of the Resource Management Act 1991 (as set out in the box below)</p> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px;"> <p>means a strip of land created by the registration of an instrument in accordance with section 232 for a purpose or purposes set out in section 229</p> </div>
Exceedance	<p>has the same meaning as in regulation 13 of the Resource Management (National Environmental Standards for Air Quality) Regulations 2004 (as set out in the box below)</p> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px;"> <p>for a contaminant, means an instance where the contaminant exceeds its threshold concentration in an airshed</p> </div>
<u>Existing, for a heat device (for the interpretation of EIT-EN-P5)</u> ¹¹⁷	<p>has the same meaning as in section 3 of the Resource Management (National Environment Standards for Greenhouse Gas Emissions from Industrial Process Heat) Regulations 2023 (as set out in the box below)</p> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px;"> <p><u>(a) means a device that, before 27 July 2023, is installed and operational, or able to be operated, at a site; and</u></p> <p><u>(b) includes a device described in paragraph (a) after it is upgraded or improved; but</u></p> <p><u>(c) does not include a device that, on or after 27 July 2023, is installed in replacement of a device described in paragraph (a)</u></p> </div>
<u>Exotic pasture species</u> ¹¹⁸	<p>has the same meaning as in the National Policy Statement for Indigenous Biodiversity 2023 (as set out in the box below)</p> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px;"> <p><u>means a pasture species identified in the National List of Exotic Pasture Species (see clause 1.8)</u></p> </div>

¹¹⁷ 00139.150 DCC, 00138.107 QLDC

¹¹⁸ 00139.129 DCC, 00237.049 Beef & Lamb NZ

Term	Definition
Food and fibre production ¹¹⁹	<p>means the primary sector production industries (other than mining) including Arable, Dairy, Forestry and Wood Processing, Horticulture (including vegetables, viticulture and winemaking), Pork, Poultry, Bees, Red Meat and Wool (Sheep, Beef and Deer), Seafood and Cross-Sector and the related processing industries.</p> <p>Note: This definition is intended to describe the suite of activities that occur throughout Otago from a rural land use perspective and is not intended to prioritise one primary sector production industry over another.</p>
Fossil fuel ¹²⁰	<p>has the same meaning as in section 3 of the Resource Management (National Environment Standards for Greenhouse Gas Emissions from Industrial Process Heat) Regulations 2023 (as set out in the box below)</p> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px;"> <p>(a) means any carbon-based fuel sourced from fossil hydrocarbon deposits; and</p> <p>(b) includes—</p> <p style="margin-left: 20px;">(i) coal, coke, diesel, liquid petroleum gas, natural gas, oil, peat, plastics, and used oil; and</p> <p style="margin-left: 20px;">(ii) any fuel wholly or partly derived from a fuel described in paragraph (a), including tyres used as fuel; but</p> <p>(c) does not include biomass or biogas</p> </div>
Freshwater or fresh water	<p>has the same meaning as in section 2 of the Resource Management Act 1991 (as set out in the box below)</p> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px;"> <p>means all water except coastal water and geothermal water</p> </div>
Freshwater management unit or FMU	<p>has the same meaning as in clause 1.4 of the National Policy Statement for Freshwater Management 2020 (as set out in the box below)</p> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px;"> <p>means all or any part of a water body or water bodies, and their related catchments, that a regional council determines under clause 3.8 is an appropriate unit for freshwater management and accounting purposes; and part of an FMU means any part of an FMU including, but not limited to, a specific site, river reach, water body, or part of a water body</p> </div>
Functional need	<p>has the same meaning as in Standard 14 of the National Planning Standards 2019 (as set out in the box below)</p> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px;"> <p>means the need for a proposal or activity to traverse, locate or operate in a particular environment because the activity can only occur in that environment</p> </div>
Future development strategy	<p>has the same meaning as in the National Policy Statement for Urban Development 2020 (as set out in the box below)</p> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px;"> <p>means the Future Development Strategy required by subpart 4 of Part 3</p> </div>

¹¹⁹ 00235.008 OWRUG

¹²⁰ 00139.150 DCC, 00138.107 QLDC

Term	Definition
Greenhouse gas	<p>has the same meaning as in section 4(1) of the Climate Change Response Act 2002 (as set in in the box below)</p> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px;"> <p>means—</p> <p>(a) carbon dioxide (CO₂):</p> <p>(b) methane (CH₄):</p> <p>(c) nitrous oxide (N₂O):</p> <p>(d) any hydrofluorocarbon:</p> <p>(e) any perfluorocarbon:</p> <p>(f) sulphur hexafluoride (SF₆)</p> </div>
Greywater ¹²¹	<p>has the same meaning as in Standard 14 of the National Planning Standards 2019 (as set out in the box below)</p> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px;"> <p><u>means liquid waste from domestic sources including sinks, basins, baths, showers and similar fixtures, but does not include sewage, or industrial and trade waste.</u></p> </div>
Groundwater	<p>has the same meaning as in Standard 14 of the National Planning Standards 2019 (as set out in the box below)</p> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px;"> <p>means water occupying openings, cavities, or spaces in soils or rocks beneath the surface of the ground</p> </div>
Habitat (in relation to indigenous biodiversity) ¹²²	<p>has the same meaning as in the National Policy Statement for Indigenous Biodiversity 2023 (as set out in the box below);</p> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px;"> <p><u>means the area or environment where an organism or ecological community lives or occurs naturally for some or all of its life cycle, or as part of its seasonal feeding or breeding pattern; but does not include built structures or an area or environment where an organism is present only fleetingly.</u></p> </div>
Hard protection structure	<p>within the coastal environment, has the same meaning as in the Glossary of the New Zealand Coastal Policy Statement 2010 (as set out in the box below)</p> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px;"> <p>includes a seawall, rock revetment, groyne, breakwater, stop bank, retaining wall or comparable structure or modification to the seabed, foreshore or coastal land that has the primary purpose or effect of protecting an activity from a coastal hazard, including erosion</p> </div> <p>and</p> <p>outside the coastal environment, means <u>any kind of structure which is specifically established for the purpose of natural hazard risk mitigation, including¹²³ any dams, weirs, stopbanks, carriageways, groynes, or reservoirs and rip rap.¹²⁴ and any structure or appliance of any kind which is specifically established for the purpose of natural hazard risk mitigation.¹²⁵</u></p>

¹²¹ Consequential change from FPI109.009 Fonterra

¹²² 00139.129 DCC, 00237.049 Beef & Lamb NZ

¹²³ 00223.117 Ngāi Tahu ki Murihiku

¹²⁴ 00305.002 Waka Kotahi

¹²⁵ 00223.117 Ngāi Tahu ki Murihiku, 00230.006 Forest and Bird

Term	Definition
Heat device ¹²⁶	<p>has the same meaning as in section 3 of the Resource Management (National Environment Standards for Greenhouse Gas Emissions from Industrial Process Heat) Regulations 2023 (as set out in the box below)</p> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px;"> <p>(a) means a device that produces <i>industrial process heat</i> (for example, a boiler, furnace, engine, or other combustion device); but</p> <p>(b) does not include a device used for the primary purpose of—</p> <p style="padding-left: 20px;">(i) generating electricity, including a generator used for back-up electricity or for maintaining the electricity network; or</p> <p style="padding-left: 20px;">(ii) transmitting electricity, including in mobile and fixed substations</p> </div>
Highly mobile fauna area ¹²⁷	<p>has the same meaning as in the Interpretation in the National Policy Statement for Indigenous Biodiversity 2023 (as set out in the box below)</p> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px;"> <p>means an area outside an <i>SNA</i> that is an area used intermittently by <i>specified highly mobile fauna</i></p> </div>
Highly productive land ¹²⁸	<p>has the same meaning as in clause 1.3 of the National Policy Statement for Highly Productive Land (as set out in the box below)</p> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px;"> <p>means <i>land</i> that has been mapped in accordance with clause 3.4 and is included in an operative regional policy statement as required by clause 3.5 (but see clause 3.5(7) for what is treated as highly productive land before the maps are included in an operative regional policy statement and clause 3.5(6) for when <i>land</i> is rezoned and therefore ceases to be highly productive land</p> </div>
Highly valued natural features and landscapes	<p>highly valued natural features, landscapes and seascapes are areas which contain attributes and values of significance under Sections 7(c) and 7(f) of the RMA 1991, which have been identified in accordance with APP9.</p>
Historic heritage	<p>has the same meaning as in section 2 of the Resource Management Act 1991 (as set out in the box below)</p> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px;"> <p>(a) means those natural and physical resources that contribute to an understanding and appreciation of New Zealand’s history and cultures, deriving from any of the following qualities:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (i) archaeological: (ii) architectural: (iii) cultural: (iv) historic: (v) scientific: (vi) technological; and </div>

¹²⁶ 00139.150 DCC, 00138.107 QLDC

¹²⁷ 00139.129 DCC, 00237.049 Beef & Lamb NZ

¹²⁸ 00139.150 DCC, 00138.107 QLDC

Term	Definition
	<p>(b) includes—</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (i) historic sites, structures, places, and areas; and (ii) archaeological sites; and (iii) sites of significance to Māori, including wāhi tapu; and (iv) surroundings associated with the natural and physical resources
Housing and Business Development Capacity Assessment	<p>has the same meaning as in the National Policy Statement for Urban Development Capacity 2020 (as set out in the box below)</p> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px; margin-top: 5px;"> <p>means the Housing and Business Development Capacity Assessment (HBA) required by subpart 5 of Part 3</p> </div>
<u>Identified for future urban development</u> ¹²⁹	<p>has the same meaning as in clause 1.3 of the National Policy Statement for Highly Productive Land (as set out in the box below)</p> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px; margin-top: 5px;"> <p><u>(a) identified in a published Future Development Strategy as land suitable for commencing urban development over the next 10 years;</u> <u>or</u> <u>(b) identified:</u></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <u>(i) in a strategic planning document as an area suitable for commencing urban development over the next 10 years; and</u> <u>(ii) at a level of detail that makes the boundaries of the area identifiable in practice</u> </div>
<u>Improved pasture</u> ¹³⁰	<p>has the same meaning as in the National Policy Statement for Indigenous Biodiversity 2023 (as set out in the box below):</p> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px; margin-top: 5px;"> <p><u>means an area of land where exotic pasture species have been deliberately sown or maintained for the purpose of pasture production, and species composition and growth has been modified and is being managed for livestock grazing.</u></p> </div>
<u>Indigenous biodiversity</u> ¹³¹	<p>has the same meaning as in the Interpretation section of the National Policy Statement for Indigenous Biodiversity 2023 (as set out in the box below)</p> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px; margin-top: 5px;"> <p><u>means the living organisms that occur naturally in New Zealand, and the ecological complexes of which they are part, including all forms of indigenous flora, fauna, and fungi, and their <i>habitats</i>.</u></p> </div>
Indigenous vegetation	<p>means vascular and non-vascular plants that, in relation to a particular area, are native to the ecological district¹³² or freshwater or marine bioregion¹³³ in which that area is located</p>
<u>Indigenous species (in relation</u>	<p><u>means species that occur naturally in Otago.</u></p>

¹²⁹ Clause 10(2)(b)(i), Schedule 1, RMA – consequential amendment arising from 00101.044 Tōitu Te Whenua

¹³⁰ 00139.129 DCC, 00237.049 Beef & Lamb NZ

¹³¹ 00139.129 DCC, 00237.049 Beef & Lamb NZ

¹³² McEwen, W Medium (ed), 1987. Ecological regions and districts of New Zealand. Wellington: Department of Conservation (new footnote attributed to 00138.027 QLDC)

¹³³ 00137.013 Director General of Conservation

Term	Definition
to the ECO chapter) ¹³⁴	
Industrial activities	<p>has the same meaning as in Standard 14 of the National Planning Standards 2019 (as set out in the box below)</p> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px;"> <p>means an activity that manufactures, fabricates, processes, packages, distributes, repairs, stores, or disposes of materials (including raw, processed, or partly processed materials) or goods. It includes any ancillary activity to the industrial activity</p> </div>
Industrial and trade waste ¹³⁵	<p>has the same meaning as in Standard 14 of the National Planning Standards 2019 (as set out in the box below)</p> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px;"> <p><u>means liquid waste, with or without matter in suspension, from the receipt, manufacture or processing of materials as part of a commercial, industrial or trade process, but excludes sewage and greywater.</u></p> </div>
Industrial process heat ¹³⁶	<p>has the same meaning as in section 3 of the Resource Management (National Environment Standards for Greenhouse Gas Emissions from Industrial Process Heat) Regulations 2023 (as set out in the box below)</p> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px;"> <p>(a) <u>means thermal energy that is used—</u></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <u>(i) in industrial processes, including in manufacturing and in the processing of raw materials; or</u> <u>(ii) to grow plants or other photosynthesising organisms indoors; but</u> <p>(b) <u>does not include thermal energy used in the warming of spaces for people’s comfort (for example, heating of commercial offices)</u></p> </div>

¹³⁴ 00120.009 Yellow-eyed Penguin Trust

¹³⁵ Clause 10(2)(b)(i), Schedule 1, RMA – consequential amendment arising from 00226.189 Kāi Tahu ki Otago, 00230.094 Forest and Bird

¹³⁶ 00139.150 DCC, 00138.107 QLDC

Term	Definition
Infrastructure	<p>has the same meaning as in section 2 of the Resource Management Act 1991 (as set out in the box below)</p> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 10px;"> <p>means—</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (a) pipelines that distribute or transmit natural or manufactured gas, petroleum, biofuel, or geothermal energy: (b) a network for the purpose of telecommunication as defined in section 5 of the Telecommunications Act 2001: (c) a network for the purpose of radiocommunication as defined in section 2(1) of the Radiocommunications Act 1989: (d) facilities for the generation of electricity, lines used or intended to be used to convey electricity, and support structures for lines used or intended to be used to convey electricity, excluding facilities, lines, and support structures if a person— <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (i) uses them in connection with the generation of electricity for the person’s use; and (ii) does not use them to generate any electricity for supply to any other person: (e) a water supply distribution system, including a system for irrigation: (f) a drainage or sewerage system: (g) structures for transport on land by cycleways, rail, roads, walkways, or any other means: (h) facilities for the loading or unloading of cargo or passengers transported on land by any means: (i) an airport as defined in section 2 of the Airport Authorities Act 1966: (j) a navigation installation as defined in section 2 of the Civil Aviation Act 1990: (k) facilities for the loading or unloading of cargo or passengers carried by sea, including a port related commercial undertaking as defined in section 2(1) of the Port Companies Act 1988: (l) anything described as a network utility operation in regulations made for the purposes of the definition of network utility operator in section 166 </div>

Term	Definition
Intrinsic values	<p>has the same meaning as in section 2 of the Resource Management Act 1991 (as set out in the box below)</p> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px;"> <p>In relation to ecosystems, means those aspects of ecosystems and their constituent parts which have value in their own right, including –</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (a) their biological and genetic diversity; and (b) the essential characteristics that determine an ecosystem’s integrity, form, functioning and resilience </div>
Kāika	means a settlement of Kāi Tahu or their tūpuna.
Kaitiakitanga or kaitiakitaka	<p>has the same meaning as in section 2 of the Resource Management Act 1991 (as set out in the box below)</p> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px;"> <p>means the exercise of guardianship by the tangata whenua of an area in accordance with tikanga Māori in relation to natural and physical resources; and includes the ethic of stewardship</p> </div>
Key civic public spaces¹³⁷	<p>are publicly owned and accessible public spaces identified by local authorities where the public use and enjoyment of the space is strongly influenced by sun and daylight access to the extent that loss of sun and daylight may diminish this use and enjoyment.</p>
Lake	<p>has the same meaning as in section 2 of the Resource Management Act 1991 (as set out in the box below)</p> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px;"> <p>means a body of fresh water which is entirely or nearly surrounded by land</p> </div>
Land	<p>has the same meaning as in section 2 of the Resource Management Act 1991 (as set out in the box below)</p> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px;"> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (a) includes land covered by water and the airspace above land; and (b) in a national environmental standard dealing with a regional council function under section 30 or a regional rule, does not include the bed of a lake or river; and (c) in a national environmental standard dealing with a territorial authority function under section 31 or a district rule, includes the surface of water in a lake or river </div>
<u>Land-based primary production</u>¹³⁸	<p>has the same meaning as in clause 1.3 of the National Policy Statement for Highly Productive Land 2022 (as set out in the box below)</p> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px;"> <p>means production, from agricultural, pastoral, horticulture, or forestry activities, that is reliant on the soil resource of the <i>land</i></p> </div>

¹³⁷ 00223.019 Ngāi Tahu ki Murihiku

¹³⁸ 00021.002 Matakanui Gold Limited, 00016.009 Alluvium Limited and Stoney Creek Mining, 00017.007 Danny Walker and others, 00226.033 Kāi Tahu ki Otago, 00223.094 Ngāi Tahu ki Murihiku

Term	Definition
Landfill	<p>has the same meaning as in Standard 14 of the National Planning Standards 2019 (as set out in the box below)</p> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px;"> <p>means an area used for, or previously used for, the disposal of solid waste. It excludes cleanfill areas</p> </div>
Lifeline utilities	<p>means utilities provided by those entities listed in Schedule 1 of the Civil Defence Emergency Management Act 2002</p>
Limit ¹³⁹	<p><u>In the LF – Land and Freshwater chapter, has the same meaning defined in the NPSFM, and elsewhere, “limit” has its natural and ordinary meaning</u></p>
Limit (in relation to freshwater) ¹⁴⁰	<p><u>has the same meaning as in clause 1.4(1) of the National Policy Statement for Freshwater Management 2020 (as set out in the box below)</u></p> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px;"> <p><u>means either a limit on resource use or a take limit</u></p> </div>
Local authority	<p>has the same meaning as in section 5 of the Local Government Act 2002 (as set out in the box below)</p> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px;"> <p>means a regional council or <i>territorial authority</i></p> </div>
Loss of values ¹⁴¹	<p>has the same meaning as in clause 3.21(1) of the National Policy Statement for Freshwater Management 2020 (as set out in the box below) and in this RPS also refers to <i>natural wetlands</i></p> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px;"> <p>in relation to a natural inland <i>wetland</i> or <i>river</i>, means the <i>wetland</i> or <i>river</i> is less able to provide for the following existing or potential values:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (a) any value identified for it under the NOF process; or (b) any of the following, whether or not they are identified under the NOF process: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (i) ecosystem health (ii) indigenous biodiversity (iii) hydrological functioning (iv) Māori freshwater values (v) amenity </div>
LUC 1, 2, or 3 land ¹⁴²	<p>has the same meaning as in clause 1.3 of the National Policy Statement for Highly Productive Land (as set out in the box below)</p> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px;"> <p>means <i>land</i> identified as Land Use Capability Class 1, 2, or 3, as mapped by the New Zealand Land Resource Inventory or by any more detailed mapping that uses the Land Use Capability classification</p> </div>

¹³⁹ 00230.125 Forest & Bird

¹⁴⁰ 00231.009 Fish and Game

¹⁴¹ Clause 10(2)(b)(i), Schedule 1, RMA – consequential amendment

¹⁴² Clause 10(2)(b)(i), Schedule 1, RMA – consequential amendment arising from 00101.044 Tōitu Te Whenua

Term	Definition
<u>Mahika kai</u> ¹⁴³	<u>means gathering of food and natural materials by Kāi Tahu whānui in accordance with tikaka, the places where those resources are gathered, and the work, methods and cultural activities involved in obtaining them</u>
<u>Maintenance of improved pasture</u> ¹⁴⁴	<p>has the same meaning as in the National Policy Statement for Indigenous Biodiversity 2023 (as set out in the box below):</p> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px;"> <p><u>includes the removal of indigenous vegetation for the purpose of maintaining the improved pasture, whether the removal is by way of cutting, crushing, applying chemicals, draining, burning, cultivating, over-planting, applying seed of exotic pasture species, mob stocking, or making changes to soils, hydrology, or landforms.</u></p> </div>
<u>Maintenance of indigenous biodiversity</u> ¹⁴⁵	<p>has the same meaning as in the National Policy Statement for Indigenous Biodiversity 2023 (as set out in the box below):</p> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px;"> <p><u>means:</u></p> <p>(a) <u>the maintenance and at least no overall reduction of all the following:</u></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <u>(i) the size of populations of <i>indigenous</i> species:</u> <u>(ii) indigenous species occupancy across their natural range:</u> <u>(iii) the properties and function of ecosystems and <i>habitats</i> used or occupied by <i>indigenous biodiversity</i>:</u> <u>(iv) the full range and extent of ecosystems and <i>habitats</i> used or occupied by <i>indigenous biodiversity</i>:</u> <u>(v) connectivity between, and buffering around, ecosystems used or occupied by <i>indigenous biodiversity</i>:</u> <u>(vi) the resilience and adaptability of ecosystems; and</u> <p>(b) <u>where necessary, the restoration and enhancement of ecosystems and <i>habitats</i>.</u></p> </div>
<u>Māori land</u> ¹⁴⁶	<p><u>for the purposes of this RPS, means land within the region that is:</u></p> <p>(1) <u>owned by Te Rūnanga o Ngāi Tahu or its constituent papatipu rūnaka and to be used for the purpose of:</u></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <u>(a) locating papakāika development away from land that is either at risk from natural hazards, including climate change effects such as sea level rise, or is otherwise unsuitable for papakāika development,</u> <u>(b) extending the area of an existing papakāika development,</u> <p>(2) <u>Māori communal land gazetted as Māori reservation under s338 Te Ture Whenua Māori Act 1993,</u></p>

¹⁴³ 00226.0038 Kāi Tahu ki Otago

¹⁴⁴ 00139.129 DCC, 00237.049 Beef & Lamb NZ

¹⁴⁵ 00139.129 DCC, 00237.049 Beef & Lamb NZ

¹⁴⁶ 00234.009 Te Rūnanga o Ngāi Tahu, 00226.053 Kāi Tahu ki Otago, 00010.002 Cain whanau

Term	Definition
	<p><u>(3) Māori customary land and Māori freehold land as defined in s4 and s129 Te Ture Whenua Māori Act 1993,</u></p> <p><u>(4) former Māori land or general land owned by Māori (as those terms are defined in Te Ture Whenua Māori Act 1993) that has at any time been acquired by the Crown or any local or public body for a public work or other public purpose, and has been subsequently returned to its former Kāi Tahu owners or their successors and remains in their ownership,</u></p> <p><u>(5) general land owned by Māori (as defined in Te Ture Whenua Māori Act 1993) that was previously Māori freehold land, has ceased to have that status under an order of the Māori Land Court made on or after 1 July 1993 or under Part 1 of the Māori Affairs Amendment Act 1967 on or after 1 April 1968, that is in the ownership of Kāi Tahu whānui,</u></p> <p><u>(6) vested in a Trust or Māori incorporation under Te Ture Whenua Māori Act 1993,</u></p> <p><u>(7) held or claimed (whether as an entitlement, part of an ancillary claim, or because it was transferred or vested) either,</u></p> <p><u>(a) as part of redress for the settlement of Treaty of Waitangi claims, or</u></p> <p><u>(b) by the exercise of rights under a Treaty settlement Act or Treaty settlement deed (as those terms are defined under the Urban Development Act 2020), or</u></p> <p><u>(c) as SILNA lands,</u></p> <p><u>(8) owned by a person or persons with documentary evidence of Kāi Tahu whakapapa connection to the land, where that evidence is provided by either the Māori Land Court or the Te Rūnanga o Ngāi Tahu Whakapapa Unit.</u></p>
Mana whenua	<p>has the same meaning as in section 2 of the Resource Management Act 1991 (as set out in the box below) and in this RPS also refers to the people who hold customary authority</p> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px;"> <p>means customary authority exercised by an iwi or hapu in an identified area</p> </div>
Mineral	<p>has the same meaning as in section 2(1) of the Crown Minerals Act 1991 (as set out in the box below)</p> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px;"> <p>means a naturally occurring inorganic substance beneath or at the surface of the earth, whether or not under water; and includes all metallic minerals, non-metallic minerals, fuel minerals, precious stones, industrial rocks and building stones, and a prescribed substance within the meaning of the Atomic Energy Act 1945</p> </div>

Term	Definition
Mixing zone	<p>has the same meaning as in the Glossary of the New Zealand Coastal Policy Statement 2010 (as set out in the box below)</p> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px;"> <p>the area within which ‘reasonable mixing’ of contaminants from discharges occurs in receiving waters and within which the relevant water quality standards do not apply</p> </div>
Multiple hazards ¹⁴⁷	<p>means where two or more unrelated natural hazard events may occur.</p>
National grid	<p>has the same meaning as in the Interpretation section of the National Policy Statement on Electricity Transmission 2008 for Renewable Electricity Generation 2011¹⁴⁸ (as set out in the box below)</p> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px;"> <p>means the <u>assets</u> lines and associated equipment used or owned by Transpower <u>New Zealand</u> to convey electricity¹⁴⁹</p> </div>
National Objectives Framework	<p>has the same meaning as in clause 1.4 of the National Policy Statement for Freshwater Management 2020 (as set out in the box below)</p> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px;"> <p>means the framework for managing freshwater as described in subpart 2 of Part 3</p> </div>
Nationally significant infrastructure	<p>has, to the extent applicable to the Otago Region, the same meaning as in clause 1.4(1) of the National Policy Statement for Urban Development 2020 (as set out in the box below):</p> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 10px;"> <p>means all of the following:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (a) State highways (b) the national grid electricity transmission network (c) renewable electricity generation facilities that connect with the national grid (d) the high-pressure gas transmission pipeline network operating in the North Island (e) the refinery pipeline between Marsden Point and Wiri (f) the New Zealand rail network (including light rail) (g) rapid transit services (as defined in this clause) (h) any airport (but not its ancillary commercial activities) used for regular air transport services by aeroplanes capable of carrying more than 30 passengers (i) the port facilities (but not the facilities of any ancillary commercial activities) of each port company referred to in item 6 of Part A of Schedule 1 of the Civil Defence Emergency Management Act 2002 </div>

¹⁴⁷ Clause 16(2), Schedule 1, RMA – term not used in pORPS so no definition needed

¹⁴⁸ 00314.004 Transpower

¹⁴⁹ 00314.004 Transpower

Term	Definition
Natural and physical resources	<p>has the same meaning as in section 2 of the Resource Management Act 1991 (as set out in the box below)</p> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px;"> <p>includes land, water, air, soil, minerals, and energy, all forms of plants and animals (whether native to New Zealand or introduced), and all structures</p> </div>
Natural hazard	<p>has the same meaning as in section 2 of the Resource Management Act 1991 (as set out in the box below)</p> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px;"> <p>means any atmospheric or earth or water related occurrence (including earthquake, tsunami, erosion, volcanic and geothermal activity, landslip, subsidence, sedimentation, wind, drought, fire, or flooding) the action of which adversely affects or may adversely affect human life, property, or other aspects of the environment</p> </div>
Natural hazard works	<p>has the same meaning as in regulation 51(1) of the National Environmental Standard for Freshwater 2020 (as set out in the box below)</p> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px;"> <p>means works for the purpose of removing material, such as trees, debris, and sediment, that—</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (a) is deposited as the result of a natural hazard, and (b) is causing, or is likely to cause, an immediate hazard to people or property </div>
Naturally rare	<p>has the same meaning as in the Glossary of the New Zealand Coastal Policy Statement 2010 (as set out in the box below)</p> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px;"> <p>originally rare: Rare before the arrival of humans in New Zealand</p> </div>
Natural wetland	<p>has the same meaning as in clause 3.21 of the National Policy Statement for Freshwater Management 2020 (as set out in the box below)</p> <p>means a wetland (as defined in the Act) that is not:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (a) a wetland constructed by artificial means (unless it was constructed to offset impacts on, or restore, an existing or former natural wetland); or (b) a geothermal wetland; or (c) any area of improved pasture that, at the commencement date, is dominated by (that is more than 50% of) exotic pasture species and is subject to temporary rain-derived water pooling
<u>New, for a heat device (for the interpretation of EIT-EN-P5)¹⁵⁰</u>	<p><u>has the same meaning as in section 3 of the Resource Management (National Environment Standards for Greenhouse Gas Emissions from Industrial Process Heat) Regulations 2023 (as set out in the box below)</u></p> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px;"> <p><u>means not <i>existing</i></u></p> </div>
Nohoaka or nohoanga	<p>means a site occupied by Kāi Tahu on a seasonal and temporary basis for mahika kai or other customary purposes.</p>

¹⁵⁰ 00139.150 DCC, 00138.107 QLDC

Term	Definition
Occupancy ¹⁵¹	<u>means, in relation to measuring indigenous biodiversity, the number of units per area occupied by a species or taxa</u>
Operational need	has the same meaning as in Standard 14 of the National Planning Standards 2019 (as set out in the box below) <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px;"> <p>means the need for a proposal or activity to traverse, locate or operate in a particular environment because of technical, logistical or operational characteristics or constraints</p> </div>
Other infrastructure ¹⁵²	has the same meaning as in regulation 3 of the National Environmental Standard for Freshwater 2020 (as set out in the box below) <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px;"> <p>means infrastructure, other than specified infrastructure, that was lawfully established before, and in place at, the close of 2 September 2020</p> </div>
Outstanding water body	has the same meaning as in clause 1.4 of the National Policy Statement for Freshwater Management 2020 (as set out in the box below) <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px;"> <p>means a water body, or part of a water body, identified in a regional policy statement, a regional plan, or a water conservation order as having one or more outstanding values</p> </div>
Over-allocation, or over-allocated ¹⁵³	has the same meaning as in clause 1.4 of the National Policy Statement for Freshwater Management 2020 (as set out in the box below) <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px;"> <p>in relation to both the quantity and quality of freshwater, is <u>means</u> the situation where:</p> <p>(a) resource use exceeds a limit; or</p> <p>(b) if limits have not been set, an FMU or part of an FMU is degraded or degrading; or</p> <p><u>(c) an FMU or part of an FMU is not achieving an environmental flow or level set for it under clause 3.16</u></p> </div>
Papakāika or papakāinga	means <u>subdivision</u> , ¹⁵⁴ use and development by <i>mana whenua</i> of <u>Māori land and associated resources</u> ancestral or tribal lands ¹⁵⁵ to <u>provide for sustain themselves in general</u> ¹⁵⁶ accordance with <u>tikaka tikanga</u> Māori for their <u>cultural and traditional purposes</u> , which may include <u>residential activities</u> and non-residential activities for cultural, social, housing, educational, ¹⁵⁷ recreational, environmental or <u>home occupation</u> limited commercial ¹⁵⁸ purposes.

¹⁵¹ 00223.099 Ngāi Tahu ki Murihiku, 00226.215 Kāi Tahu ki Otago

¹⁵² Clause 10(2)(b)(i) – consequential amendment arising from FPI001.019 DCC, FPI026.031 Federated Farmers, FPI027.027 Contact

¹⁵³ Clause 16(2), Schedule 1, RMA

¹⁵⁴ 00010.003 Cain Whanau

¹⁵⁵ 00234.009 Te Rūnanga o Ngāi Tahu, 00226.053 Kāi Tahu ki Otago, 00010.002 Cain whanau

¹⁵⁶ 00010.003 Cain Whanau

¹⁵⁷ 00010.003 Cain Whanau

¹⁵⁸ 00010.003 Cain Whanau

Term	Definition
Pest ¹⁵⁹	<p>has the same meaning as in section 2 of the Biosecurity Act 1993 (as set out in the box below)</p> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px;"> <p>means an organism specified as a <i>pest</i> in a <i>pest</i> management plan</p> </div>
Plantation forestry	<p>has the same meaning as in regulation 3 of the Resource Management (National Environmental Standards for <u>Commercial Plantation</u>¹⁶⁰ Forestry) Regulations 2017 (as set out in the box below)</p> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 10px;"> <p>means a forest deliberately established for commercial purposes, being—</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (a) at least 1 ha of continuous forest cover of forest species that has been planted and has or will be harvested or replanted; and (b) includes all associated forestry infrastructure; but (c) does not include— <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (i) a shelter belt of forest species, where the tree crown cover has, or is likely to have, an average width of less than 30 m; or (ii) forest species in urban areas; or (iii) nurseries and seed orchards; or (iv) trees grown for fruit or nuts; or (v) long-term ecological restoration planting of forest species; or (vi) willows and poplars space planted for soil conservation purposes </div>
PM₁₀	<p>has the same meaning as in regulation 3 of the Resource Management (National Environmental Standards for Air Quality) Regulations 2004 (as set out in the box below)</p> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 10px;"> <p>means particulate matter that is—</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (a) less than 10 micrometres in aerodynamic diameter; and (b) measured in accordance with the United States Code of Federal Regulations, Title 40—Protection of Environment, Volume 2, Part 50, Appendix J — Reference method for the determination of particulate matter as PM₁₀ in the atmosphere </div>
PM_{2.5}	<p>means particulate matter that is less than 2.5 micrometres in aerodynamic diameter.</p>

¹⁵⁹ 00239.007 Federated Farmers, 00411.017 Wayfare

¹⁶⁰ Clause 16(2), Schedule 1, RMA

Term	Definition
Polluted airshed	<p>has the same meaning as in regulation 17(4) of the National Environmental Standards for Air Quality 2004 (as set out in the box below)</p> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px;"> <p>(a) an airshed becomes a polluted airshed on and from 1 September 2012 or any later day if, for the immediately prior 5-year period—</p> <p style="margin-left: 40px;">(i) the airshed has meaningful PM10 data for at least a 12-month period; and</p> <p style="margin-left: 40px;">(ii) the airshed’s average exceedances of PM10 (as calculated under regulation 16D) was more than 1 per year; and</p> <p>(b) an airshed stops being a polluted airshed on and from any day if the PM10 standard was not breached in the airshed in the immediately prior 5-year period</p> </div>
Primary contact site¹⁶¹	<p>has the same meaning as in clause 1.4 of the National Policy Statement for Freshwater Management 2020 (as set out in the box below)</p> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px;"> <p>in relation to both the quantity and quality of freshwater, is the means a site identified by a regional council that it considers is regularly used, or would be regularly used but for existing freshwater quality, for recreational activities such as swimming, paddling, boating, or watersports, and particularly for activities where there is a high likelihood of water or water vapour being ingested or inhaled</p> </div>
Primary production	<p>has the same meaning as in Standard 14 of the National Planning Standards 2019 (as set out in the box below)</p> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px;"> <p>means:</p> <p>(a) an aquaculture, agricultural, pastoral, horticultural, mining, quarrying or forestry activities; and</p> <p>(b) includes initial processing, as an ancillary activity, of commodities that result from the listed activities in a);</p> <p>(c) includes any land and buildings used for the production of the commodities from a) and used for the initial processing of the commodities in b); but</p> <p>(d) excludes further processing of those commodities into a different product</p> </div>

¹⁶¹ Clause 16(2), Schedule 1, RMA

Term	Definition
<u>Productive capacity</u> ¹⁶²	<p>has the same meaning as in clause 1.3 of the National Policy Statement for Highly Productive Land (as set out in the box below)</p> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px; margin-top: 10px;"> <p><u>in relation to land, means the ability of the land to support land-based primary production over the long term, based on an assessment of:</u></p> <p>(a) <u>physical characteristics (such as soil type, properties, and versatility); and</u></p> <p>(b) <u>legal constraints (such as consent notices, local authority covenants, and easements); and</u></p> <p>(c) <u>the size and shape of existing and proposed land parcels</u></p> </div>
Public transport	<p>has the same meaning as in clause 1.4 of the National Policy Statement for Urban Development 2020 (as set out in the box below)</p> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px; margin-top: 10px;"> <p>means any existing or planned service for the carriage of passengers (other than an aeroplane) that is available to the public generally by means of:</p> <p>(a) a vehicle designed or adapted to carry more than 12 persons (including the driver), or</p> <p>(b) a rail vehicle, or</p> <p>(c) a ferry</p> </div>
<u>Receiving environment (in relation to freshwater and the coastal marine area)</u> ¹⁶³	<p>has the same meaning as in in clause 1.4 of the National Policy Statement for Freshwater Management 2020 (as set out in the box below)</p> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px; margin-top: 10px;"> <p>includes, but is not limited to, any water body (such as a river, lake, wetland or aquifer) and the coastal marine area (including estuaries)</p> </div>
Reclamation	<p>has the same meaning as in Standard 14 of the National Planning Standards 2019 (as set out in the box below)</p> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px; margin-top: 10px;"> <p>means the manmade formation of permanent dry land by the positioning of material into or onto any part of a waterbody, bed of a lake or river or the coastal marine area, and:</p> <p>(a) includes the construction of any causeway; but</p> <p>(b) excludes the construction of natural hazard protection structures such as seawalls, breakwaters or groynes except where the purpose of those structures is to form dry land</p> </div>

¹⁶² Clause 10(2)(b)(i), Schedule 1, RMA – consequential amendment arising from 00014.031 Mt Cardrona Station, 00209.01 Universal Developments, 00210.012 Lane Hocking, 00211.01 LAC

¹⁶³ 00121.009 Ravensdown

Term	Definition
Regional plan	<p>has the same meaning as in section 43AA of the Resource Management Act 1991 (as set out in the box below)</p> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px;"> <p>(a) means an operative plan approved by a regional council under Schedule 1 (including all operative changes to the plan (whether arising from a review or otherwise)); and</p> <p>(b) includes a regional coastal plan</p> </div>
Regionally significant infrastructure	<p>means:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> (1) <u>roads which provide a lifeline connection for a community OR roads classified as being of regional importance in accordance with the One Network Framework¹⁶⁴ Road Classification,¹⁶⁵</u> (2) electricity sub-transmission infrastructure, (2A) <u>significant electricity distribution infrastructure,¹⁶⁶</u> (3) renewable electricity generation facilities that connect with the local distribution network but not including renewable electricity generation facilities designed and operated principally for supplying a single premise or facility, (4) telecommunication and radiocommunication <u>networks facilities,¹⁶⁷</u> (5) facilities for public transport, <u>including terminals and stations,¹⁶⁸</u> (6) the following airports: Dunedin, Queenstown, <u>Wānaka Wānaka,</u> Alexandra, Balclutha, Cromwell, <u>Ōamaru Ōamaru, Taieri Taieri.¹⁶⁹</u> (7) navigation infrastructure associated with airports and commercial ports which are nationally or regionally significant, (8) defence facilities <u>for defence purposes in accordance with the Defence Act 1990,¹⁷⁰</u> (8A) <u>established community-scale irrigation and stockwater infrastructure,¹⁷¹</u> (9) community drinking water abstraction, supply treatment and distribution <i>infrastructure</i> that provides no fewer than 25 households with drinking water for not less than 90 days each calendar year, and community water supply abstraction, treatment and distribution <i>infrastructure</i> (excluding delivery systems or infrastructure primarily deployed for the delivery of water for irrigation of land or rural agricultural drinking-water supplies), (10) community stormwater <i>infrastructure</i>, (11) wastewater and sewage collection, treatment and disposal infrastructure serving no fewer than 25 households, <u>and</u> (11A) <u>oil terminals, bulk fuel storage and supply infrastructure, and ancillary pipelines at Port Chalmers and Dunedin,¹⁷²</u> (12) Otago Regional Council’s hazard mitigation works including flood protection infrastructure and drainage schemes₂, (13) <u>landfills and associated solid waste sorting and transfer facilities which are designated by, or are owned or operated by a local</u>

¹⁶⁴ 00139.007 DCC

¹⁶⁵ <https://www.nzta.govt.nz/roads-and-rail/road-efficiency-group/projects/onrc> (accessed 26 May 2021)

¹⁶⁶ 00315.010 Aurora Energy, 00320.001 Network Waitaki, 00511.001 PowerNet

¹⁶⁷ 00310.002 Chorus, Spark and Vodafone

¹⁶⁸ 00226.034 Kāi Tahu ki Otago

¹⁶⁹ 00226.024 Kāi Tahu ki Otago

¹⁷⁰ 00230.011 Forest and Bird

¹⁷¹ 00213.002 Waitaki Irrigators

¹⁷² 00510.009 The Fuel Companies

Term	Definition
	<p><u>authority.</u>¹⁷³ (14) <u>ski area infrastructure, and</u>¹⁷⁴ (15) <u>any infrastructure identified as nationally significant infrastructure.</u>¹⁷⁵</p>
Renewable electricity generation	<p>has the same meaning as in the Interpretation section of the National Policy Statement for Renewable Electricity Generation 2011 (as set out in the box below)</p> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px;"> <p>means generation of electricity from solar, wind, hydroelectricity, geothermal, biomass, tidal, wave, or ocean current energy sources</p> </div>
Renewable electricity generation activities	<p>has the same meaning as in the Interpretation section of the National Policy Statement for Renewable Electricity Generation 2011 (as set out in the box below)</p> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px;"> <p>means the construction, operation and maintenance of structures associated with renewable electricity generation. This includes small and community-scale distributed renewable generation activities and the system of electricity conveyance required to convey electricity to the distribution network and/or the national grid and electricity storage technologies associated with renewable electricity</p> </div>
Replanting	<p>has the same meaning as in regulation 3 of the Resource Management (National Environmental Standards for <u>Commercial Plantation</u>¹⁷⁶ Forestry) Regulations 2017 (as set out in the box below)</p> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px;"> <p>means the planting and growing of plantation forestry trees on land less than 5 years after plantation forestry harvesting has occurred</p> </div>
Residual risk ¹⁷⁷	<p>means the risk remaining after the implementation or undertaking of all available and practicable risk management measures.</p>
Resilient or resilience	<p>means the capacity and ability to withstand or recover quickly from adverse conditions.</p>
Resource consent	<p>has the same meaning as in section 2 of the Resource Management Act 1991 (as set out in the box below)</p> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px;"> <p>has the meaning set out in section 87; and includes all conditions to which the consent is subject</p> </div>

¹⁷³ 00138.106 QLDC

¹⁷⁴ 00206.013 Trojan and 00411.020 Wayfare

¹⁷⁵ 00311.003 Trustpower, 00301.007 Port Otago

¹⁷⁶ Clause 16(2), Schedule 1, RMA

¹⁷⁷ Clause 10(2)(b)(i), Schedule 1, RMA – consequential amendment arising from 00138.147 QLDC

Term	Definition
<p><u>Restoration (in relation to indigenous biodiversity)</u>¹⁷⁸</p>	<p>has the same meaning as in the Interpretation section of the National Policy Statement for Indigenous Biodiversity 2023 (as set out in the box below)</p> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px;"> <p><u>means the active intervention and management of modified or degraded <i>habitats</i>, ecosystems, landforms, and landscapes in order to maintain or reinstate indigenous natural character, ecological and physical processes, and cultural and visual qualities, and may include enhancement activities</u></p> </div>
<p><u>Reverse sensitivity</u>¹⁷⁹</p>	<p><u>means the potential for the operation of an existing lawfully established activity to be constrained or curtailed by the more recent establishment or intensification of other activities which are sensitive to the effects of the established activity.</u></p>
<p><u>Riprap</u>¹⁸⁰</p>	<p><u>a permanent layer or large, angular rocks, concrete or boulders typically used to armour, stabilize and protect the <i>land</i> surface and margins of <i>water bodies</i> against erosion and scour in areas of concentrated <i>water</i> flow or wave energy</u></p>
<p><u>Risk (in relation to natural hazards)</u>¹⁸¹</p>	<p>has the same meaning as in the Glossary in the New Zealand Coastal Policy Statement 2010 (as set out in the box below)</p> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px;"> <p>Risk is often expressed in terms of a combination of the consequences of an event (including changes in circumstances) and the associated likelihood of occurrence (AS/NZS ISO 31000:2009 <i>Risk management – Principles and guidelines</i>, November 2009)</p> </div>
<p>River</p>	<p>has the same meaning as in section 2 of the Resource Management Act 1991 (as set out in the box below)</p> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px;"> <p>means a continually or intermittently flowing body of fresh water; and includes a stream and modified watercourse; but does not include any artificial watercourse (including an irrigation canal, water supply race, canal for the supply of water for electricity power generation, and farm drainage canal)</p> </div>

¹⁷⁸ 00139.129 DCC, 00237.049 Beef & Lamb NZ

¹⁷⁹ 00233.005 Fonterra, 00305.005 Waka Kotahi

¹⁸⁰ 005 Waka Kotahi 193 0

¹⁸¹ 00230.013 Forest and Bird

Term	Definition
<p>Road¹⁸²</p>	<p>has the same meaning as in section 315 of the Local Government Act 1974; and includes a motorway as defined in section 2(1) of the Government Roading Powers Act 1989 (as set out in the boxes below)</p> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px;"> <p>road means the whole of any land which is within a district, and which—</p> <p>(a) immediately before the commencement of this Part was a road or street or public highway; or</p> <p>(b) immediately before the inclusion of any area in the district was a public highway within that area; or</p> </div> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px;"> <p>(c) is laid out by the council as a road or street after the commencement of this Part; or</p> </div> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px;"> <p>(d) is vested in the council for the purpose of a road as shown on a deposited survey plan; or</p> <p>(e) is vested in the council as a road or street pursuant to any other enactment;—</p> <p>and includes—</p> <p>(f) except where elsewhere provided in this Part, any access way or service lane which before the commencement of this Part was under the control of any council or is laid out or constructed by or vested in any council as an access way or service lane or is declared by the Minister of Works and Development as an access way or service lane after the commencement of this Part or is declared by the Minister of Lands as an access way or service lane on or after 1 April 1988:</p> <p>(g) every square or place intended for use of the public generally, and every bridge, culvert, drain, ford, gate, building, or other thing belonging thereto or lying upon the line or within the limits thereof;—</p> <p>but, except as provided in the Public Works Act 1981 or in any regulations under that Act, does not include a motorway within the meaning of that Act or the Government Roading Powers Act 1989</p> </div> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px;"> <p>motorway—</p> <p>(a) means a motorway declared as such by the Governor-General in Council under section 138 of the Public Works Act 1981 or under section 71 of this Act; and</p> <p>(b) includes all bridges, drains, culverts, or other structures or works forming part of any motorway so declared; but does not include any local road, access way, or service lane (or the supports of any such road, way, or lane) that crosses over or under a motorway on a different level</p> </div>

Term	Definition
Rural area	means any area of land that is not an <i>urban area</i>
Rural industry ¹⁸³	has the same meaning as in Standard 14 of the National Planning Standards 2019 (as set out in the box below) <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px;"> <u>means an industry or business undertaken in a rural environment that directly supports, services, or is dependent on primary production</u> </div>
Sensitive activities	has the same meaning as in the Interpretation section of the National Policy Statement on Electricity Transmission 2008 (as set out in the box below) <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px;"> includes schools, residential buildings and hospitals </div>
Sewage	has the same meaning as in Standard 14 of the National Planning Standards 2019 (as set out in the box below) <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px;"> means human excrement and urine </div>
Ship	has the same meaning as in section 2 of the Resource Management Act 1991 (as set out in the box below) <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px;"> has the same meaning as in section 2(1) of the Maritime Transport Act 1994 </div>
Significant electricity distribution infrastructure ¹⁸⁴	<u>means electricity infrastructure identified in a district plan which supplies:</u> <u>(a) essential public services (such as hospitals and lifeline facilities);</u> <u>(b) other regionally significant infrastructure or individual consumers requiring supply of 1MW or more;</u> <u>(c) 700 or more consumers; or</u> <u>(d) communities that are isolated and which do not have an alternative supply in the event the line or cable is compromised and where the assets are difficult to replace in the event of failure.</u>
Significant natural area ¹⁸⁵	has the same meaning as in the Interpretation section of the National Policy Statement for Indigenous Biodiversity 2023 (except that a reference to Appendix 2 rather than Appendix 1) as set out below: <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px;"> <u>means:</u> <u>(a) any area that, after the commencement date, is notified or included in a district plan as an SNA following an assessment of the area in accordance with Appendix 2; and</u> <u>(b) any area that, on the commencement date, is already identified in a policy statement or plan as an area of significant indigenous vegetation or significant habitat of indigenous fauna (regardless of how it is described); in which case it remains as a significant natural area unless or until a suitably qualified ecologist engaged by the relevant local authority determines that it is not an area of significant indigenous vegetation or significant habitat of indigenous fauna.</u> </div>

¹⁸² Clause 16(2), Schedule 1, RMA – definition unnecessary

¹⁸³ 00233.007 Fonterra, 00221.001 Silver Fern Farms, 00411.019 Wafare Group and 00206.012 Trojan

¹⁸⁴ 00315.058 Aurora Energy, 00320.026 Network Waitaki and 00511.026 PowerNet

¹⁸⁵ 00139.129 DCC, 00237.049 Beef & Lamb NZ

Term	Definition
	means areas of significant indigenous vegetation and significant habitats of indigenous fauna that are located outside the coastal environment.
<u>Ski area infrastructure</u> ¹⁸⁶	<p>has the same meaning as in the clause 3.21(1) of the National Policy Statement for Freshwater Management 2020 (as set out in the box below)</p> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px;"> <p><i>infrastructure</i> necessary for the operation of a ski area and includes: transport mechanisms (such as aerial and surface lifts, roads, and tracks); facilities for the loading or unloading of passengers or goods; facilities or systems for water, sewerage, electricity, and gas; communications networks; and snowmaking and snow safety systems</p> </div>
Small and community scale distributed electricity generation	<p>has the same meaning as in the Interpretation section of the National Policy Statement for Renewable Electricity Generation 2011 (as set out in the box below)</p> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px;"> <p>means renewable electricity generation for the purpose of using electricity on a particular site, or supplying an immediate community, or connecting into the distribution network</p> </div>
Social and cultural buildings	<p>For the purposes of the consequence table within APP6, these are buildings that are of social and cultural importance. These include:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (a) Places of worship; (b) Museums; (c) Art galleries; (d) Marae; and (e) Educational facilities
Solid fuel	<p>has the same meaning as in regulation 3 of the Resource Management (National Environmental Standards for Air Quality) Regulations 2004 (as set out in the box below)</p> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px;"> <p>means a solid substance that releases useable energy when burnt (for example, wood and coal)</p> </div>
<u>Specified highly mobile fauna</u> ¹⁸⁷	<p>has the same meaning as in the Interpretation in the National Policy Statement for Indigenous Biodiversity 2023, except that reference to Appendix 2 is amended to APP12 (as set out in the box below):</p> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px;"> <p>means the <i>Threatened or At Risk species</i> of highly mobile fauna that are identified in APP12.</p> </div>
<u>Specified infrastructure</u> ¹⁸⁸	<p>has the same meaning as in clause 3.21 of the National Policy Statement for Freshwater Management 2020 (as set out in the box below)¹⁸⁹</p> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px;"> <p>means any of the following:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (a) infrastructure that delivers a service operated by a lifeline utility (as defined in the Civil Defence Emergency </div>

¹⁸⁶ 00206.015 Trojan and 00411.022 Wayfare

¹⁸⁷ 00139.129 DCC, 00237.049 Beef & Lamb NZ

¹⁸⁸ Clause 10(2)(b)(i) – consequential amendment arising from FPI001.019 DCC, FPI026.031 Federated Farmers, FPI027.027 Contact

¹⁸⁹ Clause 10(2)(b)(i) – consequential amendment arising from FPI001.019 DCC, FPI026.031 Federated Farmers, FPI027.027 Contact

Term	Definition
	<p>Management Act 2002),</p> <p>(b) regionally significant infrastructure identified as such in a regional policy statement or regional plan,</p> <p>(c) any public flood control, flood protection, or drainage works carried out:</p> <p>(i) by or on behalf of a local authority, including works carried out for the purposes set out in section 133 of the Soil Conservation and Rivers Control Act 1951, or</p> <p>(ii) for the purpose of drainage by drainage districts under the Land Drainage Act 1908</p>
<p><u>Specified infrastructure (in relation to indigenous biodiversity)¹⁹⁰</u></p>	<p>has the same meaning as in the Interpretation section of the National Policy Statement for Indigenous Biodiversity 2023 (as set out in the box below)</p> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px;"> <p><u>means any of the following:</u></p> <p><u>(a) infrastructure that delivers a service operated by a lifeline utility (as defined in the Civil Defence Emergency Management Act 2002):</u></p> <p><u>(b) regionally or nationally significant infrastructure identified as such in a National Policy Statement, the New Zealand Coastal Policy Statement, or a regional policy statement or plan:</u></p> <p><u>(c) infrastructure that is necessary to support housing development, that is included in a proposed or operative plan or identified for development in any relevant strategy document (including a future development strategy or spatial strategy) adopted by a local authority, in an urban environment (as defined in the National Policy Statement on Urban Development 2020):</u></p> <p><u>(d) any public flood control, flood protection, or drainage works carried out:</u></p> <p style="padding-left: 20px;"><u>(i) by or on behalf of local authority, including works carried out for the purposes set out in section 133 of the Soil Conservation and Rivers Control Act 1941; or</u></p> <p style="padding-left: 20px;"><u>(ii) for the purpose of drainage, by drainage districts under the Land Drainage Act 1908:</u></p> <p><u>(e) defence facilities operated by the New Zealand Defence Force to meet its obligations under the Defence Act 1990.</u></p> </div>
<p><u>Specified rivers and lakes</u></p>	<p>has the same meaning as in Appendix 3 of the National Policy Statement for Freshwater Management 2020 (as set out in the box below)</p> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px;"> <p><u>means:</u></p> <p>(a) rivers that are fourth order or greater, using the methods outlined in the River Environment Classification System, National Institute of Water and Atmospheric Research, Version 1, and</p> <p>(b) lakes with a perimeter of 1.5km or more</p> </div>

¹⁹⁰ 00139.129 DCC, 00237.049 Beef & Lamb NZ

Term	Definition
Stormwater	<p>has the same meaning as in Standard 14 of the National Planning Standards 2019 (as set out in the box below)</p> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px;"> <p>means run-off that has been intercepted, channelled, diverted, intensified or accelerated by human modification of a land surface, or run-off from the surface of any structure, as a result of precipitation and includes any contaminants contained within</p> </div>
Structure	<p>has the same meaning as in section 2 of the Resource Management Act 1991 (as set out in the box below)</p> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px;"> <p>means any building, equipment, device, or other facility made by people and which is fixed to land; and includes any raft</p> </div>
Structure plan	<p>means a framework to prescribe development of an area, including land use patterns, infrastructure, linkages and other key features and constraints that affect the development.</p>
Subdivision	<p>has the same meaning as “subdivision of land” in section 218(1)¹⁹¹ of the Resource Management Act 1991 (as set out in the box below)</p> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px;"> <p>(1) — In this Act, the term subdivision of land¹⁹² means—</p> <p>(a) the division of an allotment—</p> <p style="padding-left: 20px;">(i) by an application to the Registrar-General of Land for the issue of a separate record of title for any part of the allotment; or</p> <p style="padding-left: 20px;">(ii) by the disposition by way of sale or offer for sale of the fee simple to part of the allotment; or</p> <p style="padding-left: 20px;">(iii) by a lease of part of the allotment which, including renewals, is or could be for a term of more than 35 years; or</p> <p style="padding-left: 20px;">(iv) by the grant of a company lease or cross lease in respect of any part of the allotment; or</p> <p style="padding-left: 20px;">(v) by the deposit of a unit plan, or an application to the Registrar-General of Land for the issue of a separate record of title for any part of a unit on a unit plan; or</p> <p>(b) an application to the Registrar-General of Land for the issue of a separate record of title in circumstances where the issue of that record of title is prohibited by section 226,—</p> <p>and the term subdivide land has a corresponding meaning</p> </div>
Surf break	<p>has the same meaning as in the Glossary in the New Zealand Coastal Policy Statement 2010 (as set out in the box below)</p> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px;"> <p>A natural feature that is comprised of swell, currents, water levels,</p> </div>

¹⁹¹ Clause 16(2), Schedule 1, RMA

¹⁹² Clause 16(2), Schedule 1, RMA

Term	Definition
	<p>seabed morphology, and wind. The hydrodynamic character of the ocean (swell, currents and water levels) combines with seabed morphology and winds to give rise to a 'surfable wave'. A surf break includes the 'swell corridor' through which the swell travels, and the morphology of the seabed of that wave corridor, through to the point where waves created by the swell dissipate and become non-surfable. 'Swell corridor' means the region offshore of a surf break where ocean swell travels and transforms to a 'surfable wave'.</p> <p>'Surfable wave' means a wave that can be caught and ridden by a surfer. Surfable waves have a wave breaking point that peels along the unbroken wave crest so that the surfer is propelled laterally along the wave crest</p>
<p>Takata whenua or tangata whenua</p>	<p>has the same meaning as in section 2 of the Resource Management Act 1991 (as set out in the box below)</p> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px;"> <p>in relation to a particular area, means the iwi, or hapu, that holds mana whenua over that area</p> </div>
<p>Taxa</p>	<p>has the same meaning as in the Glossary of the New Zealand Coastal Policy Statement 2010 (as set out in the box below)</p> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px;"> <p>Named biological classification units assigned to individuals or sets of species (eg species, subspecies, genus, order, variety)</p> </div>
<p>Te Mana o te Wai</p>	<p>has the same meaning as in clause 1.3 of the National Policy Statement for Freshwater Management 2020 (as set out in the box below)¹⁹³</p> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 10px;"> <p><i>Concept</i></p> <p>(1) Te Mana o te Wai is a concept that refers to the fundamental importance of water and recognises that protecting the health of freshwater protects the health and well-being of the wider environment. It protects the mauri of the wai. Te Mana o te Wai is about restoring and preserving the balance between the water, the wider environment, and the community.</p> <p>(2) Te Mana o te Wai is relevant to all freshwater management and not just to the specific aspects of freshwater management referred to in this National Policy Statement.</p> <p><i>Framework</i></p> <p>(3) Te Mana o te Wai encompasses 6 principles relating to the roles of tangata whenua and other New Zealanders in the management of freshwater, and these principles inform this National Policy Statement and its implementation.</p> <p>(4) The 6 principles are:</p> <p>(a) <i>Mana whakahaere</i>: the power, authority, and obligations of tangata whenua to make decisions that maintain, protect, and sustain the health and well-being</p> </div>

¹⁹³ FPI00213.010 Fonterra

Term	Definition
	<p>of, and their relationship with, freshwater</p> <p>(b) <i>Kaitiakitanga</i>: the obligation of tangata whenua to preserve, restore, enhance, and sustainably use freshwater for the benefit of present and future generations</p> <p>(c) <i>Manaakitanga</i>: the process by which tangata whenua show respect, generosity, and care for freshwater and for others</p> <p>(d) <i>Governance</i>: the responsibility of those with authority for making decisions about freshwater to do so in a way that prioritises the health and well-being of freshwater now and into the future</p> <p>(e) <i>Stewardship</i>: the obligation of all New Zealanders to manage freshwater in a way that ensures it sustains present and future generations</p> <p>(f) <i>Care and respect</i>: the responsibility of all New Zealanders to care for freshwater in providing for the health of the nation.</p> <p>(5) There is a hierarchy of obligations in Te Mana o te Wai that prioritises:</p> <p>(a) first, the health and well-being of water bodies and freshwater ecosystems</p> <p>(b) second, the health needs of people (such as drinking water)</p> <p>(c) third, the ability of people and communities to provide for their social, economic, and cultural well-being, now and in the future</p>
Territorial authority	<p>has the same meaning as in section 5 of the Local Government Act 2002 (as set out in the box below)</p> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px; width: fit-content; margin: 5px auto;"> <p>means a city council or a district council named in Part 2 of Schedule 2</p> </div>
Te Ture Whenua Maori land ¹⁹⁴	<p>means land with the following status:</p> <p>(a) Māori communal land gazetted as Māori reservation under s338 Te Ture Whenua Maori Act 1993; and</p> <p>(b) Māori customary land and Māori freehold land as defined in s4 and s129 Te Ture Whenua Maori Act 1993.</p>

¹⁹⁴ Clause 10(2)(b)(i) – consequential amendment arising from 00234.009 Te Rūnanga o Ngāi Tahu, 00226.053 Kāi Tahu ki Otago, 00010.002 Cain whanau

Term	Definition
Threatened species or At Risk, and Threatened species or At Risk (declining) ¹⁹⁵	<p>has the same meaning as in the Interpretation section of the National Policy Statement for Indigenous Biodiversity 2023 (as set out in the box below);</p> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px; margin: 5px 0;"> <p>have, at any time, the meanings given in the New Zealand Threat Classification System Manual (Andrew J Townsend, Peter J de Lange, Clinton A J Duffy, Colin Miskelly, Janice Molloy and David A Norton, 2008. Science & Technical Publishing, Department of Conservation, Wellington), available at: https://www.doc.govt.nz/globalassets/documents/science-andtechnical/sap244.pdf, or its current successor publication</p> </div> <p>means any indigenous species of flora or fauna that meets the criteria for nationally critical, nationally endangered, or nationally vulnerable species in the New Zealand Threat Classification System Manual (Townsend et al, 2008)</p>
Urban area	<p>means any area of land (regardless of size, and irrespective of local authority or statistical boundaries) that is, or is intended to be, predominantly urban in character. This includes but is not limited to any land identified in District Plans as being within any urban growth boundary or equivalent however described, any residential zone, commercial and mixed use zone, industrial zone and future urban zone as listed in the National Planning Standards or its present District Plan zone equivalent. <i>Urban environments</i> are a subset of <i>urban areas</i>.</p>
Urban environment	<p>has the same meaning as in clause 1.4 of the National Policy Statement on Urban Development 2020 (as set out in the box below)</p> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px; margin: 5px 0;"> <p>means any area of land (regardless of size, and irrespective of local authority or statistical boundaries) that:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (a) is, or is intended to be, predominantly urban in character; and (b) is, or is intended to be, part of a housing and labour market of at least 10,000 people </div>
Vulnerability	<p>means the conditions determined by physical, social, economic and environmental factors or processes which increase the susceptibility of an individual, a community, assets or systems to the impacts of hazards.</p>
Wāhi tūpuna	<p>means landscapes and places that embody the relationship of manawhenua and their culture and traditions with their ancestral lands, water, sites. wāhi tapu and other taoka.</p>

¹⁹⁵ 00139.129 DCC, 00237.049 Beef & Lamb NZ

Term	Definition
Waste	<p>has the same meaning as in the Waste Minimisation Act 2008 (as set out in the box below)¹⁹⁶</p> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px;"> <p>(a) means any thing disposed of or discarded; and (b) includes a type of waste that is defined by its composition or source (for example, organic waste, electronic waste, or construction and demolition waste); and (c) to avoid doubt, includes any component or element of diverted material, if the component or element is disposed of or discarded</p> </div> <p>has the same meaning as in regulation 3 of the Resource Management (National Environmental Standards for Air Quality) Regulations 2004 (as set out in the box below)</p> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px;"> <p>means substances or objects that are disposed of or intended to be disposed of</p> </div>
Wastewater	<p>has the same meaning as in Standard 14 of the National Planning Standards 2019 (as set out in the box below)</p> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px;"> <p>means any combination of two or more the following wastes: sewage, greywater or industrial and trade waste</p> </div>
Water	<p>has the same meaning as in section 2 of the Resource Management Act 1991 (as set out in the box below)</p> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px;"> <p>(a) means water in all its physical forms whether flowing or not and whether over or under the ground: (b) includes fresh water, coastal water, and geothermal water: (c) does not include water in any form while in any pipe, tank, or cistern</p> </div>
Water body	<p>has the same meaning as in section 2 of the Resource Management Act 1991 (as set out in the box below)</p> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px;"> <p>means fresh water or geothermal water in a river, lake, stream, pond, wetland, or aquifer, or any part thereof, that is not located within the coastal marine area</p> </div>

¹⁹⁶ 00121.013 Ravensdown

Term	Definition
Well-functioning urban environments	<p>has the same meaning as in Policy 1 of the National Policy Statement on Urban Development 2020 (as set out in the box below)</p> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px;"> <p>well-functioning urban environments are urban environments that, as a minimum:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (a) Have or enable a variety of homes that: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (i) meet the needs, in terms of type, price, and location, of different households; and (ii) enable Māori to express their cultural traditions and norms; and (b) have or enable a variety of sites that are suitable for different business sectors in terms of location and site size; and (c) have good accessibility for all people between housing, jobs, community services, natural spaces, and open spaces, including by way of public or active transport; and (d) support, and limit as much as possible adverse impacts on, the competitive operation of land and development markets; and (e) support reductions in greenhouse gas emissions; and (f) are resilient to the likely current and future effects of climate change </div>
Wetland	<p>has the same meaning as in section 2 of the Resource Management Act 1991 (as set out in the box below)</p> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px;"> <p>includes permanently or intermittently wet areas, shallow water, and land water margins that support a natural ecosystem of plants and animals that are adapted to wet conditions</p> </div>
Wetland utility structure	<p>has the same meaning as in regulation 3 of the National Environmental Standard for Freshwater 2020 (as set out in the box below)</p> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px;"> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (a) means a structure placed in or adjacent to a wetland whose purpose, in relation to the wetland, is recreation, education, conservation, restoration, or monitoring, and (b) for example, includes the following structures that are placed in or adjacent to a wetland for a purpose described in paragraph (a): <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (i) jetties (ii) boardwalks and bridges connecting them, (iii) walking tracks and bridges connecting them, (iv) signs, (v) bird-watching hides, (vi) monitoring devices, (vii) maimai </div>

Term	Definition
Wilding conifer	<p>has the same meaning as in regulation 3 of the Resource Management (National Environmental Standards for <u>Commercial Plantation</u>¹⁹⁷ Forestry) Regulations 2017 (as set out in the box below)</p> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px;"> <p>means a self-established conifer species tree resulting from seed spread from plantation forestry, shelter belts, amenity planting, or an already established wilding conifer species tree population</p> </div>

¹⁹⁷ Clause 16(2), Schedule 1, RMA

Abbreviations

Abbreviation	Full Terms
<u>Air Plan</u> ¹⁹⁸	<u>Regional Plan: Air for Otago</u>
CDC	Clutha District Council
CODC	Central Otago District Council
DCC	Dunedin City Council
FMU	Freshwater Management Unit
HAIL ¹⁹⁹	Hazardous Activities and Industries List
LGA ²⁰⁰	Local Government Act 2002
NES ²⁰¹	National Environmental Standard
NESAQ	National Environmental Standards for Air Quality 2004
NESCS	National Environmental Standards for Assessing and Managing Contaminants in Soil to Protect Human Health 2011
NESETA	National Environmental Standard for Electricity Transmission Activities 2009
NESF	National Environmental Standards for Freshwater 2020
NESMA ²⁰²	National Environmental Standards for Marine Aquaculture 2020
NESPF	National Environmental Standards for Plantation Forestry 2017
NESHDW ²⁰³	National Environmental Standard for Sources of Human Drinking Water 2007
NESTF	National Environmental Standards for Telecommunication Facilities 2016
NOF	National Objectives Framework
NPS	National Policy Statement
NPSET	National Policy Statement on Electricity Transmission 2008
NPSFM	National Policy Statement for Freshwater Management 2020
<u>NPSHPL</u> ²⁰⁴	<u>National Policy Statement for Highly Productive Land 2022</u>
NPSREG	National Policy Statement for Renewable Electricity Generation 2011
NPSUD	National Policy Statement on Urban Development 2020
NTCSA	Ngāi Tahu Claims Settlement Act 1998

¹⁹⁸ Clause 16(2), Schedule 1, RMA

¹⁹⁹ Clause 16(2), Schedule 1, RMA

²⁰⁰ Clause 16(2), Schedule 1, RMA

²⁰¹ Clause 16(2), Schedule 1, RMA

²⁰² Clause 16(2), Schedule 1, RMA

²⁰³ Clause 16(2), Schedule 1, RMA

²⁰⁴ Clause 16(2), Schedule 1, RMA

NZCPS	New Zealand Coastal Policy Statement 2010
OCCRA ²⁰⁵	Otago Climate Change Risk Assessment Phase 1 report
ORC	Otago Regional Council
PORPS 2016 ²⁰⁶	Proposed Otago Regional Policy Statement 2016 – Decisions version
PORPS 2019 ²⁰⁷	Partially Operative Regional Policy Statement 2019
PORPS 2021 ²⁰⁸	Proposed Otago Regional Policy Statement 2021
QLDC	Queenstown Lakes District Council
RPS	Regional Policy Statement
RPS 1998 ²⁰⁹	Regional Policy Statement for Otago 1998
RMA	Resource Management Act 1991
RMS ²¹⁰	Regional Monitoring Strategy
<u>SNA</u> ²¹¹	<u>Significant Natural Area</u>
TAs ²¹²	Territorial authorities: Central Otago District Council, Clutha District Council, Dunedin City Council, Queenstown Lakes District Council and Waitaki District Council
Waste Plan	Regional Plan: Waste for Otago
Water Plan	Regional Plan: Water for Otago
WDC	Waitaki District Council

²⁰⁵ Clause 16(2), Schedule 1, RMA

²⁰⁶ Clause 16(2), Schedule 1, RMA

²⁰⁷ Clause 16(2), Schedule 1, RMA

²⁰⁸ Clause 16(2), Schedule 1, RMA

²⁰⁹ Clause 16(2), Schedule 1, RMA

²¹⁰ Clause 16(2), Schedule 1, RMA

²¹¹ Clause 16(2), Schedule 1, RMA

²¹² Clause 16(2), Schedule 1, RMA

National direction instruments

National policy statements and New Zealand Coastal Policy Statement

National Policy Statements	
<p>National policy statements (NPSs) and the New Zealand Coastal Policy Statement (NZCPS) form part of the Resource Management Act’s policy framework and are prepared by central government. NPSs and the NZCPS contain objectives, policies and methods that must be given effect to by policy statements and plans. NPSs and the NZCPS must also be given regard to by consent authorities when making decisions on <i>resource consent</i> applications, alongside other considerations.</p> <p>The following table provides an overview of whether any relevant review/s of the Otago Regional Policy Statement has been undertaken in relation to NPSs and the NZCPS.</p>	
National Policy Statement on Electricity Transmission 2008	The policy statement has been reviewed in May 2021
New Zealand Coastal Policy Statement 2010	The policy statement has been reviewed in May 2021
National Policy Statement for Renewable Electricity Generation 2011	The policy statement has been reviewed in May 2021
National Policy Statement for Freshwater Management 2020	The policy statement has been reviewed in May 2021
National Policy Statement on Urban Development (2020)	The policy statement has been reviewed in May 2021

National environmental standards

National Environmental Standards
<p>National environmental standards (NESs) are prepared by central government and can prescribe technical standards, methods (including rules) and/or other requirements for environmental matters throughout the whole country or specific areas. If an activity doesn’t comply with an NES, it is likely to require a <i>resource consent</i>. NESs must be observed and enforced by <i>local authorities</i>. The following relevant NESs are currently in force:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Resource Management (National Environmental Standards for Air Quality) Regulations 2004 (amended 2011) • Resource Management (National Environmental Standards for Sources of Human Drinking Water) Regulations 2007 • Resource Management (National Environmental Standards for Electricity Transmission Activities) Regulations 2009 • Resource Management (National Environmental Standard for Assessing and Managing Contaminants in Soil to Protect Human Health) Regulations 2011 • Resource Management (National Environmental Standards for Telecommunications Facilities) Regulations 2016

- [Resource Management \(National Environmental Standard for Commercial Plantation Forestry\) Regulations 2017](#)
- [Resource Management \(National Environmental Standards for Freshwater\) Regulations 2020](#)
- [Resource Management \(National Environmental Standards for Marine Aquaculture\) Regulations 2020](#)

Regulations

Regulations

The regulations included in this chapter come under the Resource Management Act 1991 (excluding the national environmental standards listed above). These regulations are:

- [Resource Management \(Transitional, Fees, Rents, and Royalties\) Regulations 1991](#)
- [Resource Management \(Exemption\) Regulations 1996](#)
- [Resource Management \(Marine Pollution\) Regulations 1998](#)
- [Resource Management \(Infringement Offences\) Regulations 1999](#)
- [Resource Management \(Forms, Fees, and Procedure\) Regulations 2003](#)
- [Resource Management \(Discount on Administrative Charges\) Regulations 2010](#)
- [Resource Management \(Measurement and Reporting of Water Takes\) Regulations 2010](#)
- [Resource Management \(Network Utility Operations\) Regulations 2016](#)
- [Resource Management \(Exemption\) Regulations 2017.](#)
- [Resource Management \(Stock Exclusion\) Regulations 2020](#)

Water conservation orders

Water Conservation Orders

Regional policy statements, *regional plans* and *district plans* cannot be inconsistent with the provisions of a water conservation order. A water conservation order can prohibit or restrict a regional council issuing new water and discharge permits, although it cannot affect existing permits.

The following table provides an overview of whether any relevant review/s of the Otago Regional Policy Statement have been undertaken in relation to relevant water conservation orders.

[Water Conservation \(Kawarau\) Order 1997](#)

The policy statement has been reviewed in May 2021

MW – Mana whenua

Recognition of hapū and iwi

Kāi Tahu²¹³

Kāi Tahu whānui²¹⁴ are *takata whenua* of the Otago region. Waitaha were the first people of Te Waipounamu, the South Island. Led by Rākaihautū, they explored and settled Te Waipounamu, and their exploits are reflected in enduring place names and histories across the motu. Waitaha were followed by the arrival of Kāti Māmoe and finally Kāi Tahu. Through warfare, intermarriage and political alliances a common allegiance to Kāi Tahu was forged. Kāi Tahu means the ‘people of Tahu’, linking them by name to their common ancestor Tahu Pōtiki.

The Kāi Tahu tribal area extends from the sub Antarctic islands in the south to Te Parinuiowhiti (White Cliffs, Blenheim) in the north and to Kahurangi Point on Te Tai o Poutini (the West Coast).

Relationship of Kāi Tahu with their rohe

Te Rūnanga o Ngāi Tahu (the iwi authority) is made up of 18 papatipu rūnaka²¹⁵ ~~Papatipu Rūnaka~~, of which seven have interests in the Otago region. Papatipu rūnaka²¹⁶ ~~Rūnaka~~ are a focus for whānau and hapū (extended family groups) who have *mana whenua* status within their area. *Mana whenua* hold traditional customary authority and maintain contemporary relationships within an area determined by whakapapa (genealogical ties), resource use and ahikāroa (the long burning fires of occupation). Te Rūnanga²¹⁷ ~~Rūnaka~~ o Ngāi Tahu encourages consultation with the papatipu rūnaka²¹⁸ ~~Papatipu Rūnaka~~ and takes into account the views of kā Rūnaka when determining its own position.

~~Three~~ ~~Four~~ Kāi Tahu ki Otago papatipu rūnaka ~~Papatipu Rūnaka~~²¹⁹ ~~are~~ have marae based in Otago, ~~These are~~ Te Rūnanga o Moeraki, Kāti Huirapa Rūnaka ki Puketeraki, and Te Rūnanga o Ōtākou, ~~and~~ whilst the fourth, Hokonui Rūnanga, is based in neighbouring Southland.²²⁰ Three Ngāi Tahu ki Murihiku Rūnaka – Awarua Rūnanga, Waihopai Rūnanga and Ōraka-Aparima Rūnanga – are based in Southland but also share interests with Kāi Tahu ki Otago in South Otago, the Mata-au Clutha River, and the inland *lakes* and mountains. The areas of shared interest originate from the seasonal hunting and gathering economy that was a distinctive feature of the southern Kāi Tahu lifestyle. Seasonal mobility was an important means by which hāpu and whānau maintained customary rights to the resources of the interior and ahi kā.

Te Rūnanga o Moeraki

The takiwā of Te Rūnanga o Moeraki is centred on Moeraki and extends from the Waitaki River to the Waihemo Shag River and inland to the Main Divide. The coastal interests of Te Rūnanga o Moeraki are

²¹³ In the south of the South Island, the local Māori dialect uses a 'k' interchangeably with 'ng'. The preference of Kāi Tahu ki Otago is to use a 'k' so southern Māori are known as Kāi Tahu, rather than Ngāi Tahu. In this document, the “ng” is used for the iwi in general, and the “k” for southern Māori in particular.

²¹⁴ 00226.039 Kāi Tahu ki Otago

²¹⁵ 00226.043 Kāi Tahu ki Otago

²¹⁶ 00226.043 Kāi Tahu ki Otago

²¹⁷ 00226.039 Kāi Tahu ki Otago

²¹⁸ 00226.043 Kāi Tahu ki Otago

²¹⁹ 00226.043 Kāi Tahu ki Otago

²²⁰ 00223.024 Ngāi Tahu ki Murihiku

concentrated in the Moeraki Peninsula area and surrounds, including Te Raka-a-Hineatea Pā, Koekohe Hampden Beach, and Te Kai Hinaki with its famed boulders.

<https://www.terunangaomoeraki.org/>



Te Rūnanga o Moeraki Marae, Moeraki

Kāti Huirapa ki Puketeraki

The takiwā of Kāti Huirapa ki Puketeraki centres on Karitāne and extends from the Waihemu, Shag River to Purehurehu Heyward Point, and includes an interest in Ōtepoti and the greater harbour²²¹ ~~harbor~~ of Ōtākou. The takiwā extends inland to the Main Divide sharing an interest in the *lakes* and mountains to Whakatipu-Waitai with kā Rūnaka to the south. The kaimoana resources of the coast from Karitāne to Okahau Blueskin Bay and Pūrākaunui, and the kai awa of the Waikōuaiti²²² ~~Waikouaiti~~ River and estuary are treasured and well utilised mahika kai²²³ ~~mahika kai~~ for Kāti Huirapa ki Puketeraki.

<http://www.puketeraki.nz/>



Puketeraki Marae

²²¹ 00120.007 Yellow-eyed Penguin Trust

²²² 00226.041 Kāi Tahu ki Otago

²²³ Clause 10(2)(b)(i) – consequential amendment arising from 00226.038 Kāi Tahu ki Otago

Te Rūnanga o Ōtākou

The takiwā of Te Rūnanga o Ōtākou centres on Muaupoko²²⁴ ~~Muaūpeke~~ Otago Peninsula, and extends from Purehuru Heyward Point, to Te Mata-au Clutha River, and inland, sharing an interest in the *lakes* and mountains to the western coast with kā Rūnanga to the north and south. The Otago harbour²²⁵ ~~Harbor~~ has a pivotal role in the well-being of Ōtākou people. The harbour²²⁶ ~~harbor~~ is a source of identity, a bountiful provider of kaimoana, and it is the pathway to the fishing grounds beyond. Traditionally it was the mode for other hapū to visit, and in today's world it is the lifeline to the international trade that benefits the region. The ebb and flow of the harbour²²⁷ ~~harbor~~ tides is a valued certainty in a world of change, a taoka to be treasured and protected for the benefit of current and future generations.

<http://www.otakourunaka.co.nz/>



Ōtākou Marae, Otago Peninsula

Hokonui Rūnanga

The takiwā of Hokonui Rūnanga centres on the Hokonui region and includes a shared interest in the *lakes* and mountains between Whakatipu-Waitai and Tawhitarere with other Murihiku Rūnanga and those located from Waihemo southwards. Although Hokonui Rūnanga is based in Gore, their interests in the Otago area, especially South Otago, are significant. They hold this in common with other Otago Rūnanga through whakapapa, history and tradition.

<https://www.hokonuirunanga.org.nz/>

²²⁴ 00226.024 Kāi Tahu ki Otago

²²⁵ 00120.007 Yellow-eyed Penguin Trust

²²⁶ 00120.007 Yellow-eyed Penguin Trust

²²⁷ 00120.007 Yellow-eyed Penguin Trust



Hokonui Marae

Te Rūnanga o Awarua

The takiwa of Te Rūnanga o Awarua centres on Awarua and extends to the coasts and estuaries adjoining Waihopai sharing an interest in the *lakes* and mountains between Whakatipu-Waitai and Tawhititarere with other Murihiku Rūnanga and those located from Waihemo southwards.

Waihopai Rūnaka

The takiwa of Waihopai Rūnaka centres on Waihopai and extends northwards to Te Mata-au Clutha River, sharing an interest in the *lakes* and mountains to the western coast with other Murihiku Rūnaka and those located from Waihemo southwards.

Te Rūnanga o Ōraka Aparima

The takiwa of Te Rūnanga o Ōraka Aparima centres on Ōraka and extends from Waimatuku to Tawhititarere sharing an interest in the *lakes* and mountains from Whakatipu-Waitai to Tawhititarere with other Murihiku Rūnaka and those located from Waihemo southwards.

Environmental management perspectives and values of Kāi Tahu

He taura whiri kotahi mai anō te kōpunga tai nō ī te pū au

“From the source to the mouth of the sea, all things are joined together as one”

Te Tiriti o Waitangi establishes a partnership between Kāi Tahu and the Crown. The RMA 1991²²⁸ requires that the relationship of Māori and their culture and traditions with their ancestral *lands, water, sites, wāhi tapu, and other taoka*, is recognised and provided for²²⁹ and that the principles of the Treaty of Waitangi are taken into account.²³⁰ In the spirit of this partnership and the Treaty principles, the ORPS seeks to facilitate Kāi Tahu engagement in resource management processes and decision-making²³¹ in Otago.

²²⁸ Clause 16(2), Schedule 1, RMA

²²⁹ Section 6 of the Resource Management Act (1991).

²³⁰ Section 8 of the Resource Management Act (1991).

²³¹ 00226.040 Kāi Tahu ki Otago

This chapter acknowledges the principles of Te Tiriti o Waitangi and sets out general considerations for the incorporation of Kāi Tahu values and interests into resource management planning, consenting, and implementation processes. These are integrated throughout this document, and this chapter serves to tie the strands together. It reflects the philosophy embraced by Kāi Tahu of holistic resource management, *ki uta ki tai* – often described as “from the mountains to the sea”.

Kāi Tahu values

The following description is a guide to assist in understanding Kāi Tahu values. It is not a complete list of all the values held by Kāi Tahu.

Kāi Tahu do not see their existence as separate from te ao tūroa,²³² ~~Te Ao Tūroa~~, the natural world, but as an integral part of it through whakapapa (genealogy). Whakapapa is central to te ao Te-Ao Māori (a Māori²³³ world view), connecting the origins of everything, past and present. It is the foundation upon which all things are built, the web that connects all things together, the anchor which holds all things in place and the means by which all things link back to the beginning of time. It is through whakapapa that all things are intricately linked, as well as having their individual place in the world. Whakapapa binds Kāi Tahu to the mountains, forests and waters and the life supported by them, and this is reflected in attitudes towards the natural world and resource management.

Whakawhanaukataka, the process of maintaining relationships, embraces whakapapa through the relationship between people, and between people and the *environment*. The nature of these relationships defines people's rights and responsibilities in relation to the use and management of resources.

All things have the qualities of wairua (spiritual dimension) and mauri (life force) and have a genealogical relationship with each other. Mauri is found in all things organic and inorganic. The nurturing of all taoka and protection of their mauri is a prime concern and a kaitiakitaka significant obligation for Kāi Tahu whānui as *mana whenua* and *mana moana*, and as an expression of rakatirataka.²³⁴

Each papatipu rūnaka²³⁵ ~~Papatipu Rūnaka~~ has its own takiwā determined by whakapapa and its ahi-kā-roa (historical use and occupation). Takiwā are often defined by natural boundaries such as heads, mountain ranges and *rivers*. ~~This political~~ Political and operational authority over an area is undertaken by Kāi Tahu as an expression of rakatirataka,²³⁶ *mana whenua* and *mana moana*. The exercise of these powers in te taiao is through the action of *kaitiakitaka*.²³⁷ ~~and encompasses *kaitiakitaka* and rakatirataka. An integral element of the concepts of *kaitiakitaka* and rakatirataka is the recognition that Kāi Tahu have their own traditional~~ Recognition of the rakatirataka and mana of Kāi Tahu as *kaitiaki whenua* can in part, be achieved by enabling Kāi Tahu to identify and exercise their preferred²³⁸ means of managing and maintaining resources and the *environment* (te taio).²³⁹ This system of rights and responsibilities (encompassing tikaka and kawa) is inherited from previous generations and has evolved over time.

²³² 00226.040 Kāi Tahu ki Otago

²³³ 00226.040 Kāi Tahu ki Otago

²³⁴ 00226.040 Kāi Tahu ki Otago

²³⁵ 00226.043 Kāi Tahu ki Otago

²³⁶ 00226.040 Kāi Tahu ki Otago

²³⁷ 00226.040 Kāi Tahu ki Otago

²³⁸ 00226.040 Kāi Tahu ki Otago

²³⁹ 00226.040 Kāi Tahu ki Otago

The resources in any given area are a taoka; they are a²⁴⁰ source of prestige for *mana whenua* of that area and are a statement of their identity. Traditionally, the abundance or lack of resources directly determines the welfare of every hapū, and so affects their mana.

Ki uta ki tai

Ki uta ki tai is a philosophy that has become synonymous with the way Kāi Tahu think about natural resource management. Ki uta ki tai is the concept used to describe holistic natural resource management, recognising all environmental elements are interconnected and must be managed as a whole. It is a way of understanding the natural environment, including how it functions, how people relate to it and how it can be looked after appropriately.

Rakatirataka

Rakatirataka refers to²⁴¹ ~~is about having~~ the exercise of²⁴² mana or authority to give effect to Kāi Tahu culture and traditions across all spheres in their takiwā, including²⁴³ ~~in~~ the management of te taiao.²⁴⁴ ~~the natural world.~~ Recognition of the relationship of Kāi Tahu and their culture and traditions with their ancestral lands, *water*, sites, wāhi tapu, and other taoka is ~~are~~²⁴⁵ embedded in the RMA 1991²⁴⁶ and the Treaty of Waitangi.

Kaitiakitaka

Kaitiakitaka refers to²⁴⁷ ~~means~~ the exercise of guardianship over *natural and physical resources*. It is an expression of rakatirataka and mana,²⁴⁸ and includes the ethic of stewardship. This statutory definition of *kaitiakitaka* is only a starting point for Kāi Tahu, as *kaitiakitaka* is a much wider cultural concept than guardianship.

Kaitiakitaka is fundamental to the relationship between Kāi Tahu and the *environment*. The objectives of *kaitiakitaka* are to protect the mauri and life supporting capacity of the *environment* and to pass the *environment* on to future generations in an enhanced state. For Kāi Tahu, *kaitiakitaka* is not passive custodianship, nor is it simply the exercise of customary²⁴⁹ ~~traditional~~ property rights, but it entails an active exercise of responsibility and rakatirataka to ensure long-term sustainability of resources as taoka, and for the benefit to future generations – mō tātou, ā, mō kā uri a muri ake nei.²⁵⁰ ~~in a manner beneficial to the resource.~~

Hauora²⁵¹

Hauora is a holistic understanding of health and wellbeing. For Kāi Tahu, te hauora o te taiao (the health of the *environment*), te hauora o te wai (the health of the *waterbody*) and the te hauora o te tangata (the health of the people) are all interconnected. Due to this connection, the state of the health and well-being of wai māori and te taiao is seen as a reflection on the mana, health, and

²⁴⁰ 00226.040 Kāi Tahu ki Otago

²⁴¹ 00226.040 Kāi Tahu ki Otago

²⁴² 00226.040 Kāi Tahu ki Otago

²⁴³ 00226.040 Kāi Tahu ki Otago

²⁴⁴ 00226.040 Kāi Tahu ki Otago

²⁴⁵ Clause 16(2), Schedule 1, RMA

²⁴⁶ Clause 16(2), Schedule 1, RMA

²⁴⁷ 00226.040 Kāi Tahu ki Otago

²⁴⁸ 00226.040 Kāi Tahu ki Otago

²⁴⁹ 00226.040 Kāi Tahu ki Otago

²⁵⁰ 00226.040 Kāi Tahu ki Otago

²⁵¹ 00226.047 Kāi Tahu ki Otago

wellbeing of Kāi Tahu as *mana whenua*. Decline in te hauora o te wai and te hauora o te taiao is also understood by Kāi Tahu to adversely impact the health and well-being of the Otago community as a whole, tangata katoa.²⁵²

Tikaka and kawa²⁵³

Tikaka and kawa²⁵⁴ Māori encompass²⁵⁵ ~~encompasses~~ the beliefs, values, practices, protocols²⁵⁶ and procedures that guide appropriate codes of conduct, or ways of behaving. In the context of natural resource management, observing tikaka and kawa²⁵⁷ is part of the ethic and exercise of *kaitiakitaka*. Tikaka and kawa are ~~it is~~²⁵⁸ underpinned by a body of mātauraka (traditional knowledge) and are ~~is~~²⁵⁹ based on a general understanding that people belong to the land and have a responsibility to care for and manage the land. These concepts and values incorporate ~~it incorporates~~²⁶⁰ forms of social control to manage the relationship of people and the *environment*, including concepts such as tapu, noa and rāhui.

Tikaka and kawa are²⁶¹ ~~is~~ based on traditional practices but are ~~is~~²⁶² dynamic and continue ~~continues~~²⁶³ to evolve in response to different situations.

Mātauraka²⁶⁴

Mātauraka, within this region, is Kāi Tahu customary knowledge passed down from one generation to the next, used in the present, and will continue to be developed for the future. It involves observing, experiencing, participating, studying and understanding the world from an indigenous cultural perspective. It is a tool for thinking, organising information, considering the ethics of knowledge, and informing us on our world and our place in it. Incorporation of mātauraka in resource management decision-making is important to ensure that cultural interests are appropriately recognised and provided for.²⁶⁵

Taoka

All natural resources - air, *land*, *water*, and indigenous *biological diversity* - are taoka. Taoka are treasured resources that are highly valued by Kāi Tahu, derived from the atua (gods), linked to the people through whakapapa,²⁶⁶ and left by ~~the~~ tūpuna (ancestors) to provide for²⁶⁷ and sustain life.²⁶⁸ In the management of natural resources, it is important that the habitats and wider needs of taoka species are sustainably managed and enhanced.

Mahika kai ~~Mahika kai~~²⁶⁹

²⁵² 00226.047 Kāi Tahu ki Otago

²⁵³ 00138.051 QLDC

²⁵⁴ 00138.051 QLDC

²⁵⁵ 00138.051 QLDC

²⁵⁶ 00138.051 QLDC

²⁵⁷ 00138.051 QLDC

²⁵⁸ 00138.051 QLDC

²⁵⁹ 00138.051 QLDC

²⁶⁰ 00138.051 QLDC

²⁶¹ 00138.051 QLDC

²⁶² Clause 10(2)(b)(i), Schedule 1, RMA – consequential amendment arising from 00138.051 QLDC

²⁶³ Clause 10(2)(b)(i), Schedule 1, RMA – consequential amendment arising from 00138.051 QLDC

²⁶⁴ 00420.007 Hopkins, Jim

²⁶⁵ 00420.007 Hopkins, Jim

²⁶⁶ 00226.040 Kāi Tahu ki Otago

²⁶⁷ 00226.040 Kāi Tahu ki Otago

²⁶⁸ 00226.040 Kāi Tahu ki Otago

²⁶⁹ Clause 10(2)(b)(i) – consequential amendment arising from 00226.038 Kāi Tahu ki Otago

Mahika kai²⁷⁰ ~~Mahika kai~~ is one of the cornerstones of Kāi Tahu cultural identity. Mahika kai²⁷¹ ~~Mahika kai~~ is a term that literally means "food workings" and refers to the customary gathering of food and natural materials and the places where those resources are gathered or produced. The term also embodies the traditions, customs and collection methods, and the gathering of natural resources for cultural use, including raraka (weaving) and rokoā (traditional medicines). Maintaining mahika kai²⁷² ~~Mahika kai~~ sites, gathering resources, and continuing to practice the tikaka that governs each resource, is an important means of maintaining and honouring whakapapa connections to land, taoka and tūpuna, and²⁷³ passing on cultural values and mātauraka to the next generation.

Resources of significance to Kāi Tahu

Wai Māori Maori²⁷⁴

Like all things, *water* has a whakapapa. All *water* is seen to have originated from the separation of Rakinui and Papatūānuku and their continuing tears for one another. Rain is Rakinui's tears for his beloved Papatūānuku and mist is regarded as Papatūānuku's tears for Rakinui.

From Rakinui and Papatūānuku came the offspring who were responsible for creating the elements that constitute our total world today, both animate and inanimate - the mountains, *rivers*, forests and seas, and all fish, bird and animal life. The realm of atua such as Rakinui and his many wives and offspring overarches and informs the Kāi Tahu whānui world view, values and beliefs.

Water plays a significant role in Kāi Tahu spiritual beliefs and cultural traditions. Kāi Tahu have an obligation through whakapapa to protect wai and all the life it supports, as *ko te wai te ora o kā mea katoa (water is the life giver of all things)*. The condition of *water* is seen as a reflection of the condition of the people. *Toitū te Marae o Tane, toitū te Marae o Takaroa, toitū te Iwi (Protect and strengthen the realms of the land and sea, and they will protect and strengthen the people)*. When the natural environment is strong and healthy, the people are strong and healthy and so too is their mana.

Taoka species and habitats

Taoka species and habitats are those that are treasured by Kāi Tahu, and Kāi Tahu regard all indigenous species as taoka. In many cases taoka species are also mahika kai,²⁷⁵ ~~mahika kai~~, treasured for their use as a resource. The NTCSA²⁷⁶ ~~Ngāi Tahu Claims Settlement Act 1998 (NTCSA 1998)~~ recognises the relationship Kāi Tahu has with some of these species through the Statutory Acknowledgement for Taonga Species. However, Kāi Tahu do not consider this list to be comprehensive as important taoka species such as tuna are not included.

Wāhi tūpuna

The value Kāi Tahu attached to land is evident from the fact that every part of the landscape is known and named. *Wāhi tūpuna* (ancestral landscapes) are made up of interconnected sites and areas reflecting the history and traditions associated with the long settlement of Kāi Tahu in Otago. The

²⁷⁰ Clause 10(2)(b)(i) – consequential amendment arising from 00226.038 Kāi Tahu ki Otago

²⁷¹ Clause 10(2)(b)(i) – consequential amendment arising from 00226.038 Kāi Tahu ki Otago

²⁷² Clause 10(2)(b)(i) – consequential amendment arising from 00226.038 Kāi Tahu ki Otago

²⁷³ 00226.040 Kāi Tahu ki Otago

²⁷⁴ Clause 16(2), Schedule 1, RMA

²⁷⁵ Clause 10(2)(b)(i) – consequential amendment arising from 00226.038 Kāi Tahu ki Otago

²⁷⁶ Clause 16(2), Schedule 1, RMA

landscape of Otago includes many *wāhi tūpuna* and areas of significance, reflecting the relationship of Kāi Tahu with the land across the region. These places should not be seen in isolation from one another but are part of a wider cultural setting. For example, an archaeological site adjacent to a *wetland* is likely to be associated with *mahika kai*²⁷⁷ ~~*mahika kai*~~ resources in the *wetland*. The character of *wāhi tūpuna* in past times is retained in tribal memory, for example through songs, place names and proverbs. When these references to the character of the *wāhi tūpuna* become incorrect due to modification of the *environment*, it negatively affects the Kāi Tahu relationship with that landscape. For example, a waterway named Kaituna would be expected to contain many tuna. A waterway with this name used to exist in central Dunedin, but no longer exists because there is now a city where the waterway once was.

Air and atmosphere (kōhauhau)

In Kāi Tahu traditions, air and atmosphere emerged through the creation traditions and the movement from Te Kore through Te Pō to Te Ao Marama. Following the separation of Raki and Papatūānuku, one of their many children, Tāwhirimātea, fled with Raki into the sky. From there he controls the wind and weather. The air and atmosphere are integral parts of the *environment* that must be valued, used with respect, and passed on intact to the next generation. Pollution of the air and atmosphere adversely affects and degrades²⁷⁸ the mauri of this taoka, of te taiao,²⁷⁹ and of²⁸⁰ other taoka such as plants and animals. Poor air quality damages and degrades ancestral lands, *mahika kai* sites, and other sites such as rock art, adversely affecting the mauri of the landscape and the mana of the people.²⁸¹

Coastal environment (taku tai moana me te wai māori)

~~The tūpuna of Kāi Tahu were great ocean travellers. Like many other Pacific peoples, Kāi Tahu are connected by whakapapa to those people who spread across Te Moana Nui a Kiwa, the Pacific Ocean. Takaroa is the atua who is central to these beliefs, which influence the way Kāi Tahu relate to and manage marine resources. associated with the oceans and seas, and their ecosystems.~~²⁸² The marine environment is a moving force, a reminder of the power of Takaroa. As one of the children of Rakinui and Papatūānuku, Kāi Tahu are connected to Takaroa by whakapapa, affording rights and responsibilities in relation to te takutai moana.²⁸³

The tūpuna of Kāi Tahu were great ocean travellers, having navigated by waka across Te Moana – nui – a – Kiwa, the Pacific Ocean for generations before settling in Te Wai Ponamu. Knowledge and practices brought with the tūpuna were adapted to meet the challenges and opportunities of the new environment. Over time, Kāi Tahu whānui developed the tikaka and mātauraka of takutai moana and mahika kaimoana that is used today.²⁸⁴

The coastal environment is particularly significant for Kāi Tahu in the southern South Island. Most of the permanent settlements were established on the coast due, in part, to the moderating influence of the sea on temperature, making the winters less bitter. The coast also had a bounty of kaimoana resources to support coastal settlements.

²⁷⁷ Clause 10(2)(b)(i) – consequential amendment arising from 00226.038 Kāi Tahu ki Otago

²⁷⁸ 00226.040 Kāi Tahu ki Otago

²⁷⁹ 00226.040 Kāi Tahu ki Otago

²⁸⁰ 00226.040 Kāi Tahu ki Otago

²⁸¹ 00226.040 Kāi Tahu ki Otago

²⁸² 00226.040 Kāi Tahu ki Otago

²⁸³ 00226.040 Kāi Tahu ki Otago

²⁸⁴ 00226.040 Kāi Tahu ki Otago

The *coastal waters* and processes were integral to the way of life tūpuna enjoyed, and the coastal environment continues to support significant *mahika kai mahika kai*²⁸⁵ resources. The *coastal waters* are a *receiving environment* for fresh water, gravels and sediment from the terrestrial landscape, which are important to maintaining natural processes and the domain of Takaroa. Recognising the interconnection of the *land* and sea environments is consistent with the ki uta ki tai philosophy.

Pounamu

Kāi Tahu customs are intricately linked to this special taoka. The practice of gathering, using and trading pounamu bind Kāi Tahu identity to the landscape. Pounamu conveys mana and mauri from ages past, and is reflected in its exalted whakapapa lineage, an uri (descendant) of Takaroa.

As an interim measure, until a Regional Pounamu Management Plan is developed for Otago and Murihiku, a rāhui pounamu has been in place in the Otago region since the passing of the Ngāi Tahu (Pounamu Vesting) Act 1997. This is subject to review by the collective Kaitiaki Rūnaka who will determine appropriate protection, access and use policies applicable to their membership and Ngāi Tahu whānui.

Ngāi Tahu Claims Settlement Act 1998 (NTCSA 1998)²⁸⁶

The NTCSA 1998²⁸⁷ was enacted to settle historical Ngāi Tahu claims against the Crown. The NTCSA 1998²⁸⁸ provides redress for breaches of Te Tiriti o Waitangi and to signal a new age of co-operation of the Crown and its agencies with Kāi Tahu. The Crown apology recorded in section 4 of the NTCSA 1998²⁸⁹ explicitly recognises the rakatirataka of Kāi Tahu within its takiwā, and the Act includes specific provisions that provide for exercise of rakatirataka and *kaitiakitaka* by *mana whenua* in respect to *mahika kai mahika kai*²⁹⁰, taoka species and other resource management matters. These include rights in relation to the management of specified significant areas (statutory acknowledgement areas, tōpuni and *nohoaka*) and customary fisheries.

Statutory acknowledgement areas

Statutory acknowledgements are recorded in the NTCSA 1998²⁹¹ for several *water bodies*, mountains and coastal features in the Otago Region. These acknowledgements are statements by Te Rūnanga o Ngāi Tahu of the particular cultural, spiritual, historic and traditional association of Kāi Tahu with these areas.

Part 12 of the NTCSA 1998²⁹² provides details of statutory acknowledgements, and the responsibilities relating to them. Section 208 of the NTCSA 1998²⁹³ requires that *local authorities* have regard to these statutory acknowledgements in *resource consent* processing under Section 95 of the RMA in deciding whether Te Rūnanga o Ngāi Tahu may be adversely affected by the granting of a *resource consent* for activities within, adjacent to or impacting directly on the area.

²⁸⁵ Clause 10(2)(b)(i) – consequential amendment arising from 00226.038 Kāi Tahu ki Otago

²⁸⁶ Clause 16(2), Schedule 1, RMA

²⁸⁷ Clause 16(2), Schedule 1, RMA

²⁸⁸ Clause 16(2), Schedule 1, RMA

²⁸⁹ Clause 16(2), Schedule 1, RMA

²⁹⁰ Clause 10(2)(b)(i) – consequential amendment arising from 00226.038 Kāi Tahu ki Otago

²⁹¹ Clause 16(2), Schedule 1, RMA

²⁹² Clause 16(2), Schedule 1, RMA

²⁹³ Clause 16(2), Schedule 1, RMA

Statutory acknowledgements were intended as a measure to improve opportunities for *mana whenua* engagement in resource management processes, pending broader provision for areas of significance to Kāi Tahu being incorporated into resource management plans in order to protect and restore associated rights, interests and values. The statutory acknowledgements are *wāhi tūpuna*, but *wāhi tūpuna* are not confined to these areas.

The following statutory acknowledgement areas in Otago are recognised in the NTCSA 1998²⁹⁴, and their values are described in Schedules to that Act:

- Ka Moana Haehae (Lake Roxburgh) - Schedule 22
- Kakaunui River - Schedule 23
- Kuramea (Lake Catlins) - Schedule 28
- Lake Hāwea - Schedule 30
- Lake Wānaka - Schedule 36
- Mata-Au (Clutha River) - Schedule 40
- Matakaea (Shag Point) - Schedule 41
- Pikirakatahi (Mount Earnslaw) - Schedule 51
- Pomahaka River - Schedule 52
- Te Tauraka Poti (Merton Tidal Arm) - Schedule 60
- Te Wairere (Lake Dunstan) - Schedule 61
- Tititea (Mount Aspiring) - Schedule 62
- Tokatā (The Nuggets) - Schedule 64
- Waihola/Waipōuri ~~Waipori~~²⁹⁵ Wetland - Schedule 70
- Waitaki River – Schedule 72²⁹⁶
- Whakatipu Waimāori ~~Wai-Māori~~²⁹⁷ (Lake Wakatipu) - Schedule 75
- Te Tai O Arai Te Uru (Otago Coastal Marine Area) - Schedule 103.

Tōpuni

The concept of tōpuni derives from the traditional Kāi Tahu custom of persons of raketira status extending their mana and protection over a person or area by placing their cloak over them or it. A number of areas on public conservation land that have significant values to Kāi Tahu because of their cultural, spiritual, historic and traditional associations are recognised in the NTCSA 1998²⁹⁸ as tōpuni. Sections 240 to 246 of the NTCSA 1998²⁹⁹ provide for Kāi Tahu consultation on management of these areas, to protect their values. Although the specific provisions in the NTCSA 1998³⁰⁰ relate only to management of conservation land, the interests of Kāi Tahu should be recognised and provided for when considering activities in nearby areas that may impact on the values of tōpuni or *waters* flowing from them.

Tōpuni recognised in Otago are:

- Matakaea (Shag Point) – Schedule 83
- Maukaatua Scenic Reserve – Schedule 84

²⁹⁴ Clause 16(2), Schedule 1, RMA

²⁹⁵ 00226.041 Kāi Tahu ki Otago

²⁹⁶ The Waitaki River lies within both the Otago and Canterbury regions

²⁹⁷ 00226.024 Kāi Tahu ki Otago

²⁹⁸ Clause 16(2), Schedule 1, RMA

²⁹⁹ Clause 16(2), Schedule 1, RMA

³⁰⁰ Clause 16(2), Schedule 1, RMA

- Pikirakatahi (Mount Earnslaw) – Schedule 87
- Te Koroka (Dart/Slipstream) – Schedule 91
- Tititea (Mount Aspiring) – Schedule 92.

Nohoaka

Nohoanga (or *nohoaka*) entitlements provide a right of seasonal occupation and use for Kāi Tahu whānui on specified areas of Crown-owned land near *water bodies* for harvest of natural resources (sections 255 to 268 of the NTCSA 1998³⁰¹). These rights are intended as partial redress for the loss of *mahika kai mahika kai*³⁰² through alienation of land.

Kāi Tahu interests in these areas should be recognised and provided for when considering management of associated *water bodies* or activities on nearby land. The ability of Kāi Tahu whānui to access and use *nohoaka* as intended is reliant upon protection and restoration of *mahika kai mahika kai*³⁰³ values associated with them.

Nohoaka entitlements are listed in Schedule 95 of the NTCSA 1998.³⁰⁴ In Otago, sites are identified adjacent to the following *water bodies*:

- Waitaki River (two sites)
- Waianakarua River
- ~~Tairi-Tairi~~³⁰⁵ River (three sites)
- Lake Hāwea (three sites)
- Hāwea River
- Lake Wānaka (two sites)
- ~~Whakatipu Waimāori Lake Wakatipu~~³⁰⁶
- Shotover River (two sites)
- Mata-au Clutha River (four sites).

Customary fisheries

Sections 297 to 311 of the NTCSA 1998³⁰⁷ include provisions recognising Kāi Tahu rights and interests in customary fisheries, and provide for involvement in management of these resources through the Conservation Act 1987 and the Fisheries Acts 1983 and 1996.

The interests of Kāi Tahu should be recognised and provided for when considering activities under the RMA 1991³⁰⁸ that may impact on customary fisheries, to enable protection and restoration of fisheries habitat. Mātaitai and taiāpure are mechanisms under the Fisheries Act that provide for management of customary fisheries areas and are applicable to both coastal and *freshwater* fisheries environments.

The East Otago Taiāpure is constituted by the Fisheries (East Otago Taiāpure) Order 1999. It includes the estuarine and inshore marine waters between Cornish Head and Potato Point.

There are also four mātaitai in Otago:

- Moeraki Mātaitai Reserve includes areas of *coastal waters* at Moeraki and Katiki (<https://www.mpi.govt.nz/dmsdocument/15220-Moeraki-North-Otago-Mataitai-Reserve>)

³⁰¹ Clause 16(2), Schedule 1, RMA

³⁰² Clause 10(2)(b)(i) – consequential amendment arising from 00226.038 Kāi Tahu ki Otago

³⁰³ Clause 10(2)(b)(i) – consequential amendment arising from 00226.038 Kāi Tahu ki Otago

³⁰⁴ Clause 16(2), Schedule 1, RMA

³⁰⁵ 00234.005 Te Rūnanga o Ngāi Tahu

³⁰⁶ 00226.041 Kāi Tahu ki Otago

³⁰⁷ Clause 16(2), Schedule 1, RMA

³⁰⁸ Clause 16(2), Schedule 1, RMA

- Waikōuaiti ~~Waikouaiti~~³⁰⁹ Mātaitai Reserve includes *freshwater* and estuarine waters of the Waikōuaiti ~~Waikouaiti~~³¹⁰ River (<https://www.mpi.govt.nz/dmsdocument/12954-Waikouaiti-South-Canterbury-Mataitai-Reserve->)
- Ōtākou Mātaitai Reserve includes most of the Otago Harbour ~~Harbor~~³¹¹ north of a line from Harwood to Pulling Point (<https://www.mpi.govt.nz/dmsdocument/14077-Otakou-mataitai-reserve>)
- Puna-wai-Tōriki (Hays Gap) Mātaitai Reserve includes an area of *coastal waters* north of Nugget Point (<https://www.mpi.govt.nz/dmsdocument/15223-Puna-wai-Toriki-Hays-Gap-South-Otago-Mataitai-Reserve>)

Māori Commercial Aquaculture Claims Settlement Act 2004³¹²

The Māori Commercial Aquaculture Claims Settlement Act 2004 provides full and final settlement of Māori commercial aquaculture claims since 21 September 1992. Settlement is delivered via Regional Aquaculture Agreements which may describe areas to be provided to iwi for the purposes of commercial aquaculture. Any future settlement outcomes will need to be provided for in *regional plans* and *district plans*.³¹³

Native Māori land³¹⁴ reserves

A Native Reserve is any property or site that is a:

- Native Reserve excluded from the Ōtākou Land Purchases (1844)
- Native Reserve excluded from the Kemps Land Purchases (1848)
- Reserve granted by the Native Land Court (1868)
- Half Caste Reserve (1881)
- Landless Native Reserve (1896)
- Other reserve (1890 and 1900)

A number of native Māori³¹⁵ reserves exist that were excluded from the land sales of the 1840s. These reserves are steeped in history and association and are places of belonging. Remaining reserves are located at Moeraki, Waikōuaiti ~~Waikouaiti~~³¹⁶, Ōtākou, Onumia, Taieri Mouth, and Te Karoro, Kaka Point. Other categories of Māori native³¹⁷ land exist at Kōpūtai ~~Koputai~~³¹⁸, Port Chalmers, and Ōtepoti, Dunedin, where tauraka waka, landing sites, were recognised. In addition, land was held at Manuhaea, Lake Hāwea, Aramoana, Clarendon, Taieri Mouth, Tautuku-Waikawa and Glenomaru amongst others. Landing reserves were allocated at Matainaka, Waikōuaiti ~~Waikouaiti~~³¹⁹, and the former Lake Tatawai on the Taiari ~~Taieri~~³²⁰ Plains.

³⁰⁹ 00226.041 Kāi Tahu ki Otago

³¹⁰ 00226.041 Kāi Tahu ki Otago

³¹¹ 00120.007 Yellow-eyed Penguin Trust

³¹² 00234.006 Te Rūnanga o Ngāi Tahu

³¹³ 00234.006 Te Rūnanga o Ngāi Tahu

³¹⁴ 00234.009 Te Rūnanga o Ngāi Tahu, 00226.053 Kāi Tahu ki Otago, 00010.002 Cain whanau

³¹⁵ 00234.009 Te Rūnanga o Ngāi Tahu, 00226.053 Kāi Tahu ki Otago, 00010.002 Cain whanau

³¹⁶ 00226.024 Kāi Tahu ki Otago

³¹⁷ 00234.009 Te Rūnanga o Ngāi Tahu, 00226.053 Kāi Tahu ki Otago, 00010.002 Cain whanau

³¹⁸ 00226.024 Kāi Tahu ki Otago

³¹⁹ 00226.024 Kāi Tahu ki Otago

³²⁰ 00226.024 Kāi Tahu ki Otago

The following table lists the reserves in Otago which are also mapped in MAPO – Native reserves.³²¹ Many of the sections within these Native Reserves now have the status of general land. While some of this general land is still in Māori ownership, many of the general titled sections have been sold to non-Māori or taken under various pieces of legislation such as the Public Works Act 1981. Although these sections are no longer in whānau ownership, descendants of the original owners retain an ancestral relationship with these lands.

Table 1: Native reserves located within the Otago region

Location	Comments	Reserve Type
Tautuku	Southern block of Tautuku sections	South Island Landless Natives Act
	Northern sections are Reserved lands	Native Reserve
Glenomaru	Located south of Kaka Point	South Island Landless Natives Act
Maranuku	Granted in 1844 as part of the Ōtakou Ōtakou ³²² Purchase. Originally called Te Karoro, split into two reserves	Native Reserve
Clarendon	Located inland from Taieri Mouth	Clarendon Half Caste Reserve
Taiari Taiari ³²³	Granted in 1844 as part of the Ōtakou Ōtakou ³²⁴ Purchase Deed. Split into three reserves; A, B and C	Native Reserve
Lake Tatawai	Located on the Taiari Taiari ³²⁵ Plain, south of the Dunedin , includes lake that is now drained. ³²⁷	Native Reserve <u>and Landing Reserve</u> ³²⁸
Lake Tatawai	Lake that is now drained	Landing Reserve
Otago Heads Native Reserve	Granted in 1844 as part of the Ōtakou Purchase Deed. Split into four reserves	Native Reserve
Port Chalmers	Granted in 1848 as part of the Ōtakou Purchase Deed. A further grant adjacent to the Reserve was made in approximately 1888	Native Reserve
Aramoana	This reserve resulted from the Pūrākanui Purakaunui ³²⁹ Half Caste grant	Half Caste Reserve
Pūrākanui Purakaunui ³³⁰	Granted in 1848 as part of Kemp's Purchase Deed. Further allocations were made in 1868 at Wharauwerawera	Native Reserve
Brinns Point	Granted in the latter part of the nineteenth century	Half Caste Reserve

³²¹ 00226.329 Kāi Tahu ki Otago

³²² 00226.041 Kāi Tahu ki Otago

³²³ 00226.024 Kāi Tahu ki Otago

³²⁴ 00226.041 Kāi Tahu ki Otago

³²⁵ 00226.024 Kāi Tahu ki Otago

³²⁶ Clause 16(2), Schedule 1, RMA

³²⁷ 00226.329 Kāi Tahu ki Otago

³²⁸ 00226.041 Kāi Tahu ki Otago

³²⁹ 00226.041 Kāi Tahu ki Otago

³³⁰ 00226.041 Kāi Tahu ki Otago

<u>Karitāne</u> Karitane- (Waikōuaiti Waikouaiti ³³¹ Native Reserve)	Granted in 1848 as part of Kemp’s Purchase Deed	Native Reserve
--	---	----------------

³³¹ 00226.041 Kāi Tahu ki Otago

Matainaka and Hawksbury Fishing Easement	Two fishing easements fall under this reserve, Matainaka, located at <u>Hawksbury</u> Hawkesbury ³³² Lagoon at <u>Waikōuaiti</u> Waikouaiti ³³³ and the Forks Reserve located inland from <u>Karitāne</u> Karitane ³³⁴ . The legal description for the latter reserve is Section 1N Town of Hawksbury	Fishing Easement
Hawksbury	Located north of <u>Waikōuaiti</u> Waikouaiti ³³⁵ , in the vicinity of Goodwood	Hawksbury Half Caste Reserve
Moeraki	Granted in 1848 as part of Kemp’s Purchase Deed. Further awards were made in 1868	Native Reserve
Kuri Bush	10 acre reserve of timber	Native Reserve
Kakanui ³³⁶	Granted in 1848 as part of Kemp’s Purchase Deed. By 1853, this Reserve was noted as being abandoned and the 75 acre allocation was added to the southern edge of the Moeraki Native Reserve	Native Reserve
Korotuaheka	Located south of the Waitaki River mouth. Now Reserved as an <u>urupā</u> urupa ³³⁷ . It appears this originated as an occupational reserve and Fishing Easement	Partitioned in 1895 Possibly awarded as part of the 1868 awards <u>Native Reserve Fishing Easement</u> ³³⁸
Punaomaru	376 acre reserve located approximately 14 miles from the Waitaki River mouth on the south bank of the river	Native Reserve
Lake Hāwea	Reserve of 100 acres situated in the western extremity of the middle arm of Lake Hāwea near a Lagoon. Part of the Reserve was taken for power development in 1962 and the balance of the land was alienated by the Māori Trustee in 1970	Fishing Easement
<u>Hāwea-Wānaka block (Wānaka Plantation Reserve)</u> ³³⁹	<u>Known as Sticky Forest and being 50.7 hectares more or less to be vested in the Successors as defined in pursuant to Section 15 of the Deed of Settlement 1997 between Te Rūnanga o Ngāi Tahu and the Crown, and as enacted in Part 15 of the Ngāi Tahu Claims Settlement Act 1998.</u> ³⁴⁰	<u>South Island Landless Natives Act</u>

Mana whenua – local authority relationships

³³² Resource Management Act 1991, Schedule 1, Clause 16(2)

³³³ 00226.041 Kāi Tahu ki Otago

³³⁴ 00226.041 Kāi Tahu ki Otago

³³⁵ 00226.041 Kāi Tahu ki Otago

³³⁶ 00226.329 Kāi Tahu ki Otago

³³⁷ 00226.041 Kāi Tahu ki Otago

³³⁸ 00226.329 Kāi Tahu ki Otago

³³⁹ 00234.005 Te Rūnanga o Ngāi Tahu

³⁴⁰ 00226.329 Kāi Tahu ki Otago

Kāi Tahu relationships with local authorities

There are a number of relationship agreements between Kāi Tahu ki Otago papatipu rūnaka³⁴¹ and *local authorities* in Otago. These include:

- Memorandum of Understanding and Protocol between Otago Regional Council, Te Rūnanga Ngāi Tahu and Kāi Tahu ki Otago for Effective Consultation and Liaison (2003)
- Te Roopū Taiao Otago Charter and Hui (ORC, QLDC, DCC, WDC, CDC, CODC)
- He Huarahi mō Ngā Uri Whakatupu³⁴² - Charter of Understanding signed with 2016 between³⁴³ Te Ao Marama Inc. Incorporated, representing Ngāi Tahu ki Murihiku,³⁴⁴ and councils.³⁴⁵ Southland Rūnanga (2016)³⁴⁶

Kāi Tahu and Otago Regional Council use the Mana to Mana forum as a means to build a strengthened relationship between the two entities.

He Huarahi mō Ngā Uri Whakatupu³⁴⁷ is the Charter of Understanding between Ngāi Tahu ki Murihiku (Awarua Rūnanga, Waihopai Rūnanga, Ōraka-Aparima Rūnanga and Hokonui Rūnanga) and ~~the local authorities, including~~³⁴⁸ Otago Regional Council, ~~and Queenstown Lakes District Council and Clutha District Council.~~³⁴⁹ ~~are signatories to He Huarahi mō Ngā Uri Whakatupu as it applies to their areas of jurisdiction.~~³⁵⁰

Hapū Hapu³⁵¹ and iwi planning documents

There are four iwi planning documents lodged with the *local authorities* in the Otago Region:

- Te Rūnanga o Ngāi Tahu Freshwater Policy 1999
- Kāi Tahu ki Otago Natural Resources Management Plan 2005
- Te Tangi a Taurira: Ngāi Tahu ki Murihiku Natural Resource and Environmental Iwi Management Plan 2008
- Waitaki Iwi Management Plan 2019

How the iwi planning documents have been taken into account in this Regional Policy Statement

Objectives and policies of the iwi management plans are reflected in the Resource Management Issues of Significance to Kāi Tahu and have been taken into account in the development of provisions across the whole of this Regional Policy Statement.

How iwi planning documents are used in Otago

The iwi management plans are used to provide cultural context and guidance as to the natural

³⁴¹ Resource Management Act 1991, Schedule 1, clause 16(2)

³⁴² 00223.027 Ngāi Tahu ki Murihiku

³⁴³ 00223.027 Ngāi Tahu ki Murihiku

³⁴⁴ 00223.027 Ngāi Tahu ki Murihiku

³⁴⁵ 00223.027 Ngāi Tahu ki Murihiku

³⁴⁶ 00223.027 Ngāi Tahu ki Murihiku

³⁴⁷ Available from <https://www.es.govt.nz/repository/libraries/id:26gi9ayo517q9stt81sd/hierarchy/about-us/plans-andstrategies/regional-plans/iwi-management-plan/documents/The%20Charter%20of%20Understanding.pdf> (accessed 26 May 2021)

³⁴⁸ 00223.027 Ngāi Tahu ki Murihiku

³⁴⁹ 00223.027 Ngāi Tahu ki Murihiku

³⁵⁰ 00223.027 Ngāi Tahu ki Murihiku

³⁵¹ 00226.042 Kāi Tahu ki Otago

resource values, concerns and issues of Kāi Tahu ki Otago and Ngāi Tahu ki Murihiku.

The iwi planning documents are to be used in the development of planning policy and assist decision-makers to make informed decisions, recognising the local knowledge of the *environment* held by papatipu rūnaka ~~Papatipu Rūnaka~~³⁵² and the significance of the natural resource values to Kāi Tahu.

The iwi planning documents are also used to guide consultation with rūnaka ~~Rūnaka~~³⁵³ and set out the expectations for consultation. The iwi management plans are not a substitute for direct communication with papatipu rūnaka ~~Papatipu Rūnaka~~³⁵⁴.

Involvement and participation with *mana whenua*

ORC and the *local authorities* will establish and maintain effective resource management relationships with Kāi Tahu based on a mutual obligation to act reasonably and in good faith. The *local authorities* and Otago Regional Council will consult Kāi Tahu at an early stage in resource management processes and implementation, and facilitate efficient and effective processes for applicants to consult Kāi Tahu on *resource consent* applications and private plan change requests.

Local authorities may also transfer and delegate³⁵⁵ ~~delegate and transfer~~ any one or more of their functions, powers or duties to an iwi authority in accordance with section 33 (transfer) and 34A (delegation)³⁵⁶ of the RMA, and where this provides an effective service.

***Mana whenua* consultancy services**

The papatipu rūnaka ~~Papatipu Rūnaka~~³⁵⁷ consultancy services, Aukaha, representing Kāi Tahu ki Otago, and Te Ao Marama Inc, representing Ngāi Tahu ki Murihiku, facilitate Kāi Tahu engagement in resource management processes and provide a first point of contact for the public seeking to engage with papatipu rūnaka ~~Papatipu Rūnaka~~³⁵⁸.

Other iwi, hapū and mātāwaka

Otago is also home to Māori from other iwi, hapū, and mātāwaka. The Araiteuru marae in Dunedin and Te Whare Koa in Ōamaru ~~Ōamaru~~³⁵⁹ are important pan-tribal cultural centres for mātāwaka and sit within the manaakitaka of *takata whenua*.

³⁵² 00226.043 Kāi Tahu ki Otago

³⁵³ Clause 10(2)(b)(i), Schedule 1, RMA – consequential amendment arising from 00226.043 Kāi Tahu ki Otago

³⁵⁴ 00226.043 Kāi Tahu ki Otago

³⁵⁵ Clause 10(2)(b)(i), Schedule 1, RMA – consequential amendment arising from 00509.024 Wise Response

³⁵⁶ 00509.024 Wise Response

³⁵⁷ 00226.043 Kāi Tahu ki Otago

³⁵⁸ 00226.043 Kāi Tahu ki Otago

³⁵⁹ 00226.043 Kāi Tahu ki Otago

Provisions

Objectives

MW–O1 – Principles of Te Tiriti o Waitangi

The principles of Te Tiriti o Waitangi are given effect in resource management processes and decisions, utilising a partnership approach between councils and papatipu rūnaka Papatipu Rūnaka³⁶⁰ to ensure that what is valued by *mana whenua* is actively protected in the region.

Policies

MW–P1 – Treaty obligations

Promote awareness and understanding of the obligations of *local authorities* in regard to the principles of Te Tiriti o Waitangi, tikaka Māori and kaupapa Māori.

MW–P2 – Treaty principles

Local authorities exercise their functions and powers in accordance with the principles of Te Tiriti o Waitangi Treaty principles,³⁶¹ by:

- (1) recognising the status of Kāi Tahu as *mana whenua*³⁶² and facilitating Kāi Tahu involvement in decision-making as a ~~Treaty~~ partner under Te Tiriti o Waitangi,³⁶³
- (2) including Kāi Tahu in resource management processes, ~~and~~ implementation and decision-making³⁶⁴ to the extent desired by *mana whenua*,
- (3) recognising and providing for Kāi Tahu values and addressing³⁶⁵ resource management issues of significance to Kāi Tahu,³⁶⁶ as identified by *mana whenua*, in resource management decision-making processes and plan implementation,
- (4) recognising and providing for the relationship of Kāi Tahu culture and traditions with their ancestral lands, and waters, ~~water~~, encompassing wai māori and wai tai, significant³⁶⁷ sites, *wāhi tūpuna*,³⁶⁸ *wāhi tapu* and *wāhi taoka*,³⁶⁹ and other taoka by ensuring that Kāi Tahu have the ability to identify these relationships and determine how best to express them,³⁷⁰
- (5) ensuring that *regional plans*³⁷¹ and *district plans* recognise and provide for Kāi Tahu relationships with Statutory Acknowledgement Areas, tōpuni, *nohoaka* and customary fisheries identified in the NTCSA, ~~1998~~, including by actively protecting the mauri of these areas,
- (6) having particular regard to the responsibility³⁷² ~~ability~~ of Kāi Tahu to exercise their role as

³⁶⁰ 00226.044 Kāi Tahu ki Otago

³⁶¹ 00226.046 Kāi Tahu ki Otago

³⁶² 00226.046 Kāi Tahu ki Otago

³⁶³ 00226.046 Kāi Tahu ki Otago

³⁶⁴ 00226.046 Kāi Tahu ki Otago

³⁶⁵ 00223.029 Ngāi Tahu ki Murihiku

³⁶⁶ 00223.029 Ngāi Tahu ki Murihiku

³⁶⁷ 00226.046 Kāi Tahu ki Otago

³⁶⁸ 00226.046 Kāi Tahu ki Otago

³⁶⁹ 00226.046 Kāi Tahu ki Otago

³⁷⁰ 00226.046 Kāi Tahu ki Otago

³⁷¹ Clause 16(2), Schedule 1, RMA

³⁷² 00226.046 Kāi Tahu ki Otago

kaitiaki kaitiakitaka, as an expression of mana and rakatirataka,³⁷³

(7) actively pursuing opportunities for:

- (a) delegation or transfer of functions to Kāi Tahu, and
- (b) partnership or joint management arrangements, ~~and~~³⁷⁴

(8) taking into account iwi management plans when making resource management decisions,³⁷⁵

(8A) regional plans and district plans recognising and providing for aquaculture settlement outcomes identified under the Māori Commercial Aquaculture Claims Settlement Act 2004, and³⁷⁶

(8B) recognising and providing for mātauraka and tikaka in environmental and resource management.³⁷⁷

MW-P3 – Supporting Kāi Tahu hauora³⁷⁸ well-being

The natural environment is managed to support Kāi Tahu hauora well-being³⁷⁹ by:

(1A) recognising that Kāi Tahu hold an ancestral and enduring relationship with all whenua, wai māori and coastal waters within their takiwā,³⁸⁰

(1) protecting customary uses, Kāi Tahu values and relationships as identified by Kāi Tahu³⁸¹ of Kāi Tahu to resources and areas of significance, and restoring these uses and values where they have been degraded by human activities,

(2) safeguarding the mauri and life-supporting capacity of natural resources, recognising the whakapapa connections of Kāi Tahu with these resources as taoka, and the connections to practices such as mahika kai, and³⁸²

(3) working with Kāi Tahu to incorporate mātauraka into ~~in~~³⁸³ resource management processes and decision-making.³⁸⁴

MW-P4 – Sustainable use of Māori land Native Reserves and Māori land³⁸⁵

Kāi Tahu are able to:

(1) protect³⁸⁶, develop and use *land* and resources within native reserves and *Māori land* held under Te Ture Whenua Māori Act 1993,³⁸⁷ including within land affected by an ONFL overlay,³⁸⁸ in accordance with mātauraka and tikaka,³⁸⁹ ~~in a way consistent with their culture and traditions and to~~

³⁷³ 00226.046 Kāi Tahu ki Otago

³⁷⁴ Clause 10(2)(b)(i), Schedule 1, RMA – consequential amendment arising from 00234.008 Te Rūnanga o Ngāi Tahu

³⁷⁵ Clause 10(2)(b)(i), Schedule 1, RMA – consequential amendment arising from 00234.008 Te Rūnanga o Ngāi Tahu

³⁷⁶ 00234.008 Te Rūnanga o Ngāi Tahu

³⁷⁷ 00234.008 Te Rūnanga o Ngāi Tahu

³⁷⁸ 00226.047 Kāi Tahu ki Otago

³⁷⁹ 00226.047 Kāi Tahu ki Otago

³⁸⁰ 00226.277 Kāi Tahu ki Otago

³⁸¹ 00226.047 Kāi Tahu ki Otago

³⁸² 00226.047 Kāi Tahu ki Otago

³⁸³ 00223.030 Ngāi Tahu ki Murihiku

³⁸⁴ 00226.047 Kāi Tahu ki Otago

³⁸⁵ 00234.009 Te Rūnanga o Ngāi Tahu, 00226.053 Kāi Tahu ki Otago, 00010.002 Cain whanau

³⁸⁶ 00226.047 Kāi Tahu ki Otago, 00226.048 Kāi Tahu ki Otago, 00234.009 Te Rūnanga o Ngāi Tahu, 00010.004 Cain Whānau

³⁸⁷ 00234.009 Te Rūnanga o Ngāi Tahu, 00226.053 Kāi Tahu ki Otago, 00010.002 Cain whanau

³⁸⁸ 00234.037 Te Rūnanga o Ngāi Tahu

³⁸⁹ 00234.009 Te Rūnanga o Ngāi Tahu

provide for their³⁹⁰ economic, cultural and social aspirations, including for *papakāika*, marae related activities, while:

(2) provide for the economic use of their Māori land or native reserves resources subject to the provisions of the RMA, this regional policy statement and any relevant plan, while:

- (a) avoiding adverse effects on the health and safety of people,³⁹¹
- (b) avoiding significant adverse *effects* on matters of national importance, and³⁹²
- (c) avoiding, remedying or mitigating other adverse *effects*³⁹³
- ~~(1) avoiding adverse *effects* on the health and safety of people,³⁹⁴~~
- ~~(2) avoiding significant adverse *effects* on matters of national importance, and³⁹⁵~~
- ~~(3) avoiding, remedying, or mitigating other adverse *effects*.³⁹⁶~~

Methods

MW–M1 – Collaboration with Kāi Tahu

Local authorities must collaborate with Kāi Tahu to:

- (1) ~~identify and map~~ manage, in accordance with tikaka, kawa, and mātauraka, those³⁹⁷ places, areas, or landscapes, waters, taoka and other elements³⁹⁸ of cultural, spiritual or traditional significance to *mana whenua* by: them,³⁹⁹
 - (a) identifying, recording, and assessing these elements using methods determined by *mana whenua* (which may include mapping),⁴⁰⁰ and
 - (b) protecting the values of, and *mana whenua* relationships to, these elements,⁴⁰¹
- ~~(2) protect such places, areas, or landscapes, and the values that contribute to their significance,~~
- (3) identify indigenous species and ecosystems that are taoka in accordance with ECO–M3, and⁴⁰²
- ~~(4) identify and map outstanding natural features, landscapes and seascapes, and highly valued natural features, landscapes and seascapes and record their values.⁴⁰³~~
- (4A) determine appropriate naming for places of significance in Otago, and⁴⁰⁴

³⁹⁰ 00234.009 Te Rūnanga o Ngāi Tahu

³⁹¹ 00226.047 Kāi Tahu ki Otago, 00226.048 Kāi Tahu ki Otago, 00234.009 Te Rūnanga o Ngāi Tahu, 00010.004 Cain Whānau

³⁹² 00226.047 Kāi Tahu ki Otago, 00226.048 Kāi Tahu ki Otago, 00234.009 Te Rūnanga o Ngāi Tahu, 00010.004 Cain Whānau

³⁹³ 00226.047 Kāi Tahu ki Otago, 00226.048 Kāi Tahu ki Otago, 00234.009 Te Rūnanga o Ngāi Tahu, 00010.004 Cain Whānau

³⁹⁴ 00226.048 Kāi Tahu ki Otago

³⁹⁵ 00226.048 Kāi Tahu ki Otago

³⁹⁶ 00226.048 Kāi Tahu ki Otago

³⁹⁷ 00223.031 Ngāi Tahu ki Murihiku, 00010.005 Cain whānau

³⁹⁸ 00226.049 Kāi Tahu ki Otago

³⁹⁹ 00226.049 Kāi Tahu ki Otago

⁴⁰⁰ 00010.005 Cain whānau

⁴⁰¹ 00223.031 Ngāi Tahu ki Murihiku, 00010.005 Cain whānau

⁴⁰² Clause 10(2)(b)(i), Schedule 1, RMA – consequential amendment arising from 00226.049 Kāi Tahu ki Otago

⁴⁰³ 00121.014 Ravensdown

⁴⁰⁴ 00226.049 Kāi Tahu ki Otago

(4B) share information relevant to Kāi Tahu interests.⁴⁰⁵

MW–M2 – Mātauraka Māori Work with Kāi Tahu⁴⁰⁶

Local authorities must work in partnership ~~consult~~⁴⁰⁷ with Kāi Tahu to:

(2A) incorporate mātauraka into resource management processes,⁴⁰⁸

(2B) enable use of mātauraka in decision-making where appropriate, and⁴⁰⁹

(3) develop research and monitoring programmes that incorporate mātauraka and are led by *mana whenua*.

~~(1) — determine appropriate naming for places of significance in Otago,~~

~~(2) — share information relevant to Kāi Tahu interests, and~~

MW–M3 – Kāi Tahu relationships

Local authorities must develop processes to:

(1) establish and maintain effective resource management relationships with Kāi Tahu based on a mutual obligation to act reasonably and in good faith,

(2) involve Kāi Tahu at an early stage and throughout resource management processes, decision-making,⁴¹⁰ and implementation, and

(3) facilitate efficient and effective processes for applicants to consult Kāi Tahu on *resource consent* applications, private plan change requests, notices of requirement, and notices of requirement for heritage orders.

MW–M4 – Kāi Tahu rakaitirataka involvement in resource management⁴¹¹

Local authorities must facilitate Kāi Tahu involvement in resource management (including decision making), to the extent *mana whenua* consider themselves able to accommodate,⁴¹² by:

(1) including an independent accredited commissioner approved or nominated by Kāi Tahu including accredited Kāi Tahu commissioners⁴¹³ on hearing panels for *resource consent* applications, notices of requirements,⁴¹⁴ plan changes or plans where Kāi Tahu values may be affected,

(2) implementing actions to foster the development of mana whenua capacity to participate resourcing Kāi Tahu participation⁴¹⁵ in resource management decision making, including funding,

(3) joint management agreements and full or partial transfers of functions, duties or powers from *local authorities* to iwi authorities in accordance with section 33 of the RMA ~~1991,~~⁴¹⁶ and

(4) entering into a Mana Whakahono ā Rohe with one or more iwi authorities.

⁴⁰⁵ 00226.049 Kāi Tahu ki Otago

⁴⁰⁶ 00226.050 Kāi Tahu ki Otago

⁴⁰⁷ 00226.050 Kāi Tahu ki Otago

⁴⁰⁸ 00226.050 Kāi Tahu ki Otago

⁴⁰⁹ 00226.050 Kāi Tahu ki Otago

⁴¹⁰ 00226.051 Kāi Tahu ki Otago

⁴¹¹ 00226.052 Kāi Tahu ki Otago

⁴¹² 00223.034 Ngāi Tahu ki Murihiku

⁴¹³ Clause 16(2), Schedule 1, Resource Management Act 1991.

⁴¹⁴ Clause 16(2), Schedule 1, Resource Management Act 1991.

⁴¹⁵ 00223.034 Ngāi Tahu ki Murihiku

⁴¹⁶ Clause 16(2), Schedule 1, RMA

MW–M5 – Regional plans⁴¹⁷ and district plans

Local authorities must amend their regional plans⁴¹⁸ and district plans to:

- (1) take into account⁴¹⁹ ~~Iwi Management Plans~~ iwi management plans⁴²⁰ and address⁴²¹ resource management issues of significance to Kāi Tahu (~~RMA~~) ~~into account~~,⁴²²
- (2) provide for the use of native reserves and Māori⁴²³ ~~land held under Te Ture Whenua Māori Act 1993~~⁴²⁴ in accordance with MW–P4 and recognise Kāi Tahu rakatirataka over this land by enabling *mana whenua* to lead approaches to manage any adverse effects of such use on the environment.⁴²⁵
- (3) incorporate active protection of areas and resources recognised in the NTCSA ~~1998~~.⁴²⁶ and⁴²⁷
- (4) provide for the outcomes of settlements under the Māori Commercial Claims Aquaculture Settlement Act 2004.⁴²⁸

MW–M6 – Incentives and education

Local authorities are encouraged to use other mechanisms or incentives to assist in achieving Policies MW–P1 to MW–P4, promoting awareness and improving knowledge of tikaka and the principles of Te Tiriti o Waitangi among staff and stakeholders, including through hiring practices, induction programmes, key performance indicators and training activities.

MW–M7 – Advocacy and facilitation

Local authorities may facilitate negotiations with landowners to provide Kāi Tahu access to sites of significance to Kāi Tahu that do not have suitable access.

Explanation

MW–E1 – Explanation

The policies in this section are designed to achieve MW–O1 by setting out the actions that must be undertaken by *local authorities* to ensure the principles of Te Tiriti o Waitangi are given effect in resource management processes and decisions, and *mana whenua* values and taoka are actively protected, supporting Kāi Tahu wellbeing.⁴²⁹ The policies also require the development and implementation of planning tools and other mechanisms that ~~which~~⁴³⁰ recognise the role of Kāi Tahu in resource management and ensure their engagement with and participation in resource management including through partnership with *local authorities*.⁴³¹

⁴¹⁷ Clause 16(2), Schedule 1, RMA

⁴¹⁸ Clause 16(2), Schedule 1, RMA

⁴¹⁹ 00010.006 Cain whānau

⁴²⁰ 00010.006 Cain whānau

⁴²¹ 00010.006 Cain whānau

⁴²² 00223.035 Ngāi Tahu ki Murihiku

⁴²³ 00234.009 Te Rūnanga o Ngāi Tahu, 00226.053 Kāi Tahu ki Otago, 00010.002 Cain whanau

⁴²⁴ 00234.009 Te Rūnanga o Ngāi Tahu, 00226.053 Kāi Tahu ki Otago, 00010.002 Cain whanau

⁴²⁵ 00226.047 Kāi Tahu ki Otago, 00226.048 Kāi Tahu ki Otago, 00234.009 Te Rūnanga o Ngāi Tahu, 00010.004 Cain Whānau

⁴²⁶ Clause 16(2), Schedule 1, RMA

⁴²⁷ 00234.010 Te Rūnanga o Ngāi Tahu

⁴²⁸ 00234.010 Te Rūnanga o Ngāi Tahu

⁴²⁹ 00223.036 Ngāi Tahu ki Murihiku

⁴³⁰ 00223.036 Ngāi Tahu ki Murihiku

⁴³¹ 00235.017 OWRUG

Principal reasons

MW–PR1 – Principal reasons

Te Tiriti o Waitangi creates a special relationship between *takata whenua* and the Crown, which the Crown expresses in part through the provisions of the RMA and national instruments created in accordance with the RMA. This, in turn, creates responsibilities for local authorities. Providing for cultural well-being is a feature of the sustainable management purpose of the RMA.⁴³² Section 8 of the RMA 1991⁴³³ requires *local authorities* to take the principles of Te Tiriti o Waitangi into account. These principles include *kāwanataka*, *rakatirataka*, partnership, participatory decision making and active protection of Kāi Tahu resources. Section 7(a) of the RMA 1991⁴³⁴ requires decision makers to have particular regard to *kaitiakitaka*. Effective *kaitiakitaka* is dependent upon the extent to which Kāi Tahu can exercise *rakatirataka*, which requires the authority and ability to make decisions relating to management of resources.

Local authorities need to incorporate Treaty principles into their decision making and ensure they are properly applied, to account for the *effects* of resource management decisions on Kāi Tahu values, including those described in iwi resource management plans. Deliberate measures need to be taken to ensure the principles are clearly articulated and readily⁴³⁵ ~~well~~ understood. The principles are broadly expressed, so a measure of flexibility is needed in applying them.

The provisions in this chapter assist in implementing sections 6(e), 7(a) and 8 of the RMA 1991⁴³⁶ by requiring a partnership approach which involves Kāi Tahu and considers *mana whenua* rights, interests and values in decision making processes, and enables Treaty principles to be applied ~~taken into account~~⁴³⁷ in an appropriate way.

Implementation of the provisions in this chapter will occur primarily, but not exclusively,⁴³⁸ through *regional plans*⁴³⁹ and *district plan* provisions. ~~However, Local~~⁴⁴⁰ *authorities* may also adopt a range of methods, utilising statutory mechanisms and⁴⁴¹ ~~additional~~ non-regulatory methods to implement the policies and support achievement of the objective.

Anticipated environmental results

MW–AER1 Resource management processes and decisions reflect the principles of Te Tiriti o Waitangi.

MW–AER2 Strong relationships between Kāi Tahu and *local authorities* facilitate the exercise of *rakatirataka* and *kaitiakitaka* by *mana whenua* in relation to their taoka tuku iho.

⁴³² 00223.037 Ngāi Tahu ki Murihiku

⁴³³ Clause 16(2), Schedule 1, RMA

⁴³⁴ Clause 16(2), Schedule 1, RMA

⁴³⁵ 00239.017 Federated Farmers

⁴³⁶ Clause 16(2), Schedule 1, RMA

⁴³⁷ 00223.037 Ngāi Tahu ki Murihiku

⁴³⁸ 00223.037 Ngāi Tahu ki Murihiku

⁴³⁹ Clause 16(2), Schedule 1, RMA

⁴⁴⁰ 00223.037 Ngāi Tahu ki Murihiku

⁴⁴¹ 00223.037 Ngāi Tahu ki Murihiku

PART 2 – RESOURCE MANAGEMENT OVERVIEW

SRMR – Significant resource management issues for the region

Introduction

Otago’s people and communities rely on the *natural and physical*⁴⁴² resources that Otago’s *environment* provides to enable their social, economic, and cultural well-being. Natural resources include *freshwater* (i.e. surface and *groundwater, wetlands, estuaries*), *land and soil*⁴⁴³, terrestrial and *freshwater* ecosystems, coastal and marine ecosystems, and air, landscapes, vegetation and natural landforms. Physical resources include *infrastructure, buildings and facilities*.⁴⁴⁴

From an economic perspective *natural and physical*⁴⁴⁵ resources support, and are impacted by, agricultural industries (e.g. grazing, cropping, horticulture, viticulture), urban development, industrial development, *infrastructure*, energy generation, transport, marine industries (fishing and aquaculture), tourism and mineral extraction. From a social, health,⁴⁴⁶ and cultural perspective *natural and physical*⁴⁴⁷ resources support and are impacted by food production,⁴⁴⁸ recreation, housing, and cultural activities. (Refer Figure 2).⁴⁴⁹

*Figure 2—Relationships between natural resources, resource-use and strategies*⁴⁵⁰

⁴⁴² 00314.009 Transpower

⁴⁴³ 00239.019 Federated Farmers, 00236.021 Horticulture NZ

⁴⁴⁴ 00314.009 Transpower

⁴⁴⁵ 00314.009 Transpower

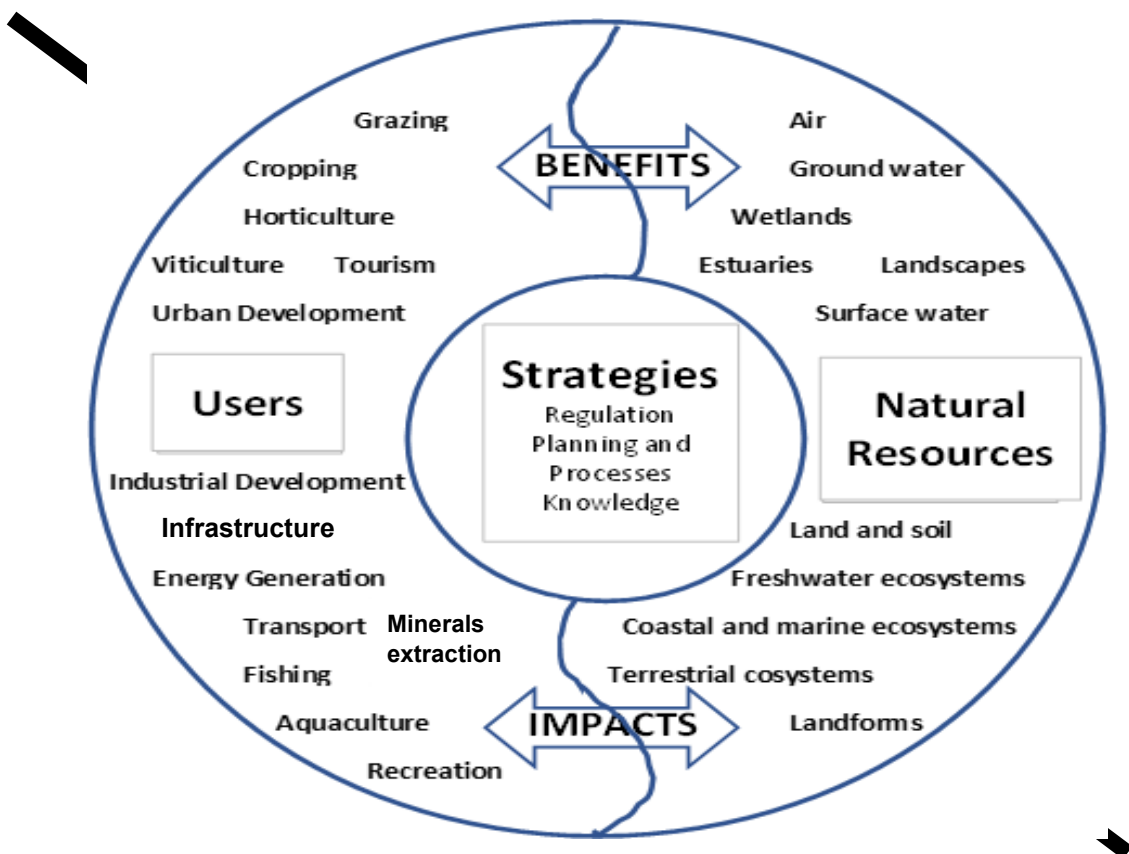
⁴⁴⁶ 00120.012 Yellow Eyed Penguin Trust

⁴⁴⁷ 00314.009 Transpower

⁴⁴⁸ 00236.021 Horticulture NZ

⁴⁴⁹ 00314.009 Transpower

⁴⁵⁰ 00314.009 Transpower



This RPS identifies the ~~eleven~~ twelve⁴⁵¹ most significant issues impacting the Otago region. Issues firstly considered include *natural hazards*, *climate change*, pest species, *water* quantity and quality, and biodiversity loss, collectively the “natural asset-based issues”. Two “place-based issues” of regional significance are then addressed - being Otago’s coast and Otago’s *lake* areas. The use and development of resources is also recognised as being essential to the well-being of the community, while acknowledging that this can lead to conflicts when managing the adverse effects of this use.⁴⁵² Finally, issues of economic and domestic pressures, cumulative impacts and *resilience* are considered.

While the issues in this section are considered individually, this RPS considers and responds to them in a joined-up manner as part of a complex system with biophysical limits, inherent uncertainty, potentially irreversible and sometimes catastrophic impacts, and interdependent behaviours.

Each issue is considered in the following manner:

- an issue statement
- context
- impacts on the *environment*, economy, and society

SRMR-I1 – *Natural hazards pose a risk to many Otago communities*

Statement

Otago is prone to a range of natural hazards that pose a risk to Otago communities, property, infrastructure, and the wider environment. A major event could cause severe damage and may isolate Otago communities for an extended time. Major events of concern include flooding, an earthquake on the Alpine fault, tsunamis, coastal erosion, wildfires, and extreme weather events.⁴⁵³

~~An earthquake on the Alpine Fault would cause potentially catastrophic impacts on the entire region. Particular areas in Otago are prone to flooding. A major hazard event could isolate all or parts of Otago for an extended time.~~

Context

The Otago region is exposed to a wide variety of *natural hazards* that impact on people, property, *infrastructure*, historic heritage and the wider *environment*. When a *natural hazard* event occurs, it is sometimes usually⁴⁵⁴ difficult and costly for a community to recover. The *natural hazard* threats range from coastal erosion and flooding in lowland coastal areas to alluvial fan deposition, landslip, rock fall, seismic events (earthquake and tsunami), wind, snow, drought and riverbank breaches. The risk resulting from natural hazards is not just due to the hazards themselves, but also whether human activities are located and operated in ways which make them vulnerable to those hazards.⁴⁵⁵

Frequent heavy rainstorms, the steep gradients of many *river* catchments and human occupation of floodplains combine to make flooding the most frequently occurring *natural hazard* event in the Otago region. For example, flooding can affect Otago's main urban centres causing damage to housing and

⁴⁵¹ Clause 10(2)(b)(i), Schedule 1, RMA - Consequential amendment arising from 00322.004 Fulton Hogan, 00314.009 Transpower, 00315.015 Aurora, 00310.003 The Telecommunication Companies, 00213.018 Fonterra, 00236.033 Horticulture NZ, 00231.022 Otago Fish and Game, 00235.058 OWRUG, 00411.097 Wayfare

⁴⁵² Clause 10(2)(b)(i), Schedule 1, RMA - Consequential amendment arising from 00322.004 Fulton Hogan, 00314.009 Transpower, 00315.015 Aurora, 00310.003 The Telecommunication Companies, 00213.018 Fonterra, 00236.033 Horticulture NZ, 00231.022 Otago Fish and Game, 00235.058 OWRUG, 00411.097 Wayfare

⁴⁵³ 00239.020 Federated Farmers

⁴⁵⁴ 00206.080 Trojan, 00411,099 Wayfare

⁴⁵⁵ 00137.033 DOC

business disruption, and primary production agriculture⁴⁵⁶ can be disrupted in Otago's floodplains (including⁴⁵⁷ lower Clutha, Lower Waitaki⁴⁵⁸ and Taiari Taiari⁴⁵⁹).

Seismic *risks* are widespread in Otago as evidenced by the region's active faults, being the Cardrona, Dunstan, Rough Ridge, Hyde, Taiari Ridge, Waihemo and Akatore faults. The Alpine Fault in the Queenstown Lakes District has an estimated 75% probability of causing a major earthquake in the next 50 years with associated large-scale destruction.

Otago's coastline is exposed to tsunamis, from local offshore faults and nearby subduction zones, such as the Puysegur Trench (south of the South Island). The stretch of the Otago coastline north of the Otago Peninsula has a greater level of exposure to tsunamis generated from South America.

Natural hazards may be exacerbated by the *effects* of *climate change*, which include sea level rise, and greater frequency and intensity of extreme weather events. Elevated sea levels resulting in flooding can occur as a result of a combination of tides, storm surge, and waves. There are several low-lying areas in relatively close proximity to the coast that have been identified as being at *risk*, such as South Dunedin.

Parts of the Otago coastline (which is a soft coast formed by material such as sand or gravel) are also prone to significant coastal erosion. Coastal erosion is an issue *risk*⁴⁶⁰ in Waitaki District, Dunedin City and along the Clutha River Delta, ~~potentially~~⁴⁶¹ affecting communities and *infrastructure* near the coast.

Impact snapshot

Environmental

Ecosystems (from the mountains to the coast), *water bodies* and *water* quality (*rivers, lakes, wetlands* and *ground water*) are variously at *risk* of increased frequency and intensity of flooding and landslides. Seismic events result in liquefaction of land and associated soil disturbance, elevated sea levels and associated flooding, potential permanent inundation and coastal⁴⁶² erosion. While *effects* are localised, *natural hazard* impacts can be significant where threatened ecosystems or species are involved.

Economic

Otago's primary industries, *infrastructure*, energy and transport systems, and urban areas are exposed to the full range of hazards noted above, with potential for major-to-catastrophic economic consequences, including damage to production, *infrastructure* such as transport routes (highways, bridges), the built environment and communications, and often resulting in supply chain disruptions. Natural hazards could also impact on renewable electricity generation with the potential for significant national and regional consequences. New infrastructure should be encouraged to locate in areas where it is less vulnerable to natural hazards.⁴⁶³ ~~in the region with subsequent impact on electricity generation capacity.~~

For individuals and households this can result in changes to employment, income, assets and

⁴⁵⁶ 00140.010 Waitaki DC

⁴⁵⁷ 00239.020 Federated Farmers

⁴⁵⁸ 00140.010 Waitaki DC

⁴⁵⁹ 00226.024 Kāi Tahu ki Otago

⁴⁶⁰ 00140.010 Waitaki DC

⁴⁶¹ 00140.010 Waitaki DC

⁴⁶² 00223.040 Ngāi Tahu ki Murihiku

⁴⁶³ 00315.015 Aurora Energy, 00314.09 Transpower, 00310.003 The Telecommunications Companies

consumption patterns, disruption to social protection, services, social safety net mechanisms and institutions.

For industry, hazards can damage production assets and *infrastructure* with associated costs, disrupt service delivery and limit availability and access to goods and services, and cause decline in sales and increased costs. Loss or changes in production flows can be either temporary or permanent depending on financial *resilience* of businesses, which is a function of their existing loan commitments, credit worthiness and insurance cover. Food security can also be affected.

Whilst the community and its businesses have substantial resilience to severe weather events and supply chain disruptions, there can be cumulative impacts from repeated events.⁴⁶⁴

Social

Social impacts can be direct (e.g. physical destruction of housing or transport route, human physical harm) but equally important are indirect ~~and secondary~~⁴⁶⁵ impacts of disasters, including the destruction of communities and the negative impacts on people. Physical impacts and community dislocation can also cause long term psychological stresses affecting people's coping mechanisms, recovery sources and capacity which can test the *resilience* of a community. There can also be cumulative impacts from events on physical and mental health.⁴⁶⁶

Social impacts of events can result in immediate impacts on livelihoods for individuals and families, particularly for lower socio-economic groups. Health services disruptions can occur, including access to and changes in demand for services. Similarly, there can be disruptions to education service delivery. Housing impacts may require urgent provision for basic human needs including replacement shelter and housing, and food and *water* immediately following an event.

Damage to *infrastructure* and assets may have varying impacts on different groups, for example those with less resources may have less capacity to respond to hazard events and be more impacted as a result. The relationship between affected people and their cultural assets may also be affected, for example customs and traditions related to housing, health, livelihoods, and nutrition.

SRMR-I2 – Climate change will⁴⁶⁷ ~~is likely to~~ impact our economy and environment

Statement

Otago's climate is changing, and these changes will continue for the foreseeable future. Central Otago is likely to see more varied precipitation, leading to increased flooding and reduced *water* reliability. This will be compounded by stronger winds, increased temperatures and longer dry periods, which may affect the number and types of crops and animals that the land can sustain, food production systems and related food supply and food security needs,⁴⁶⁸ and the potential for renewable energy generation.⁴⁶⁹ On the coast, low lying areas like South Dunedin are at *risk* of inundation from rising sea levels. This will also exacerbate coastal erosion, which could damage coastal *infrastructure* (including *roads*), damage historic heritage, particularly *wāhi tūpuna*, and expose old waste dumps (e.g. at Middle Beach). *Climate change* will also affect native animals and plants, compounding the

⁴⁶⁴ 00239.020 Federated Farmers

⁴⁶⁵ 00101.006 Toitū Te Whenua

⁴⁶⁶ 00239.020 Federated Farmers

⁴⁶⁷ 00236.023 Horticulture NZ, 00235.028 OWRUG, 00230.023 Forest and Bird

⁴⁶⁸ 00236.023 Horticulture NZ

⁴⁶⁹ 00306.014 Meridian

impacts of existing pests and stresses and providing opportunities for new pests to establish themselves due to changed conditions. The impact of other *climate change* threats is unpredictable. Our responses to climate change, whether that be mitigation or adaptation, will also impact on our economy and environment. An example of this will be the need to protect and maximise existing renewable electricity generation activities in the region, as well as providing for the development of new renewable electricity generation activities.⁴⁷⁰

Context

The rate of future *climate change* depends on how fast *greenhouse gas* concentrations increase. These changes are expected to result in higher temperatures, changes in precipitation, drought, fire weather, extreme weather events, inland and coastal flooding, landslides and soil erosion, salinity, sea level rise, erosion, reduced snow and ice, and marine heatwaves. Rainfall and temperature change may result in drier soils and changes to river flow (low flow and floods), as well as increased occurrence of slips/landslides. Sea level rise will have impacts on coastal communities, infrastructure and habitats, while the risk of wildfire will also increase. Changing climate also risks increased biosecurity issues of increased plant, fungal and animal pests and diseases.⁴⁷¹

It is expected temperatures will increase across Otago, and by 2090, Otago is projected to have from 4 to 25 extra days per year where maximum temperatures exceed 25°C, with around 13 to 45 fewer frosts per year (and consequently less snow). Precipitation overall will increase slightly (by up to 10%), more so in the western part of the region, with less precipitation in central and eastern Otago. There will be an increase in average annual flows across the region, apart from the Taiari Taiari⁴⁷² and North Otago, and flooding will be more severe – there will be an increase in the mean annual flood by 100% in some locations by the end of the century.

Impact snapshot

Climate change impacts arising from changes in temperature, rainfall, *river* flows and flooding have been assessed in the Otago Regional Council’s commissioned report: Otago Climate Change Risk Assessment Phase 1 report⁴⁷³ (OCCRA report)⁴⁷⁴. The following discussion is based on potential *climate change* impacts at 2050.

Environmental⁴⁷⁵

For terrestrial native⁴⁷⁶ ecosystems and species, higher frequency of severe events (e.g. high/low temperatures, intense rainfall, drought, fire weather) could reduce *resilience* of native⁴⁷⁷ terrestrial ecosystems and species over time with adverse impacts on biodiversity. Native species (including *threatened species*) and ecosystems are also likely to be affected by increased competition with invasive species/pests favoured by warmer temperatures, particularly with milder winters. This could be a contributory *risk* factor (but not sole cause) for native species that are threatened or close to extinction.

For marine and coastal ecosystems and species, potential climate impacts include lower ocean productivity and impacts on feeding grounds (e.g. decreasing the population of yellow-eyed penguins); ocean acidification; and changes in species diversity/distribution (e.g. reducing kelp forests). Increased

⁴⁷⁰ 00318.003 Contact

⁴⁷¹ 00239.021 Federated Farmers

⁴⁷² 00234.005 Te Rūnanga o Ngāi Tahu

⁴⁷³ Tonkin+Taylor, 2020, Otago Climate Change Risk Assessment (Commissioned by the Otago Regional Council)

⁴⁷⁴ Clause 16(2), Schedule 1, RMA

⁴⁷⁵ Clause (16)2, Schedule 1, RMA

⁴⁷⁶ 00231.023 Fish & Game

⁴⁷⁷ 00231.023 Fish & Game

intensity of flooding would result in an increase in sediment which will change the physical composition of *freshwater* and marine waters and, for example, may reduce light availability, smother fragile habitats, or impact on the foraging ability of some species, particular those that rely on vision (e.g. yellow-eyed penguins). New pests and disease threats may arise from marine heatwaves/warmer ocean temperatures. Warmer temperatures could also reduce oxygen and cause stratification in shallow bays (resulting in *water* quality impacts). Sea level rise will also affect coastal habitats and ecosystems (inter-tidal zones, sand dunes). *Groundwater* impacts will include coastal aquifers being affected by salinisation, and reduced rainfall in some areas will affect *groundwater* recharge, flow and surface *water discharges*, with potential adverse impacts on ecosystems and species dependent on *groundwater*.

By 2090, the time spent in drought ranges from minimal change through to more than double, depending on the climate model and emissions scenario considered. More frequent droughts are likely to lead to *water* shortages, increased demand for irrigation and increased *risk* of wildfires. Reduced snowfalls may affect *water* availability since snow acts as a storage mechanism until the *water* is required in summer.⁴⁷⁸ As a result, *river* ecosystems could be altered through reduced flows during drought periods with associated declining *water* quality, reduced food resources, and availability of habitats. This would affect ecosystems for key species, such as *river* nesting birds and endemic *freshwater* fish species.

Lakes could be subject to temperature increases. This can impact on the health of *lake* ecosystems, for example algal blooms. *Wetland* plant species and *wetland* habitats, and other species reliant on *wetlands* (including threatened bird species) are at *risk* of being negatively impacted. There are also likely to be cascading impacts on surrounding *environments* and ecosystems from hydrological changes (e.g. increased flood *risk*/changing *water* flows due to *wetland* loss). Coastal *wetlands* are particularly at *risk* due to salinisation from sea level rise and coastal flooding.

Human adaptation to climate change, such as building or expanding dams or flood protection schemes, will be necessary and may give rise to adverse impacts on ecosystems, in addition to those imposed by climate change itself.⁴⁷⁹

Economy

Regional industry

Climate change impacts will result in both impacts and opportunities for regional industry in terms of jobs, business income and profitability. Key industries likely to be impacted include sheep, beef, dairy and deer farming, cropping and viticulture, forestry, fisheries and aquaculture, as well as tourism. For example, agriculture may benefit from warmer temperatures, longer growing seasons and elevated carbon dioxide concentrations leading to better pasture and crop growth. *Climate change* may also result in shifting land-use activities to adapt to altered climate conditions, which will incur costs, and potentially enable resources previously unviable to come into production.

However, these benefits may be limited by negative *effects* of *climate change* such as prolonged drought and increased flood *risk*. Some of these impacts can be mitigated by adaptation, for example, planting new crops that are better suited to new climatic conditions or through changes in crop intensification, or *water* harvesting practices. Pests and diseases could spread in range and severity, and pasture composition is likely to change with uncertain impacts on animal productivity and nutrient balances.

Some⁴⁸⁰ ~~For~~ tourism activities may be affected. For example,⁴⁸¹ ~~there will be negative impacts on skiing~~

⁴⁷⁸ <https://www.mfe.govt.nz/climate-change/likely-impacts-of-climate-change/how-could-climate-change-affect-my-region/otago>

⁴⁷⁹ 00231.024 Fish & Game

⁴⁸⁰ 00206.082 Trojan 00411.101 Wayfare

⁴⁸¹ 00206.082 Trojan 00411.101 Wayfare

where the number of snow days experienced annually could decrease by as much as 30-40 days in some parts of the region. This reduction in natural snowfall will mean that ski fields will be more reliant on snowmaking.⁴⁸²The duration of snow cover is also likely to decrease, particularly at lower elevations. This will also lead to reduced summer waterflows.

Built environment

For Otago, by 2050, the built environment will experience high to extreme impact *risks* to *wastewater* and *stormwater infrastructure*, *roads* and bridges, airports, stop banks and flood management schemes, and rural drainage. Medium to extreme impact *risks* are expected to affect urban and rural housing, *water supply*, *landfill* areas; and medium level *risks* are likely for commercial and public *buildings*, open space, rail, and ports.

The main threat to the *urban environment* comes from possible increases in heavy rainfall, which would put pressure on drainage and *stormwater* systems and increase the *risk* of flooding in some areas. Erosion could also increase *road* maintenance costs. There is greater risk of wastewater network overflows, and wastewater treatment plants being compromised.

Warmer conditions will substantially reduce home heating costs, leading to reduced electricity demand during the peak winter season, but possibly increase demand for air conditioning during summer. A reduced winter demand for electricity, combined with an increased availability of *water* in hydroelectric storage *lakes* from projected rainfall increases over the Main Divide, would provide the opportunity for a more balanced annual cycle in electricity supply and demand.⁴⁸³

Areas of particular concern include inland areas of flooding *risk* including South Dunedin, Mosgiel, and Milton; coastal erosion *risk* areas including St Kilda, St Clair, Clutha Delta, Moeraki, and Oamaru; sea level rise and salinity *risk* areas including South Dunedin, Harbor Basin, Aramoana, and Kaka Point.

Social

Changes to the economy generally and in relation to local shift in economic activity because of *climate change* may impact on community cohesion and *resilience*, and mental well-being and health. Higher temperatures could reduce illness in winter but can increase heat stress in summer. Higher levels and duration of ultraviolet radiation could increase skin cancer *risks*. Insect pests could increase, adversely impacting outdoor recreation experiences. Additionally, the visual and recreational values of Otago's landscape may be impacted on by the effects of climate change.⁴⁸⁴

Differentiation may occur between highly *resilient* (high social capital, high income and politically empowered) and non-*resilient* communities (especially those with low adaptive capacity, such as low-income and marginalised groups) which has the potential to increase socio-economic and intergeneration and intrageneration inequality.

SRMR–I3 – Pest species pose an ongoing threat to indigenous biodiversity, economic activities and landscapes

Statement

Pest species can be found throughout Otago, from alpine to marine environments. Rabbits are changing Central Otago's landscape, eroding soils and affecting agriculture. Wallabies are an increasing risk with incursion beyond their contaminant zone and illegal liberations resulting in an

⁴⁸² 00206.082 Trojan 00411.101 Wayfare

⁴⁸³ <https://environment.govt.nz/assets/Publications/Files/impacts-report-jun01.pdf> (Accessed 28 May 2021)

⁴⁸⁴ 00138.003 Queenstown Lakes District Council

expanding range within Otago, particularly Waitaki, Central Otago and Queenstown Lakes.⁴⁸⁵ *Wilding conifers* threaten high country and tussock grassland, changing the landscape and impacting on primary production,⁴⁸⁶ recreational, hydrological and conservation values. Aquatic pests and weeds such as didymo, lake snow and *lagarosiphon* affect our *lakes* and *rivers*. Invasive marine species affect our marine waters. Native aquatic plants are displaced, impacting ecosystem and indigenous biodiversity health and recreation activities. Climate change may compound the impacts of existing pest species and provide opportunities for new pest species to establish.⁴⁸⁷

Context

Otago's landscape, water⁴⁸⁸ and climate support many plants and animals considered to be pests. This includes weeds, vertebrate pests (e.g. rabbits), invertebrate pests, and diseases⁴⁸⁹ (e.g. pathogenic pest diseases (e.g. foot and mouth disease, pine needle diseases)), and *freshwater* and marine pests which are all biosecurity threats in the Otago region.

There are 35 listed weed species in Otago, and 11 listed animal pests. Pest management approaches include exclusion and surveillance (e.g. African feather grass), attempted eradication (e.g. wallabies and rooks), containment (e.g. *bomarea*) and sustained control (e.g. rabbits, gorse and broom). The approach deployed depends on the degree to which species are entrenched.

The Otago Pest Management Plan 2019-2029⁴⁹⁰ seeks to meet ORC's responsibilities under Part 2 of the Biosecurity Act 1992 to provide regional leadership through activities that prevent, reduce, or eliminate adverse *effects* resulting from harmful species that are present in the region. That plan details which approaches are to be used for which pest species, and the methods to be used for control.

In conjunction with that Plan, ORC has also established a Biosecurity Strategy (the Strategy) which sets out ORC's objectives for biosecurity management in the region using the full range of statutory and non-statutory tools available. Strategy priorities provide for protection of indigenous biodiversity, protection of landscape, recreation, cultural and *amenity values* and minimising the impact on agricultural production. The Strategy also supports pest management and seeks to integrate the regulatory and non-regulatory programmes. Collaborative partnership models of pest management are increasingly being developed and adopted in conjunction with community groups and land holders.

Impact snapshot

Environmental

Otago is one of the most biodiverse regions in New Zealand, with high levels of endemism. It is also one of the most modified regions in New Zealand. Both plant and animal species pests have significant impacts on biodiversity. Pests can also adversely impact waterways,⁴⁹¹ natural features and landscapes.

Vertebrate browsing pests such as rabbits, and wallabies and goats⁴⁹² cause erosion and damage to land in both introduced pastures and native tussock communities, impacting significant lands and

⁴⁸⁵ 00235.033 OWRUG

⁴⁸⁶ 00239.022 Federated Farmers

⁴⁸⁷ 00236.024 Horticulture NZ, 00235.033 OWRUG, 00120.016 Yellow-eyed Penguin Trust

⁴⁸⁸ 00239.022 Federated Farmers

⁴⁸⁹ 00239.022 Federated Farmers

⁴⁹⁰ https://www.orc.govt.nz/media/8029/orc-pest-management-plan-2019_final_digital.pdf (accessed 26 May 2021)

⁴⁹¹ 00239.022 Federated Farmers

⁴⁹² 00223.042 Ngāi Tahu ki Murihiku

taoka species.⁴⁹³ Severe erosion can have adverse *effects* on *water* quality. Rats and stoats predate on native birds, while deer destroy native vegetation, and possums compete with native birds for hollows and have also been known to predate on chicks. Possums spread viruses and diseases such as bovine tuberculosis, which can have severe impacts on stock.

Weeds smother and compete with native vegetation, taking up available nutrients, *water*, space and sunlight. They reduce natural diversity and prevent native plants growing back after clearing, fire and other disturbance. Nationally, weeds will potentially affect 7% of the conservation estate within a decade, corresponding to a loss of native biodiversity equivalent to \$1.3 billion.⁴⁹⁴ For example, wilding conifers pines⁴⁹⁵ are a significant issue for the Otago region as well as nationally, where they threaten high country and tussock grassland, increase fire *risk*, and reduce *water* yield in *water* short catchments, impact soil nutrient cycling,⁴⁹⁶ change the landscape and negatively impact recreational, hydrological and conservation values.

Pest species destabilise aquatic habitats and negatively modify *water* flow with consequences for drainage, irrigation, power generation and recreational activities. The introduction of the *freshwater* diatom didymo (*Didymosphenia geminata*) in South Island streams is an example.⁴⁹⁷

Economic

Pests can cause economic losses because of reduction in production, quality, efficiency and or functionality. This can include lost crop or animal⁴⁹⁸ production, higher *water* requirements and reductions in animal health. Weeds can affect wool quality, impact the quality of leather,⁴⁹⁹ taint meat and milk, damage the feet of stock and, in some instances, be toxic.

Costs to agriculture, business and government to control pests and mitigate impacts are considerable, as are biosecurity costs to prevent pest incursion which are reflected in biosecurity fees and taxes. Biosecurity failure can have serious economic impacts on existing industries e.g. through the importation of fruit infected with fruitfly in a traveller's bag. Pests also adversely affect tourism through loss of landscape values (e.g. *wilding conifers pines*⁵⁰⁰) and *amenity values* (e.g. didymo compromising fishing) which lead to reduced visitor experiences. Human health problems caused by pests can have a related economic cost.⁵⁰¹

Weeds, for example, are conservatively estimated to cost the New Zealand economy \$1.6 billion per annum⁵⁰² in terms of loss of economic production, management and control costs. They also affect landscape amenity value and tourism experiences relied upon by the tourism sector. Weeds, including didymo and lake snow,⁵⁰³ can also adversely impact *infrastructure*, for example, *water* systems including irrigation, dams, and levies; ~~power systems (e.g. generation penstock, gates, valves, surge tanks, transmission lines);~~ electricity generation infrastructure⁵⁰⁴ and transportation systems (e.g. *road* beds, *lake* and *river* transportation, airstrips).

Social

⁴⁹³ 00223.042 Ngāi Tahu ki Murihiku

⁴⁹⁴ <https://www.royalsociety.org.nz/news/pests-costing-economy-and-environment-billions> (accessed 26 May 2021)

⁴⁹⁵ 00033.002 Port Blakely NZ Ltd

⁴⁹⁶ 00239.022 Federated Farmers

⁴⁹⁷ SL Goldson, GW Bourdôt, EG Brockerhoff, AE Byrom, MN Clout, MS McGlone, WA Nelson, AJ Popay, DM Suckling & MD Templeton (2015) New Zealand pest management: current and future challenges, *Journal of the Royal Society of New Zealand*, 45:1, 31-58, DOI: 10.1080/03036758.2014.1000343

⁴⁹⁸ 00239.022 Federated Farmers

⁴⁹⁹ 00239.022 Federated Farmers

⁵⁰⁰ 00033.002 Port Blakely NZ Ltd

⁵⁰¹ 00239.021 Federated Farmers

⁵⁰² <https://www.tandfonline.com/doi/abs/10.1080/14735903.2017.1334179?journalCode=tags20> (accessed 26 May 2021)

⁵⁰³ 00411.103 Wayfare Group Ltd

⁵⁰⁴ 00306.016 Meridian

Recreation values can be impacted through loss of amenity, access or landscape values. Pests can also cause human health problems. For example, some weed pollens can induce asthma and cause allergies (e.g. hay fever).⁵⁰⁵ Zoonoses (bacterium, viruses, parasites, prions) can result in diseases being transferred from animals to humans and include, for example, leptospirosis and campylobacter.

SRMR-I4 – Poorly managed urban and residential growth affects productive land, treasured natural assets, rural industry,⁵⁰⁶ *infrastructure* and community well-being

Statement

Natural resources used for urban development are permanently transformed – with the opportunity cost of removing urban activity being too high for land to revert to productive uses. Frequently, places that are attractive for urban growth also have landscape and productive values all of which must be balanced and where possible protected. The growth of ~~Wānaka~~Wanaka⁵⁰⁷ and Queenstown is changing the natural landscape. Mosgiel's and Cromwell's⁵⁰⁸ growth is occurring on some of Otago's most highly productive soil, which removes the option for agriculture. Towns like Arrowtown, Clyde and Milton experience poor air quality in winter, while experiencing pressure to grow.

Context

How urban areas function and grow now and in the future can directly impact on a significant proportion of the current and future urban population and correspondingly future environmental, economic, social and cultural outcomes and well-being. Most of Otago's population (87% or 225,186⁵⁰⁹ in 2018) live in urban areas, while non-urban areas comprise 99% of the region.⁵¹⁰ Otago's total population under a medium scenario is projected to increase by 20% between 2018 and 2048, with Queenstown-Lakes population projected to grow by 60%, Central Otago by 42%, Dunedin and Waitaki by 8%, and Clutha by 4% over the same period.⁵¹¹

Otago's urban areas, like its people and landscapes, are also diverse. The attraction of urban areas results from the benefits of proximity and access to a variety of other people, experiences, goods, services (e.g. shopping, education, specialist service providers, recreation and leisure facilities and *infrastructure* (usually described as agglomeration effect)). These are generally considered to exceed the inconveniences such as congestion, pollution, and noise. Growth in some urban areas and demand for living in and visiting Otago can also be driven by proximity and access to highly valued natural features, such as the coast, mountains, *lakes*, and *rivers*. The open space and landscapes provided in rural areas also drives demand for rural residential living, particularly in areas with these qualities that are also in relative proximity to urban services.

Well-functioning urban places need to be dynamic and efficient, enable human social interactions and provide a wide variety of housing, employment, service and recreational opportunities that meet changing needs and preferences, in a way that maximises the well-being of all its present and future inhabitants, and respects its history and historic heritage, its setting and the *environment*. This

⁵⁰⁵ <http://www.allergy.org.nz/site/allergyNZ/files/Annual%20Pollen%20Calendar.pdf> (accessed 26 May 2021)

⁵⁰⁶ 00213.015 Fonterra

⁵⁰⁷ 00226.024 Kāi Tahu ki Otago

⁵⁰⁸ 00236.025 Horticulture NZ

⁵⁰⁹ 2018 Census place summaries: Stats NZ. (n.d.). Retrieved June 29, 2020, from <https://www.stats.govt.nz/tools/2018-census-place-summaries/otago-region> (accessed 26 May 2021)

⁵¹⁰ The rural/urban area definitions in this paragraph are taken from Statistics New Zealand Urban/Rural Classification at the SA2 geographic level using usually resident population data from the 2018 Census

⁵¹¹ Statistics New Zealand Subnational Population Projections, 2018 base, published 31 March 2021 . (accessed 26 May 2021)

requires well located development, supported by the necessary infrastructure.

Urban growth, especially if it exceeds *infrastructure* capacity (either through sheer pace and scale or by lack of planning) or if it occurs in a way or at a rate that mean that appropriate *infrastructure* is not provided, is lagging or is inefficient, can result in adverse impacts on the *environment*, existing residents, business and wider society. ~~Quality urban environments are those that maximise the positive aspects of urban areas and minimise the negative.~~⁵¹²

In addition, the productive *land* in Otago contributes to the social and economic well-being of the community through production of food and other rural production-based products. In some parts of Otago, *land* and soil resources are particularly valuable for food production. However, where development occurs in a place or manner that removes or reduces the potential to use productive *land*, including through *reverse sensitivity effects*, the ability of *land* to support *primary production* is compromised.⁵¹³

Impact snapshot

Environmental

Urban areas and associated concentration of human activity result in adverse impacts on the natural *environment*, as a result of land consumption, landscape, waterway and vegetation modification for housing, industry, transport of goods and people and recreation areas, the diversion and use of *water*, and waste disposal and effluent and pollution *discharges* to air, *land* and *water*. Urban or rural lifestyle expansion can remove *land* and soil resources from productive uses, including for the production of food.⁵¹⁴ All of these can also impact *mana whenua* values. These impacts can also result in loss or impediment of access to important resources including significant biodiversity or natural features and landscapes. Poorly managed urban growth can lead to additional carbon emissions, this can create tensions between the need to increase residential housing stock and the need to meet carbon reduction targets.⁵¹⁵

Urban growth within *rural areas* development⁵¹⁶ can also lead to reverse-sensitivity *effects* on existing *primary production* activities and related rural based activities, because urban activities can be sensitive to the *effects* generated by *primary production* activities⁵¹⁷ and related rural based activities.⁵¹⁸ ~~whereby traditional methods of pest management or the undertaking of rural production activities cannot be deployed due the proximity of urban populations and the potential for adverse impacts on these populations.~~⁵¹⁹ Urban growth can also impact air quality, through increased vehicle use, but also particularly where *solid fuel* burners are used, noting they are the heating of choice in Otago. Urban areas such as Arrowtown, Cromwell, Alexandra, Clyde, Milton, and Mosgiel already do not meet National Environment Standards for Air Quality (NESAQ), for example. Emissions from existing domestic fuel burners account for more than 95% of winter *PM₁₀* emissions in all of these towns but Milton.⁵²⁰ Air quality in urban areas in Otago therefore needs to be addressed from two perspectives, dealing with existing problems and, in areas where further development is planned, addressing the additional impact that development may have.

⁵¹² 00411.105 Wayfare

⁵¹³ 00236.025 Horticulture NZ

⁵¹⁴ 00236.025 Horticulture NZ

⁵¹⁵ QLDC (not captured on SODR)

⁵¹⁶ 00208.004 AgResearch, 00410.002 Rural Contractors NZ

⁵¹⁷ 00208.004 AgResearch, 00410.002 Rural Contractors NZ

⁵¹⁸ 00213.015 Fonterra

⁵¹⁹ 00208.004 AgResearch, 00410.002 Rural Contractors NZ

⁵²⁰ "Alexandra, Arrowtown, Mosgiel and Milton Air Emission Inventory – 2016" & "Wanaka, Cromwell and Clyde Air Emission Inventory -2019", prepared by Emily Wilton, Environet Ltd, for Otago Regional Council.

Economic

While potentially providing short term commercial returns, poorly managed urban growth and development may result in long term impacts including:

- the loss of land for primary production activities productive land⁵²¹ (either directly through building on it, or indirectly through reverse sensitivity effects);
- the consequences of previous decisions (low density development, including rural lifestyle residential⁵²², in the short term can preclude higher density development in the medium to longer term);
- increased capital and operational costs for *infrastructure* which can foreclose other more suitable investments or spending, increased costs from less efficient spatial arrangements (such as increased transportation and *infrastructure* costs to both users and operators), and loss of valued natural capital and future opportunities; and
- housing affordability challenged are present in the region and are can be⁵²³ negatively affected by urban growth where demand outpaces supply.
- conflict arising from the location of incompatible activities within proximity of each other, including the potential for reverse sensitivity effects on the continued operation and growth of the rural based activities.⁵²⁴

~~In Otago, housing has been more affordable for homeowners than the NZ average in recent years, however house value growth has been higher in Otago (12.6% per annum) than the NZ average (7%) since 2017.~~⁵²⁵

The costs and negative impacts from 'over planning' for growth are much lower than the direct and wider costs and risks of under-planning, and largely relate to the provision of infrastructure ahead of demand. While this can cause financial and operational issues for infrastructure providers, undersized or delayed infrastructure also generates impacts for those providers, and the wider economy, through delayed, foregone, or less appropriate or efficient development, and contributes to rising housing and land costs.

Social

Adverse impacts from inefficient or poorly planned urban development affect the well-being of both individuals and communities. This shows up as health risks as a result of increased air pollution and *water* pollution, decreased social capital and mental health in fragmented, disconnected and dispersed communities and inequality impacts arising from less-competitive land and house markets and reduced housing choice and access to affordable housing.

Changes in the overall number of people and changes in preferences can alter the relative balance between supply and demand for housing and where supply is unable to respond in a timely way to demand, this can impact on prices for housing, including rent. These impacts can disproportionately affect people on lower incomes who may already face affordability issues, and accordingly have less options. While Otago has traditionally been relatively affordable, house prices have risen rapidly

⁵²¹ 00322.006 Fulton Hogan

⁵²² Clause 10(2)(b)(i), Schedule 1, RMA – Consequential amendment arising from 00221.016 Silver Fern Farms, 00236.103 Horticulture NZ

⁵²³ 00138.004 QLDC

⁵²⁴ 00213.016 Fonterra

⁵²⁵ 00138.004 QLDC

across almost all districts, at a rate higher than the national average.

Transportation of goods and people between and within urban areas can also generate impacts on humans. For example, increased traffic congestion and lack of safe and attractive alternatives within urban areas impacts people and businesses living near to high volume traffic routes, resulting in lost time for family and other activities for those who use them, and deaths and serious injuries on the transport network.⁵²⁶ ~~road fatalities on rural highways.~~

Urban growth has the potential, through good development planning and provision of appropriate infrastructure, to improve well-being by providing an increased range of housing types in more locations, resulting in greater range of prices. Well planned subdivisions provide opportunities to increase public access to natural environments, including to the coast (e.g. via esplanades, *lakes, rivers* and their margins), to protect areas of cultural or historic significance and to provide means or other measures for their protection, such as through restrictive covenants. Poorly managed growth can compromise both access to and protection of natural and cultural environments, and as subdivision and development is effectively permanent and irreversible, it is important that it is done well with an eye to the longer term.

SRMR-15 – Freshwater demand exceeds capacity in some places

Statement

In *water-short* catchments, *freshwater* availability may not be able to meet competing demands from the health and well-being needs of the *environment*, the health and well-being needs of people, and the ability of people and communities to provide for their social, economic and cultural well-being. Many of these catchments are also experiencing urban growth, changes in rural *land* uses, and increased demand for hydro-electric generation. Individually and cumulatively these can alter demand including further increases in demand on *freshwater* supply. Some catchments are complex, making it challenging to identify or mitigate these *effects*.

Context

Freshwater, including *rivers* and streams, *lakes*, *groundwater* systems, and *wetlands*, is a finite resource, critical to the environment, society and the economy. In Otago, access to, allocation, and *use* of *freshwater* reflects current demands and historical development associated with “deemed permits” (water permits under the RMA 1991) and a permissive water resource management regime. The deemed permits originated from mining licences issued under historic mining legislation and which enable water to continue to be used for a range of uses until October 2021.

Population growth and land-use intensification in urban and rural environments can create increased demand for *freshwater* for human consumption, irrigation, renewable electricity generation⁵²⁷ and other ~~economic~~⁵²⁸ uses. *Freshwater* resources in some places are reaching, or are beyond, their sustainable abstraction limits. However, there continues to be debate in the community about how historical *freshwater* allocations can be adjusted to prioritise protection of the health and well-being of *water bodies*, meet the health needs of people and provide for ~~achieve a balance of~~⁵²⁹ economic, ~~environmental~~, social and cultural well-being needs.⁵³⁰

On 3 September 2020, new National Environmental Standards for Freshwater (NESF) and a new National

⁵²⁶ 00139.017 DCC

⁵²⁷ FPI016.009 Meridian

⁵²⁸ FPI047.009 Horticulture NZ

⁵²⁹ FPI027.010 Contact

⁵³⁰ FPI027.010 Contact

Policy Statement for Freshwater Management (NPSFM)⁵³¹ came into force. They have a goal of making immediate improvements so that improving⁵³² freshwater quality is materially improving⁵³³ within five years, reversing past degradation damage⁵³⁴ and bringing New Zealand's freshwater resources, waterways and ecosystems to a healthy state within a generation. The NPS-FM also clarified the need to provide first for the health and well-being of *water bodies* and *freshwater* ecosystems; then health and needs of people (such as *drinking water*); and finally the ability of people and communities to provide for their social, economic, and cultural well-being, now and in the future.

Impact snapshot

Environmental

Freshwater abstraction can reduce *water* level or flow and connections between different *water bodies*. This can negatively impact ecosystems by affecting⁵³⁵ *freshwater* habitat size and the shape and condition of the *water body*, including *bed*, banks, margin, riparian vegetation, connections to *groundwater*, *water* chemistry (for example by increasing concentrations of pollutants), and interaction between species and their habitat. How much an ecosystem is affected by taking *freshwater* is determined by departure from natural flow regimes, taking into account magnitude, frequency, timing, duration and rate of change, and ecosystem capacity to recover.

Economic

Freshwater in the Otago region is a factor of production that directly contributes to human needs (urban⁵³⁶ water supply), primary production, agriculture (including irrigation),⁵³⁷ industry and⁵³⁸ hydro-electric power supply, and mineral extraction⁵³⁹. *Freshwater* also indirectly contributes to the tourism industry through maintenance of *freshwater* assets for aesthetic and commercial recreational purposes. Lack of *freshwater* can negatively impact economic output of those industries that rely on *water* in the production process. To varying degrees these impacts can be mitigated through *water* efficiency measures and innovation. At the same time other industries, such as tourism that rely on the aesthetic characteristic of *rivers* and *lakes*, do not have such opportunities available to them and instead rely on management regimes that sustain flows and *water* levels suitable for their activities.

Social

Ensuring appropriate *freshwater* supply for human use is essential, including is available⁵⁴⁰ as part of planned urban growth and to support rural communities⁵⁴¹ is essential⁵⁴². It is possible this may require consideration of additional *freshwater* storage in the future. For the wider community, water is a source of kai and for food harvesting and food production.⁵⁴³ The region's freshwater assets also support a range of recreation uses, for example camping, fishing, water sports, and swimming. These values are strongly linked to environmental, health, landscape and aesthetic⁵⁴⁴ values and as such, reduced

⁵³¹ <https://www.mfe.govt.nz/fresh-water/freshwater-acts-and-regulations/national-policy-statement-freshwater-management> (accessed 26 May 2021)

⁵³² FPI025.010 Beef + Lamb and DINZ, FPI026.006 Federated Farmers

⁵³³ FPI025.010 Beef + Lamb and DINZ, FPI026.006 Federated Farmers

⁵³⁴ FPI027.010 Contact, FPI026.006 Federated Farmers

⁵³⁵ Clapcott, 2018, Our Freshwater 2020

⁵³⁶ Consequential amendment to FPI026.008 Federated Farmers, FPI023.003 Moutere Station

⁵³⁷ FPI041.001 McArthur Ridge Vineyard

⁵³⁸ FPI019.001 Fonterra, FPI020.008 Silver Fern Farms

⁵³⁹ Consequential amendment to FPI041.001 McArthur Ridge Vineyard

⁵⁴⁰ FPI038.020 NZSki, FPI039.022 Realnz

⁵⁴¹ FPI026.008 Federated Farmers, FPI023.003 Moutere Station

⁵⁴² FPI038.020 NZSki, FPI039.022 Realnz

⁵⁴³ FPI047.009 Horticulture NZ

⁵⁴⁴ FPI037.007 Fish and Game

environmental flows have a corresponding negative impact on social and cultural values, including people's wellbeing.⁵⁴⁵

SRMR–I6 – Declining *water* quality has adverse *effects* on the *environment*, our communities, and the economy

Statement

While the pristine areas of Otago generally maintain very⁵⁴⁶ good *water* quality, some areas of Otago demonstrate poorer quality and declining trends in *water* quality which can often⁵⁴⁷ be attributed to *discharges* from *land use* intensification (both rural and urban) and *land* management practices. Erosion, run-off and soil loss can lead to sediment and nutrients being deposited into *freshwater* bodies resulting in declining *water* quality.

Context

The health of *water* is vital for the health of the *environment*, people and the economy. It is at the heart of culture and identity. Nationally, and in parts of Otago, *freshwater* is facing significant pressure. Population growth and land-use intensification in urban and rural environments has impacted the quality of *water*, increasing contamination from nutrients and sediment.

Water quality affects a wide range of environmental health factors, human health and⁵⁴⁸ survival needs, and cultural, social, recreational, and economic uses. Some of the biggest impacts on *water* quality in Otago are considered to come from agriculture and urbanisation, through diffuse *discharges* and point source *discharges*.

On 3 September 2020, new National Environmental Standards (NESF) and a new National Policy Statement (NPSFM)⁵⁴⁹ came into force to make immediate improvements to improve⁵⁵⁰ *water* quality within five years; and reverse past degradation damage⁵⁵¹ and bring New Zealand's *freshwater* resources, waterways and ecosystems to a healthy state within a generation.

Impact snapshot

Environmental

Despite the region's *lakes* and *rivers* being highly valued by Otago communities, reports indicate that in many areas⁵⁵² there are reasons for concern about *water* quality and its trends with consequent potential impact on ecosystems and people.

Water quality across Otago is variable. *River water* quality is best at *river* and stream reaches located at high or mountainous elevations under predominantly native vegetation cover, and mostly good in the upper areas of large river catchment and outlets from large *lakes*. *Water* quality is generally poorer in smaller low-elevation streams and coastal shallow lakes where they receive water from upstream pastoral areas or urban catchments. For example, catchments such as the Waiareka Creek, Kaikorai

⁵⁴⁵ FPI037.007 Fish and Game, FPI038.020 NZSki, FPI039.022 Realnz

⁵⁴⁶ FPI038.021 NZSki, FPI039.023 Realnz

⁵⁴⁷ FPI026.011 Federated Farmers

⁵⁴⁸ FPI047.010 Horticulture NZ, FPI043.023 OWRUG

⁵⁴⁹ <https://www.mfe.govt.nz/fresh-water/freshwater-acts-and-regulations/national-policystatement-freshwater-management> (accessed 26 May 2021)

⁵⁵⁰ FPI026.012 Federated Farmers, FPI025.011 Beef + Lamb and DINZ

⁵⁵¹ FPI026.012 Federated Farmers

⁵⁵² FPI043.023 OWRUG

Stream, and sub-catchments within⁵⁵³ the lower Clutha rohe catchment⁵⁵⁴, have some of the poorest worst⁵⁵⁵ *water* quality in the region; Otago's central lakes are impacted by increased population, urban development and tourism demand; other areas, such as urban streams in Dunedin, intensified catchments in North Otago and some tributaries, also have poor *water* quality.⁵⁵⁶ Between 2006 and 2017, trends in a number of *water* quality parameters were worsening.⁵⁵⁷

For *E. coli*, for example, 30% of sites had a probable or significant worsening trend compared to 7% of sites that had either stable or improving trends. In urban streams in Dunedin, intensified catchments in North Otago and some tributaries of the Poumāhaka Pomahaka⁵⁵⁸, *E. coli* was the worst performing variable⁵⁵⁹. In many cases, the specific source of contamination is unknown.

There are many different types and sizes of *lakes* in Otago. ORC monitors *water* quality in *lakes*, of which eight have generally shown good *water* quality. There have been concerns within the community about the quality of *water* in Lakes Wānaka, Whakatipu Waimāori/Lake Wakatipu⁵⁶⁰ and Lake⁵⁶¹ Hayes.

Groundwater quality also varies across the region, with some areas having elevated *E. coli* and nitrate concentrations above the NZ Drinking Water Standards. The main areas with elevated nitrate concentrations are North Otago and the Lower Clutha. Some bores across the region have exceeded the drinking water standards for *E. coli*; highlighting localized problems, likely due to inadequate bore head security. In addition to human sources of poorer groundwater quality, low groundwater quality from natural or geologic sources may also affect the potability of bore water throughout Otago (e.g. naturally occurring arsenic or boron concentrations found in bores associated with particularly geologies).

Stock entering *water bodies* can lead to pugging and destruction of riparian soils and *beds* that play an important role in filtering *contaminants*, as well as excreting directly in waterways. The growing practice of wintering cattle in Otago can exacerbate leaching *effects*, which may not connect to surface *water* until spring, creating spikes in nutrient loads.⁵⁶²

Sediment is a key issue for *freshwater* quality throughout Otago, including coastal estuaries where it can significantly impact the life supporting capacity of waterways. Urban development is a key generator of sediment input to *lakes* and *rivers* in Central Otago, from *building* platforms and from *stormwater* contamination. Activities such as agricultural land use intensification⁵⁶³, mining, and forestry also contribute.

Agricultural land use⁵⁶⁴ intensification also contributes to nutrients (nitrogen and phosphorus) leaching into underlying *groundwater* or running off into surface *water bodies*, and can also increase the risk of *E. coli* contamination from animal waste.

Urban environmental *contaminants* include hydrocarbons, and metals from *roads* and *structures*. They often wash into urban *stormwater* systems and pass unfiltered into *water bodies*, or the *coastal marine area*. *Stormwater effects*, particularly in urban areas, are poorly understood. *Wastewater* and *stormwater* systems may not be adequate in some places due to aging *infrastructure*, rapid growth pressure, or insufficient investment in replacement or upgrades. Overflows of *wastewater* (*sewage* and waste products) create significant *risks* for *water* quality. These can enter the *environment* either directly

⁵⁵³ FPI026.013 Federated Farmers

⁵⁵⁴ FPI026.013 Federated Farmers

⁵⁵⁵ FPI026.013 Federated Farmers

⁵⁵⁶ Rachel Ozanne and Adam Uyendaal (2017) *State of the Environment Surface Water Quality in Otago 2006 to 2017*: Otago Regional Council p ii

⁵⁵⁷ *Ibid.*

⁵⁵⁸ FPI030.049 Kāi Tahu ki Otago

⁵⁵⁹ *Ibid.*

⁵⁶⁰ FPI030.049 Kāi Tahu ki Otago

⁵⁶¹ Clause 10(2)(b)(i), Schedule 1, RMA – consequential amendment arising from FPI030.049 Kāi Tahu ki Otago

⁵⁶² Science Staff Survey, June 2020.

⁵⁶³ FPI019.002 Fonterra, FPI043.023 OWRUG

⁵⁶⁴ FPI043.023 OWRUG

or through *stormwater* systems, particularly in flood events.

Economic

Water pollution (from nutrients, chemicals, pathogens, ~~and~~ sediment and other contaminants)⁵⁶⁵ can have far-reaching *effects* potentially impacting tourism, property values, commercial fishing, recreational businesses, and many other sectors that depend on clean *water*.⁵⁶⁶

These impacts can be direct (varying the quality of primary production outputs such as fish); increasing costs of production through mitigation or remediation costs (*drinking water* treatment cost, riparian restoration); loss of enjoyment and benefit from tourism uses, and indirect such as cost to human health and associated medical costs, or reduction in brand value (e.g. Brand New Zealand).

Social

For the wider community, *water* is a source of kai ~~and~~ for harvesting and food production. *Water* is also a source⁵⁶⁷ of recreation, including swimming, fishing and *water* sports. There are multiple dimensions to the way *water* quality impacts on peoples' interaction with *water bodies*, including environmental, health, landscape, and aesthetic factors.⁵⁶⁸ Otago's *rivers, lakes, estuaries* and bays are important destinations for recreational use including swimming, fishing and *water* sports. Eighty-two percent of Otago's *rivers* and *lakes* are swimmable.⁵⁶⁹ Where *water* quality cannot support these activities, the lifestyle of those living in Otago is impacted.

Degraded *water* quality reduces the mauri of the *water* and the habitats and species it supports, therefore also negatively affecting mahika kai and taoka species and places. This constitutes a loss of Kāi Tahu culture, affecting the intergenerational transfer of knowledge handed down from tūpuna over hundreds of years; and it culminates in a diminishing of loss of rakatirataka and⁵⁷⁰ mana.

⁵⁶⁵ FPI026.014 Federated Farmers

⁵⁶⁶ <https://www.epa.gov/nutrientpollution/effects-economy> (accessed 26 May 2021)

⁵⁶⁷ FPI043.023 OWRUG

⁵⁶⁸ FPI037.008 Fish and Game

⁵⁶⁹ This estimate applies to larger rivers and lakes, defined as "rivers that are fourth order in the River Environment Classification system and lakes with a perimeter of 1.5km or more" – ORC Policy Committee Report – 29 Nov 2018 - PPRM1843

⁵⁷⁰ FPI030.014 Kāi Tahu ki Otago

SRMR–17 – Rich and varied *biodiversity* has been lost or degraded due to human activities and the presence of pests and predators

Statement

Fragmentation, loss and isolation of populations and communities of indigenous species has been ongoing across New Zealand, and Otago is no exception. *Biodiversity* mapping indicates Otago is one of the most modified regions in New Zealand⁵⁷¹. This can be attributed to habitat loss, land use changes, vegetation clearance and the presence of pests and predators. Further, many of these *effects* are a result of the cumulative changes of past and current development. These cumulative *effects* have often not been identified, managed or measured. Leadership and coordination of the various initiatives to address *biodiversity* loss has also been lacking.

Context

Otago is notable for the diversity of its landscapes, ecosystems, and climatic conditions. With that comes a diverse range of important *biodiversity* values which are at *risk*. These include rare ecosystems such as inland saline habitats, nationally rare *lake* and *river* systems, endemic and threatened lizard and fish species and important and diverse marine and coastal habitats.

Ecosystems are an interacting system of living and non-living parts such as sunlight, air, *water*, *minerals* and nutrients. *Biological diversity* (hereafter called *biodiversity*) describes the variety of all living things, including the range of species living in our *environments*, their genetics, and the ecosystems where they live. New Zealand's high level of indigenous *biodiversity* makes a unique contribution to the world's *biodiversity*. Otago is a good example of the enormous diversity in New Zealand's natural environment from toroa (albatross) and hoiho (yellow-eyed penguins) on the Otago Peninsula to the endangered species (for example, skinks) of Central Otago, the kea of the Southern Alps, galaxias species as well as the internationally significant braided *rivers* and their ecosystems.

The health of New Zealand's *biodiversity* has declined significantly since the arrival of humans. Environment Aotearoa 2019⁵⁷² found that our indigenous *biodiversity* is under significant pressure from introduced species, pollution, physical changes to our *environment* and harvesting of wild species.

Almost 4,000 native species are currently threatened with, or at *risk* of, extinction. The information available indicates Otago's *biodiversity* faces the same challenges.

Impact snapshot

Environmental

Threats to *biodiversity* in Otago include invasive species (weeds and predators), vegetation clearing, land fragmentation and grassland "improvement", poor *water* quality (nutrients and sediments), dredging and overfishing.

There are 61 ~~62~~⁵⁷³ ecosystems in the Otago region.⁵⁷⁴ Whilst the average ecosystem extent compared to pre- European settlement is 62%, over 17 communities have been reduced to less than 40% extent. Forest communities have declined substantially, for example kahikatea forests have been reduced to

⁵⁷¹ Wildlands (2020). Unpublished Consultancy Report to Otago Regional Council R5015a. Mapping of potential natural ecosystems and current ecosystems in Otago region. Added through 00239.026 Federated Farmers

⁵⁷² <https://environment.govt.nz/assets/Publications/Files/environment-aotearoa-2019.pdf> (accessed 26 May 2021)

⁵⁷³ Clause 16(2), Schedule 1, RMA

⁵⁷⁴ Wildlands (2020). Unpublished Consultancy Report to Otago Regional Council R5015a. Mapping of potential natural ecosystems and current ecosystems in Otago region.

3.9% of pre-European extent. Matai, totara, broadleaved forest (6.5%) and Kirk's scurvy grass herbfield/loamfield (7.1%) have also been significantly reduced. ~~There are six ecosystems with less than 10 hectares remaining.~~⁵⁷⁵

Impacts of human activities are evident both in terms of species and ecosystems. Some 44% of Otago's bird species are threatened or at *risk*; 88% of lizard species; and 72% of indigenous fish species. Inland Otago has degraded native fish communities, due to anthropogenic alteration of waterways (such as damming, abstraction, bed manipulation, draining wetlands), the discharge of contaminants⁵⁷⁶ ~~the presence of the Clutha dams and their effects on eel populations~~ and trout predation on native galaxiids. This is illustrated by the low scores for Otago's rivers in the *freshwater* fish index of biotic integrity.

The extent of impacts on marine species and environments is not well understood. Sedimentation and nutrients entrapped in land run-off⁵⁷⁷ is known to have contributed to the loss of kelp forests.⁵⁷⁸ In addition to sedimentation, other human impacts on kelp forests include rising sea surface temperatures associated with climate change, the introduction of invasive species and fishing⁵⁷⁹ and trophic cascades from fishing pressure; together with downward trends in fish and crayfish catches.⁵⁸⁰ There has been a 70% decline in the abundance of hoiho (yellow-eyed penguin) on the Otago coast since 2008⁵⁸¹ and ~~downward trends in ngohi (fish) and koura (crayfish) catches.~~⁵⁸² The effects of *climate change* will add significantly to *risks* of continuing *biodiversity* decline.

Economic

Biodiversity and ecosystem services underpin primary production⁵⁸³ ~~agriculture~~ (ecosystem services such as *water*, soil *biodiversity*, pest protection, pollination) and tourism (the "clean green" image of "pure New Zealand" is related to a public perception of Otago's healthy *environment* and *biodiversity*).

Short-term impacts of loss of productivity or increased costs of pest management occur and longer-term impacts of net loss of natural capital in the region over time are also of concern. The economic costs of lost productivity due to pests, erosion and damage to land, are likely to be significant and there is potential for loss of *biodiversity* to adversely impact on the economy.

Social

Biodiversity is a significant contributor to the community's recreational experiences and intrinsic values. *Biodiversity* loss will adversely impact those values and experiences. Some introduced species such as trout, deer and pigs have social and recreation values but ~~may~~⁵⁸⁴ also have impacts on native ecosystems and species.

⁵⁷⁵ 00231.027 Fish & Game

⁵⁷⁶ 00231.027 Fish & Game

⁵⁷⁷ 00303.001 Fisheries New Zealand

⁵⁷⁸ Schiel et al. 2006, Sediment on rocky intertidal reefs: Effects on early post-settlement stages of habitat-forming seaweeds, *Journal of Experimental Marine Biology and Ecology* 331(2):158-172 (reference provided by Department of Conservation)

⁵⁷⁹ 00303.001 Fisheries New Zealand

⁵⁸⁰ 00125.023 Otago Rock Lobster

⁵⁸¹ Department of Conservation, 2008, Unpublished data.

⁵⁸² 00125.023 Otago Rock Lobster

⁵⁸³ 00239.026 Federated Farmers

⁵⁸⁴ 00230.026 Forest and Bird

SRMR–I8 – Otago’s coast is a rich natural, cultural and economic resource that is under threat from a range of terrestrial and marine activities

Statement

Otago’s coast provides habitat for rare species (including toroa and hoiho), comprises some of the region’s outstanding natural⁵⁸⁵ landscapes, is a rich food source, provides many recreation opportunities, is the location for some industries, and has potential for further economic use (aquaculture). Threats to it are not always well understood and not always well managed. From the sedimentation *effects* of inland development to waste disposal, human activity puts stress on the marine and coastal environment. Some of those activities, like port activities and tourism, are also vital to the region’s economic well-being.

Context

Otago’s coastal environment includes land adjoining the coast where coastal characteristics apply (as outlined in NZCPS Policy 1), and the coastal marine area⁵⁸⁶ ~~is generally considered to extend from the land that forms the first significant ridgeline out to the twelve nautical mile seaward limit.~~ The coastal environment is a finite resource which is sensitive to change. Recent rapid expansion of some types of coastal development is a significant issue for the sustainable management of the coastal environment of Otago.

Activities occurring within or affecting the coastal environment include urban development, recreational activities, transport *infrastructure*, energy generation and transmission, land and marine based (e.g. aquaculture) food production industries and other rural industry activities, carbon forestry and⁵⁸⁷ *plantation forestry*, fishing, tourism, and *mineral* extraction. Such activities are⁵⁸⁸ ~~can be~~ important contributors to the ~~existing and future~~⁵⁸⁹ health and well-being of communities, when they are located and managed appropriately. A number of these activities provide a significant contribution to the regional economy.

Dunedin is a major coastal city with increasing urban development. It also hosts *infrastructure* of national significance such as Port Otago and associated *road* transport networks servicing the Otago region and beyond which contribute to and facilitate regional economic and social development.

The community values the coast for its landscapes, natural character, recreational uses and associated habitat for biodiversity. Recreational activities such as boating, fishing, swimming and general beach access are interconnected with coastal values. Conserving coastal biodiversity and marine reserves are associated with coastal values.⁵⁹⁰ A key challenge is the protection of the coast’s natural and cultural assets while enabling economic and social development opportunities to be realised.

Impact snapshot

Impacts of hazards, climate change, pests, fresh⁵⁹¹ water, and biodiversity loss, which have been discussed above, all impact the coast. Urban development and population pressure can amplify these effects.

Environmental

⁵⁸⁵ 00411.116 Wayfare

⁵⁸⁶ 00137.035 DOC

⁵⁸⁷ 00239.027 Federated Farmers

⁵⁸⁸ 00411.117 Wayfare

⁵⁸⁹ 00411.117 Wayfare

⁵⁹⁰ ORC Committee Report, *RPS Consultation Summary*, ORC Agenda 27 May 2020

⁵⁹¹ 00223.047 Ngāi Tahu ki Murihiku

These impacts can affect natural processes. For example, poor water quality can result in degradation of estuarine and ocean chemistry with adverse impacts on ecosystems, including coastal *wetlands* and marshes, benthic muds, subtidal and inter-tidal area muds/sands, reefs, and marine vegetation areas (e.g. sea grasses, kelp). Ecosystems and indigenous biodiversity, and their flora and fauna (from zooplankton to whales) can be impacted by urban and industrial development, pests, and climate change leading to biodiversity loss.

Natural features, landscapes, seascapes, and *surf breaks* of national significance can be affected by human activity, climate change, and natural hazards. Susceptibility Vulnerability⁵⁹² to these impacts is determined by susceptibility, spatial scale, frequency, functional impact/consequence, recovery capacity/time, and likelihood of the impact's occurrence. Around Dunedin, for example, impacts include nutrients and contaminants from Dunedin stormwater which impact on coastal waters and estuaries; declining hoiho (yellow-eyed penguins) numbers due to introduced predators and domestic pets; whilst recovering seal and sealion numbers can create conflict with recreational *uses* on the coast; and beach erosion at ~~St. Clair in Dunedin~~⁵⁹³ can impact social values and beach recreation *use*.

Economic

Deterioration of coastal assets and values causes loss of production and income, increases *infrastructure* costs and costs of production, and loss of property values. There are also costs associated with mitigation, for example in the case of coastal erosion. Other economic impacts include recreation and tourism industries being adversely impacted by degraded coastal environments; marine industry production suffering because of poor *water* quality; dredging of sedimentation; and costs of mitigating adverse impacts, e.g. combatting invasive pests.

Social

Impacts on the coastal environment and its associated unique values include those on its landscapes and landforms, those on it as a place to live and work and for recreation activities, those on access, and those which give rise to coastal deterioration and which compromise general enjoyment and amenity for communities.

SRMR–I9 – Otago lakes are subject to pressures from tourism and population growth

Statement

The beauty, recreational opportunities and regional climate of Lakes Wānaka ~~Wanaka~~⁵⁹⁴, Whakatipu Waimāori/Lake Wakatipu, Lake⁵⁹⁵ Hāwea and Te Wairere/Lake⁵⁹⁶ Dunstan and their environs attract visitors and residents from around the region, the country and the world. This influx supports human health and well-being and⁵⁹⁷ brings economic opportunity, but the activities and services created to take advantage of it can degrade the *environment* and undermine the experience that underpins their attractiveness.

⁵⁹² 00230.020 Forest and Bird

⁵⁹³ 00120.022 Yellow – eyed Penguin Trust

⁵⁹⁴ FPI027.038 Contact, FPI042.142 Te Rūnanga o Ngāi Tahu, FPI042.132 Ngāi Tahu ki Murihiku

⁵⁹⁵ Clause 10(2)(b)(i), Schedule 1, RMA – consequential amendment arising from FPI030.049 Kāi Tahu ki Otago

⁵⁹⁶ FPI030.049 Kāi Tahu ki Otago

⁵⁹⁷ FPI037.009 Fish and Game

Context

Healthy *lakes* are one of Otago's most valued natural resources and for the most part *water* quality is good. The values assigned to *lakes* include the natural features and landscapes, the quality and quantity of *water* accessible to the Otago communities, the accessibility of these resources for recreation, the health of native flora and fauna associated with Otago's *rivers* and *lakes*, and renewable electricity generation energy production.⁵⁹⁸

Urban growth is adversely affecting the natural features and landscapes around the lakes. The amount of growth is demonstrated in the Queenstown Lakes District, including Queenstown and Wānaka ~~Wanaka~~⁵⁹⁹, where the population tripled in the last 20 years from 16,750 in 1999 to 47,400 in 2020.⁶⁰⁰ Continued growth is projected over the 30 years from 2020 to 2050 (by 63%).⁶⁰¹

This desire of ~~New Zealanders and international visitors~~⁶⁰² to enjoy the outstanding natural environments of the Otago *lakes* has placed significant pressures on the *environment*, transport, energy and other *infrastructure*, health services and social structures. At the same time the economy of the Otago lakes area is heavily dependent on tourism. For example in 2020, tourism employment accounted for an estimated 56% (or 17,758) of the jobs in the Queenstown-Lakes district; tourism GDP accounted for 43.7% (or NZ \$1.7 billion) of the district's GDP and international tourism contributed 64% (or NZ \$1.89 billion).⁶⁰³ The Otago-Lakes area also supplies significant renewable electricity energy⁶⁰⁴ for use in Otago and beyond.

Impact snapshot

Environmental

Population pressures arising from urban development, and tourism population pressures are impacting on the *environment*. Lake Wānaka, ~~Wanaka~~, Lake Hāwea, and Whakatipu Waimāori/ Lake Wakatipu⁶⁰⁵, as well as the Kawarau River and upper reaches of the Clutha Mata-au and Taiari ~~Taiari~~⁶⁰⁶ Rivers all have good *water* quality which equates to the "A" band (being top/best level) for the *National Objectives Framework*.⁶⁰⁷

However, *water* quality is being adversely impacted by increased population, urban development and tourism demand which is straining existing waste management infrastructure. In addition, localised degradation of some areas is occurring due to overuse and unregulated use (e.g. freedom camping). The amenity of these areas is being compromised in some places by over-crowding.

Recreation *use* impacts on the *environment* can be a *risk*, for example the distribution of pest species can be accelerated as has occurred for lake snow and *Lagarosiphon* weeds being spread by recreation boating movements. Natural features and landscape values can be⁶⁰⁸ ~~are also~~ adversely impacted by tourism and urban growth, and electricity generation energy production.⁶⁰⁹

⁵⁹⁸ FPI027.012 Contact

⁵⁹⁹ FPI027.038 Contact, FPI042.142 Te Rūnanga o Ngāi Tahu, FPI042.132 Ngāi Tahu ki Murihiku

⁶⁰⁰ Infometrics online database (February 2021)

⁶⁰¹ Queenstown-Lakes District Council demand projections by Utility

⁶⁰² FPI046.002 QLDC

⁶⁰³ Infometrics online database; (February 2021)

⁶⁰⁴ FPI027.012 Contact

⁶⁰⁵ FPI030.049 Kāi Tahu ki Otago

⁶⁰⁶ FPI030.049 Kāi Tahu ki Otago

⁶⁰⁷ Land, Air, Water, Aotearoa: <https://www.lawa.org.nz/explore-data/otago-region/> (accessed 26 May 2021).

⁶⁰⁸ 00318.004 Contact

⁶⁰⁹ FPI027.012 Contact

Economic

The economic benefits of urban development, tourism, primary production, agriculture,⁶¹⁰ energy production renewable electricity generation⁶¹¹ and water supply can be positive for the Otago-Lakes' communities and visitors. It also impacts on the region's natural assets with a growing cost to the region that puts at *risk* the *environment* highly prized by residents and visitors. There are also impacts between industry sectors.

For example, the clean green image of New Zealand, of which the Otago Lakes area is symbolic, is at *risk* of being compromised if the quality of lakes becomes degraded or visitor numbers exceed the servicing capacity of the district. ~~because of over-crowding in peak tourism seasons.~~⁶¹² This has the potential to adversely affect the existing regional economy and future economic development; and the tourism industry's social licence to operate. At the same time tourism can negatively impact on how primary production agriculture⁶¹³ can operate, potentially limiting its contribution to the regional economy.

Urban development brings economic development and improved opportunities and standards of living to the Otago lakes area but can adversely impact on both the *environment* and how primary production agriculture⁶¹⁴ can operate.

Social

Over-crowding impacts can⁶¹⁵ adversely affect urban amenity and recreation experiences of both tourists and residents, particularly outdoor recreation such as fishing and water sports, and urban amenity.⁶¹⁶ Infrastructure capacity limits can, for example, result in an increased number of wastewater overflows to the environment when demand on the network exceeds capacity. These can have significant adverse impacts on human health as well as recreational amenity.

SRMR-I10A – The social, cultural and economic well-being of Otago's communities depends on the use and development of natural and physical resources, but that use and development can compromise or conflict with the achievement of environmental outcomes

Statement

The ability to access and use natural and physical resources, including for infrastructure, primary production, mineral and aggregate extraction, tourism and industrial activities, is essential for the social, cultural and economic well-being of the region. Access to, and the ability to use, natural and physical resources can be impacted by regulatory changes, incompatible land uses, natural hazards and climate change. Equally, the use and development of the region's natural and physical resources can have adverse effects on the environment which need to be appropriately managed.

Context

The well-being of Otago's communities relies on the ability to access and use the region's natural and physical resources. The quality of these resources and the ability to access them has a direct bearing on the well-being of people and communities in the region.

⁶¹⁰ FPI043.026 OWRUG

⁶¹¹ FPI027.012 Contact

⁶¹² FPI 038.023 NZSki, FPI039.025 Realnz

⁶¹³ FPI043.026 OWRUG

⁶¹⁴ FPI043.026 OWRUG

⁶¹⁵ 00411.123 Wayfare

⁶¹⁶ FPI 038.023 NZSki, FPI039.025 Realnz, 00206.090 Trojan

Failing to plan and provide for activities that contribute to the regional economy can have an adverse socioeconomic consequences. Conversely, failure of activities to sustainably manage their impact on natural and physical resources can also lead to poor socioeconomic outcomes.

Appropriate access and use of natural and physical resource needs a planning framework that recognises and provides for the essential operational, locational and functional requirements of activities while managing the adverse effects of these activities. The ongoing effects of climate change (addressed elsewhere in the Issues section) will have an ongoing impact on the operation of activities.

Impact snapshot

Environmental

The use of natural and physical resources can have adverse effects on the environment, which need to be appropriately managed to avoid, remedy or mitigate the adverse effects. Loss or degradation of resources can diminish their intrinsic values. Some of Otago's resources are nationally or regionally important for their natural values and economic potential and so warrant careful management.

However, it is recognised that the natural environment can benefit as activities change how they interact with, access and use natural resources. Activities that use natural and physical resources can achieve positive environmental outcomes, for example riparian planting, habitat restoration and enhancement, public access, and pest control activities. This can be as mitigation or compensation for the effects of activities or as contributions from economically sustainable activities in the region. Some activities, for example renewable electricity generation and other infrastructure, will have a significant role to play in addressing climate change.

Economic

Activities that rely on natural and physical resources generate direct and indirect economic benefits; therefore, their ability to operate, or to improve their operational efficiency, affects the economy of the region.

The ability to access and use natural and physical resources may impact the ability of activities to optimise the use of investments and assets and realise their potential economic value.

Activities that rely on natural and physical resources also rely on clear regulatory settings to inform investment decision-making about the use and development of natural and physical resources.

Social

The ability for activities to access and use natural and physical resources provides for the social and cultural well-being of people and communities including by supporting employment, livability, recreation, resilience, food security and investment into communities. Inappropriately located subdivision, use and development can increase the potential for harm to human health arising from incompatible activities locating in close proximity to each other.⁶¹⁷

SRMR–I10 – Economic and domestic activities in Otago use natural resources but do not always properly account for the environmental stresses or the future impacts they cause

⁶¹⁷ 00322.004 Fulton Hogan, 00314.009 Transpower, 00315.015 Aurora, 00310.003 The Telecommunication Companies, 00213.018 Fonterra, 00236.029, 00236.033 Horticulture NZ, 00231.022 Otago Fish and Game, 00235.058 OWRUG, 00411.097 Wayfare

Statement

Sediment from poorly managed⁶¹⁸ development and primary production forestry⁶¹⁹ activities flows⁶²⁰ into streams and builds up in the coastal environment, smothering kelp forests and affecting rich underwater habitats. *Water* abstraction and wastewater and stormwater discharges adversely affect the natural environment, cultural and amenity values, and recreation. Agriculture, fishing⁶²¹ and minerals extraction support employment and economic well-being but also change landscapes and habitats. Otago's port moves freight to and from Otago and Southland, but operates alongside sensitive environments, including the Aramoana saltmarsh. Tourism and recreation⁶²², which relies on the environment, can also put pressure on natural environments.

Context

The Otago regional economy GDP totals \$13.2 billion and supports a population of 236,200 residents (over half of which are in Dunedin). A significant part of the economy relies on the region's natural resources (air, vegetation, biodiversity, *water*, *land*, marine and *minerals*). This supports agriculture, forestry, fishing (6.9% of GDP), mining (4.5% of GDP), electricity, gas, *water* and waste services (4.4% of GDP), as well as conservation activities and hunting. Tourism (18.1% of GDP) also partially relies on the natural values of the region.⁶²³

However, economic activity needs to more effectively account for and manage its impacts on the region's natural resources.⁶²⁴ Where business and social activity does not account for its impacts on natural resources in the long term, not only is the sustainability of the region's natural resources threatened, but equally the associated long term economic, social and cultural values are also threatened.

Impact snapshot

Environmental

Economic activities can lead to, for example, biodiversity loss, poor *water* quality, coastal and marine degradation, and loss of natural features and landscapes. These and other matters are considered in further detail elsewhere in this chapter.

Negative impacts on the *environment* can also compromise the ecosystems and the services economic activities depend on (ecosystem services), for example loss of *wetlands* which provide flood attenuation services, loss of biodiversity which provide pest control and pollination services, and loss of soil biodiversity. Economic activity also has the potential to compromise or destroy natural features and landscapes. Such impacts are both immediate and cumulative. Cumulative impacts that are not addressed have the potential to lead to tipping points beyond which systems can no longer properly function.

Economic

The costs of production can rise because of poor quality natural resources, for example, through

⁶¹⁸ 00412.007, 00412.018 Ernslaw One, 00024.002 City Forests

⁶¹⁹ 00020.005 Rayonier

⁶²⁰ Clause 16(2), Schedule 1, RMA

⁶²¹ 00126.001 Harbour Fish, 00124.001 Southern Inshore Fisheries

⁶²² 00231.022 Fish and Game

⁶²³ Infometrics, August 2020.

⁶²⁴ <https://www.orc.govt.nz/media/8882/community-consultation-summary-report-draft.pdf> (accessed 26 May 2021)

higher input costs (e.g. fertiliser, weed and pest control); and remediation requirements (e.g. riverbank restoration, erosion control). Some land management practices can compromise the ability of land to support primary production productive capacity of agricultural land,⁶²⁵ for example, loss of soil through erosion or soil structure through compaction. Marine industries (e.g. fishing and aquaculture) can also be adversely affected.

Business environmental performance is becoming increasingly important in terms of providing access to investment. Poor business environmental performance can also lead to increased regulatory requirements and associated higher costs of doing business.

Social

Damage to or loss of natural features and landscapes compromises *amenity values*. Failure of business to sustainably manage their impact on⁶²⁶ natural resources can also have social impacts. ~~compromises the social licence of a business sector to operate. This adversely impacts social capital (trust) and can create community division.~~ In extreme cases it can lead to ~~calls for~~ reduced access to resources.⁶²⁷

SRMR-I11 – Cumulative impacts and *resilience* – the environmental costs of our activities in Otago are adding up with tipping points potentially being reached

Statement

How and where we currently live is likely to change significantly in coming years. To respond to all the issues identified in this RPS, it is essential to consider changes to how we travel, the industries our economy relies on, the use we currently make of the *natural and physical resources* of the region, and how we provide for personal and community well-being, all while protecting our natural environment.

Context

The long term environmental, economic, and social well-being of the Otago region requires anticipating and minimising cumulative environmental impacts before they reach a tipping point, beyond which systems can no longer properly function. This requires *resilient* frameworks that take account of the dynamic relationship between the *environment*, economy and people while acknowledging that the future is always uncertain, and knowledge is imperfect. Should a tipping point be reached a *resilient* Otago society will have the ability to absorb, respond to, adapt to, and recover from disruptive events.⁶²⁸

Impact snapshot

Environmental

While many ecosystems have a degree of *resilience*, increasing pressures on the *environment*, typically as a result of human activities (for example economic development), can have an adverse cumulative *effect*. *Climate change* also has the potential to seriously challenge ecosystem adaptive capacity. Much work is being undertaken to address this challenge, but it is still possible that permanent changes may occur (tipping point).

⁶²⁵ 00236.031 Horticulture New Zealand

⁶²⁶ 00206.093 Trojan, 00411.126 Wayfare

⁶²⁷ 00206.093 Trojan, 00411.126 Wayfare

⁶²⁸ <https://www.civildefence.govt.nz/cdem-sector/plans-and-strategies/national-disaster-resilience-strategy/national-disaster-resilience-strategy-summary-version/> (accessed 26 May 2021)

The first and best response is to ensure sustainable management of our natural resources and avoid immediate and long-term cumulative *effects* that degrade the *environment*. At the same time a *resilience* approach is needed that identifies thresholds ~~or and~~⁶²⁹ sets limits on the use of natural resources to avoid permanent and potentially catastrophic changes occurring, as would occur if a tipping point is reached.

Indicators and tools for measuring *resilience* and tipping points remain in the early stages of understanding and development. Even though regulatory agencies and proponents for natural resource development and environmental rehabilitation projects have difficulties interpreting and verifying the potential for environmental recovery and *resilience* (particularly in relation to the regulatory context of impact assessment in order to provide consenting decisions for regulated activities)⁶³⁰ that should not be taken as a reason to delay acting.

Social and economic

The well-being of Otago's people and communities in the long term will be sustained by the enduring ecological health and *resilience* of the *environment* and by human activity providing for the *environment* in equal or greater measure than is taken from it (in other words, net impact determines net well-being). It will also be sustained through community *resilience* so that it can adapt and nimbly respond to future challenges.

⁶²⁹ Needs a reference. Change comes from legal issues section but refers to SRMR-I11 section 42A report

⁶³⁰ <https://par.nsf.gov/servlets/purl/10047476> (accessed 26 May 2021)

RMIA – Resource management issues of significance to iwi authorities in the region

Introduction

The MW – *Mana Whenua* chapter describes the integral relationship between Kāi Tahu and the natural world, including the relationship with particular resources, and the values that influence the Kāi Tahu approach to resource management. The issues and concerns described in this chapter should be read and understood in the context of the explanations in the MW – *Mana Whenua* chapter.

RMIA–WAI – Wai Māori

Context

Water plays a significant role in Kāi Tahu spiritual beliefs and cultural traditions. Kāi Tahu have an obligation through whakapapa to protect wai and all the life it supports. Whānau have observed the health of *water* degrade through time and consider it is crucial that this degradation is reversed.

RMIA–WAI–I1 – The loss and degradation of *water* resources through drainage, abstraction, pollution, and damming has resulted in material and cultural deprivation for Kāi Tahu ki Otago

The drainage of *wetlands*, *water* abstraction, degraded *water* quality, barriers to fish passage and changes to flow regimes as a result of damming have had significant negative impacts on Kāi Tahu. These activities degrade the mauri of the *water* and the habitats and species it supports, therefore also degrading *mahika kai* and taoka species and places.

These changes to the *environment* have meant that Kāi Tahu have had to adapt and change their *use* of the *environment*. As traditional *mahika kai* places and species have declined, *mahika kai* must now be carried out in artificial habitats such as reservoirs, and whānau have had to switch to exotic species such as trout and salmon. The mātauraka associated with traditional *mahika kai* species and places cannot be passed on, and the intergenerational transfer of knowledge that has occurred for over 800 years is broken. Place names that carry tribal history are no longer reflective of their places – for example no one would now claim that the Waiareka is ‘sweet water’ to drink.

RMIA–WAI–I2 – Current water management does not adequately address Kāi Tahu cultural values and interests

Kāi Tahu values and interests are not properly considered in current *land* and *water* resource management. The well-being of *mahika kai* ~~mahika kai~~⁶³¹ and taoka and protection of other cultural values is rarely given effect to in environmental policy or decision-making processes and these considerations are often compromised in favour of other values, including economic values. The mana of *mana whenua* and of the *water* is not recognised because *water* quality and quantity have been allowed to be degraded. Resource management in Otago has failed to meet its obligation to recognise Kāi Tahu values and provide for the relationship of Kāi Tahu with the *water bodies* within their rohe. The understanding of cultural values by many is still developing and, as a result, Kāi Tahu values and

⁶³¹ Clause 10(2)(b)(i) – consequential amendment arising from 00226.038 Kāi Tahu ki Otago

interests are often not well represented in plans and decision-making.

RMIA–WAI–I3 – The *effects of land and water use activities on freshwater habitats have resulted in adverse effects on the diversity and abundance of mahika kai resources and harvesting activity*

Mahika kai ~~Mahika kai~~⁶³² is the gathering of foods and other resources, the places where they are gathered, and the practices used in doing so. *Mahika kai* ~~Mahika kai~~⁶³³ is an intrinsic part of Kāi Tahu identity and economic well-being. Kāi Tahu fishing rights were explicitly protected by the Treaty of Waitangi. Not only was the right to engage in *mahika kai* ~~mahika kai~~⁶³⁴ activity confirmed, so too was the expectation that such activity will continue to be successful as measured by reference to past practice. However, as described in evidence provided to the Waitangi Tribunal in the Ngāi Tahu claim, there has been a dramatic loss of *mahika kai* ~~mahika kai~~⁶³⁵ resources and places of procurement since the Treaty was signed. This loss is greater than the loss of kai. It is a loss of Kāi Tahu culture, as it affects the intergenerational transfer of mātauraka handed down from tūpuna over hundreds of years. It represents a significant loss for mana whenua and diminishing of rakatirataka and⁶³⁶ of mana. *Mahika kai* ~~mahika kai~~⁶³⁷ continues to be degraded through the *effects of land and water use activities on freshwater habitats*. Activities such as the construction of barriers to fish passage, drainage, altered flow regimes, reduced *water* quality and removal of riparian vegetation all impact on access to and use of resources. Inadequate regulation of commercial fishing of tuna (eels) and inaka (whitebait) has also exacerbated the impacts of degradation and loss of habitat from land and water use activities on remaining populations of these species.⁶³⁸

RMIA–WAI–I4 – Effective participation of Kāi Tahu in *freshwater management is hampered by poor recognition of mātauraka*

The term ‘mātauraka Māori’ includes all branches of Māori knowledge, past, present, and still developing. It involves observing, experiencing, studying, and understanding the world from an indigenous cultural perspective. It is a tool for thinking, organising information, considering the ethics of knowledge, and informing us about our world and our place in it. Incorporation of mātauraka in resource management decision-making is important to ensure that cultural interests are appropriately recognised and provided for. Resource managers do not always appreciate the depth and value of mātauraka held by members of Kāi Tahu Whānui. Even where mātauraka is valued there may be difficulty in determining how best to apply the knowledge.

RMIA–WAI–I5 – Poor integration of *water management, across agencies and across a catchment, hinders effective and holistic freshwater management*

Kāi Tahu place emphasis on the holistic management of resources. Cultural values such as whakapapa and concepts such as ki uta ki tai recognise the interconnectedness of all things, and that *effects* on one part of the whole will be felt throughout the whole. Management of *water* in Otago is not holistic. Catchments are often managed by multiple councils, and the Waitaki (a most significant *river* to Kāi Tahu) is managed by two regional councils with policies and management approaches that include

⁶³² Clause 10(2)(b)(i) – consequential amendment arising from 00226.038 Kāi Tahu ki Otago

⁶³³ Clause 10(2)(b)(i) – consequential amendment arising from 00226.038 Kāi Tahu ki Otago

⁶³⁴ Clause 10(2)(b)(i) – consequential amendment arising from 00226.038 Kāi Tahu ki Otago

⁶³⁵ Clause 10(2)(b)(i) – consequential amendment arising from 00226.038 Kāi Tahu ki Otago

⁶³⁶ FPI030.014 Kāi Tahu ki Otago

⁶³⁷ Clause 10(2)(b)(i) – consequential amendment arising from 00226.038 Kāi Tahu ki Otago

⁶³⁸ FPI030.014 Kāi Tahu ki Otago

some significant differences. Regional councils are responsible for managing *land use effects* on *land* and at sea up to 12 nautical miles offshore, but beyond that the Environmental Protection Authority manages *effects* through a separate piece of legislation. District councils, although not specifically responsible for managing *freshwater*, are responsible for managing activities that affect *freshwater*.

In Otago there are separate plans for *freshwater* and the coastal area, and they are not consistent with each other. These divisions in the management of the *environment* fail to recognise that all *water*, in *rivers*, underground, in the air and in the ocean is connected, and what occurs in the headwaters and on *land* will have an impact in the ocean. This lack of holistic *freshwater* management also makes it difficult to understand and address the cumulative *effects* of different activities and decisions on cultural values.

Specific concerns related to RMIA-WAI-I1 to RMIA-WAI-I5 are interrelated, and include:

- *Water* quality concerns:
 - Deterioration in *water* quality resulting from poor *land* management practices.
 - The cultural and *water* quality impacts of point and non-point source *discharge* of human waste and other *contaminants* to *water*. Whānau cannot gather kai from places where human waste (whether treated or not) has been *discharged*, or where herbicides and pesticides have been used. Reliance on dilution rates to mitigate the *effects* of *discharges* is culturally inappropriate.
 - The *water* quality impacts of *discharges* from mining activities.
- *Water* allocation concerns:
 - Kāi Tahu consider that many of the waterways in the region are over-allocated from a cultural perspective.
 - Abstractions of greater volumes of *water* than are required, lack of *water* harvesting and continuation of inefficient methods of *water* use.
 - The implications of increased *water* demand for domestic use which will put additional pressure on the already scarce *water* resource.
 - The *effects* of long durations for *water* take consents which lock in a pattern of resource use for a long time, limiting the ability of for Kāi Tahu to exercise their role as kaitiaki as an expression of mana and rakatirataka. kaitiakitaka responsibilities.⁶³⁹
 - The impact of cross mixing of *water* from different catchments on the distinctive mauri of the *water bodies*.
 - The lack of understanding of the interactions between *groundwater* and surface *water*.
- Concerns about channel modification and *river* works:
 - The *effects* of damming on disruption of natural flow patterns, loss of *freshwater* habitats and migration of indigenous fish species.
 - The *effects* on the mauri of the water body from diversion of watercourses upstream and downstream of mines.
 - Impacts of activities such as channel maintenance and channel cleaning on *water* quality and on disruption of species living in the channel and their habitat.
 - Impacts of channel reshaping, in particular straightening, on *river* flow and habitats, and the mauri of the *water body*.
 - The *effects* of *bed* disturbance, including suction dredging and gravel extraction, on stream morphology and habitats.
 - Impacts of willow removal on *water* quality, *water* temperature and mahika kai mahika kai⁶⁴⁰ habitat.
 - Introduction of exotic weeds through poorly cleaned machinery, and the subsequent

⁶³⁹ 00226.064 Kāi Tahu ki Otago

⁶⁴⁰ Clause 10(2)(b)(i) – consequential amendment arising from 00226.038 Kāi Tahu ki Otago

- impact on bank habitat and *water* ecosystems.
- The *effects* of changes in vegetation cover, including clearance of *indigenous vegetation* and exotic *afforestation*, on the *water* retention capacity of *land* and consequent flow patterns, which can negatively affect *mahika kai mahika kai*⁶⁴¹ and taoka species through a reduction in their habitat.

RMIA–MKB – *Mahika kai mahika kai*⁶⁴² and biodiversity

Context

The cold climate in southern Te Waipounamu, and the consequent difficulty of growing crops, made it difficult for tūpuna to establish permanent settlements and as a result Kāi Tahu in this area traditionally had a hunter-gatherer lifestyle, and went where the *mahika kai mahika kai*⁶⁴³ was abundant and in season. This lifestyle was unique to southern Kāi Tahu and *mahika kai mahika kai*⁶⁴⁴ retains a central place in Kāi Tahu cultural identity. All indigenous species and habitats are treasured by Kāi Tahu as taoka in their own right, as well as for the *mahika kai mahika kai*⁶⁴⁵ values associated with some species.

RMIA–MKB–I1 – The diversity and abundance of terrestrial and aquatic indigenous species has been reduced due to adverse *effects* of resource use and development

Resource *use* and development in Otago has led to degradation of taoka and *mahika kai mahika kai*⁶⁴⁶ places. This has occurred in a myriad of ways, contributing to a significant negative cumulative *effect* on many species and habitats. The decrease in diversity and abundance of indigenous species causes a negative impact on the mauri and health of the natural environment.

The Kāi Tahu perspective recognises that species within ecosystems are connected, and effects on one species will be felt throughout the rest of the system. Effects on *mahika kai mahika kai*⁶⁴⁷ and taoka species diversity and abundance affect the relationship of Kāi Tahu with these species. Whānau are unable to access traditional *mahika kai mahika kai*⁶⁴⁸ and taoka species and places because in many cases they no longer exist, or no longer provide resources that were once abundant there.

Specific concerns include:

- Degradation of *mahika kai mahika kai*⁶⁴⁹ due to the impacts of *contaminants* from both point and non-point source *discharges*, including human waste disposal to *mahika kai mahika kai*⁶⁵⁰ areas.
- The effects of soil contamination from poorly managed landfills, industrial sites and waste disposal sites.
- Continued urban spread encroaching on *mahika kai mahika kai*⁶⁵¹ sites.

⁶⁴¹ Clause 10(2)(b)(i) – consequential amendment arising from 00226.038 Kāi Tahu ki Otago

⁶⁴² Clause 10(2)(b)(i) – consequential amendment arising from 00226.038 Kāi Tahu ki Otago

⁶⁴³ Clause 10(2)(b)(i) – consequential amendment arising from 00226.038 Kāi Tahu ki Otago

⁶⁴⁴ Clause 10(2)(b)(i) – consequential amendment arising from 00226.038 Kāi Tahu ki Otago

⁶⁴⁵ Clause 10(2)(b)(i) – consequential amendment arising from 00226.038 Kāi Tahu ki Otago

⁶⁴⁶ Clause 10(2)(b)(i) – consequential amendment arising from 00226.038 Kāi Tahu ki Otago

⁶⁴⁷ Clause 10(2)(b)(i) – consequential amendment arising from 00226.038 Kāi Tahu ki Otago

⁶⁴⁸ Clause 10(2)(b)(i) – consequential amendment arising from 00226.038 Kāi Tahu ki Otago

⁶⁴⁹ Clause 10(2)(b)(i) – consequential amendment arising from 00226.038 Kāi Tahu ki Otago

⁶⁵⁰ Clause 10(2)(b)(i) – consequential amendment arising from 00226.038 Kāi Tahu ki Otago

⁶⁵¹ Clause 10(2)(b)(i) – consequential amendment arising from 00226.038 Kāi Tahu ki Otago

- Genetic modification of indigenous flora and fauna, which represents deliberate alteration of whakapapa.
- The impact on *mahika kai mahika kai*⁶⁵² and indigenous *biodiversity* from weed and pest invasion.
- Loss of indigenous *freshwater fish*⁶⁵³ species, many of which are taoka and *mahika kai mahika kai*⁶⁵⁴, through displacement and predation.
- Loss of indigenous flora and fauna remnants and lack of co-ordinated management of habitat corridors.
- Impacts on *mahika kai mahika kai*⁶⁵⁵ and aquatic ecosystems from a lack of effective catchment-wide riparian management.
- Loss of recruitment of indigenous flora in remnant bush areas due to continuous stock grazing.
- The impact of inappropriate forestry developments, conversion of tussock lands and other intensification of farming on indigenous flora and fauna values, including ecological disturbance and displacement of species.
- A persistent lack of recognition of Kāi Tahu perspectives, values and mātauraka in indigenous species and habitat management, planning, and decision-making.⁶⁵⁶
- The loss of cultural knowledge, mātauraka, and tikaka that has accompanied the loss of *mahika kai*, and indigenous *biodiversity*.⁶⁵⁷

RMIA–MKB–I2 – Regulatory and physical barriers have impeded the ability of Kāi Tahu to access *mahika kai mahika kai*⁶⁵⁸ and to undertake customary harvest

The ability for Kāi Tahu to exercise customary rights to *mahika kai mahika kai*⁶⁵⁹ has been impeded by obstacles to accessing *mahika kai mahika kai*⁶⁶⁰ sites. Obstacles include lack of physical access and the sites no longer being safe to access due to the site becoming polluted, or a change in the flow velocity and/or depth.

RMIA–MKB–I3 – Impacts of *climate change* on both species/habitat viability and increasing pest (flora/fauna) encroachments

Climate change is now affecting and will continue to affect habitat availability and suitability for species in Otago. In some cases, this will mean that species will be able to increase their distribution, which will encourage spread of pest/weed species. *Climate change* will also reduce habitat and distributions for some species and affect habitat quality. These *effects* may also accumulate; for example, a native species may have worse and less habitat and its pest/predator’s distribution and population may increase due to *climate change effects*. Where possible, environmental management should include planning for these *effects* should be planned for in environmental management. and having regard for their impacts on Kāi Tahu and *mana whenua* values.⁶⁶¹

⁶⁵² Clause 10(2)(b)(i) – consequential amendment arising from 00226.038 Kāi Tahu ki Otago
⁶⁵³ 00137.037 DOC

⁶⁵⁴ Clause 10(2)(b)(i) – consequential amendment arising from 00226.038 Kāi Tahu ki Otago

⁶⁵⁵ Clause 10(2)(b)(i) – consequential amendment arising from 00226.038 Kāi Tahu ki Otago
⁶⁵⁶ 00226.066 Kāi Tahu ki Otago

⁶⁵⁷ 00226.066 Kāi Tahu ki Otago

⁶⁵⁸ Clause 10(2)(b)(i) – consequential amendment arising from 00226.038 Kāi Tahu ki Otago

⁶⁵⁹ Clause 10(2)(b)(i) – consequential amendment arising from 00226.038 Kāi Tahu ki Otago

⁶⁶⁰ Clause 10(2)(b)(i) – consequential amendment arising from 00226.038 Kāi Tahu ki Otago

⁶⁶¹ 00226.068 Kāi Tahu ki Otago

RMIA–MKB–I4 – Shortage of protected and secure areas for biodiversity

Currently there are not enough protected and secure areas for biodiversity in Otago. To ensure the long-term survival of our region’s most *threatened species*, a series of protected areas must be established, ideally in a network connected by corridors so that each individual population is more *resilient* as well as the species’ overall population.

RMIA–MKB–I5 – Inconsistent approaches to biodiversity protection amongst regulatory authorities

Biodiversity is managed by several entities who have different approaches and powers through their separate governing legislation. For example, regional and district councils have obligations under the Resource Management Act and the Department of Conservation has obligations under the Conservation Act 1987 and the Wildlife Act 1953.⁶⁶² Different pieces of legislation are not always consistent with each other. There can also be confusion about who is responsible for different aspects of biodiversity management as it is not managed by one entity.

RMIA–MKB–I6 – Lack of information on species health and viability

In many instances there is a lack of information on species. This absence of information on matters such as life histories, current and previous distributions and habitat preferences makes it difficult to make decisions about how best to manage these species.

RMIA–WTU – Wāhi tūpuna

Context

Wāhi tūpuna (ancestral landscapes) across Otago are made up of interconnected sites and areas reflecting the history and traditions associated with the long settlement of Kāi Tahu in Otago. Areas of significance that form part of *wāhi tūpuna* include, but are not limited to:

- Wāhi tapu
- Kāika *nohoaka* (settlements)
- Wāhi kohātu and wāhi mahi kohātu (quarry sites)
- Wāhi ikoa (place names)
- Ara tawhito (traditional travel routes)
- Mauka (mountains), awa (rivers), roto (lakes), tai (coasts) and moana (seas)⁶⁶³

It is important that resource management recognises the wider cultural setting by considering effects of activities on the broader *wāhi tūpuna* rather than just on discrete sites.

RMIA–WTU–I1 – The values of *wāhi tūpuna* are poorly recognised in resource management in Otago

Land, freshwater, and coastal⁶⁶⁴ management regimes have failed to adequately provide for Kāi Tahu interests in *wāhi tūpuna*. Attention has been too narrowly focused on the cultural redress components

⁶⁶² 00411.132 Wayfare

⁶⁶³ 00226.072 Kāi Tahu ki Otago

⁶⁶⁴ 00223.050 Ngāi Tahu ki Murihiku

of the NTCSA⁶⁶⁵ Ngāi Tahu Claims Settlement Act 1998 (statutory acknowledgements, place names, tōpuni areas and *nohoaka* sites), whereas *wāhi tūpuna* are considerably broader than the areas described in the legislation. The values of *wāhi tūpuna*⁶⁶⁶ ~~these areas~~ can be adversely affected by inappropriate ~~land~~ use and development and by a range of activities that affect *land, freshwater and coastal environments* when those activities are poorly managed. Cumulative adverse *effects* on *wāhi tūpuna* values can result, impacting on the intergenerational relationship of Kāi Tahu with these areas.⁶⁶⁷

Specific *land management*⁶⁶⁸ concerns include:

- Changes to the recognisable character of *wāhi tūpuna* resulting from intensified *land use*, spread of exotic wilding trees and other woody weeds, forestry, subdivision, development of *buildings* and *structures*.
- Impacts on the integrity of *wāhi tūpuna* from extension and maintenance of *infrastructure* such as transport, telecommunications and other utility networks.
- Modification of landforms by *earthworks*, particularly on ridgelines and upper slopes and near waterways.
- Impacts on *wāhi tapu* and archaeological sites from *earthworks*.
- Sedimentation of *water bodies* within *wāhi tūpuna* ~~*wāhi tūpuna*~~⁶⁶⁹ from *earthworks*.
- Poor land management and inappropriate *land use* degrades the whenua itself.
- Failure to recognise Kāi Tahu connections to the land through use of traditional names for landscape features and sites.

Freshwater, biodiversity, coastal management and air and atmosphere issues that affect Kāi Tahu relationship with wāhi tūpuna are outlined in the RMIA-WAI, RMIA-MKB, RMIA-CE and RMIA-AA sections.⁶⁷⁰

RMIA–WTA – Wāhi tapu and wāhi taoka

Context

Ancestral Tribal⁶⁷¹ land was not just the source of economic well-being. For Māori it was also the burial ground of the placenta and of the bones of ancestors, the abode of tribal atua and a storybook through place names and traditions. This is reflected in *te reo* ~~*Te Reo*~~⁶⁷² Māori, as the word ‘whenua’ means both ‘placenta’ and ‘land’. Ancestral lands were therefore regarded with deep veneration. For Kāi Tahu, *wāhi tapu* and *wāhi taoka* refers to the places with elevated mana and tapu due to their close association with atua and tūpuna. For example: that hold the respect of the people in accordance with tikaka or history including:⁶⁷³

- Mauka (mountains)
- Urupā (burial places)
- Tuhituhi neherā (rock art)
- Umu (ovens)

⁶⁶⁵ Clause 16(2), Schedule 1, RMA

⁶⁶⁶ 00223.050 Ngāi Tahu ki Murihiku

⁶⁶⁷ 00223.050 Ngāi Tahu ki Murihiku

⁶⁶⁸ 00223.050 Ngāi Tahu ki Murihiku

⁶⁶⁹ 00226.024 Kāi Tahu ki Otago

⁶⁷⁰ 00223.050 Ngāi Tahu ki Murihiku

⁶⁷¹ Clause 16(2), Schedule, RMA

⁶⁷² 00226.073 Kāi Tahu ki Otago

⁶⁷³ 00226.073 Kāi Tahu ki Otago

- *Nohoaka* (seasonal camp sites)

RMIA–WTA–I1 – ~~Land use a~~ Activities⁶⁷⁴ have resulted in disturbance and degradation of wāhi tapu and wāhi taoka sites and the cultural and spiritual values associated with these areas

Wāhi tapu and wāhi taoka sites are vulnerable to disturbance or destruction from the direct and indirect⁶⁷⁵ effects of resource use and development. ~~This is through~~ Direct effects can include those resulting from⁶⁷⁶ activities that require earthworks in proximity, as well as from a⁶⁷⁷ Natural or human-induced changes to biophysical processes can threaten these sites, such as for example,⁶⁷⁸ coastal erosion. Wāhi tapu and wāhi taoka values can also be adversely affected by the encroachment of culturally offensive activities e.g. it is inappropriate to have a *wastewater* treatment plant at or near a wāhi tapu or wāhi taoka. *Nohoaka*, as sites where *mahika kai* is gathered or was gathered in the past, are particularly at risk from the combination of direct and indirect effects, and from cumulative adverse effects. *Nohoaka* sites are degraded when *mahika kai* can no longer be gathered there.⁶⁷⁹

Specific concerns include:

- Disturbance, modification or destruction of wāhi tapu or wāhi taoka by *earthworks*.
- Degradation of the cultural value and integrity of wāhi tapu or wāhi taoka through contamination by *discharges*, inappropriate development, and culturally inappropriate activities such as mining/quarrying, *landfills* or *wastewater* disposal.
- The resurfacing of kōiwi takata (human remains) through natural and human-induced processes, such as *climate change*,⁶⁸⁰ and ensuring that these are kept safe and returned to Kāi Tahu so that they can be reinterred in accordance with tikaka.
- Ineffective management of *effects* due to inappropriate and inaccurate recording of wāhi tapu and wāhi taoka, and misinterpretation of the status and importance of sites.

RMIA–WTA–I2 – Access to wāhi tapu and wāhi taoka and the ability to undertake customary activities on these sites has been impeded

Access to culturally important sites has been impeded in many ways, affecting the ability of *mana whenua* to carry out customary activities and maintain relationships with wāhi tapu and wāhi taoka.⁶⁸¹ Many sites are privately owned and cannot be accessed. Some sites no longer exist, or the customary activities associated with them⁶⁸² cannot be undertaken. ~~— for~~ For⁶⁸³ example, *nohoaka* sites associated with *mahika kai* ~~mahika kai~~ gathering cannot be used if there is no way to reach the site or no safe way to harvest when at the site because of physical constraints.⁶⁸⁴ ~~the *mahika kai* is no longer there.~~ A limited number of *nohoaka* sites were granted to Kāi Tahu through the ~~Ngāi Tahu Claims Settlement Act 1998~~ NTCSA⁶⁸⁵ as redress for loss of traditional sites. Some of these were traditional sites, but others were in new locations. Some *nohoaka* have also become dissociated from their customary use due to land use, *freshwater* management practices,⁶⁸⁶ change and hazard

⁶⁷⁴ 00223.051 Ngāi Tahu ki Murihiku

⁶⁷⁵ 00223.051 Ngāi Tahu ki Murihiku

⁶⁷⁶ 00223.051 Ngāi Tahu ki Murihiku

⁶⁷⁷ 00223.051 Ngāi Tahu ki Murihiku

⁶⁷⁸ 00223.051 Ngāi Tahu ki Murihiku

⁶⁷⁹ 00223.051 Ngāi Tahu ki Murihiku

⁶⁸⁰ 00226.074 Kāi Tahu ki Otago

⁶⁸¹ 00223.051 Ngāi Tahu ki Murihiku

⁶⁸² 00223.051 Ngāi Tahu ki Murihiku

⁶⁸³ 00223.051 Ngāi Tahu ki Murihiku

⁶⁸⁴ 00223.051 Ngāi Tahu ki Murihiku

⁶⁸⁵ Clause 16(2), Schedule 1, RMA

⁶⁸⁶ 00223.051 Ngāi Tahu ki Murihiku

management. For example, if the *river* channel has moved and the *nohoaka* has not, whānau visiting the *nohoaka* are not able to fish there.

RMIA-AA – Air and atmosphere

Context

As discussed in Part 1, the air and atmosphere are resources of significance to Kāi Tahu. In Kāi Tahu traditions, air and atmosphere emerged through the creation traditions and Te Ao Marama. The air is an integral part of the environment that must be valued, used with respect, and passed on intact to the next generation. Pollution of the atmosphere adversely affects the mauri of this taoka and other taoka such as plants and animals.

RMIA-AA-11 –The cultural impacts of *discharges* to air are poorly recognised in resource management

The cultural impacts of air pollution and *discharges* to air are poorly understood and seldom recognised. *Discharges* to air can adversely affect health and can be culturally offensive. Clean air is important to the health of *mahika kai mahika kai*⁶⁸⁷ and people, and odour and other emissions impact on the tapu of wāhi tapu sites. Air emissions can also reduce the visibility of *wāhi tūpuna* ~~cultural landscape~~⁶⁸⁸ features and of the moon, stars and rainbows.

Specific concerns include:

- Potential impacts of *climate change* which could ~~potentially~~ negatively affect taoka such as wai māori māori and wai tai,⁶⁸⁹ *mahika kai mahika kai*⁶⁹⁰ and biodiversity, *wāhi tūpuna*, wāhi tapu, and wāhi taoka, the coastal environment⁶⁹¹ and⁶⁹² the well-being of all people, and the environment as an integrated system.⁶⁹³
- Insufficient data has been collected and distributed about the *effects* of *discharges* to air.
- The *effects* of *discharges* to air on the health of people and *mahika kai mahika kai*⁶⁹⁴, including *discharges* from industrial or trade premises, agrichemical spray drift, vehicle emissions and emissions from domestic fires in built up areas prone to inversion layers.
- Culturally offensive *discharges* from crematoriums, if located in close proximity to *mahika kai mahika kai*⁶⁹⁵ and wāhi taoka.
- Adverse *effects* of vegetation burning on the integrity and the tapu of wāhi tapu sites.
- Impacts of odour on wāhi tapu, *mahika kai mahika kai*⁶⁹⁶ sites and *nohoaka*.
- Impacts of urban settlement and *discharges* to air on the visibility of the sky and *wāhi tūpuna* features.
- The impact of dust on the integrity of rock art sites.

⁶⁸⁷ Clause 10(2)(b)(i) – consequential amendment arising from 00226.038 Kāi Tahu ki Otago

⁶⁸⁸ 00223.006 Te Ao Marama

⁶⁸⁹ 00226.077 Kāi Tahu ki Otago

⁶⁹⁰ Clause 10(2)(b)(i) – consequential amendment arising from 00226.038 Kāi Tahu ki Otago

⁶⁹¹ 00226.077 Kāi Tahu ki Otago

⁶⁹² Clause 16(2), Schedule 1, RMA

⁶⁹³ 00226.077 Kāi Tahu ki Otago

⁶⁹⁴ Clause 10(2)(b)(i) – consequential amendment arising from 00226.038 Kāi Tahu ki Otago

⁶⁹⁵ Clause 10(2)(b)(i) – consequential amendment arising from 00226.038 Kāi Tahu ki Otago

⁶⁹⁶ Clause 10(2)(b)(i) – consequential amendment arising from 00226.038 Kāi Tahu ki Otago

RMIA–CE – Coastal environment (te takutai Taku tai moana me te wai tai Māori)⁶⁹⁷

Context

The coastal environment is particularly significant for Kāi Tahu in the southern South Island. The spiritual and cultural significance of taku tai moana me te wai māori (saltwater and *freshwater*) and the interconnection between *land* and sea environments are not always well recognised in management of the coastal environment.

RMIA–CE–I1 – Mahika kai Mahika kai⁶⁹⁸ and coastal systems are adversely affected by lack of integrated management across the land-water interface

Management of mahika kai mahika kai⁶⁹⁹ species and their habitats varies and is not holistic. Many important indigenous mahika kai mahika kai⁷⁰⁰ fish species are diadromous and move between *freshwater* and the ocean during different parts of their life cycle. The interconnection between *land* and marine environments needs to be carefully considered in order to manage *effects* that cross the *coastal marine area* boundary.

Specific concerns include:

- *Effects* on the coastal environment and natural systems resulting from modifications to waterways, such as damming and artificial openings of *river* mouths, estuary and lagoon systems.
- The *effects* of reductions in *river* flows on ingress of saltwater to *river* systems and conditions for inaka spawning.
- Barriers to species migration, and hence lifecycles, created by changes to *river* mouths from reductions in *river* flow.
- Impacts of changes in sediment transport on coastal ecosystems.
- The *effects* of *land reclamation* on *water* quality and flow in enclosed harbours ~~harbours~~⁷⁰¹ and estuarine ecosystems.
- *Effects* of *land use* activities and poor management of coastal margins on *coastal water* quality.
- *Climate change effects* occur across the land-water interface and the *freshwater*-saltwater interface, and cause changes to mahika kai mahika kai⁷⁰² species distribution and the quality and locations of mahika kai mahika kai⁷⁰³ habitat.

RMIA–CE–I2 – Discharges into coastal waters and marine dumping of waste degrade mahika kai mahika kai⁷⁰⁴ and the mauri of the waters

The practice of using the marine environment as a sink for disposal of waste from activities that occur on land and in the marine environment ~~both land development and marine vessels~~⁷⁰⁵ is culturally offensive and has resulted in degradation of kaimoana resources. Leaching and overland runoff of

⁶⁹⁷ 00226.078 Kāi Tahu ki Otago

⁶⁹⁸ Clause 10(2)(b)(i) – consequential amendment arising from 00226.038 Kāi Tahu ki Otago

⁶⁹⁹ Clause 10(2)(b)(i) – consequential amendment arising from 00226.038 Kāi Tahu ki Otago

⁷⁰⁰ Clause 10(2)(b)(i) – consequential amendment arising from 00226.038 Kāi Tahu ki Otago

⁷⁰¹ Clause 16(2), Schedule 1, RMA

⁷⁰² Clause 10(2)(b)(i) – consequential amendment arising from 00226.038 Kāi Tahu ki Otago

⁷⁰³ Clause 10(2)(b)(i) – consequential amendment arising from 00226.038 Kāi Tahu ki Otago

⁷⁰⁴ Clause 10(2)(b)(i) – consequential amendment arising from 00226.038 Kāi Tahu ki Otago

⁷⁰⁵ 00126.002 Harbour Fish; 00124.002 Southern Inshore Fisheries

contaminants from activities occurring near the coast have also contributed to the adverse *effects* on the marine area.

Specific concerns include:

- Point source industrial *discharges* to the coastal environment.
- Contamination of *coastal waters* by leachate from inappropriately sited *landfills* and other waste disposal sites and runoff from coastal subdivisions.
- *Discharges of sewage* from marine outfalls, poorly designed or inadequate coastal sewerage *infrastructure* and freedom camping.
- The *effects of contaminants* such as oil and carbon particles in *discharges of stormwater* from urban *roads*.
- *Discharges of sewage* and contaminated bilge and ballast *water* from *ships*.
- Proliferation of rubbish in the coastal environment and in *lakes and rivers*,⁷⁰⁶ including materials such as lengths of rope from boats and moorings, plastic packaging strips, discarded and lost fishing gear, glass and plastic bottles as well as other dumped material.
- *Discharge* or disposal of waste products from the processing of marine species.
- Oil and chemical spills negatively affecting the natural environment.
- Indiscriminate Inappropriate disposal of human wastes, including indiscriminate⁷⁰⁷ discharge of human ashes in sensitive areas such as kaimoana areas, or without the knowledge of *takata whenua*, and *discharge of washdown wastes* from mortuaries and funeral homes to *coastal waters* through *stormwater drains*.⁷⁰⁸

RMIA–CE–I3 – The ability for Kāi Tahu ki Otago to access and harvest kaimoana has been impeded by the *effects* of activities in the coastal and marine environment

Parts of the coastal environment in Otago have been heavily modified since the arrival of settlers. Many parts of the coast around Dunedin have been reclaimed to establish the city, and the harbor has been dredged to enable the growth of the port. This has limited the ability for whānau to carry out customary harvest of kaimoana resources and to access sites of significance for customary fishing. Whānau are often unable to physically access the foreshore and seabed for the collection of kaimoana, or find that kai is no longer safe to eat due to pollution.

Specific concerns include:

- Impacts on kaimoana and associated habitats from the *effects* of waterway modifications on estuarine systems and the *freshwater/saltwater* interface.
- Modification or loss of marine habitats as a result of *reclamation*, dredging and dumping.
- Disturbance of intertidal habitats by vehicle access along beaches.
- Potential for modification and displacement of habitats by *aquaculture activities*.
- The negative *effects* of point and non-point source *discharges* on *water* quality.
- The introduction and spread of exotic species, such as the invasive seaweed *undaria*, through ballast, hull cleaning, and other shipping activities.
- Loss of access due to development of coastal *land*.

⁷⁰⁶ 00411.134 Wayfare

⁷⁰⁷ 00226.080 Kāi Tahu ki Otago

⁷⁰⁸ 00226.080 Kāi Tahu ki Otago

RMIA–CE–I4 – Habitat disturbance and modification has contributed to decline in populations of indigenous marine species, including marine mammals

Indigenous marine species, including marine mammals, are regarded as taoka by Kāi Tahu, and in many cases these are recognised through the NTCSA 1998⁷⁰⁹. The health and abundance of marine species populations are threatened by modification and loss of natural habitat as a result of the impacts identified in RMIA–CE–I2 and RMIA–CE–I3.

RMIA–CE–I5 – Wāhi tapu and wāhi tūpuna values in the coastal environment are poorly recognised and protected

The coastal environment is the domain of Takaroa and includes the *coastal waters* of Te Tai o Arai Te Uru as well as the adjoining land. Tauraka waka (waka landing places) occur up and down the coast in their hundreds and wherever a tauraka waka is located there is also likely to be a *nohoaka*, fishing ground, kaimoana resource, or rimurapa (seaweed) with the sea trail linked to a land trail or *mahika kai mahika kai*⁷¹⁰ resource. Burial sites and other wāhi tapu are also associated with these *wāhi tūpuna*. Seascapes such as reef systems also form part of *wāhi tūpuna*.

Wāhi tapu and the broader *wāhi tūpuna* can be adversely affected by inappropriate activities and developments on coastal land and in the *coastal marine areas*.

Specific concerns include:

- Damage to and disturbance of wāhi tapu resulting from coastal erosion and the impacts of *climate change*,⁷¹¹ earthworks associated with *subdivisions*, and development of coastal walkways.
- The *effects of land fragmentation* on access to sites of significance.
- Loss of the integrity of *wāhi tūpuna cultural landscapes*⁷¹² by *reclamation* and the inappropriate location of *structures* and activities associated with aquaculture, tourism activities, *infrastructure*, and vessel moorings.
- Disturbance from mining of the seabed and foreshore.
- Restriction of access to tauraka waka and associated trails due to *land development*.
- The cumulative *effect* of incremental, uncoordinated *subdivisions, land use change* and building within the coastal environment.
- Failure to recognise and provide for the *effects of climate change and*⁷¹³ of changing sea levels on coastal landscapes.

RMIA–PO – Pounamu

Context

Kāi Tahu customs are intricately linked to this special taoka. ~~There is currently no Regional Pounamu Plan for Otago. Many ara tāwhito, ancient trails, in Otago lead from coastal settlements to inland pounamu resources.~~⁷¹⁴ Management of this taoka is currently dependent on the provisions of the Ngāi Tahu (Pounamu Vesting) Act 1997 and a rāhui pounamu is in place in the Otago region, which vests

⁷⁰⁹ Clause 16(2), Schedule 1, RMA

⁷¹⁰ Clause 10(2)(b)(i) – consequential amendment arising from 00226.038 Kāi Tahu ki Otago

⁷¹¹ 00226.083 Kāi Tahu ki Otago

⁷¹² 00223.006 Te Ao Marama

⁷¹³ 00226.083 Kāi Tahu ki Otago

⁷¹⁴ 00223.052 Ngāi Tahu ki Murihiku

pounamu with Te Rūnanga o Ngāi Tahu. Papatipu rūnaka act as kaitiaki pounamu. There is currently no Regional Pounamu Plan for Otago. However, a rāhui pounamu is in place in the Otago region.⁷¹⁵

RMIA–PO–I1 – Pounamu resources need protection ~~from the effects of land use activities~~⁷¹⁶

Pounamu is a taoka for Kāi Tahu, but and pounamu management according to mātauraka, tikaka and kawa is a tribal priority. Lack⁷¹⁷ of recognition and protection of pounamu resources may lead to these resources, the areas where they are found and Kāi Tahu relationship with them being unknowingly⁷¹⁸ degraded. Pounamu resources may be present on *land* or in waterways. Kāi Tahu relationship with these resources can be affected by extractive activities,⁷¹⁹ for example by extraction of material for road aggregate, and by reduced *water* quality and poor *water body* management.⁷²⁰

⁷¹⁵ 00223.052 Ngāi Tahu ki Murihiku

⁷¹⁶ 00223.052 Ngāi Tahu ki Murihiku

⁷¹⁷ 00223.052 Ngāi Tahu ki Murihiku

⁷¹⁸ 00223.052 Ngāi Tahu ki Murihiku

⁷¹⁹ 00223.052 Ngāi Tahu ki Murihiku

⁷²⁰ 00223.052 Ngāi Tahu ki Murihiku

IM – Integrated management

Objectives

IM–O1 – Long term vision (mō tatou, ā, mō kā uri ā muri ake nei)⁷²¹

The management of *natural and physical resources* in Otago,⁷²² by and for the people of Otago, in partnership with including⁷²³ Kāi Tahu, and ~~as expressed in all resource management plans and decision making,~~⁷²⁴ achieves a healthy, and resilient, and safeguarded⁷²⁵ natural *environment, systems,*⁷²⁶ and including⁷²⁷ the ecosystem services it provides they offer,⁷²⁸ and supports the well-being of present and future generations, ~~mō tatou, ā, mō kā uri ā muri ake nei.~~⁷²⁹

IM–O2 – Ki uta ki tai

~~The management of *natural and physical resources* management and decision making in Otago~~⁷³⁰ embraces ki uta ki tai, recognising that the *environment* is an interconnected system,⁷³¹ which depends on its connections to flourish,⁷³² and must be managed considered⁷³³ as an interdependent whole.

IM–O3 – ~~Environmentally s~~Sustainable impact⁷³⁴

Otago's communities provide for their social, economic, and cultural well-being in ways⁷³⁵ ~~carry out their activities in a way~~⁷³⁶ that support or restore preserves⁷³⁷ environmental integrity, form, functioning,⁷³⁸ and *resilience*, so that the life-supporting capacities of air, water, soil, and⁷³⁹ ecosystems are sustainably managed, and indigenous biodiversity endure⁷⁴⁰ for future generations.

IM–O4 – Climate change⁷⁴¹

Otago's communities, including Kāi Tahu, understand what *climate change* means for their future, and responses to climate change ~~responses~~⁷⁴² in the region (including climate change adaptation and

⁷²¹ Clause 16(2), Schedule 1, RMA

⁷²² 00239.034 Federated Farmers

⁷²³ 00226.085 Kāi Tahu ki Otago

⁷²⁴ 00121.015 Ravensdown

⁷²⁵ 00211.004 LAC, 00210.004 Lane Hocking, 00209.004 Universal Developments, 00118.005 Maryhill, 00014.005 Mt Cardrona Station

⁷²⁶ 00231.03 Fish and Game

⁷²⁷ 00139.022 DCC

⁷²⁸ 00239.034 Federated Farmers

⁷²⁹ 00239.034 Federated Farmers

⁷³⁰ 00121.016 Ravensdown

⁷³¹ Clause 16(2), Schedule 1, RMA

⁷³² Clause 16(2), Schedule 1, RMA

⁷³³ 00137.039 DOC

⁷³⁴ 00231.031 Fish and Game, 00411.024 Wayfare

⁷³⁵ 00239.035 Federated Farmers

⁷³⁶ 00121.017 Ravensdown

⁷³⁷ 00211.005 LAC, 00210.005 Lane Hocking, 00118.006 Maryhill, 00114.006 Mt Cardrona Station, 00209.005 Universal Developments

⁷³⁸ 00235.060 OWRUG

⁷³⁹ 00239.035 Federated Farmers

⁷⁴⁰ 00121.017 Ravensdown

⁷⁴¹ All formatting amendments recommended: Clause 10(2)(b)(i), Schedule 1, RMA – consequential amendments arising from 00120.025 Yellow-eyed Penguin Trust, 00509.038 Wise Response

⁷⁴² Clause 16(2), Schedule 1, RMA

climate change mitigation), actions,⁷⁴³

- (1) are aligned with national level *climate change* responses,
- (2) assist with achieving the national target for emissions reduction, including by having a highly renewable energy system,⁷⁴⁴ and
- (3) are recognised as integral to achieving the outcomes sought by this RPS.

Policies

IM-P1 – Integrated approach to decision-making⁷⁴⁵

Giving effect to the integrated package of objectives and policies in this RPS and other relevant statutory provisions requires decision-makers to:

- (1) consider all provisions relevant to an issue or decision and apply them purposively according to the terms in which they are expressed and
- (2) if after (1) there is an irreconcilable conflict between any of the relevant RPS and/or statutory provisions which apply to an activity, only consider the activity if:
 - (a) the activity is necessary to give effect to a relevant policy or statutory provision and not merely desirable, and
 - (b) all options for the activity have been considered and evaluated, and
 - (c) if possible, the chosen option will not breach any other relevant policy or statutory provision, and
 - (d) if (c) is not possible, any breach is only to the extent required to give effect to the policy or statutory provision providing for the activity, and
- (3) if 2(d) applies, evaluate all relevant factors in a structured analysis to decide which of the conflicting policies or statutory provisions should prevail, or the extent to which any relevant policy or statutory provision should prevail, and
- (4) in the analysis under (1), (2) or the structured analysis under (3), assess the nature of the activity against the values inherent in the relevant policies or statutory provisions in the particular circumstances.⁷⁴⁶

IM-P1 – Integrated approach

The objectives and policies in this RPS form an integrated package, in which:

- (1) ~~all activities are carried out within the environmental constraints of this RPS,~~
- (2) ~~all provisions relevant to an issue or decision must be considered,~~
- (3) ~~if multiple provisions are relevant, they must be considered together and applied according to the terms in which they are expressed, and~~

⁷⁴³ Clause 10(2)(b)(i), Schedule 1, RMA – Consequential amendment arising from 00509.015 Wise Response

⁷⁴⁴ 00120.025 Yellow-eyed Penguin Trust, 00509.038 Wise Response

⁷⁴⁵ Clause 16(2), Schedule 1, RMA

⁷⁴⁶ 00139.026 DCC, 00235.062 OWRUG, 00314.011 Transpower, 00239.036 Federated Farmers, 00139.027 DCC, 00231.033 Fish and Game, 00314.011 Transpower, 00230.032 Forest and Bird, 00230.033 Forest and Bird, 00206.016 Trojan, 00411.026 Wayfare, 00306.020 Meridian

~~(4) notwithstanding the above, all provisions must be interpreted and applied to achieve the integrated management objectives IM-O1 to IM-O4.⁷⁴⁷~~

IM-P2 – Decision priorities

~~Unless expressly stated otherwise, all decision making under this RPS shall:~~

- ~~(1) firstly, secure the long-term life-supporting capacity and mauri of the natural environment,~~
- ~~(2) secondly, promote the health needs of people, and~~
- ~~(3) thirdly, safeguard the ability of people and communities to provide for their social, economic, and cultural well-being, now and in the future.⁷⁴⁸~~

IM-P3 – Providing for *mana whenua* cultural values in achieving integrated management

Recognise and provide for the relationship of Kāi Tahu's relationship⁷⁴⁹ with natural resources by:

- (1) enabling *mana whenua* to exercise rakatirataka and *kaitiakitaka*,
- (2) facilitating active participation of *mana whenua* in resource management processes and⁷⁵⁰ decision making,
- (3) incorporating mātauraka Māori in processes and⁷⁵¹ decision-making,⁷⁵² and
- (4) ensuring resource management provides for the connections of Kāi Tahu to *wāhi tūpuna*, wai māori (including awa [rivers] and roto [lakes] and wai tai (including te takutai moana [coastal marine area]) and water and water bodies, the coastal environment,⁷⁵³ *mahika kai mahika kai*⁷⁵⁴ and habitats of taoka species.

IM-P4 – Setting a strategic approach to ecosystem health

Healthy and *resilient*⁷⁵⁵ ecosystems and ecosystem services are achieved by developing regional plans and district plans through a planning framework that:⁷⁵⁶

- (1) have⁷⁵⁷ protects particular regard to their the intrinsic values of ecosystems,⁷⁵⁸
- (2) takes a long-term strategic approach that recognises changing environments ongoing environmental change,⁷⁵⁹ including the impacts of climate change,⁷⁶⁰

⁷⁴⁷ 00025.002 Boxer Hill Trust, 00313.004 Queenstown Airport, 00121.019 Ravensdown

⁷⁴⁸ 00121.020 Ravensdown, 00315.016 Aurora Energy, 00322.007 Fulton Hogan, 00235.063 OWRUG, 00314.011 Transpower, 00016.001 Alluvium and Stoney Creek, 00017.001 Danny Walker and Others, 00023.003 Waterfall Park, 00025.016 Boxer Hill Trust, 00320.013 Network Waitaki, 00511.013 PowerNet, 00313.005 Queenstown Airport, 00311.009 Trustpower, 00240.012 NZ Pork, 00301.013 Port Otago, 00236.036 Horticulture NZ, 00115.010 Oceana Gold, 00138.008 QLDC

⁷⁴⁹ Clause 16(2), Schedule 1, RMA

⁷⁵⁰ 00226.091 Kāi Tahu ki Otago

⁷⁵¹ 00226.091 Kāi Tahu ki Otago

⁷⁵² Clause 16(2), Schedule 1, RMA

⁷⁵³ 00226.091 Kāi Tahu ki Otago

⁷⁵⁴ Clause 10(2)(b)(i) – consequential amendment arising from 00226.038 Kāi Tahu ki Otago

⁷⁵⁵ 00231.034 Fish and Game, 00230.034 Forest and Bird

⁷⁵⁶ 00121.021 Ravensdown

⁷⁵⁷ Clause 10(2)(b)(i), Schedule 1, RMA – consequential to 00121.021 Ravensdown

⁷⁵⁸ 00211.006 LAC, 00210.006 Lane Hocking, 00118.007 Maryhill, 00014.007 Mt Cardrona Station, 00209.006 Universal Developments, 00121.021 Ravensdown, 00235.064 OWRUG; Clause 16(2), Schedule 1, RMA

⁷⁵⁹ Clause 16(2), Schedule 1, RMA

⁷⁶⁰ 00226.092 Kāi Tahu ki Otago

- (3) ~~recognises~~ recognise⁷⁶¹ and ~~provides~~ provide⁷⁶² for ecosystem complexity and interconnections, and
- (4) ~~anticipates~~ anticipate,⁷⁶³ or ~~responds~~ respond⁷⁶⁴ swiftly to, changes in activities, pressures, and trends.

IM–P5 – Managing environmental interconnections

Manage the use and development of ~~Coordinate the management of~~⁷⁶⁵ interconnected *natural and physical resources* by recognising and ~~providing for~~:⁷⁶⁶

- (1) situations where the value and function of a *natural or physical resource* extends beyond the immediate, or directly adjacent, area of interest,
- (2) ~~situations where~~ effects of an activity extend to a different part of the *environment*,⁷⁶⁷ ~~the effects of activities on a natural or physical resource as a whole when that resource is managed as sub-units, and~~
- (3) the impacts of management of one *natural or physical resource* on the values of another, or on the *environment*.

IM–P6 – Managing uncertainties ~~Acting on best available information~~⁷⁶⁸

In resource management decision-making, manage uncertainties by using the best information available at the time, including scientific data and mātauraka Māori, and:

- (1) taking all practicable steps to reduce uncertainty, and
 - (a) in the absence of complete and scientifically robust data, using information obtained from modelling, reliable partial data, and local knowledge, with preference for sources of information that provide the greatest level of certainty, and
 - (b) avoiding unreasonable delays in making decisions because of uncertainty about the quality or quantity of the information available, and
- (2) adopting a precautionary approach, including through use of adaptive management, towards activities whose effects are uncertain, unknown, or a little understood, but potentially significantly adverse.⁷⁶⁹

~~Avoid unreasonable delays in decision-making processes by using the best information available at the time, including but not limited to mātauraka Māori, local knowledge, and reliable partial data.~~⁷⁷⁰

⁷⁶¹ Clause 10(2)(b)(i), Schedule 1, RMA – consequential to 00121.021 Ravensdown

⁷⁶² Clause 10(2)(b)(i), Schedule 1, RMA – consequential to 00121.021 Ravensdown

⁷⁶³ Clause 10(2)(b)(i), Schedule 1, RMA – consequential to 00121.021 Ravensdown

⁷⁶⁴ Clause 10(2)(b)(i), Schedule 1, RMA – consequential to 00121.021 Ravensdown

⁷⁶⁵ 00509.035 Wise Response

⁷⁶⁶ 00226.093 Kāi Tahu ki Otago

⁷⁶⁷ 00226.093 Kāi Tahu ki Otago

⁷⁶⁸ 00226.094 Kāi Tahu ki Otago

⁷⁶⁹ 00137.042 DOC, 00014.022 John Highton, 00239.038 Federated Farmers, 00235.065 OWRUG, 00233.023 Fonterra, 00406.005 Lauder Creek Farming, 00120.024 Yellow-eyed Penguin Trust, 00509.036 Wise Response, 00139.040 DCC, 00121.027 Ravensdown, 00301.015 Port Otago

⁷⁷⁰ 00137.042 DOC, 00014.022 John Highton, 00239.038 Federated Farmers, 00235.065 OWRUG, 00233.023 Fonterra, 00406.005 Lauder Creek Farming, 00120.024 Yellow-eyed Penguin Trust, 00509.036 Wise Response, 00139.040 DCC, 00121.027 Ravensdown, 00301.015 Port Otago

IM-P7 – Cross boundary management

Coordinate the management of ~~Otago's~~⁷⁷¹ natural and physical resources and the environment⁷⁷² across jurisdictional boundaries and, whenever possible, between overlapping or related agency responsibilities.

IM-P8 – Effects of climate change impacts⁷⁷³

Recognise and provide for the effects of climate change processes and risks by:⁷⁷⁴

- (1) identifying the effects of climate change impacts⁷⁷⁵ in Otago, including impacts from a ~~te ao Māori~~ the⁷⁷⁶ perspectives of Kāi Tahu as mana whenua,⁷⁷⁷
- (2) assessing how the effects impacts⁷⁷⁸ are likely to change over time, and
- (3) taking into account ~~anticipating~~⁷⁷⁹ those changes in resource management processes and decisions.

IM-P9 – ~~Community response to climate change impacts~~

~~By 2030 Otago's communities have established responses for adapting to the impacts of climate change, are adjusting their lifestyles to follow them, and are reducing their greenhouse gas emissions to achieve net-zero carbon emissions by 2050.~~⁷⁸⁰

IM-P10 – Climate change adaptation and climate change mitigation⁷⁸¹

Identify and implement climate change adaptation and climate change mitigation⁷⁸² methods for Otago that:

- (1) minimise the effects of climate change processes or risks⁷⁸³ to existing activities and the wider environment,⁷⁸⁴
- (2) ~~prioritise avoiding the establishment of new activities in areas subject to risk from the effects of climate change, unless those activities reduce, or are resilient to, those risks, and~~⁷⁸⁵
- (3) provide Otago's communities, including Kāi Tahu, with the best chance to thrive, ~~even under the most extreme climate change scenarios, and~~⁷⁸⁶
- (4) enhance environment, social, economic, and cultural⁷⁸⁷ resilience to the adverse effects of

⁷⁷¹ Clause 16(2) Schedule 1 RMA

⁷⁷² 00231.036 Fish and Game

⁷⁷³ 00509.044 Wise Response

⁷⁷⁴ 00509.044 Wise Response

⁷⁷⁵ 00509.044 Wise Response

⁷⁷⁶ 00226.096 Kāi Tahu ki Otago

⁷⁷⁷ 00226.096 Kāi Tahu ki Otago

⁷⁷⁸ 00509.044 Wise Response

⁷⁷⁹ 00239.039 Federated Farmers, 00139.033 DCC

⁷⁸⁰ 00213.011 Waitaki Irrigators, 00239.040 Federated Farmers

⁷⁸¹ Clause 10(2)(b)(i), Schedule 1, RMA – Consequential amendment arising from 00509.015 Wise Response

⁷⁸² Clause 10(2)(b)(i), Schedule 1, RMA – Consequential amendment arising from 00509.015 Wise Response

⁷⁸³ 00509.044 Wise Response

⁷⁸⁴ 00137.044 DOC, 00226.098 Kāi Tahu ki Otago

⁷⁸⁵ 00211.057 LAC, 00210.057 Lane Hocking, 00118.011 Maryhill

⁷⁸⁶ 00509.039 Wise Response

⁷⁸⁷ 00322.008 Fulton Hogan

climate change, including⁷⁸⁸ by facilitation activities that reduce those effects, and⁷⁸⁹

- (5) protects Otago's existing renewable electricity facilities and provides for the development of new renewable electricity generation and infrastructure.⁷⁹⁰

IM-P11 – Enhancing environmental resilience to effects of climate change

Enhance environmental *resilience* to the adverse *effects of climate change* by facilitating activities that reduce human impacts on the *environment*.

IM-P12 – Contravening environmental bottom lines limits⁷⁹¹ for climate change mitigation and climate change adaptation

~~If~~ ~~Where~~ a proposed activity provides or will provide enduring regionally or nationally significant *climate change mitigation* or *climate change adaptation* ~~mitigation of climate change impacts,~~⁷⁹² with commensurate benefits for the well-being of people and communities and the wider *environment*, decision makers may, ~~at their discretion,~~⁷⁹³ allow non-compliance with limits an environmental bottom line⁷⁹⁴ set in, or resulting from,⁷⁹⁵ any policy or method of this RPS ~~only~~ if they are satisfied that:

- (1) ~~the activity is designed and carried out to have the smallest possible environmental impact consistent with its purpose and functional needs,~~
- (2) ~~the activity is consistent and coordinated with other regional and national climate change mitigation activities,~~
- (3) ~~adverse effects on the environment that cannot be~~ are avoided, remedied, or mitigated so that they are minimised to the extent reasonably practicable, and any significant residual adverse effects are offset, or compensated for, and if an offset is not possible, in accordance with any specific criteria for using offsets or compensation, and ensuring that any offset is:
 - (a) undertaken where it will result in the best ecological outcome,
 - (b) close to the location of the activity, and
 - (c) within the same ecological district or coastal marine biogeographic region,⁷⁹⁶
- (4) ~~the activity will not impede either the achievement of the objectives of this RPS or the objectives of regional policy statements in neighbouring regions, and⁷⁹⁷~~
- (5) ~~the activity will not contravene a bottom line set in⁷⁹⁸ a national policy statement or national environmental standard.~~

⁷⁸⁸ 00307.011 CIAL

⁷⁸⁹ 00509.040 Wise Response, 00235.067 OWRUG

⁷⁹⁰ 00311.010 Trustpower

⁷⁹¹ 00119.003 Blackthorn Lodge, 00231.009 Fish and Game, 00231.038 Fish and Game, 00306.025 Meridian, 00206.019 Trojan, 00411.030 Wayfare

⁷⁹² 00301.014 Port Otago

⁷⁹³ Clause 16(2), Schedule 1, RMA

⁷⁹⁴ 00231.009 Fish and Game

⁷⁹⁵ 00306.025 Meridian

⁷⁹⁶ 00119.003 Blackthorn Lodge, 00206.019 Trojan, 00411.030 Wayfare, 00306.025 Meridian, 00311.011 Trustpower, 00318.009 Contact

⁷⁹⁷ 00311.011 Trustpower

⁷⁹⁸ 00231.009 Fish and Game

IM-P13 – Managing cumulative effects

In resource management decision-making, recognise and manage the impact of cumulative effects on the form, functioning and resilience of Otago’s environment (including resilience to climate change) and the opportunities available for future generations.⁷⁹⁹

~~Otago’s environmental integrity, form, function, and resilience, and opportunities for future generations, are protected by recognising and specifically managing the cumulative effects of activities on natural and physical resources in plans and explicitly accounting for these effects in other resource management decisions.~~⁸⁰⁰

IM-P14 – Sustaining resource potential ~~Human impact~~⁸⁰¹

When preparing regional plans and district plans, Preserve⁸⁰² sustainably manage opportunities for future generations by:

- (1) where necessary to achieve the objectives of this RPS,⁸⁰³ identifying environmental⁸⁰⁴ limits to both growth and adverse effects of human activities⁸⁰⁵ beyond which the environment will be degraded,
- (2) requiring that activities are established in places, and carried out in ways, that are within those environmental⁸⁰⁶ limits and are compatible with the natural capabilities and capacities of the resources they rely on, ~~and~~
- (3) regularly assessing and adjusting environmental limits and thresholds for the way⁸⁰⁷ activities are managed⁸⁰⁸ over time in light of the actual and potential environmental impacts, including those related to climate change, and⁸⁰⁹
- (4) providing for activities that reduce, mitigate, or avoid adverse effects on the environment.⁸¹⁰

~~IM-P15 – Precautionary approach~~

~~Adopt a precautionary approach towards proposed activities whose effects are uncertain, unknown or little understood, but could be significantly adverse, particularly where the areas and values within Otago have not been identified in plans as required by this RPS.~~⁸¹¹

Methods

IM-M1 – Regional and district plans

Local authorities must prepare or amend and maintain their *regional* and *district plans* to:

⁷⁹⁹ 00137.045 DOC, 00119.004 Blackthorn Lodge

⁸⁰⁰ 00235.070 OWRUG, 00121.026 Ravensdown

⁸⁰¹ Clause 16(2), Schedule 1, RMA

⁸⁰² 00235.071 OWRUG

⁸⁰³ 00210.008 Lane Hocking

⁸⁰⁴ 00231.009 Fish and Game

⁸⁰⁵ 00235.071 OWRUG

⁸⁰⁶ 00231.009 Fish and Game

⁸⁰⁷ 00314.012 Transpower, 00118.014 Maryhill

⁸⁰⁸ 00314.012 Transpower, 00118.014 Maryhill

⁸⁰⁹ 00226.102 Kāi Tahu ki Otago

⁸¹⁰ 00137.046 DOC

⁸¹¹ 00315.103 Kāi Tahu ki Otago, 00239.045 Federated Farmers, 00235.072 OWRUG, 00124.007 Southern Inshore Fisheries, 00314.013 Transpower, 00311.012 Trustpower

- (1) establish, by December 2030, policy frameworks designed to achieve the objectives for Otago set out in IM–O1 to IM–O4,
- (2) include provisions to manage the *effects*, resources, and communities identified in accordance with IM-M3,⁸¹² ~~give effect to any response to *climate change* developed under this RPS, if applicable,~~
- (3) provide for activities that support *climate change adaptation* and *climate change mitigation* in accordance with IM-P10 ~~seek to mitigate or adapt to the effects of *climate change* or reduce greenhouse gas emissions,~~⁸¹³
- (4) ensure cumulative *effects* of activities on *natural and physical resources* are accounted for in resource management decisions by recognising and managing such *effects*, including:
 - (a) the same *effect* occurring multiple times,
 - (b) different *effects* occurring at the same time,
 - (c) different *effects* occurring multiple times,
 - (d) one *effect* leading to different *effects* occurring over time,
 - (e) different *effects* occurring sequentially over time,
 - (f) *effects* occurring in the same place,
 - (g) *effects* occurring in different places,
 - (h) *effects* that are spatially or temporally distant from their cause or causes, and,
 - (i) more than minor cumulative *effects* resulting from minor or transitory *effects*,
- (5) adopt a ki uta ki tai approach to resource management by establishing policy and implementation frameworks that treat Otago’s *environments* as an integrated system, including collaboration between local authorities to achieve consistent management of resources or *effects* that cross jurisdictional boundaries, and
- (6) establish clear thresholds for, and limits on, activities that have the potential to adversely affect healthy ecosystem services and *intrinsic values*.

IM–M2 – Relationships

~~Starting immediately,~~ Local authorities must:⁸¹⁴

- (1) partner with Kāi Tahu to ensure *mana whenua* involvement in resource management processes and decision-making,⁸¹⁵
- (2) work together and with other agencies (including local authorities in neighbouring regions)⁸¹⁶ to enable ensure⁸¹⁷ consistent implementation of the objectives, policies and methods of this RPS where appropriate,⁸¹⁸ and
- (3) consult with Otago’s communities to ensure policy frameworks adequately respond to the

⁸¹² 00119.006 Blackthorn Lodge, 00509.044 Wise Response

⁸¹³ 00139 DCC (uncoded submission point)

⁸¹⁴ 00239.047 Federated Farmers

⁸¹⁵ 00226.105 Kāi Tahu ki Otago

⁸¹⁶ 00013.008 ECan

⁸¹⁷ 00139.043 DCC

⁸¹⁸ 00139.043 DCC

diverse facets of environmental, social, cultural, and economic well-being.

IM–M3 – Identification of *climate change* impacts and community guidance

By December 2025,⁸¹⁹ Otago Regional Council Local authorities⁸²⁰ must:

- (1) identify the specific types and locations of the effects of climate change impacts⁸²¹ in Otago by undertaking a *climate change risk* assessment, including an assessment that incorporates a Kāi Tahu approach to *climate change risk* identification and evaluation, ~~and~~
- (1A) identify natural and built resources vital to environmental (including indigenous biodiversity and ecosystems)⁸²² and community resilience and well-being,⁸²³
- (1B) identify vulnerable resources and communities and develop adaptation pathways for them where possible, and⁸²⁴
- (2) develop guidance to support communities to be prepared and *resilient*.

IM–M4 – ~~Climate change response~~

~~By January 2027, local authorities (led by Otago Regional Council) must together, in partnership with Kāi Tahu and in consultation with Otago’s communities, develop *climate change* responses for the region that achieve *climate change* adaptation and mitigation, and that include:~~

- ~~(1) identifying natural and built resources vital to environmental and community *resilience* and well-being,~~
- ~~(2) identifying vulnerable resources and communities and developing adaptation pathways for them where possible, and~~
- ~~(3) developing plans and agreements for implementation.~~⁸²⁵

IM–M5 – Other methods

Local authorities should:

- (1) ~~at their next plan review or by December 2030, whichever is sooner,~~⁸²⁶ align (to the extent practicable possible)⁸²⁷ all strategies and management plans prepared under other legislation to contribute to the attainment of the long-term vision for Otago, and
- (2) facilitate community involvement in achieving realising the long-term vision for Otago stated in⁸²⁸ IM–O1 through non-regulatory means,
- (3) encourage changes to business practice that will enable businesses and communities⁸²⁹ to

⁸¹⁹ 00139.002 DCC

⁸²⁰ 00119.006 Blackthorn Lodge, 00509.044 Wise Response

⁸²¹ Clause 10(2)(b)(i), Schedule 1, RMA – Consequential amendment arising from 00509.044 Wise Response

⁸²² 00230.037 Forest and Bird

⁸²³ 00119.006 Blackthorn Lodge, 00509.044 Wise Response

⁸²⁴ 00119.006 Blackthorn Lodge, 00509.044 Wise Response

⁸²⁵ Clause 10(2)(b)(i), Schedule 1, RMA – Consequential amendment arising from 00119.006 Blackthorn Lodge, 00509.044 Wise Response, 00235.066 OWRUG

⁸²⁶ 00139.042 DCC, 00239.046 Federated Farmers

⁸²⁷ 00119.008 Blackthorn Lodge, 00206.026 Trojan, 00411.037 Wayfare

⁸²⁸ 00139.046 DCC

⁸²⁹ 00226.108 Kāi Tahu ki Otago

function in a net-zero carbon economy, and

- (4) advocate for and incentivise activities that reduce, mitigate, or eliminate risk of environmental degradation.

Explanation

IM–E1 – Explanation

The policies in this chapter provide direction on integrated management across the region, to achieve the revitalisation, *resilience* and safeguarding of Otago’s environment and ensure that it supports ~~ka takata~~ people⁸³⁰ and the community’s cultural, social, and economic well-being. The policies seek to apply a *ki uta ki tai* approach and ensure that the *effects of climate change* are understood and responded to across the region. Further, they are designed to ensure that environmental integrity, form, function, and *resilience, including resilience to climate change*,⁸³¹ are at the centre of all resource management decision making and that changes are made where necessary to ensure the environment’s life-supporting capacity continues to support people’s health and well-being both now and into the future.

The policies in this chapter include direction for resolving issues when multiple Regional Policy Statement provisions need to be applied simultaneously. This direction reinforces the primacy of national legislation and regulation, as some provisions of National Policy Statements and National Environmental Standards are prescriptive enough that they do not need a regional interpretation and are only referred to in the RPS when necessary. Further, some direction in the NZCPS,⁸³² ~~New Zealand Coastal Policy Statement 2010~~, such as in Policy 3, is considered appropriate to apply to the management of resources throughout Otago, rather than solely within the coastal environment.

Principal reasons

IM–PR1 – Principal reasons

Integrated management is at the core of the RMA 1991.⁸³³ The provisions in this chapter set out core facets of integration - the interconnections and interdependencies within the environment, involvement of *mana whenua* in resource management, the fundamental importance of environmental health to human well-being, and holistic assessment of human *effects* on the *environment*. They also address the *effects of climate change* as the key threat to environmental stability.

~~The provisions seek to enshrine an explicit recognition and implementation of these facets into plan making and resource consenting processes. They~~⁸³⁴ set an expectation of integrated resource management that flows through to all other provisions of the RPS, and informs the limits and thresholds we set on human activities for protecting environmental health. It sets explicit expectations that local authorities will work with each other and with other agencies to ensure management approaches are clear, coordinated, and able to support Otago’s communities into the future. This

⁸³⁰ 00226.109 Kāi Tahu ki Otago

⁸³¹ 00226.109 Kāi Tahu ki Otago

⁸³² Clause 16(2), Schedule 1, RMA

⁸³³ Clause 16(2), Schedule 1, RMA

⁸³⁴ 00236.041 Horticulture NZ, 00235.075 OWRUG

applies to plan making and resource consenting processes.⁸³⁵

Anticipated environmental results

- IM-AER1** Monitoring shows the limits ~~and thresholds~~⁸³⁶ set for human activities are adhered to and are resulting in ~~environmental well-being and~~ resilience in the natural environment.⁸³⁷
- IM-AER2** ~~Environmental well-being and r~~ Resilience in the natural environment⁸³⁸ is resulting in sustainable social, cultural, and economic well-being for all communities including Kāi Tahu.⁸³⁹
- IM-AER3** Communities, including Kāi Tahu,⁸⁴⁰ are aware of the potential impacts of *climate change* and there are observable changes in community behaviour towards more sustainable lifestyles.
- IM-AER4** Plan development and decision-making processes demonstrate improved awareness of the interdependencies and interconnectedness of *natural and physical resources* within the region, and across regional and jurisdictional boundaries.⁸⁴¹

⁸³⁵ 00236.041 Horticulture NZ

⁸³⁶ 00231.009 Fish and Game

⁸³⁷ 00223.059 Ngāi Tahu ki Murihiku

⁸³⁸ 00223.060 Ngāi Tahu ki Murihiku

⁸³⁹ 00226.111 Kāi Tahu ki Otago

⁸⁴⁰ 00226.112 Kāi Tahu ki Otago

⁸⁴¹ 00226.113 Kāi Tahu ki Otago

PART 3 – DOMAINS AND TOPICS

DOMAINS

AIR – Air

Objectives

AIR–O1 – Ambient air quality

Ambient air quality provides for the health and well-being of the people of Otago, *amenity values*⁸⁴² and *mana whenua values*, and the life-supporting capacity of ecosystems.

AIR–O2 – Discharges to air

~~The localised⁸⁴³ adverse effects of discharges to air do not compromise human⁸⁴⁴ health, *amenity values*,⁸⁴⁵ and *mana whenua values* and the life-supporting capacity of ecosystems. are —protected from the adverse effects of discharges to air.⁸⁴⁶~~

Policies

AIR–P1 – Maintain ~~good~~ ambient air quality⁸⁴⁷

~~Good~~ Ambient⁸⁴⁸ air quality is, at a minimum,⁸⁴⁹ maintained across Otago by:

- (1) ensuring *discharges* to air comply with ambient air quality limits, including *ambient air quality standards and guidelines*, where those have been set as limits have been set⁸⁵⁰, and
- (2) where limits, including *ambient air quality standards and guidelines*⁸⁵¹, have not been set, only allowing *discharges* to air if the adverse *effects* on ambient air quality are avoided, remedied or mitigated⁸⁵² no more than minor.

AIR–P2 – Improve degraded⁸⁵³ ~~poor~~ ambient air quality

Degraded⁸⁵⁴ ~~Poor~~ ambient air quality is improved across Otago by:

- (1) establishing, maintaining and enforcing plan provisions that set limits and timeframes for improving ambient air quality, including by managing the spatial distribution of activities and transport, and

⁸⁴² 00226.114 Kāi Tahu ki Otago

⁸⁴³ 00236.042 Horticulture NZ

⁸⁴⁴ 00233.025 Fonterra, 00121.030 Ravensdown

⁸⁴⁵ 00226.115 Kāi Tahu ki Otago, 00233.025 Fonterra

⁸⁴⁶ 00236.042 Horticulture NZ; 00233.025 Fonterra; 00121.030 Ravensdown

⁸⁴⁷ 00121.031 Ravensdown; 00213.026 Fonterra; 00138.014 QLDC;

⁸⁴⁸ 00121.031 Ravensdown

⁸⁴⁹ 00121.031 Ravensdown; 00213.026 Fonterra

⁸⁵⁰ 00233.026 Fonterra- Fleur to check

⁸⁵¹ 00121.031 Ravensdown

⁸⁵² 00121.031 Ravensdown

⁸⁵³ 00121.032 Ravensdown

⁸⁵⁴ 00121.032 Ravensdown

- (2) prioritising actions to reduce PM_{10} and $PM_{2.5}$ concentrations in *polluted airsheds*, including:
- (a) phasing out existing domestic *solid fuel* burning appliances, and
 - (b) preventing any *discharges* from new domestic *solid fuel* burning appliances that do not comply with the standards set in the NESAQ.⁸⁵⁵

AIR-P3 – Providing for discharges to air

Provide for⁸⁵⁶ ~~Allow~~⁸⁵⁷ *discharges* to air ~~that provided they~~⁸⁵⁸ do not adversely affect human health, amenity values, and⁸⁵⁹ *mana whenua* values and the life supporting capacity of ecosystems.

AIR-P4 – Managing⁸⁶⁰ ~~Avoiding~~⁸⁶¹ certain discharges

Manage the adverse effects of discharges to air⁸⁶² by:

- (1) avoiding noxious or dangerous effects,⁸⁶³
- (2) ensuring discharges to air do not cause offensive or objectionable effects,⁸⁶⁴
- (3) avoiding, remedying or mitigating other adverse effects from discharges to air, including but not limited to discharges arising from:
 - (a) outdoor burning of organic material,
 - (b) agricultural and fertiliser applications,⁸⁶⁵
 - (c) primary production activities,⁸⁶⁶
 - (d) activities that produce dust, and
 - (e) industrial and trade activities.
- (4) locating new sensitive activities to avoid potential reverse sensitivity effects from existing consented or permitted discharges to air, unless these can be appropriately managed.⁸⁶⁷

~~Avoid discharges to air that cause offensive, objectionable, noxious or dangerous effects.~~

~~AIR-P5 – Managing certain discharges~~

~~Manage the effects of discharges to air beyond the boundary of the property of origin from activities that include but are not limited to:~~

- ~~(1) outdoor burning of organic material,~~

⁸⁵⁵ RMA Clause 16(2)

⁸⁵⁶ 00322.011 Fulton Hogan, 00121.033 Ravensdown

⁸⁵⁷ 00233.028 Fonterra, 00322.011 Fulton Hogan, 00121.033 Ravensdown

⁸⁵⁸ 00121.033 Ravensdown, 00322.011 Fulton Hogan

⁸⁵⁹ 00226.118 Kāi Tahu ki Otago

⁸⁶⁰ 00233.030 Fonterra, 00022.014 Graymont, 00236.045 Horticulture NZ, 00236.045 Horticulture NZ, 00240.015 New Zealand Pork Industry, 00213.029 Fonterra, 00115.013 Oceana Gold, 00121.034 Ravensdown, 00121.035 Ravensdown

⁸⁶¹ 00121.034 Ravensdown

⁸⁶² 00233.030 Fonterra, 00022.014 Graymont, 00121.035 Ravensdown

⁸⁶³ 00233.029 Fonterra

⁸⁶⁴ 00121.034 Ravensdown

⁸⁶⁵ 00236.045 Horticulture NZ

⁸⁶⁶ 00236.045 Horticulture NZ, 00240.015 NZ Pork

⁸⁶⁷ 00213.033 Fonterra, 00236.049 Horticulture NZ, 00236.047 Horticulture NZ, 00240.016 NZ Pork

- (2) ~~agricultural and fertiliser spraying,~~
- (3) ~~farming activities,~~
- (4) ~~activities that produce dust, and~~
- (5) ~~industrial and trade activities.~~⁸⁶⁸

AIR-P6 – Impacts on *mana whenua* values

Ensure that⁸⁶⁹ ~~Avoid~~⁸⁷⁰ *discharges to air do not*⁸⁷¹ ~~that~~⁸⁷² adversely affect *mana whenua* values by having particular regard to values and areas of significance to *mana whenua*, including *wāhi tūpuna*⁸⁷³, *wāhi tapu* and *wāhi taoka*.⁸⁷⁴

Methods

AIR-M1 – Review *airshed* boundaries

Prior to implementing AIR-M2, and within 12 months of the AIR chapter being made operative, no later than 31 December 2022,⁸⁷⁵ the Otago Regional Council must review existing *airshed* boundaries and apply to the Ministry for the Environment to gazette amended boundaries where *airsheds* do not account for:

- (1) current or anticipated areas of development,
- (2) weather patterns and geography, or
- (3) existing areas of degraded ~~poor~~⁸⁷⁶ air quality.

AIR-M2 – Regional plans

~~No later than 31 December 2024,~~⁸⁷⁷ Otago Regional Council must prepare or amend and maintain its *regional plans* to:

- (1A) set limits (including *ambient air quality standards* and *guidelines*) to maintain ambient air quality in accordance with AIR-P1, and improve ambient air quality in accordance with AIR-P2⁸⁷⁸,
- (1) manage the adverse effects of discharges to air by avoiding noxious or dangerous effects and ensuring discharges to air do not cause offensive or objectionable effects, ~~avoid offensive, objectionable, noxious or dangerous discharges to air,~~⁸⁷⁹
- (2) include provisions to avoid, remedy, or mitigate other ~~the~~ *adverse effects* from *discharges* to

⁸⁶⁸ 00233.030 Fonterra, 00022.014 Graymont, 00236.045 Horticulture NZ, 00236.045 Horticulture NZ, 00240.015 New Zealand Pork Industry, 00213.029 Fonterra, 00115.013 Oceana Gold, 00121.034 Ravensdown, 00121.035 Ravensdown

⁸⁶⁹ 00121.036 Ravensdown

⁸⁷⁰ 00239.055 Federated Farmers, 00121.036 Ravensdown

⁸⁷¹ 00121.036 Ravensdown

⁸⁷² 00121.036 Ravensdown

⁸⁷³ 00223.062 Ngāi Tahu ki Murihiku

⁸⁷⁴ 00226.121 Kāi Tahu ki Otago and 00223.062 Ngāi Tahu ki Murihiku

⁸⁷⁵ RMA Clause 16(2)

⁸⁷⁶ 00138.020 Queenstown Lakes District Council

⁸⁷⁷ RMA Clause 16(2)

⁸⁷⁸ 00121.031 Ravensdown, 00138.014 Queenstown Lakes District Council

⁸⁷⁹ 00233.032 Fonterra

air beyond the boundary of the property of origin,⁸⁸⁰

- (3) prioritise the implementation of the prioritisation of⁸⁸¹ actions set out in AIR-P2, to reduce *PM₁₀* and *PM_{2.5}* concentrations in *polluted airsheds*,
- (4) mitigate the adverse *effects* of *discharges* to air in areas adjacent to *polluted airsheds* where the *discharge* will adversely affect air quality in the *polluted airshed*, and
- (5) ~~give effect to the Air Quality Strategy for Otago and any subsequent amendments or updates.~~⁸⁸²
- (6) Include measures to ensure that discharges to air do not adversely affect *mana whenua* values.⁸⁸³

AIR-M3 – Territorial authorities

~~No later than 31 December 2029,~~ Territorial⁸⁸⁴ authorities must prepare or amend and maintain their *district plans* to include provisions that direct an urban form that assists in achieving good air quality by:

- (1) encouraging or facilitating a reduced⁸⁸⁵ ~~reducing~~ reliance on private non-electric⁸⁸⁶ motor vehicles and enabling the adoption of *active transport*, shared transport and *public transport* options to assist in achieving good air quality, and
- (2) managing the spatial distribution of activities.
- (3) managing new sensitive activities to avoid reverse sensitivity effects in relation to consented and permitted activities that discharge to air.⁸⁸⁷

AIR-M4 – Monitoring and reporting

Otago Regional Council must monitor and report no less frequently than annually on:

- (1) air quality in accordance with the NESAQ to identify changes in ambient air quality within *airsheds*, and
- (2) progress towards attainment of the *ambient air quality standards*.

AIR-M5 – Incentives and other mechanisms

In partnership with Kāi Tahu ki Otago and in⁸⁸⁸ collaboration with *territorial authorities*, ~~in~~ authorities⁸⁸⁹ key stakeholders and industry, Otago Regional Council must, on an on-going basis, use other mechanisms or incentives to assist with achieving the air quality objectives, including:

- (1) improving community awareness of air quality issues in Otago associated with home heating,
- (2) educating communities and promoting the use of alternative methods for home heating including the use of new technology (including low emission or ultra-low emission home heating

⁸⁸⁰ 00121.037 Ravensdown

⁸⁸¹ 00233.032 Fonterra

⁸⁸² 00236.048 Horticulture NZ, 00121.037 Ravensdown

⁸⁸³ 00226.122 Kāi Tahu ki Otago, 00234.012 Te Rūnanga o Ngāi Tahu

⁸⁸⁴ 00139.054 DCC

⁸⁸⁵ 00239.056 Federated Farmers

⁸⁸⁶ 00411.038 Wayfare

⁸⁸⁷ 00213.033 Fonterra, 00236.049 Horticulture NZ, 00240.016 NZ Pork

⁸⁸⁸ 00226.125 Kāi Tahu ki Otago

⁸⁸⁹ 00226.125 Kāi Tahu ki Otago

appliances) and cleaner fuels or energy sources,

- (3) advocating, promoting and supporting upgrading Otago's housing stock and changes to the Building Act 2004 and Building Code to require houses to create and maintain warmth more efficiently and reduce reliance on non-compliant domestic *solid fuel* burning appliances as described in AIR-P2,
- (4) advocating to energy providers to improve the *resilience and reliability*⁸⁹⁰ of electricity infrastructure so alternative sources of heating are available and reliable,
- (5) measures to encourage the use of *active transport*, shared transport and *public transport* over the use of private motor vehicles, and
- (6) providing financial incentives (such as funding schemes, subsidies or rates relief) and support to improve home heating efficiency and assist with the transition towards cleaner heating, improved energy efficiency and home insulation, including the replacement of *solid fuel* burners that do not comply with the NESAQ standards.

Explanation

AIR-E1 – Explanation

The policies in this chapter are designed to achieve and maintain good air quality for Otago by requiring improvements where air quality is poor, maintaining it where it is good. Managing air quality does not include emissions from ships which are managed under separate national regulation. The policies in this chapter focus on preventing further decline in air quality by preventing use of new domestic *solid fuel* burning appliances that do not comply with the NESAQ, and phasing out the use of existing domestic *solid fuel* burning appliances that are non-compliant. The policies also require the boundaries of *airsheds* be amended to accurately reflect current and anticipated areas of urban growth. This is required to ensure monitoring of ambient air quality is accurate and that all activities that contribute to poor ambient air quality within an *airshed* are subject to the same measures to improve ambient air quality. This policy framework also directs future reviews of the Air Plan ~~Regional Plan~~⁸⁹¹ to manage the adverse effects of discharges to air.

~~In addition to the objectives and policies in this chapter, the air quality outcomes are also provided for in the objectives and policies listed within the following chapters of the RPS where they provide direction on the management of *environments* and activities that may affect air quality:~~

- ~~● IM – Integrated management~~
- ~~● EIT – Energy, *infrastructure* and transport~~
- ~~● UFD – Urban form and development~~⁸⁹²

Principal reasons

AIR-PR1

Clean air is vital for supporting a healthy population and *environment*. Air quality monitoring shows that for most of the year air quality in the Otago Region is very good. During winter months however, temperatures drop and emissions from home heating increase. This, coupled with the topography of

⁸⁹⁰ 00306.026 Meridian

⁸⁹¹ Clause 16(2), Schedule 1, RMA

⁸⁹² 00120.006 Yellow-eyed Penguin Trust

some areas and cold, calm conditions, leads to poor winter air quality in many towns and cities across the region. At times, parts of Otago have some of the poorest air quality in New Zealand. This is intensifying through urban growth.

The provisions in this chapter set out the framework for a review of the Air Plan and supports ORC's obligation to both observe and enforce the NESAQ. Implementation of the provisions in this chapter will occur primarily through regional *plans*⁸⁹³ and *district plan* provisions, however a collaborative approach with central government, other *local authorities*, stakeholders, communities⁸⁹⁴ and industry, and in partnership with Kāi Tahu as *mana whenua*,⁸⁹⁵ will support the achievement of the objectives over time.

Anticipated environmental results

- AIR-AER1** Where air quality is degraded ~~poor~~,⁸⁹⁶ there is a decreasing trend in concentrations of *PM*₁₀ and *PM*_{2.5}.
- AIR-AER2** Otago has an urban form that takes into account the *effects* of activities, and any *discharges* to air they create, on Otago's air quality.
- AIR-AER3** Homes have cleaner forms of heating and non-compliant burners are no longer in use.
- AIR-AER4** There is a decrease in the number of complaints regarding offensive, objectionable, noxious or dangerous *discharges* into air.
- AIR-AER5** Where air quality complies with ambient air quality limits ~~is good~~⁸⁹⁷ it is maintained.
- AIR-AER6** Otago is compliant with NESAQ requirements.

⁸⁹³ Clause 16(2), Schedule 1, RMA

⁸⁹⁴ 00226.127 Kāi Tahu ki Otago

⁸⁹⁵ 00226.127 Kāi Tahu ki Otago

⁸⁹⁶ Consequential to 00121.032 Ravensdown

⁸⁹⁷ Consequential to 00121.031 Ravensdown, 00138.014 QLDC, 00213.026 Fonterra

CE – Coastal environment

Objectives

CE–O1A – Te Mauri o te Moana

The health of Otago’s coastal water is:

- (a) protected from inappropriate activities so as to protect the health and well-being of the wider environment and the mauri of coastal waters, and
- (b) restored where it is degraded, including through enhancing coastal water quality where it has deteriorated from its natural condition.⁸⁹⁸

CE–O1 – Safeguarding the coastal environment (Te Hauora o Te Tai o Arai Te Uru)⁸⁹⁹

The health,⁹⁰⁰ integrity, form, functioning and *resilience* of Otago's coastal environment is safeguarded so that:

- ~~(1) the mauri of coastal water is protected, and restored where it has degraded,~~⁹⁰¹
- (2) *coastal water* quality supports healthy ecosystems, natural habitats, water-based recreational activities, existing activities, and customary uses, including practices associated with *mahika kai* ~~mahika kai~~⁹⁰² and kaimoana,
- (3) the dynamic and interdependent natural biological and physical processes in the coastal environment are maintained or enhanced,
- (4) the diversity of indigenous coastal flora and fauna is maintained, and areas of representative of⁹⁰³ significant areas of indigenous⁹⁰⁴ *biodiversity* are protected and
- (5) *surf breaks* of national significance are protected,
- (6) the interconnectedness of wai Māori and wai tai is protected, and the effects of terrestrial and fresh water uses and activities on coastal waters and ecosystems, are recognised and understood, and⁹⁰⁵
- (7) the ongoing effects of climate change within the coastal environment are identified and planned for.⁹⁰⁶

⁸⁹⁸ 00226.131 Kāi Tahu Ki Otago

⁸⁹⁹ 00226.131 Kāi Tahu Ki Otago

⁹⁰⁰ 00226.131 Kāi Tahu Ki Otago

⁹⁰¹ 00226.131 Kāi Tahu Ki Otago

⁹⁰² Clause 10(2)(b)(i) – consequential amendment arising from 00226.038 Kāi Tahu ki Otago

⁹⁰³ 00120.028 Yellow-eyed Penguin Trust

⁹⁰⁴ 00137.049 DOC, 00230.046 Forest and Bird

⁹⁰⁵ 00226.131 Kāi Tahu Ki Otago

⁹⁰⁶ 00226.131 Kāi Tahu Ki Otago, 00234.015 Te Rūnanga o Ngāi Tahu

CE-02 – Public access and recreation ~~Maintaining or enhancing highly valued areas of the coastal environment~~⁹⁰⁷

Public walking⁹⁰⁸ access, and recreation opportunities, ~~and highly valued natural features and landscapes~~⁹⁰⁹ in the coastal environment are maintained and ~~or~~⁹¹⁰ enhanced, and vehicle access is controlled.⁹¹¹

CE-03 – Natural character, features and landscapes

Areas of natural character, are preserved and⁹¹² natural features, and landscapes ~~and~~ (including seascapes)⁹¹³ within the coastal environment are protected from inappropriate activities, and restoration is encouraged where the values of these areas have been compromised.

CE-04 – Mana moana Kāi Tahu associations with Otago's coastal environment⁹¹⁴

The enduring cultural relationship ~~association~~⁹¹⁵ of Kāi Tahu with Otago's coastal environment is recognised and provided for, and *mana whenua* are able to:

- (1) exercise their *rakatirataka* ~~kaitiaki~~ role, *manaakitaka* and their *kaitiaki* duty of care⁹¹⁶ within the coastal environment, and
- (2) engage in customary fishing and other *mahika kai*.⁹¹⁷

CE-05 – Activities in the coastal environment

Activities in the coastal environment:

- (1) make efficient use of space occupied in the *coastal marine area*,
- (2) are of a scale, density and design compatible with their location,
- (3) are only provided for within appropriate locations and limits acknowledging that some activities have a *functional need* to be located in the coastal environment⁹¹⁸, and
- (4) maintain or enhance public access to and along the *coastal marine area*, including for customary uses, such as *mahika kai*⁹¹⁹, except where public access needs to be restricted for reasons of health and safety or ecological or cultural sensitivity.⁹²⁰

⁹⁰⁷ 00121.039 Ravensdown, 00230.047 Forest and Bird, 00239.057 Federated Farmers, 00306.027 Meridian Energy, 00124.015 Southern Inshore Fisheries.

⁹⁰⁸ 00226.132 Kāi Tahu Ki Otago

⁹⁰⁹ 00121.039 Ravensdown, 00230.047 Forest and Bird, 00239.057 Federated Farmers, 00306.027 Meridian Energy, 00124.015 Southern Inshore Fisheries.

⁹¹⁰ 00226.132 Kāi Tahu ki Otago

⁹¹¹ 00226.132 Kāi Tahu Ki Otago

⁹¹² 00226.133 Kāi Tahu Ki Otago

⁹¹³ 00301.057 Port Otago

⁹¹⁴ 00226.134 Kāi Tahu Ki Otago

⁹¹⁵ 00230.049 Forest and Bird

⁹¹⁶ 00226.134 Kāi Tahu Ki Otago

⁹¹⁷ 00226.134 Kāi Tahu Ki Otago

⁹¹⁸ 00315.021 Aurora Energy

⁹¹⁹ 00226.014, 00226.135 Kai Tahu ki Otago

⁹²⁰ 00234.017 Te Rūnanga o Ngāi Tahu

Policies

CE-P1A – Integrated management/ki uta ki tai

Implement an integrated approach to managing Otago’s coastal environment that:

- (1) recognises the interactions, ki uta ki tai, between the terrestrial *environment*, *fresh water*, and the *coastal marine area*, including the migration of fish species between *fresh water* and *coastal water*,
- (2) provides for the natural functioning of coastal processes at the physical interface between *land*, *fresh water*, and the *coastal water*,
- (3) ensures the *effects* of the use and development of *land* and *fresh water* maintain or enhance the health and well-being of the coastal environment, and
- (4) takes into account the ongoing *effects* of *climate change*.⁹²¹

CE–P1 – Links with other chapters

Recognise that:

- (1) the provisions of the ECO, EIT, and HAZ chapters apply within the coastal environment, except for the following provisions:
 - (a) ECO-P3 to ECO-P6 and associated methods,
 - (b) EIT-INF-P13 and associated methods,
 - (c) HAZ-NH-P1 to HAZ-NH- P4 and associated methods, and
 - (2) the provisions within the following chapters of this RPS apply in addition to the provisions within this chapter:
 - (a) MW – Mana whenua,
 - (b) IM – Integrated management,
 - (c) AIR – Air,
 - (d) LF – Land and freshwater,
 - (e) HCV – Heritage and historical values, and
 - (f) UFD – Urban form and development, and
 - (3) the provisions of the NFL – Natural features and landscapes chapter do not apply in the coastal environment.⁹²²
- ~~(1) coastal hazards must be identified in accordance with CE–P2(4) and managed in accordance with the HAZ–NH– Natural hazards section of this RPS;~~
- ~~(2) port activities must be managed in accordance with the TRAN – Transport section of this RPS; and~~
- ~~(3) *historic heritage* must be managed in accordance with the HCV – Historical and cultural values~~

⁹²¹ 00226.136 Kai Tahu ki Otago

⁹²² 00301.018 Port of Otago

section of this RPS.⁹²³

CE-P2 – Identification

Identify the following in the coastal environment:

- (1) the landward extent of the coastal environment, recognising that the coastal environment includes:
 - (a) the *coastal marine area*,
 - (b) islands within the *coastal marine area*,
 - (c) areas where coastal processes, influences or qualities are significant, including coastal lakes, lagoons, tidal estuaries, saltmarshes, coastal wetlands, and the margins of these,
 - (d) areas at risk from coastal hazards as identified in HAZ-NH-P1A CE-P2(4),⁹²⁴
 - (e) coastal vegetation and the habitat of indigenous coastal species including migratory birds,
 - (f) elements and features that contribute to the natural character, landscape, visual qualities or *amenity values*,
 - (g) items of Kāi Tahu⁹²⁵ cultural association⁹²⁶ and *historic heritage* in the *coastal marine area* or on the coast,
 - (h) inter-related coastal marine and terrestrial systems, including the intertidal zone, and
 - (i) physical resources and built facilities, including *infrastructure*, that have modified the coastal environment,
- (2) areas of *water* quality in the *coastal marine area* that are considered to have deteriorated so that:
 - (a) it is having a significant adverse *effect* on:
 - (i) the health of *coastal water*, or⁹²⁷
 - (ii) ecosystems, and natural habitats, or
 - (iii) water-based recreational activities, or
 - (b) is restricting existing uses, such as:
 - (i) customary fisheries, including mātaimai reserves and taiāpure,
 - (ii) cultural activities such as *mahika kai*, including harvesting of kaimoana, or
 - (iii) aquaculture, and shellfish gathering, and cultural activities such as *mahika kai* and harvesting of kaimoana,⁹²⁸
- (3) areas of *coastal water* where *mana takata*⁹²⁹ *whenua* have a particular interest, including *wāhi tupuna*, mātaimai and taiapure, and any aquaculture settlement areas gazetted under the Māori

⁹²³ 00301.018 Port of Otago

⁹²⁴ Clause 10(2)(b)(i) of Schedule 1 of the RMA – consequential amendment arising from 00301.047 Port of Otago

⁹²⁵ 00226.137 Kāi Tahu ki Otago

⁹²⁶ 00226.137 Kāi Tahu ki Otago

⁹²⁷ Clause 10 of Schedule 1 of the RMA

⁹²⁸ 00226.138 Kāi Tahu ki Otago

⁹²⁹ 00226.154 Kāi Tahu ki Otago

Commercial Aquaculture Claims Settlement Act 2004, and⁹³⁰

- ~~(4) areas that are potentially affected by coastal hazards (including tsunami), giving priority to the identification of areas at high risk of being affected, and~~⁹³¹
- (5) the nationally significant *surf breaks* at Karitāne ~~Karitane~~⁹³², Papatowai, The Spit, and Whareakeke ~~and any regionally significant *surf breaks*.~~⁹³³

CE-P3 – Coastal water quality

Manage water quality in the coastal environment by:

~~Coastal water quality is improved where it is considered to have deteriorated to the extent described within CE-P1(2), and otherwise managed, so that:~~⁹³⁴

- (1A) restoring coastal water quality where it is considered to have deteriorated to the extent described within CE-P2(2),⁹³⁵
- (1) maintaining or enhancing⁹³⁶ healthy coastal ecosystems, indigenous⁹³⁷ habitats provided by the coastal environment, *indigenous vegetation and fauna*,⁹³⁷ and the migratory patterns of indigenous *coastal water* species ~~are maintained or enhanced,~~⁹³⁸
- (2) sustaining Kāi Tahu relationships with and customary uses of *coastal water* ~~are sustained,~~⁹³⁹
- (3) maintaining or enhancing recreation opportunities and existing uses of *coastal water* ~~are maintained or enhanced, and~~⁹⁴⁰
- (4) ~~within identified areas where *mana whenua* have a particular interest, adverse effects on these areas and values are remedied or where remediation is not practicable, are mitigated.~~⁹⁴¹
- (5) controlling⁹⁴² activities outside the coastal marine area that have an effect on coastal water quality,⁹⁴³
- (6) maintaining or enhancing water quality within areas of coastal water identified in CE-P2(3) where *mana whenua* have a particular cultural interest, and⁹⁴⁴
- (7) setting appropriate limits and targets for coastal water quality, including for ecosystem health, habitats of taoka species, sediment, contact recreation and safe kaimoana gathering.⁹⁴⁵

CE-P4 – Natural character

Identify, preserve and restore the natural character of the coastal environment by:

⁹³⁰ 00234.018 Te Runanga o Ngāi Tahu

⁹³¹ 00226.138 Kāi Tahu Ki Otago, 00234.019 Te Rūnanga o Ngāi Tahu

⁹³² 00226.024 Kāi Tahu ki Otago

⁹³³ 00301.019 Port Otago

⁹³⁴ 00226.138 Kāi Tahu Ki Otago, 00234.019 Te Rūnanga o Ngāi Tahu

⁹³⁵ 00226.014, 00226.138 Kāi Tahu Ki Otago, 00234.019 Te Rūnanga o Ngāi Tahu

⁹³⁶ Clause 10(2)(b)(i), Schedule 1, RMA – consequential amendment arising from 00226.138 Kāi Tahu Ki Otago

⁹³⁷ DOC 00137.054

⁹³⁸ Clause 10(2)(b)(i), Schedule 1, RMA – consequential amendment arising from 00226.138 Kāi Tahu Ki Otago

⁹³⁹ Clause 10(2)(b)(i), Schedule 1, RMA – consequential amendment arising from 00226.138 Kāi Tahu Ki Otago

⁹⁴⁰ Clause 10(2)(b)(i), Schedule 1, RMA – consequential amendment arising from 00226.138 Kāi Tahu Ki Otago

⁹⁴¹ 00226.138 Kāi Tahu Ki Otago, 00234.019 Te Rūnanga o Ngāi Tahu

⁹⁴² Clause 10(2)(b)(i), Schedule 1, RMA – consequential amendment arising from 00226.138 Kāi Tahu Ki Otago

⁹⁴³ 00230.053 Forest and Bird

⁹⁴⁴ 00226.138 Kāi Tahu Ki Otago, 00234.019 Te Rūnanga o Ngāi Tahu

⁹⁴⁵ 00226.138 Kāi Tahu ki Otago

- (1) identifying areas and values of high and outstanding natural character which may include matters such as:
 - (a) natural elements, processes and patterns,
 - (b) biophysical, ecological, geological and geomorphological aspects,
 - (c) natural landforms such as headlands, peninsulas, cliffs, dunes, *wetlands*, estuaries, reefs, *freshwater* springs and *surf breaks*,
 - (d) the natural movement of *water* and sediment,
 - (e) the natural darkness of the night sky,
 - (f) places or areas that are wild or scenic,
 - (g) a range of natural character from pristine to modified,
 - (h) experiential attributes, including the sounds and smell of the sea, and their context or setting,
- (2) avoiding adverse *effects* on natural character in areas identified as having outstanding natural character,
- (3) avoiding significant adverse *effects* and avoiding, remedying or mitigating other adverse *effects* on natural character outside the areas in (2) above, and
- ~~(4) encouraging de-reclamation of redundant reclaimed *land* where it would restore the natural character and resources of the *coastal marine area* and provide for more public open space, and⁹⁴⁶~~
- (5) promoting *activities* and ~~restoration~~ projects that will restore or rehabilitate⁹⁴⁷ natural character in the coastal environment where it has been reduced or lost.

CE-P5 – Coastal indigenous *biodiversity*

Protect indigenous *biodiversity* in the coastal environment by:

- (1) identifying and avoiding adverse effects on the following ecosystems, vegetation types and areas:
 - (a) indigenous taxa that are listed as threatened or at risk in the New Zealand Threat Classification System lists,
 - (b) taxa that are listed by the International Union for Conservation of Nature and Natural Resources as threatened,
 - (c) indigenous ecosystems and vegetation types in the coastal environment that are threatened or are naturally rare,
 - (d) habitats of indigenous species where the species are at the limit of their natural range, or are naturally rare,
 - (e) areas containing nationally significant examples of indigenous community types, and
 - (f) areas set aside for full or partial protection of indigenous *biodiversity* under other legislation, and

⁹⁴⁶ 00226.139 Kāi Tahu ki Otago

⁹⁴⁷ 00226.139 Kāi Tahu ki Otago

- (2) identifying and avoiding significant adverse *effects* and avoiding, remedying or mitigating other adverse *effects* on the following ecosystems, vegetation types and areas:
 - (a) areas of predominantly indigenous vegetation in the coastal environment,
 - (b) habitats in the coastal environment that are important during the vulnerable life stages of indigenous species,
 - (c) indigenous ecosystems and habitats that are only found in the coastal environment and are particularly vulnerable,
 - (d) areas sensitive to modification, including estuaries, lagoons, coastal *wetlands*, dunelands, intertidal zones, rocky reef systems, eelgrass and saltmarsh,
 - (e) habitats of indigenous species in the coastal environment that are important for recreational, commercial, traditional or cultural purposes,
 - (f) habitats, including areas and routes, important to migratory species, ~~and~~
 - (g) ecological corridors, and areas important for linking or maintaining biological values identified under this policy;^z
 - (h) significant natural areas identified in accordance with APP2 that are not included in (1) above, and⁹⁴⁸
 - (i) indigenous species and ecosystems identified as taoka in accordance with ECO-M3 that are not included in (1) above.⁹⁴⁹

CE-P6 – Natural features, and landscapes ~~and~~ (including seascapes)⁹⁵⁰

Protect natural features, and landscapes ~~and~~ (including seascapes)⁹⁵¹ in the coastal environment by:

- (1) identifying their areas and values, at minimum by *land* typing, soil characterisation and landscape characterisation,⁹⁵² in accordance with APP9,
- (2) avoiding adverse *effects* of activities on outstanding natural features, and landscapes ~~or~~ (including seascapes),⁹⁵³
- (3) avoiding significant adverse *effects* and avoiding, remedying, or mitigating other adverse *effects* of activities on other natural features and natural landscapes ~~or~~ (including seascapes),⁹⁵⁴ and
- (4) promoting restoration or enhancement of natural features, and landscapes ~~and~~ (including seascapes)⁹⁵⁵ where the values of these areas ~~they~~⁹⁵⁶ have been reduced or lost.

CE-P7 – Surf breaks

Manage Otago's nationally ~~and regionally significant~~⁹⁵⁷ significant surf breaks so that:

⁹⁴⁸ 00137.055 DOC, 00120.042 Yellow-eyed Penguin Society

⁹⁴⁹ 00137.055 DOC, 00120.042 Yellow-eyed Penguin Society

⁹⁵⁰ 00301.057 Port Otago

⁹⁵¹ 00301.057 Port Otago

⁹⁵² 00230.056 Forest & Bird, 00122.018 Sanford

⁹⁵³ 00301.057 Port Otago

⁹⁵⁴ 00301.057 Port Otago

⁹⁵⁵ 00301.057 Port Otago

⁹⁵⁶ 00223.071 Ngāi Tahu ki Murihiku

⁹⁵⁷ 00301.019 Port Otago

- (1) nationally significant *surf breaks* are protected by avoiding adverse *effects* on the *surf breaks*, including on access to and use and enjoyment of them, ~~and~~
- (2) ~~the values of and access to regionally significant *surf breaks* are maintained.~~⁹⁵⁸

CE-P8 – Public access

~~Maintain or enhance~~ Manage public walking and vehicle access to, and along and adjacent to the coastal marine area by; ~~unless restricting public access is necessary:~~

- (1A) maintaining or enhancing public walking access,
- (1B) controlling vehicle access, and
- (1C) restricting public walking and vehicle access where necessary:
 - (1)(a) to protect public health and safety,
 - (2)(b) to protect areas of significant *natural areas* ~~indigenous vegetation and significant habitats of indigenous fauna,~~
 - (3)(c) to protect dunes, estuaries and other sensitive natural areas or habitats,
 - (4)(d) to protect places or areas of special or outstanding ~~containing *historic heritage* of regional or national significance,~~
 - (5)(e) to protect places or areas of significance to ~~*takata mana whenua*~~, including wāhi tapu, ~~and wāhi tupuna and wāhi taoka,~~
 - (6)(f) for defence purposes in accordance with the Defence Act 1990,
 - (7)(g) for temporary activities or special events, or
 - (8)(h) to ensure a level of security consistent with the operational requirements of a lawfully established activity.⁹⁵⁹

CE-P9 – Activities on *land* within the coastal environment

The strategic and co-ordinated use of *land* within the coastal environment is achieved by:

- (1) encouraging the consolidation of existing coastal settlements and *urban areas* where this will contribute to the avoidance or mitigation of sprawling or sporadic patterns of settlement and urban growth, avoiding sprawling or sporadic patterns of subdivision, use and development,⁹⁶⁰
- (2) considering the rate at which built development should be enabled to provide for the reasonably foreseeable needs of population growth without compromising the values of the coastal environment,
- (2A) recognising and providing for the functional needs and operational needs of infrastructure,⁹⁶¹
- (3) recognising the importance of the provision of *infrastructure*, and food production, and pastoral farming activities⁹⁶² to the social, economic and cultural well-being of people and communities,

⁹⁵⁸ 00301.019 Port Otago

⁹⁵⁹ 00226.143 Kāi Tahu Ki Otago, 00230.058 Forest and Bird

⁹⁶⁰ 00139.071 DCC

⁹⁶¹ 00305.013, 00305.014, 00305.015 Waka Kotahi

⁹⁶² Clause 10(2)(b)(i), Schedule 1, RMA – consequential to 00021.002 Matakanui Gold Limited, 00016.009 Alluvium Limited and Stoney Creek Mining, 00017.007 Danny Walker and others, 00226.033 Kāi Tahu ki Otago

- (4) requiring development to be set back from the *coastal marine area* and other *coastal water* where practicable and reasonable, to protect the natural character, open space, public access and *amenity values* of the coastal environment, ~~maintaining or enhancing public access to the coastal environment, and~~⁹⁶³
- (5) considering where activities that maintain the character of the existing built environment should be encouraged, and where activities resulting in a change in character would be acceptable,
- (6) taking into account the ongoing *effects of climate change* and *coastal hazard risk*.⁹⁶⁴
- (7) enabling mana whenua to provide for their cultural and social needs for papakāinga, marae and associated developments and make appropriate provision for them.

CE-P10 – Activities within the *coastal marine area*

Use and development in the *coastal marine area* must:

- (1) enable multiple uses of the *coastal marine area* wherever reasonable and practicable, and⁹⁶⁵
- (2) maintain or improve the health,⁹⁶⁶ integrity, form, function and *resilience* of the *coastal marine area*, or and⁹⁶⁷
- (3) have a *functional need*⁹⁶⁸ or *operational need* to be located in the *coastal marine area*, or
- (4) have a public benefit or opportunity for public recreation that cannot practicably be located outside the *coastal marine area*.

CE-P11 – Aquaculture

Provide for the development and operation of *aquaculture activities* ~~within appropriate locations and limits,~~ taking into account policies CE-P3 to CE-P12, and⁹⁶⁹:

- (1) the need for high quality *water* required for an *aquaculture activity*,
- (2) the need for *land*-based facilities and infrastructure required to support the operation of *aquaculture activities*, and
- (3) the potential social, economic and cultural benefits associated with the operation and development of *aquaculture activities*.

CE-P12 – Reclamation and de-reclamation⁹⁷⁰

Manage reclamation and de-reclamation by:⁹⁷¹

- (1A) Avoiding⁹⁷² *reclamation* in the *coastal marine area*, unless:

⁹⁶³ 00139.071 DCC

⁹⁶⁴ 00139.071 DCC

⁹⁶⁵ 00226.145 Kāi Tahu ki Otago

⁹⁶⁶ 00226.145 Kāi Tahu Ki Otago

⁹⁶⁷ 00315.025 Aurora Energy

⁹⁶⁸ Clause 16(2), Schedule 1, RMA

⁹⁶⁹ 00137.057 DOC

⁹⁷⁰ 00226.147 Kāi Tahu ki Otago

⁹⁷¹ 00226.147 Kāi Tahu ki Otago

⁹⁷² 00226.147 Kāi Tahu ki Otago

- (1a) *land* outside the *coastal marine area* is not available for the proposed activity,
 - (2b) the activity to be established on the reclamation can only occur immediately adjacent to the *coastal marine area*,
 - (3c) there are no practicable alternative methods of providing for the activity, and
 - (4d) the reclamation will provide significant regional or national benefit, and
- (1B) encouraging de-reclamation of redundant reclaimed *land* where it would restore natural character, resources of the *coastal marine area*, and/or provide for more public open space.⁹⁷³

CE-P13 – Rakatirataka and ~~K~~kaitiakitaka

Recognise and give practical effect to Kāi Tahu rakatirataka and provide for⁹⁷⁴ the role of Kāi Tahu as kaitiaki of the coastal environment by:

- (1) facilitating partnership with, and actively⁹⁷⁵ involving *mana whenua* in decision making and management processes in respect of the coast,
- (2) identifying, protecting, and improving where degraded, sites, areas and values of importance to Kāi Tahu within the coastal environment, and managing these in accordance with tikaka,
- (3) providing for customary uses, including *mahika kai* and the harvesting of kaimoana,
- (4) incorporating the impact of activities on customary fisheries, mātaimai reserves and taiāpure⁹⁷⁶ in decision making, and
- (5) incorporating mātauraka Māori ~~Maori~~⁹⁷⁷ in the management and monitoring of activities in the coastal environment.

Methods

CE-M1A – Mana whenua/mana moana involvement

Otago Regional Council must partner with Kāi Tahu in coastal management by:

- (1) actively identifying and pursuing opportunities for *mana whenua* to be involved in coastal governance, including through use of available mechanisms such as transfers of functions (under section 33 of the RMA 1991) and supporting the establishment of mātaimai reserves and taiāpure,
- (2) implementing actions to foster the development of *mana whenua* capacity to contribute to the Council's decision-making processes,
- (3) supporting *mana whenua* initiatives that contribute to maintaining or improving the health and well-being of coastal water and ecosystems, and
- (4) providing relevant information to *mana whenua* for the purposes of (1), (2), and (3).⁹⁷⁸

⁹⁷³ 00226.147 Kāi Tahu ki Otago

⁹⁷⁴ 00226.148 Kāi Tahu Ki Otago

⁹⁷⁵ 00226.148 Kāi Tahu Ki Otago

⁹⁷⁶ 00226.148 Kāi Tahu Ki Otago

⁹⁷⁷ Clause 16(2), Schedule 1, RMA

⁹⁷⁸ 00226.156 Kāi Tahu ki Otago

CE–M1 – Identifying the coastal environment

Local authorities must:

- (1) ~~no later than 31 May 2023,~~⁹⁷⁹ work collaboratively, including with local authorities in neighbouring regions,⁹⁸⁰ to:
 - (a) identify the landward extent of the coastal environment, in accordance with CE-P2(1),
 - (b) map the landward extent of the coastal environment area in the relevant *regional plans*⁹⁸¹ and *district plans*.

CE–M2 – Identifying other areas

Local authorities must work collaboratively, with Kāi Tahu⁹⁸² and local authorities in neighbouring regions,⁹⁸³ together to:

- (1) identify areas and values of high and outstanding natural character within their jurisdictions in accordance with CE–P4(1), map the areas and describe their values in the relevant *regional plans*⁹⁸⁴ and *district plans*, and identify their capacity to accommodate change through use or development while protecting the values that contribute to the natural character of the area being considered high or outstanding,
- (2) identify, at an appropriate scale,⁹⁸⁵ areas and values of outstanding natural features, and landscapes, ~~and (including seascapes)~~ {in the coastal environment} within their jurisdictions in accordance with CE–P6(1), map the areas and describe their values in the relevant *regional plans*⁹⁸⁶ and *district plans*, and identify their capacity to accommodate change through use or development while protecting the values that contribute to the natural features, and landscapes ~~and (including seascapes)~~ being considered outstanding,
- (3) identify areas and values of indigenous *biodiversity* within their jurisdictions in accordance with CE–P5, map the areas and describe their values in the relevant *regional* and *district plans*, and
- (4) prioritise identification under (1) – (3) in areas that are:
 - ~~(a)~~—likely to face development or growth pressure over the life of this RPS, ~~or~~⁹⁸⁷
 - ~~(b)~~—likely to contain outstanding natural character areas, outstanding natural features or landscapes, and areas of significant indigenous biodiversity, including the areas in the table below.

*Table 2: Areas likely to contain significant values*⁹⁸⁸

⁹⁷⁹ Clause 16(2), Schedule 1, RMA

⁹⁸⁰ 00013.009 ECan

⁹⁸¹ Clause 16(2), Schedule 1, RMA

⁹⁸² 00226.149 Kāi Tahu ki Otago

⁹⁸³ 00013.010 ECan

⁹⁸⁴ Clause 16(2), Schedule 1, RMA

⁹⁸⁵ 00122.018 Sanford

⁹⁸⁶ Clause 16(2), Schedule 1, RMA

⁹⁸⁷ Clause 10(2)(b)(i), Schedule 1, RMA – consequential amendment arising from 00301.025 Port Otago

⁹⁸⁸ 00301.025 Port Otago

<p>Oamaru Harbour Breakwater Moeraki Beach Moeraki Peninsula Shag Point & Shag River Estuary Stony Creek Estuary Pleasant River Estuary Hawksbury Inlet Waikouaiti River Estuary Karitane Headland Puketeraki Blueskin Bay Orokonui Inlet Mapoutahi Purakanui Inlet Aramoana Otago Harbour Historic Walls Otakou & Taiaroa Head Pipikaretu Point</p>	<p>Te Whakarekaiwi Papanui Inlet Hoopers Inlet Kaikorai Estuary Brighton Akatore Creek Estuary Tokomairiro Estuary Wangaloa Clutha River Mata-au, Matau Branch Nugget Point Surat Bay Catlins Lake Estuary Jacks Bay Waiheke Beach Tahakopa Estuary Oyster Bay Tautuku Estuary Waipati Estuary & Kinakina Island</p>
---	---

CE–M3 – Regional plans

Otago Regional Council must prepare or amend and maintain its *regional plans* no later than 31 December 2028 to:

- (1) map areas of deteriorated *water* quality in the coastal environment, in accordance with CE–P2(2) and CE–P2(3),⁹⁸⁹
- (1A) identify, manage, and improve where degraded, areas of coastal water where *mana whenua* have a particular interest, including *wāhi tūpuna*, statutory acknowledgement areas, tōpuni and *nohoaka* identified in the NTCSA, and customary fisheries,
- (1B) set water quality limits and targets for coastal waters in accordance with CE-P3,⁹⁹⁰
- (2) map the areas and characteristics of, and access to, surf breaks of national significance, nationally⁹⁹¹ and regionally significant surf breaks,⁹⁹²
- (3) require development to be set back from the coastal marine area and other coastal water⁹⁹³ where practicable to protect the natural character, open space, public access and *amenity values* of the coastal environment,
- (4) manage the discharge of contaminants into coastal water to achieve limits or targets for water quality⁹⁹⁴ by:
 - (a) using the smallest mixing zone necessary to achieve the required water quality standards only enabling the use of small mixing zones before the water quality standards need to be met⁹⁹⁵ in the *receiving environment*; and minimising⁹⁹⁶ *adverse effects* on the life-supporting capacity of *water* within any mixing zone,

⁹⁸⁹ 00226.153 Kāi Tahu ki Otago

⁹⁹⁰ 00226.153 Kāi Tahu ki Otago

⁹⁹¹ Clause 16(2), Schedule 1, RMA

⁹⁹² 00301.019 Port Otago

⁹⁹³ Clause 10(2)(b)(i), Schedule 1, RMA – consequential amendment arising from 00139.071 DCC

⁹⁹⁴ Clause 10(2)(b)(i), Schedule 1, RMA – consequential amendment arising from 00226.153 Kāi Tahu ki Otago

⁹⁹⁵ 00139.076 DCC

⁹⁹⁶ Clause 16(2), Schedule 1, RMA

- (b) prohibiting any new ~~the~~⁹⁹⁷ *discharge* of untreated human *sewage* directly to water in the coastal environment,
- (ba) requiring the implementation of methods to progressively reduce the volume and frequency of existing *discharges* of untreated human *sewage* from reticulated *wastewater* systems in the event of a system failure or overloading the system, including by minimising *stormwater* inflows and infiltration into *wastewater* systems,⁹⁹⁸
- (bb) encouraging methods and actions to reduce *contaminant discharges* at source,⁹⁹⁹
- (c) prohibiting the *discharge* of treated human *sewage* directly to water in the coastal environment unless:
- (i) there has been adequate consideration of alternative methods, sites and routes for undertaking the *discharge*, and
- (ii) it can be demonstrated that the proposal has been informed by consultation with *tangata whenua* and the affected community, and
- (d) reducing the *discharge* of sediment by:
- (i) requiring that *subdivision*, use, or development will not increase sedimentation of the *coastal marine area* or other *coastal water*,
- (ii) controlling the impacts of vegetation removal on sedimentation including the impacts of harvesting *plantation forestry*, and
- (iii) reducing sediment loadings in runoff and in *stormwater* systems through controls on *land* use activities, and
- (e) designing, installing, operating and maintaining new reticulated *wastewater* systems to avoiding cross-contamination between *wastewater sewage* and *stormwater* systems where new systems are proposed and remedying cross-contamination where they it currently exists in established systems, and¹⁰⁰⁰
- (f) having particular regard to:
- (i) the sensitivity of the receiving environment,
- (ii) the nature of the *contaminants* to be *discharged*, the *contaminant* concentration thresholds not to be exceeded to achieve the required *water* quality in the receiving environment, and the risks if that concentration of *contaminants* is exceeded,
- (iii) the capacity of the receiving environment to assimilate the *contaminants*, and
- (iv) avoiding significant adverse *effects* on ecosystems and habitats after reasonable mixing,
- (5) control the use and development of the *coastal marine area*, in order to:
- (a) manage *coastal water* quality; preserve and restore the¹⁰⁰¹ natural character; and protect¹⁰⁰² natural landscapes, features, and landscapes and (including seascapes)¹⁰⁰³

⁹⁹⁷ 00139.076 DCC

⁹⁹⁸ 00139.076 DCC

⁹⁹⁹ 00510.020 Fuel Companies

¹⁰⁰⁰ 00139.076 DCC

¹⁰⁰¹ 00226.153 Kāi Tahu ki Otago

¹⁰⁰² 00226.153 Kāi Tahu ki Otago

¹⁰⁰³ 00301.057 Port Otago

wāhi tūpuna and indigenous *biodiversity* of the *coastal marine area* in accordance with CE-P3, CE-P4, CE-P5, and CE-P6 and HCV-WT-P2¹⁰⁰⁴, and

- (b) manage Otago's surf breaks of national significance nationally¹⁰⁰⁵ and ~~regionally significant surf breaks~~¹⁰⁰⁶ in accordance with CE-P7,
- (6) include provisions requiring the adoption of a precautionary approach to assessing the *effects* of activities in the coastal environment in accordance with IM-P15¹⁰⁰⁷ where:
- (a) there is scientific uncertainty or a lack of relevant knowledge¹⁰⁰⁸, or
- (b) there are potentially significant or irreversible adverse *effects*, or
- (c) coastal resources are potentially vulnerable to effects from climate change,¹⁰⁰⁹
- (7) identify areas that may be¹⁰¹⁰ appropriate for aquaculture ~~and the forms and limits associated with providing for aquaculture that will enable achievement of objectives CE-O1 to CE-O5~~¹⁰¹¹,
- (8) provide for walking access to, ~~and along, and adjacent to~~¹⁰¹² the *coastal marine area* in accordance with Policy 19 of the NZCPS,
- (9) control vehicle access to, ~~and along, and adjacent to~~¹⁰¹³ the *coastal marine area* in accordance with Policy 20 of the NZCPS,
- (10) manage reclamation and de-reclamation¹⁰¹⁴ activities in accordance with CE-P12, and when *reclamation* is considered suitable in accordance with CE-P12, have particular regard to the matters listed in Policy 10(2) and (3) of the NZCPS,
- (11) require stock to be excluded from the *coastal marine area*, adjoining intertidal areas and ~~other~~ coastal water bodies¹⁰¹⁵ and riparian margins in the coastal environment, and
- (12) provide for and encourage activities undertaken for the primary purpose of enhancing coastal water quality, coastal habitats and ecosystems, customary fisheries, mahika kai and kaimoana activities, and¹⁰¹⁶ restoring natural character, features, and landscapes ~~and (including seascapes)~~¹⁰¹⁷ in accordance with CE-P3,¹⁰¹⁸ CE-P4, CE-P5, and¹⁰¹⁹ CE-P6, and CE-P13¹⁰²⁰, and
- (13) identify any aquaculture settlement areas gazetted under the Māori Commercial Aquaculture Claims Settlement Act 2004.¹⁰²¹

CE-M4 – District plans

Territorial authorities must prepare or amend and maintain their *district plans* to:

¹⁰⁰⁴ 00226.153 Kāi Tahu ki Otago

¹⁰⁰⁵ Clause 16(2), Schedule 1, RMA

¹⁰⁰⁶ 00301.026 Port Otago

¹⁰⁰⁷ Clause 10(2)(b)(i), Schedule 1, RMA – consequential amendment arising from 00137.042 DOC, 00014.022 John Highton

¹⁰⁰⁸ Clause 10(2)(b)(i), Schedule 1, RMA – consequential amendment arising from 00137.042 DOC, 00014.022 John Highton

¹⁰⁰⁹ 00230.063 Forest and Bird

¹⁰¹⁰ 00226.153 Kāi Tahu ki Otago

¹⁰¹¹ 00137.057 DOC

¹⁰¹² Consequential amendment to 00230.058 Forest and Bird

¹⁰¹³ Consequential amendment to 00230.058 Forest and Bird

¹⁰¹⁴ 00226.147 Kāi Tahu ki Otago

¹⁰¹⁵ Clause 16(2), Schedule 1, RMA

¹⁰¹⁶ 00226.153 Kāi Tahu ki Otago

¹⁰¹⁷ 00301.057 Port Otago

¹⁰¹⁸ 00226.153 Kāi Tahu ki Otago

¹⁰¹⁹ 00226.153 Kāi Tahu ki Otago

¹⁰²⁰ 00226.153 Kāi Tahu ki Otago

¹⁰²¹ 00234.022 Te Rūnanga o Ngāi Tahu

- (1) control the location, density and form of *subdivision* in the coastal environment (outside the *coastal marine area*),
- (2) control the location, scale and form of *buildings* and *structures* in the coastal environment (outside the *coastal marine area*),
- (3) control the location and scale of *earthworks, mining,*¹⁰²² and vegetation planting, modification and removal in the coastal environment (outside the *coastal marine area*),
- (3A) achieve the integrated management of, and control over, land use activities which could cause direct or indirect effects on the *coastal marine area*,¹⁰²³ in accordance with CE-P1A,¹⁰²⁴
- (4) require *resource consent* for uses of *land* on reclamations that have occurred after the date this RPS becomes operative,
- (5) provide for the establishment of *esplanade reserves* and *esplanade strips*,
- (6) include provisions requiring the adoption of a precautionary approach to assessing the *effects* of activities in the coastal environment in accordance with IM-P615¹⁰²⁵ where:
 - (a) there is scientific uncertainty or a lack of relevant knowledge¹⁰²⁶, or
 - (b) there are potentially significant or irreversible adverse *effects*,
 - (c) coastal resources are potentially vulnerable to the effects of climate change.¹⁰²⁷
- (7) provide for walking access to, ~~and along,~~ and adjacent to¹⁰²⁸ the *coastal marine area* in accordance with Policy 19 of the NZCPS,
- (8) control vehicle access to, ~~and along,~~ and adjacent to¹⁰²⁹ the *coastal marine area* in accordance with Policy 20 of the NZCPS,
- (9) recognise ~~takata mana~~¹⁰³⁰ *whenua* needs for *papakāiika*, marae and associated developments within the coastal environment and make appropriate provision for them,
- (10) provide access to surf breaks of national significance nationally¹⁰³¹ ~~and regionally significant surf breaks~~¹⁰³², and
- (11) provide for and encourage activities undertaken for the primary purpose of enhancing coastal water quality, coastal habitats and ecosystems, customary fisheries and other *mahika kai* activities restoring natural character, features, or landscapes in accordance with CE-P1, CE-P3, CE-P4, and CE-P6 and CE-P13¹⁰³³.

¹⁰²² 00226.154 Kāi Tahu ki Otago

¹⁰²³ 00137.059 DOC, 00226.154 Kāi Tahu ki Otago

¹⁰²⁴ 00226.154 Kāi Tahu ki Otago

¹⁰²⁵ Clause 10(2)(b)(i), Schedule 1, RMA – consequential amendment arising from 00137.042 DOC, 00014.022 John Highton

¹⁰²⁶ Clause 10(2)(b)(i), Schedule 1, RMA – consequential amendment arising from 00137.042 DOC, 00014.022 John Highton

¹⁰²⁷ 00230.064 Forest and Bird

¹⁰²⁸ Consequential amendment to 00230.058 Forest and Bird

¹⁰²⁹ Consequential amendment to 00230.058 Forest and Bird

¹⁰³⁰ 00226.154 Kāi Tahu ki Otago

¹⁰³¹ Clause 16(2), Schedule 1, RMA

¹⁰³² 00301.019 Port Otago

¹⁰³³ 00226.154 Kāi Tahu ki Otago

CE–M5 – Other incentives and mechanisms

Local authorities shall ~~are encouraged to~~¹⁰³⁴ consider the use of other mechanisms or incentives to assist in achieving Policies CE–P2 to CE–P13~~2~~¹⁰³⁵, including:

- (1) identifying areas and opportunities within the coastal environment for restoration or rehabilitation,
- (2) identifying opportunities to enhance or restore public walking access in accordance with Policy 19(c) of the NZCPS,
- (3) promoting the removal of abandoned or redundant structures that have no heritage, amenity or reuse value,
- (4) funding assistance for restoration projects (for example, through Otago Regional Council’s ECO Fund),
- (5) development or design guidelines (for example, colour palettes for *structures* in the coastal environment),
- (6) rating differentials for *land* that is protected due to its status as a high or outstanding natural character area,
- (7) education and advice,
- (8) research relevant to the *effects* of activities on:
 - (a) coastal network *infrastructure*,
 - (b) coastal values,
 - (c) coastal hazards,
 - (d) riparian vegetation cover or any *land* cover that contributes to supporting coastal values or mitigating coastal hazards, or
 - (e) areas particularly sensitive to *land* use changes, or
 - (f) coastal water quality, or¹⁰³⁶
 - (g) coastal habitats and ecosystems,¹⁰³⁷
- (9) facilitating the restoration, rehabilitation or creation of coastal habitats, particularly when it:
 - (a) encourages the natural regeneration of indigenous species,
 - (b) buffers or links ecosystems, habitats and areas of significance that contribute to ecological corridors, ~~or~~
 - (c) maintains or enhances the provision of indigenous ecosystem services, ~~and~~
 - (d) benefits *mahika kai* and kaimoana species or customary fisheries areas, or¹⁰³⁸
 - (e) will lead to the improvement of areas of deteriorated water quality, and¹⁰³⁹
- (10) bylaws controlling vehicle access to and along the *coastal marine area* in accordance with

¹⁰³⁴ 00230.065 Forest and Bird, 00137.060 DOC, and 00239.064 Federated Farmers

¹⁰³⁵ Clause 16(2), Schedule 1, RMA

¹⁰³⁶ 00226.155 Kai Tahu Ki Otago

¹⁰³⁷ 00226.155 Kai Tahu Ki Otago

¹⁰³⁸ 00226.155 Kai Tahu Ki Otago

¹⁰³⁹ 00226.155 Kai Tahu Ki Otago

Policy 20 of the NZCPS.

CE–M6 – Monitoring

Otago Regional Council shall:

- (1) establish a long-term monitoring programme for coastal waters and coastal ecosystems that incorporates cultural health monitoring,
- (2) record information (including monitoring data) about the state of coastal waters and coastal ecosystems and the challenges to their health and well-being,
- (3) regularly prepare reports on the matters in (1) and (2) and publish those reports, and
- (4) take action where the results of monitoring show that this is necessary to achieve the objectives of this policy statement.¹⁰⁴⁰

Explanation

CE–E1 – Explanation

The provisions in this chapter recognise that the coastal environment is a finite resource with a range of values that need to be preserved. The policies within the chapter are designed to protect the coastal environment from inappropriate activities. The coastal environment is also recognised as dynamic and the policies, in association with others in the ORPS, seek to prevent increasing *risks* to life, *infrastructure* and property.

The policies in this chapter require the identification and management of a range of values within the coastal environment. They also set out a number of environmental bottom lines that give effect to the requirements of the NZCPS. Provided these environmental bottom lines are achieved, the chapter also acknowledges that there are a range of activities including port activities, aquaculture, and appropriately designed and located *subdivision*, use and development that can be undertaken within the coastal environment. The policies also provide specific direction on how activities in the coastal environment are to be undertaken. The combination balance¹⁰⁴¹ of protective and enabling policies within this chapter are designed to implement the objectives by requiring that activities in the coastal environment are undertaken in a manner that preserves or restores the values of the coastal environment.

Kāi Tahu tūpuna had an extensive knowledge of the coastal environment and weather patterns, passed from generation to generation. This knowledge continues to be held by whānau and hapū and is regarded as a taoka. The seasonal lifestyle of Kāi Tahu led to their dependence on the resources of the coast. This enduring relationship with the coastal environment, arising from long whakapapa associations and the use of tikaka to guide resource management practices, is manifested in the rakatirataka and *kaitiakitaka* responsibilities that Kāi Tahu hold as *mana whenua*.

Coastal waters can be influenced by activities which are undertaken beyond the coastal environment. This interconnectedness between coastal and freshwater environments means provisions contained within the LF – Land and freshwater chapter may also need to be considered to manage the coastal environment.¹⁰⁴²

Some of the policies in the NZCPS are highly prescriptive and will be most effectively implemented

¹⁰⁴⁰ 00226.157 Kāi Tahu Ki Otago

¹⁰⁴¹ 00230.066 Forest and Bird

¹⁰⁴² 00230.066 Forest and Bird

through *regional* and *district plans*. In those cases, the policies in this RPS have included additional region-specific context where that is possible, but have not sought to restate the content of NZCPS policies with the expectation that those policies will be implemented by the *regional* and *district plans*.

In addition to the policies in this chapter, the values of the coastal environment are recognised and provided for in a number of other the following chapters of the ORPS, as set out in CE-P1. ~~where they provide direction on the management of the coastal environment or activities within the coastal environment:~~

- ~~ECO – Ecosystems and indigenous biodiversity~~
- ~~LF – Land and freshwater~~
- ~~EIT – Energy, infrastructure and transport~~
- ~~HCV – Historical and cultural values~~
- ~~NFL – Natural features and landscapes~~
- ~~HAZ – Hazards and risks~~¹⁰⁴³

Principal reasons

CE-PR1 – Principal reasons

The coastal environment includes the *coastal marine area*, islands within the *coastal marine area* and the area landward of the line of mean high-water springs. The landward extent of the coastal environment is determined by the natural and physical elements, features and processes set out in Policy 1(2) of the NZCPS. The importance of the coastal environment is reflected in the statutory resource management framework, particularly as identified in sections 6 and 7 of the RMA ~~1991~~¹⁰⁴⁴ and as set out in the NZCPS.

A number of activities occur within or affect the coastal environment including urban development, recreational activities, transport infrastructure, port activities, *infrastructure*, energy generation and transmission, food production and other farming activities, *plantation forestry*, rural industry and *mineral* extraction. These activities can be important contributors to the existing and future health and well-being of communities. However, poorly located or managed activities can have adverse *effects* that compromise the values of the coastal environment such as natural character, biophysical processes, *water quality*, *surf breaks*, indigenous *biodiversity* and natural landscapes.

The coastal environment is highly valued by Kāi Tahu *mana whenua*, with a number of areas in the coastal environment recognised in statutory acknowledgments in the NTCSA 1998. The marine environment is a moving force, a reminder of the power of Takaroa. The *coastal waters* and processes were integral to the way of life *tūpuna* enjoyed, and the coastal environment supports significant *mahika kai mahika kai*¹⁰⁴⁵/*kaimoana* resources and *wāhi tūpuna*. This environment was traditionally important for settlement and travel and continues to provide for settlement and *mahika kai mahika kai*¹⁰⁴⁶ and fisheries resources. *Kaimoana* is essential to coastal iwi and hapū relationships with the *environment* and in particular as part of the *tikaka* of food gathering and as indicators of the health of coastal environments.

The *coastal waters* are a *receiving environment* for *freshwater*, gravels, sediment and *contaminants* from the terrestrial landscape - of particular concern are the significant *discharges* of sediments, transported by *rivers* and waterways, that have a smothering effect on the benthic systems of the

¹⁰⁴³ 00301.027 Port Otago, 00230.066 Forest and Bird

¹⁰⁴⁴ Clause 16(2), Schedule 1, RMA

¹⁰⁴⁵ Clause 10(2)(b)(i) – consequential amendment arising from 00226.038 Kāi Tahu ki Otago

¹⁰⁴⁶ Clause 10(2)(b)(i) – consequential amendment arising from 00226.038 Kāi Tahu ki Otago

coastal area, including the important kelp beds. The interconnection of the *land* and sea environments is central to the *ki uta ki tai* ('mountains to the sea') philosophy. This interconnection requires careful consideration in managing the *effects of land* use activities.

Other chapters of the Regional Policy Statement are also relevant for managing the coastal environment as land-based activities can have a significant *effect* on the health of the marine environment. Sediment, *contaminants* and litter that are carried by waterways or pipes into the sea affect *water* quality and the ecological health of the coastal environment.

Implementation of the provisions in this chapter will occur primarily through *regional plans*¹⁰⁴⁷ and *district plan* provisions, however *local authorities* may also choose to adopt additional non-regulatory methods to support the achievement of the objectives.

Anticipated environmental results

- CE–AER1** The values of the coastal environment are not adversely affected or lost because of inappropriate uses of the *natural and physical resources* in the coastal environment.
- CE–AER2** There is no reduction in the extent of identified areas of high and outstanding natural character in the coastal environment.
- CE–AER3** Areas where natural character has been reduced or lost are restored.
- CE–AER4** There is an improvement in the quality of *water* in areas identified as having deteriorated *water* quality.
- CE–AER5** The quality of *coastal water* supports healthy coastal ecosystems and provides for contact recreation and customary uses.
- CE–AER6** New building and development in the coastal environment is consistent with the character of the area and avoids increasing the or minimises¹⁰⁴⁸ *risks* from *natural hazards* to people and communities.
- CE–AER7** The public have improved access to, along, and adjacent to the *coastal marine area*.
- CE–AER8** The mauri of the coastal environment is protected, and restored where it has been degraded.¹⁰⁴⁹
- CE–AER9** Customary uses, including practices associated with *mahika kai mahika kai*¹⁰⁵⁰ and *kaimoana*, are supported, and *mana whenua* exercise their *kaitiaki* role within the coastal environment.¹⁰⁵¹

¹⁰⁴⁷ Clause 16(2), Schedule 1, RMA

¹⁰⁴⁸ 00239.067 Federated Farmers

¹⁰⁴⁹ 00223.077 Ngāi Tahu ki Murihiku

¹⁰⁵⁰ Clause 10(2)(b)(i) – consequential amendment arising from 00226.038 Kāi Tahu ki Otago

¹⁰⁵¹ 00223.077 Ngāi Tahu ki Murihiku

LF – Land and freshwater

LF–WAI – Te Mana o te Wai

Objectives

LF–WAI–O1 – Te Mana o te Wai

The mauri of¹⁰⁵² Otago's *water bodies* and their health and well-being ~~is~~ are¹⁰⁵³ protected, and restored where ~~it is they are~~¹⁰⁵⁴ degraded, so that the mauri of those water bodies is protected¹⁰⁵⁵, and the management of *land* and *water* recognises and reflects that:

- (1) *water* is the foundation and source of all life – na te wai ko te hauora o ngā mea katoa,
- (2) there is an integral kinship relationship between water and Kāi Tahu whānui, and this relationship endures through time, connecting past, present and future,
- (3) each *water body* has a unique whakapapa and characteristics,
- (4) fresh¹⁰⁵⁶ *water*, ~~and~~ *land*, and coastal water¹⁰⁵⁷ have a connectedness that supports and perpetuates life, ~~and~~
- (4A) protecting the health and well-being of water protects the wider environment,¹⁰⁵⁸
- (5) Kāi Tahu exercise rakatirataka, manaakitaka and their *kaitiakitaka* duty of care and attention over wai and all the life it supports, and
- (6) all people and communities have a responsibility to exercise stewardship, care, and respect in the management of fresh water.¹⁰⁵⁹

Policies

LF–WAI–P1 – Prioritisation

In all decision-making affecting management of¹⁰⁶⁰ *fresh water* in Otago, prioritise:

- (1) first, the health and well-being of *water bodies* and *freshwater ecosystems*, (te hauora o te wai) and the contribution of this to¹⁰⁶¹ the health and well-being of the environment (te hauora o te taiao),

¹⁰⁵² FPI024.015 DairyNZ, FPI009.003 COWA

¹⁰⁵³ Clause 10(2)(b)(i), Schedule 1, RMA – consequential amendment

¹⁰⁵⁴ Clause 10(2)(b)(i), Schedule 1, RMA – consequential amendment

¹⁰⁵⁵ FPI043.051 OWRUG

¹⁰⁵⁶ FPI019.003 Fonterra, FPI030.015 Kāi Tahu ki Otago

¹⁰⁵⁷ FPI019.003 Fonterra, FPI032.014 Te Rūnanga o Ngāi Tahu, FPI030.015 Kāi Tahu ki Otago, FPI044.005 DOC, FPI042.008 Ngāi Tahu ki Murihiku

¹⁰⁵⁸ FPI043.051 OWRUG, FPI019.003 Fonterra

¹⁰⁵⁹ FPI019.003 Fonterra, FPI037.012 Fish and Game, FPI032.014 Te Rūnanga o Ngāi Tahu, FPI030.015 Kāi Tahu ki Otago, FPI044.005 DOC

¹⁰⁶⁰ FPI024.016 DairyNZ, FPI027.016 Contact, FPI012.003, FPI019.004 Fonterra, FPI012.003 Minister for the Environment, FPI017.004 Ravensdown, FPI021.002 Ballance

¹⁰⁶¹ FPI030.016 Kāi Tahu ki Otago

together with¹⁰⁶² and the exercise of *mana whenua* to uphold these,¹⁰⁶³

- (2) second, the health ~~and well-being~~¹⁰⁶⁴ needs of people, (te hauora o te tangata);¹⁰⁶⁵ interacting with *water* through ingestion (such as *drinking water* and consuming ~~harvested~~ resources harvested from the *water body*)¹⁰⁶⁶ and immersive activities (such as harvesting resources and primary contact bathing¹⁰⁶⁷), and
- (3) third, the ability of people and communities to provide for their social, economic, and cultural well-being, now and in the future.

LF-WAI-P2 – Mana whakahaere

Recognise and give practical effect to Kāi Tahu rākatirataka in respect of *fresh water* by:

- (1) facilitating partnership with, and the active involvement of, *mana whenua* in *freshwater* management and decision-making processes,
- (2) sustaining the environmental, social, cultural and economic relationships of Kāi Tahu with *water bodies*,
- (3) providing for a range of customary uses, including *mahika kai mahika kai*¹⁰⁶⁸, specific to each *water body*, ~~and~~
- (4) incorporating mātauraka into decision making, management and monitoring processes, ~~and~~
- (5) managing wai and its connections with whenua in a holistic and interconnected way – ki uta ki tai.¹⁰⁶⁹

LF-WAI-P3 – Integrated management/ki uta ki tai

Manage the use of *fresh water* and *land* ~~in accordance with tikaka and kawa~~, using an integrated approach that is consistent with tikaka and kawa,¹⁰⁷⁰ that:

- (1) sustains and, to the greatest extent practicable, restores or improves:¹⁰⁷¹
 - (a) recognises and sustains¹⁰⁷² the natural¹⁰⁷³ connections and interactions between *water bodies* (large and small, surface and ground, fresh and coastal, permanently flowing, intermittent and ephemeral),
 - (~~2b~~) sustains and, wherever possible, restores¹⁰⁷⁴ the natural¹⁰⁷⁵ connections and interactions between *land* and *water*, from the mountains to the sea,

¹⁰⁶² FPI017.004 Ravensdown, FPI021.002 Ballance

¹⁰⁶³ In matters of mana, the associated spiritual and cultural responsibilities connect natural resources and *mana whenua* in a kinship relationship that is reciprocal and stems from the time of creation.

¹⁰⁶⁴ FPI016.011 Meridian, FPI019.004 Fonterra

¹⁰⁶⁵ FPI017.004 Ravensdown

¹⁰⁶⁶ FPI030.016 Kāi Tahu ki Otago, FPI017.004 Ravensdown, FPI045.006 Forest and Bird, FPI027.016 Contact

¹⁰⁶⁷ FPI017.004 Ravensdown, FPI027.016 Contact

¹⁰⁶⁸ Clause 10(2)(b)(i) – consequential amendment arising from 00226.038 Kāi Tahu ki Otago

¹⁰⁶⁹ 00234.026 Te Rūnanga o Ngāi Tahu

¹⁰⁷⁰ 00235.080 OWRUG, FS00226.362 Kāi Tahu ki Otago, FS00234.164 Te Rūnanga o Ngāi Tahu

¹⁰⁷¹ 00306.032 Meridian

¹⁰⁷² Clause 10(2)(b)(i), Schedule 1, RMA – consequential amendment arising from 00306.032 Meridian

¹⁰⁷³ 00026.161 Moutere Station

¹⁰⁷⁴ Clause 10(2)(b)(i), Schedule 1, RMA – consequential amendment arising from 00306.032 Meridian

¹⁰⁷⁵ 00026.161 Moutere Station

~~(3c)~~ sustains and, wherever possible, restores¹⁰⁷⁶ the habitats of *mahika kai mahika kai*¹⁰⁷⁷ and indigenous species, including taoka species associated with the *water bodies*,
~~body~~,¹⁰⁷⁸

- (4) manages the effects of the use and development of land to maintain or enhance the health and well-being of *freshwater*, ~~and coastal water and associated ecosystems~~,¹⁰⁷⁹
- (5) encourages the coordination and sequencing of regional or urban growth to ensure it is sustainable,
- (6) has regard to foreseeable *climate change risks*, and the potential effects of climate change on water bodies, including on their natural functioning,¹⁰⁸⁰ ~~and~~
- (7) has regard to cumulative *effects*, and
- (8) ~~the need to apply~~ applies¹⁰⁸¹ a precautionary approach where there is limited available information or uncertainty about potential adverse *effects*,¹⁰⁸² in accordance with IM-P6.¹⁰⁸³

LF-WAI-P4 – Giving effect to *Te Mana o te Wai*

All persons exercising functions and powers under this RPS and all persons who use, develop or protect resources to which this RPS applies must recognise that LF-WAI-O1, LF-WAI-P1, LF-WAI-P2 and LF-WAI-P3 are fundamental to upholding *Te Mana o te Wai*, and must be given effect to when making decisions affecting *fresh water*, including when interpreting and applying the provisions of the LF chapter.

Methods

LF-WAI-M1 – ~~Mana whenua involvement~~ Kāi Tahu rakatirataka¹⁰⁸⁴

Otago Regional Council must partner with Kāi Tahu in *freshwater* management by:

- (1) implementing the actions in MW-M3 and MW-M4,
- (2) actively identifying and pursuing opportunities for *mana whenua* to be involved in *freshwater* governance, including through use of available mechanisms such as transfers of functions (under section 33 of the RMA 1991¹⁰⁸⁵) and supporting the establishment of *freshwater* mātaimai,
- (3) implementing actions to foster the development of *mana whenua* capacity to contribute to the Council’s decision-making processes, including resourcing,
- (4) supporting *mana whenua* initiatives that contribute to maintaining or improving the health and well-being of *water bodies*, ~~and~~
- (5) providing relevant information to *mana whenua* for the purposes of (1), (2), (3) and (4), ~~and~~

¹⁰⁷⁶ Clause 10(2)(b)(i), Schedule 1, RMA – consequential amendment arising from 00306.032 Meridian

¹⁰⁷⁷ Clause 10(2)(b)(i) – consequential amendment arising from 00226.038 Kāi Tahu ki Otago

¹⁰⁷⁸ 00226.161 Kāi Tahu ki Otago, 00234.027 Te Rūnanga o Ngāi Tahu

¹⁰⁷⁹ 00226.161 Kāi Tahu ki Otago, 00234.027 Te Rūnanga o Ngāi Tahu

¹⁰⁸⁰ 00226.161 Kāi Tahu ki Otago, 00234.027 Te Rūnanga o Ngāi Tahu

¹⁰⁸¹ 00231.047 Fish and Game

¹⁰⁸² 00239.072 Federated Farmers, 00022.016 Graymont, 00409.005 Ballance

¹⁰⁸³ 00022.016 Graymont, 00409.005 Ballance

¹⁰⁸⁴ 00226.163 Kāi Tahu ki Otago

¹⁰⁸⁵ Clause 16(2), Schedule 1, RMA

- (6) developing a Kaupapa Kāi Tahu monitoring programme and facilitating the use of mātauraka to inform freshwater management decision-making processes, methods and outcomes, in combination with environmental science.¹⁰⁸⁶

LF-WAI-M2 – Other methods

In addition to method LF-WAI-M1, the methods in the ~~LF-VM~~,¹⁰⁸⁷ LF-FW, and LF-LS sections are also applicable.

Explanation

LF-WAI-E1 – Explanation

Water is a central element in Kāi Tahu creation traditions. It was present very early in the whakapapa of the world: in the beginning there was total darkness, followed by the emergence of light and a great void of nothingness. In time Maku mated with Mahoronuiatea which resulted in great expanses of water, then Papatūānuku ~~Papatūānuku~~¹⁰⁸⁸ and Takaroa met and had children after which Takaroa took a long absence. ~~Papatūānuku~~ ~~Papatūānuku~~¹⁰⁸⁹ met Rakinui and they had many children who conspired to force their parents' coupled bodies apart to let the light in. They were also responsible for creating many of the elements that constitute our world today - the mountains, rivers, forests and seas, and all fish, bird and animal life. To Kāi Tahu, the¹⁰⁹⁰ ~~The~~ whakapapa and spiritual source of *water* and *land* are connected, and *water bodies* are the central unifying feature that connects our landscapes together. The spiritual essence of *water* derives from the atua and the life it exudes is a reflection of the atua.

To Kāi Tahu, the¹⁰⁹¹ ~~The~~ whakapapa of *mana whenua* and water are also integrally connected. There is a close kinship relationship, and *mana whenua* and the wai cannot be separated. The tūpuna relationship with *water*, and the different uses made of the *water*, provide a daily reminder of greater powers – of both the atua and tūpuna. This relationship continues into the present and future and is central to the identity of Kāi Tahu. The mana of wai is sourced from the time of creation and the work of kā Atua, invoking a reciprocal relationship with *mana whenua* based in kawa, tikaka and respect for *water's* life-giving powers and its sanctity.

The kinship connection engenders a range of rights and responsibilities for *mana whenua*, including rakatirataka rights and the responsibility of *kaitiakitaka*. *Kaitiakitaka* encompasses a high duty to uphold and maintain the mauri (life-force)¹⁰⁹² of the wai. If the mauri is degraded it has an impact not only on the mana of the wai but also on the kinship relationship and on *mana whenua*. The mauri expresses mana and connection, which can only be defined by *mana whenua*. Recognising rakatirataka enables *mana whenua* to enjoy their rights over *water bodies* and fulfil their responsibilities to care for the wai and the communities it sustains.

The condition of *water* is seen as a reflection of the condition of the people - when the wai is healthy, so are the people. Kawa and tikaka have been developed over the generations, based on customs and values associated with the Māori world view that span the generations, ~~recognising and honouring~~ Giving effect to Te Mana o te Wai and upholds upholding the mauri of the wai and is consistent with this value base.¹⁰⁹³

¹⁰⁸⁶ 00223.081 Ngāi Tahu ki Murihiku

¹⁰⁸⁷ Clause 16(2), Schedule 1, RMA

¹⁰⁸⁸ 00226.024 Ngāi Tahu ki Murihiku

¹⁰⁸⁹ 00226.024 Ngāi Tahu ki Murihiku

¹⁰⁹⁰ 00226.165 Kāi Tahu ki Otago

¹⁰⁹¹ 00226.165 Kāi Tahu ki Otago

¹⁰⁹² 00239.192 Federated Farmers; 00236.111 Horticulture NZ; 00140.003 Waitaki DC

¹⁰⁹³ 00235.082 OWRUG

To Kāi Tahu, ~~Each~~ each¹⁰⁹⁴ *water body* is unique. This is a reflection of its unique whakapapa and characteristics, and it means that each *water body* has different needs. Management and use must recognise and reflect this.

The concept of *Te Mana o te Wai* aligns closely with the Kāi Tahu approach to *freshwater* management, but it is not confined to Kāi Tahu.¹⁰⁹⁵ *Water* is valued by the community.¹⁰⁹⁶ The life-giving qualities of *freshwater* support the health and well-being of the whole community and all people have a shared responsibility to respect and care for the health and well-being of *freshwater bodies*.¹⁰⁹⁷ Access to *water*, within *limits* (in relation to *water*),¹⁰⁹⁸ is an important contributor achieving social, cultural and economic well-being within Otago.¹⁰⁹⁹

Principal reasons

LF-WAI-PR1 – Principal reasons

In accordance with the NPSFM, councils are required to implement a framework for managing *freshwater* that gives effect to *Te Mana o te Wai*. This places the mauri (life-force) of the *water* at the forefront of decision making, recognising that¹¹⁰⁰ *te hauora o te wai* (the health of the *water*) is the first priority, and supports *te hauora o te taiao* (the health of the environment) and *te hauora o te takata* (the health of the people). It is only after the health of the *water* and the health of the people¹¹⁰¹ is sustained that *water* can be used for economic purposes. When *water* is available for use, different uses may be prioritised in different FMUs or rohe depending on the values identified by communities and the environmental outcomes seeking to be achieved.¹¹⁰² Giving effect to *Te Mana o te Wai*¹¹⁰³ requires actively involving *mana takata-whenua* in *freshwater* planning and management.

The NZCPS also recognises the interconnectedness of *land* and *water*. It notes inland activities can have a significant impact on *coastal water* quality which, in many areas around New Zealand, is in decline. This is a consequence of point and diffuse sources of contamination which can have environmental, social, cultural and economic implications. For example, poor *water* quality adversely effects aquatic life and opportunities for mahika kai gathering and recreational uses such as swimming and kayaking.

Anticipated environmental results

LF-WAI-AER2 The mauri of Otago’s *water bodies* and the health and well-being of *water bodies* and *freshwater* ecosystems is protected, and restored where degraded.¹¹⁰⁴ ~~The mauri of Otago’s *water bodies* and their health and well-being is protected.~~

LF-WAI-AER1 Kāi Tahu are actively involved in the management of *fresh water* and able to effectively exercise their rakatirataka, manaakitaka and *kaitiakitaka*.

¹⁰⁹⁴ 00226.165 Kāi Tahu ki Otago

¹⁰⁹⁵ 00226.165 Kāi Tahu ki Otago

¹⁰⁹⁶ 00235.082 OWRUG

¹⁰⁹⁷ 00226.165 Kāi Tahu ki Otago

¹⁰⁹⁸ 00231.009 Fish and Game

¹⁰⁹⁹ 00235.082 OWRUG

¹¹⁰⁰ FPI030.017 Kāi Tahu ki Otago, FPI027.017 Contact

¹¹⁰¹ 00235.082 OWRUG, FPI027.017 Contact

¹¹⁰² FPI001.007 Dunedin City Council, FPI033.001 Fulton Hogan

¹¹⁰³ FPI030.017 Kāi Tahu ki Otago, FPI032.016 Te Rūnanga o Ngāi Tahu, FPI027.017 Contact

¹¹⁰⁴ FPI026.021 Federated Farmers, FPI043.058 OWRUG, FPI024.018 DairyNZ, FPI019.005 Fonterra

LF-VM – Visions and management LF-FW – Fresh water

Note to readers: This chapter combines the LF-VM and LF-FW provisions as notified. The numbering in this section reflects the notified numbering of the provisions so that it is clear that the provision has been moved rather than introduced as ‘new’. The numbering will be corrected when the RPS is made operative.

Objectives

LF-FW-O1A – Visions set for each FMU and rohe

In each FMU and rohe in Otago and within the timeframes specified in the *freshwater* visions in LF-VM-O2 to LF-VM-O6:

- (1) healthy freshwater and estuarine ecosystems support healthy populations of indigenous species (including non-diadromous galaxiids and Canterbury mudfish) and mahika kai that are safe for consumption,
- (2) the interconnection of land, freshwater (including springs, groundwater, ephemeral water bodies, wetlands, rivers, and lakes) and coastal water is recognised,
- (3) fish passage within and between catchments is provided for except where it is desirable to prevent the passage of some fish species in order to protect desired fish species, their life stages, or their habitats,
- (4) the form, function and character of water bodies reflects their natural characteristics and natural behaviours to the extent reasonably practicable,
- (5) the ongoing relationship of Kāi Tahu with wāhi tūpuna, including access to and use of water bodies, is sustained,
- (6) the health of the water supports the health of people and their connections with water bodies,
- (7) sustainable land and water management practices:
 - (a) support food and fibre production and the continued social, economic, and cultural well-being of Otago’s people and communities, and
 - (b) improve the resilience of communities to the effects of climate change, and
 - (c) ensure communities are appropriately serviced by community water supplies, and other three waters infrastructure,
- (8) direct discharges of wastewater to water bodies are phased out to the extent reasonably practicable, and
- (9) freshwater is managed as part of New Zealand’s integrated response to climate change and renewable electricity generation activities are provided for.¹¹⁰⁵

LF-VM-O2 – Clutha Mata-au FMU vision

In the Clutha Mata-au FMU, and in addition to the matters in LF-FW-O1A,¹¹⁰⁶

- (1) management of the FMU recognises that:

¹¹⁰⁵ FPI044.007 DOC, FPI037.014 Fish and Game, FPI030.019 Kāi Tahu ki Otago, FPI045.008 Forest and Bird

¹¹⁰⁶ Clause 10(2)(b)(ii), Schedule 1, RMA – consequential amendment arising from introducing LF-FW-O1A

- (a) the Clutha Mata-au is a single connected system ki uta ki tai, and
- (b) the source of the wai is pure, coming directly from Tāwhirimātea¹¹⁰⁷ ~~Tāwhirimātea~~ to the top of the mauka and into the awa,

(1A) sustainable abstraction occurs from lakes, river main stems or groundwater in preference to tributaries, to the extent reasonably practicable,¹¹⁰⁸

- ~~(2) fresh water is managed in accordance with the LF-WAI objectives and policies,~~¹¹⁰⁹
- ~~(3) the ongoing relationship of Kāi Tahu with wāhi tūpuna is sustained,~~¹¹¹⁰
- ~~(4) water bodies support thriving mahika kai and Kāi Tahu whānui have access to mahika kai,~~¹¹¹¹
- ~~(5) indigenous species migrate easily and as naturally as possible along and within the river system,~~¹¹¹²
- (6) the national significance of the ongoing operation, maintenance and upgrading of the¹¹¹³ Clutha hydro-electricity generation scheme, including its generation capacity, storage and operational flexibility and its contribution to climate change mitigation,¹¹¹⁴ is recognised and protected, and potential further development is provided for within this modified catchment,¹¹¹⁵
- (6A) water bodies support a range of outdoor recreation opportunities,¹¹¹⁶

(7) ~~in addition to (1) to (6) above:~~¹¹¹⁷

(a) ~~in the Upper Lakes rohe, the high quality waters of the lakes and their tributaries are protected, and if degraded are improved~~¹¹¹⁸ recognising the significance of the purity of these waters to Kāi Tahu and to the wider community,

(b) ~~in the Dunstan, Manuherekiā and Roxburgh rohe:~~¹¹¹⁹

~~(i) flows in water bodies sustain and, wherever possible, restore the natural form and function of main stems and tributaries to support Kāi Tahu values and practices, and~~¹¹²⁰

~~(ii) innovative and sustainable land and water management practices support food production in the area and reduce discharges of nutrients and other contaminants to water bodies so that they are safe for human contact, and~~¹¹²¹

~~(iii) sustainable abstraction occurs from main stems or groundwater in preference to tributaries,~~¹¹²²

(e7A) in the Lower Clutha rohe:

¹¹⁰⁷ FPI027.019 Contact

¹¹⁰⁸ FPI030.020 Kāi Tahu

¹¹⁰⁹ Clause 10(2)(b)(i), Schedule 1, RMA – consequential amendment arising from FPI044.007 DOC and others

¹¹¹⁰ Clause 10(2)(b)(i), Schedule 1, RMA – consequential amendment arising from FPI044.007 DOC and others

¹¹¹¹ Clause 10(2)(b)(i), Schedule 1, RMA – consequential amendment arising from FPI044.007 DOC and others

¹¹¹² Clause 10(2)(b)(i), Schedule 1, RMA – consequential amendment arising from FPI044.007 DOC and others

¹¹¹³ FPI027.019 Contact

¹¹¹⁴ FPI027.010 Contact

¹¹¹⁵ FPI027.019 Contact

¹¹¹⁶ FPI038.008 NZSki, FPI039.010 Realnz

¹¹¹⁷ Clause 10(2)(b)(i), Schedule 1, RMA – consequential amendment arising from FPI044.007 DOC and others

¹¹¹⁸ FPI027.019 Contact

¹¹¹⁹ FPI030.020 Kāi Tahu

¹¹²⁰ FPI030.020 Kāi Tahu

¹¹²¹ FPI030.020 Kāi Tahu

¹¹²² FPI030.020 Kāi Tahu

- ~~(i) there is no further modification of the shape and behaviour of the *water bodies* and possible opportunities to restore the natural form and function of *water bodies* are promoted wherever possible, practicable, and~~¹¹²³
- ~~(ii) the ecosystem connections between *freshwater, wetlands* and the coastal environment are preserved and, wherever possible, restored,~~¹¹²⁴
- ~~(iii) *land* management practices reduce discharges of nutrients and other *contaminants* to *water bodies* so that they are safe for human contact, and~~¹¹²⁵
- ~~(iv) there are no direct *discharges of wastewater* to *water bodies*, and~~¹¹²⁶

(8) the outcomes sought in ~~(7)~~¹¹²⁷ are to be achieved within the following timeframes:

- (b) by 2030 in the Upper Lakes rohe,
- (c) by 2045 in the Dunstan, and Roxburgh and Lower Clutha¹¹²⁸ rohe, and
- (d) by 2050 in the Manuherekia and Lower Clutha¹¹²⁹ rohe.

LF-VM-03 – North Otago FMU vision

By 2050 in the North Otago FMU, and in addition to the matters in LF-FW-O1A.¹¹³⁰

(1) the Waitaki River is managed holistically, ki uta ki tai, despite its catchments spanning the Canterbury and Otago regions, *fresh water* is managed in accordance with the LF-WAI objectives and policies, while recognising that the Waitaki River is influenced in part by catchment areas within the Canterbury region,¹¹³¹

~~(1A) the national significance of the Waitaki hydroelectricity generation scheme is recognised,~~¹¹³²

~~(2) the ongoing relationship of Kāi Tahu with *wāhi tūpuna* is sustained and Kāi Tahu maintain their connection with and use of the *water bodies*,~~¹¹³³

(3) healthy riparian margins, *wetlands*, estuaries and lagoons support thriving *mahika kai*, indigenous habitats and¹¹³⁴ the health of¹¹³⁵ downstream coastal ecosystems,

~~(4) indigenous species can migrate easily and as naturally as possible to and from the coastal environment,~~¹¹³⁶

(5) ~~*land* management practices reduce *discharges* of nutrients and other *contaminants* to *water bodies* so that they are safe for human contact, and~~¹¹³⁷

¹¹²³ FPI027.019 Contact

¹¹²⁴ Clause 10(2)(b)(i), Schedule 1, RMA – consequential amendment arising from FPI044.007 DOC and others

¹¹²⁵ Clause 10(2)(b)(i), Schedule 1, RMA – consequential amendment arising from FPI044.007 DOC and others

¹¹²⁶ Clause 10(2)(b)(i), Schedule 1, RMA – consequential amendment arising from FPI044.007 DOC and others

¹¹²⁷ Clause 16(2), Schedule 1, RMA

¹¹²⁸ FPI024.019 DairyNZ

¹¹²⁹ FPI024.019 DairyNZ

¹¹³⁰ Clause 10(2)(b)(ii), Schedule 1, RMA – consequential amendment arising from introducing LF-FW-O1A

¹¹³¹ Clause 10(2)(b)(i), Schedule 1, RMA – consequential amendment arising from FPI033.001 Fulton Hogan

¹¹³² FPI016.013 Meridian,

¹¹³³ Clause 10(2)(b)(i), Schedule 1, RMA – consequential amendment arising from FPI044.007 DOC and others

¹¹³⁴ Clause 10(2)(b)(i), Schedule 1, RMA – consequential amendment arising from FPI044.007 DOC and others

¹¹³⁵ Clause 16(2), Schedule 1, RMA

¹¹³⁶ Clause 10(2)(b)(i), Schedule 1, RMA – consequential amendment arising from FPI044.007 DOC and others

¹¹³⁷ Clause 10(2)(b)(i), Schedule 1, RMA – consequential amendment arising from FPI044.007 DOC and others

(6) ~~innovative and sustainable *land* and *water* management practices support food production in the area and improve resilience to the effects of climate change.~~¹¹³⁸

LF-VM-04 – Taiari Taiari FMU vision

By 2050 in the Taiari¹¹³⁹ Taiari FMU, and in addition to the matters in LF-FW-01A:¹¹⁴⁰

(1) ~~*fresh water* is managed in accordance with the LF-WAI objectives and policies,~~¹¹⁴¹

(2) ~~the ongoing relationship of Kāi Tahu with *wāhi tūpuna* is sustained,~~¹¹⁴²

(3) ~~healthy *wetlands* are restored in~~¹¹⁴³ ~~the upper and lower catchment *wetland* complexes, including the Waipōuri/Waihola wetland complex,~~¹¹⁴⁴ ~~the Waipori/Waihola Wetlands, Upper Taiari wetland complex,~~¹¹⁴⁵ ~~Tunaheketaka/Lake Taiari, scroll plain, and connected~~¹¹⁴⁶ ~~tussock areas are protected, restored or enhanced where they have been degraded or lost,~~¹¹⁴⁷

(4) ~~the gravel *bed* of the lower Taiari~~¹¹⁴⁸ ~~Taiari is restored and sedimentation of the Waipōuri/Waihola Waipori/Waihola wetland~~¹¹⁴⁹ ~~complex is reduced,~~

(4A) ~~the national significance of the Waipōuri hydro-electricity generation scheme, and the regional significance of the Deep Stream and Paerau/Patearoa hydro-electricity generation schemes, is recognised and their operation, maintenance and upgrading is provided for, while potential further development of these schemes is provided for, and~~¹¹⁵⁰

(5) ~~creative ecological approaches contribute to reduced occurrence of didymo,~~

(6) ~~*water bodies* support healthy populations of *galaxiid* species,~~

(7) ~~there are no direct *discharges of wastewater* to *water bodies*, and~~¹¹⁵¹

(8) ~~innovative and sustainable *land* and *water* management practices support food production in the area and improve resilience to the effects of climate change.~~¹¹⁵²

LF-VM-05 – Dunedin & Coast FMU vision

By 2040 in the Dunedin & Coast FMU, and in addition to the matters in LF-FW-01A:¹¹⁵³

(1) ~~*fresh water* is managed in accordance with the LF-WAI objectives and policies,~~¹¹⁵⁴

(2) ~~the ongoing relationship of Kāi Tahu with *wāhi tūpuna* is sustained,~~¹¹⁵⁵

¹¹³⁸ Clause 10(2)(b)(i), Schedule 1, RMA – consequential amendment arising from FPI044.007 DOC and others

¹¹³⁹ FPI030.049 Kāi Tahu ki Otago

¹¹⁴⁰ Clause 10(2)(b)(ii), Schedule 1, RMA – consequential amendment arising from introducing LF-FW-01A

¹¹⁴¹ Clause 10(2)(b)(i), Schedule 1, RMA – consequential amendment arising from FPI044.007 DOC

¹¹⁴² Clause 10(2)(b)(i), Schedule 1, RMA – consequential amendment arising from FPI044.007 DOC

¹¹⁴³ FPI025.020 Beef + Lamb and DINZ

¹¹⁴⁴ FPI030.022 Kāi Tahu ki Otago

¹¹⁴⁵ FPI044.011 DOC

¹¹⁴⁶ FPI022.005 Manawa Energy

¹¹⁴⁷ FPI025.020 Beef + Lamb and DINZ

¹¹⁴⁸ FPI030.049 Kāi Tahu ki Otago

¹¹⁴⁹ FPI030.022 Kāi Tahu ki Otago

¹¹⁵⁰ FPI022.005 Manawa Energy,

¹¹⁵¹ Clause 10(2)(b)(i), Schedule 1, RMA – consequential amendment arising from FPI044.007 DOC and others

¹¹⁵² Clause 10(2)(b)(i), Schedule 1, RMA – consequential amendment arising from FPI044.007 DOC

¹¹⁵³ Clause 10(2)(b)(ii), Schedule 1, RMA – consequential amendment arising from introducing LF-FW-01A

¹¹⁵⁴ Clause 10(2)(b)(ii), Schedule 1, RMA – consequential amendment arising from introducing LF-FW-01A

¹¹⁵⁵ Clause 10(2)(b)(i), Schedule 1, RMA – consequential amendment arising from FPI044.007 DOC

- (3) ~~healthy riparian margins, wetlands,¹¹⁵⁶ estuaries, and lagoons and coastal waters¹¹⁵⁷ support the health of¹¹⁵⁸ thriving mahika kai and downstream coastal ecosystems, and indigenous species can migrate easily and as naturally as possible to and from these areas,¹¹⁵⁹~~
- (4) ~~there is no further modification of the shape and behaviour of the water bodies and opportunities to restore the natural form and function of water bodies are promoted wherever practicable possible., and¹¹⁶⁰~~
- (5) ~~discharges of contaminants from urban environments are reduced so that water bodies are safe for human contact.¹¹⁶¹~~

LF-VM-06 – Catlins FMU vision

By ~~2035~~2030¹¹⁶² in the Catlins FMU, and in addition to the matters in LF-FW-01A¹¹⁶³:

- (1) ~~fresh water is managed in accordance with the LF WAI objectives and policies,¹¹⁶⁴~~
- (2) ~~the ongoing relationship of Kāi Tahu with wāhi tūpuna is sustained,¹¹⁶⁵~~
- (3) ~~water bodies support thriving mahika kai and access of Kāi Tahu whānui to mahika kai,¹¹⁶⁶~~
- (4) the high degree of naturalness of the water bodies¹¹⁶⁷ and ecosystem connections between the forests, freshwater and coastal environment are preserved, and
- (5) ~~water bodies and their catchment areas support the health and well-being of coastal water, ecosystems and indigenous species, including downstream kaimoana, and¹¹⁶⁸~~
- (6) healthy, clear and clean water supports opportunities for recreation and sustainable food production for future generations.¹¹⁶⁹

LF-VM-07 – Integrated management

~~Land and water management apply the ethic of ki uta ki tai and are managed as integrated natural resources, recognising the connections and interactions between fresh water, land and the coastal environment, and between surface water, groundwater and coastal water.¹¹⁷⁰~~

LF-FW-08 – Fresh water

In Otago's water bodies and their catchments:

- (1) ~~the health of the wai supports the health of the people and thriving mahika kai,~~
- (2) ~~water flow is continuous throughout the whole system,~~

¹¹⁵⁶ FPI044.012 Director General of Conservation

¹¹⁵⁷ FPI001.012 DCC

¹¹⁵⁸ FPI044.012 Director General of Conservation

¹¹⁵⁹ Clause 10(2)(b)(i), Schedule 1, RMA – consequential amendment arising from FPI044.007 DOC and others

¹¹⁶⁰ Clause 10(2)(b)(ii), Schedule 1, RMA – consequential amendment arising from introducing LF-FW-01A

¹¹⁶¹ Clause 10(2)(b)(i), Schedule 1, RMA – consequential amendment arising from FPI044.007 DOC and others

¹¹⁶² FPI029.001 Otago Regional Council, FPI024.023 DairyNZ

¹¹⁶³ Clause 10(2)(b)(ii), Schedule 1, RMA – consequential amendment arising from introducing LF-FW-01A

¹¹⁶⁴ Clause 10(2)(b)(ii), Schedule 1, RMA – consequential amendment arising from introducing LF-FW-01A

¹¹⁶⁵ Clause 10(2)(b)(ii), Schedule 1, RMA – consequential amendment arising from introducing LF-FW-01A

¹¹⁶⁶ Clause 10(2)(b)(ii), Schedule 1, RMA – consequential amendment arising from introducing LF-FW-01A

¹¹⁶⁷ FPI030.024 Kāi Tahu ki Otago

¹¹⁶⁸ Clause 10(2)(b)(i), Schedule 1, RMA – consequential amendment arising from FPI044.007 DOC and others

¹¹⁶⁹ Clause 10(2)(b)(ii), Schedule 1, RMA – consequential amendment arising from introducing LF-FW-01A

¹¹⁷⁰ 00121.056 Ravensdown

~~(3) the interconnection of fresh water (including groundwater) and coastal waters is recognised,~~

~~(4) native fish can migrate easily and as naturally as possible and taoka species and their habitats are protected, and~~

(5) ~~€~~The significant and outstanding values of Otago's *outstanding water bodies* are identified and protected.¹¹⁷¹

LF-FW-09 – ~~Natural w~~Wetlands

Otago's ~~natural~~ wetlands are protected from inappropriate subdivision, use and development and, where degraded, or restored restoration is promoted so that:

(1) mahika kai and other *mana whenua* values are sustained and enhanced now and for future generations,

(2) there is no net¹¹⁷² decrease, and preferably an increase,¹¹⁷³ in the extent range¹¹⁷⁴ and diversity of wetland¹¹⁷⁵ indigenous ecosystem types and habitats, and ~~in natural wetlands~~

(3) there is no reduction and, where degraded, there is an improvement¹¹⁷⁶ in ~~their~~ wetland¹¹⁷⁷ ecosystem health, hydrological functioning, *amenity values*, extent or water quality, and ~~if degraded they are improved, and~~¹¹⁷⁸

(4) their flood attenuation and water storage¹¹⁷⁹ capacity is maintained or improved.¹¹⁸⁰

LF-FW-010 – Natural character

The natural character of *wetlands, lakes and rivers* and their margins is preserved and protected from inappropriate subdivision, use and development.

Policies

LF-VM-P5 – Freshwater Management Units (FMUs) and rohe

Otago's *fresh water* resources are managed through the following *freshwater management units* or rohe which:

(1) have coastal boundaries that follow either mean high water springs or, where this crosses a water body, the inner limit of the territorial sea, and¹¹⁸¹

(2) are shown on MAP1:

Table 3 – Freshwater Management Units and rohe

¹¹⁷¹ FPI025.026 BLNZ + DINZ

¹¹⁷² FPI033.003 Fulton Hogan

¹¹⁷³ FPI035.012 Wise Response

¹¹⁷⁴ FPI030.029 Kāi Tahu ki Otago, FPI021.004 Ballance, FPI025.027 Beef + Lamb and DINZ

¹¹⁷⁵ FPI033.003 Fulton Hogan

¹¹⁷⁶ Clause 10(2)(b)(i), Schedule 1, RMA – consequential amendment arising from FPI033.003 Fulton Hogan

¹¹⁷⁷ FPI033.003 Fulton Hogan

¹¹⁷⁸ FPI033.003 Fulton Hogan

¹¹⁷⁹ FPI030.029 Kāi Tahu ki Otago

¹¹⁸⁰ FPI035.012 Wise Response

¹¹⁸¹ FPI030.025 Kāi Tahu ki Otago

Freshwater Management Unit	Rohe
Clutha Mata-au	Upper Lakes Dunstan Manuherekia Roxburgh Lower Clutha
Taieri-Taiari ¹¹⁸²	n/a
North Otago	n/a
Dunedin & Coast	n/a
Catlins	n/a

LF-VM-P6 – Relationship between FMUs and rohe

Where rohe have been defined within FMUs:

- (1) *environmental outcomes* must be developed for the FMU within which the rohe is located,
- (2) any¹¹⁸³ if additional rohe-specific¹¹⁸⁴ environmental outcomes; ~~are included for rohe, those~~
environmental outcomes:¹¹⁸⁵
 - (a) must¹¹⁸⁶ set target *attribute* states that are no less stringent than the parent FMU *environmental outcomes* if the same *attributes* are adopted in both the rohe and the FMU, and
 - (b) may include additional *attributes* and target *attribute* states provided that any additional *environmental outcomes* give effect to the *environmental outcomes* for the FMU,
- (3) limits and action plans to achieve *environmental outcomes*, including by achieving target attribute states,¹¹⁸⁷ may be developed for the FMU or the rohe or a combination of both,
- (4) any *limit* or action plan developed to apply within a rohe:
 - (a) prevails over any *limit* or action plan developed for the FMU for the same *attribute*, unless explicitly stated to the contrary, and
 - (b) must be no less stringent than any limit or action plan¹¹⁸⁸ set for the parent FMU for the same *attribute*, and
 - (c) must not conflict with any limit set or action plan developed¹¹⁸⁹ for the parent¹¹⁹⁰ underlying¹¹⁹¹ FMU for *attributes* that are not the same, and
- (5) the term “no less stringent” in this policy applies to *attribute states* (numeric and narrative) and any other metrics and timeframes (if applicable).

¹¹⁸² FPI030.049 Kāi Tahu ki Otago

¹¹⁸³ FPI021.004 Ballance

¹¹⁸⁴ FPI021.004 Ballance

¹¹⁸⁵ FPI021.004 Ballance

¹¹⁸⁶ FPI030.026 Kāi Tahu ki Otago

¹¹⁸⁷ FPI021.004 Ballance

¹¹⁸⁸ FPI021.004 Ballance

¹¹⁸⁹ FPI021.004 Ballance

¹¹⁹⁰ FPI021.004 Ballance

¹¹⁹¹ Clause 16(2), Schedule 1, RMA

LF-FW-P6A – Transitions over time

Provide for ambitious and reasonable transitions in the use of *land* and *water* to achieve the long-term visions by:

- (1) recognising that changes to practices and activities will need to occur overtime; and
- (2) managing the adverse impacts of implementing these changes on people and communities, including by phasing implementation of new requirements and building on actions undertaken by catchment and other community groups, and
- (3) enabling innovation and the development of new practices.¹¹⁹²

LF-FW-P7 – Fresh water

Environmental outcomes, attribute states (including target *attribute states*), environmental flows and levels,¹¹⁹³ and limits ensure that:

- (1) the health and well-being of *water bodies* and *freshwater ecosystems*¹¹⁹⁴ is maintained or, if *degraded*, improved,
- (2) the habitats of indigenous species with life stages dependent on *water bodies* associated with *water bodies*¹¹⁹⁵ are protected and sustained, including by providing for fish passage,¹¹⁹⁶
- (2A) the habitats of trout and salmon are protected insofar as this is consistent with (2),¹¹⁹⁷
- (2B) fish passage is provided for, except where it is desirable to prevent the passage of some fish species in order to protect desired fish species, their life stages, or their habitats,¹¹⁹⁸
- (3) *specified rivers and lakes* are suitable for primary contact within the following timeframes:
 - (a) by 2030, 90% of *rivers* and 98% of *lakes*, and
 - (b) by 2040, 95% of *rivers* and 100% of *lakes*, and
- (4) resources harvested from *water bodies* including¹¹⁹⁹ *mahika kai* and *drinking water* are safe for human consumption.
- (5) ~~existing over allocation is phased out and future over allocation is avoided, and~~¹²⁰⁰
- (6) ~~fresh water is allocated within environmental limits and used efficiently.~~¹²⁰¹

¹¹⁹² FPI043.003 OWRUG

¹¹⁹³ FPI030.030 Kāi Tahu ki Otago, FPI017.010 Ravensdown, FPI021.005 Ballance, FPI027.026 Contact

¹¹⁹⁴ FPI037.019 Fish and Game

¹¹⁹⁵ FPI027.026 Contact, FPI021.005 Ballance

¹¹⁹⁶ FPI030.030 Kāi Tahu ki Otago, FPI027.026 Contact

¹¹⁹⁷ FPI037.019 Fish and Game, FPI027.026 Contact

¹¹⁹⁸ FPI022.006 Manawa

¹¹⁹⁹ FPI037.018 Fish and Game

¹²⁰⁰ Clause 10(2)(b)(i), Schedule 1, RMA – consequential amendment arising from including LF-FW-P7A

¹²⁰¹ Clause 10(2)(b)(i), Schedule 1, RMA – consequential amendment arising from including LF-FW-P7A

LF-FW-P7A – Water allocation and use¹²⁰²

Within *limits* and in accordance with any relevant environmental flows and levels, the benefits of using *fresh water* are recognised and *over-allocation* is either phased out or avoided by:¹²⁰³

- (1) managing over-allocation as set out in LF-FW-M6,¹²⁰⁴
- (2) allocating *fresh water* efficiently to support the social, economic, and cultural well-being of people and communities to the extent possible within *limits*, including for:¹²⁰⁵
 - (a) community drinking water supplies,¹²⁰⁶
 - (b) maintaining generation output and capacity from existing *renewable electricity generation schemes*,¹²⁰⁷
 - (c) *mana whenua* customary or cultural needs and activities, and¹²⁰⁸
 - (d) primary production,
- (3) ensuring that no more *fresh water* is abstracted than is necessary for its intended use,¹²⁰⁹
- (4) ensuring that the efficiency of *fresh water* abstraction, storage and conveyancing *infrastructure* is improved,
- (5) providing for the harvesting and storage of *fresh water* to meet increasing demand for *water*, to manage *water* scarcity conditions and to provide resilience to the *effects* of *climate change*, and
- (6) providing for spatial and temporal sharing of allocated *fresh water* between uses and users where feasible.¹²¹⁰

LF-FW-P8 – Identifying ~~natural~~ wetlands

By 3 September 2030¹²¹¹, identify and map: ~~natural wetlands~~ that are:

- (1) any wetland at risk of loss of extent or values,
- (2) any wetland identified in a farm environment plan, or that may be affected by any application for, or a review of, a resource consent, and
- (3) all other natural inland wetlands that are:¹²¹²
 - (i) 0.05 hectares or greater in extent, or
 - (ii) of a type that is naturally less than 0.05 hectares in extent (such as an ephemeral *wetland*) and known to contain threatened species.

¹²⁰² FPI025.028 Beef + Lamb and DINZ, FPI045.016 Forest and Bird, FPI043.065 OWRUG, FPI009.008 COWA, FPI047.023 Horticulture NZ, FPI022.006 Manawa Energy, FPI027.026 Contact, FPI023.010 Moutere Station

¹²⁰³ FPI025.028 BLNZ + DINZ

¹²⁰⁴ Clause 16(2), Schedule 1, RMA

¹²⁰⁵ FPI047.023 Hort NZ

¹²⁰⁶ FPI027.026 Contact

¹²⁰⁷ FPI022.006 Manawa

¹²⁰⁸ FPI030.019 Kāi Tahu ki Otago

¹²⁰⁹ FPI021.005 Ballance

¹²¹⁰ FPI043.065 OWRUG, FPI009.008 COWA, FPI047.023 Horticulture NZ, FPI027.026 Contact, FPI022.006 Manawa Energy

¹²¹¹ 00230.088 Forest and Bird

¹²¹² NZ 00237.024 Beef and Lamb NZ and Deer Industry

~~LF-FW-P9~~ — ~~Protecting natural wetlands~~

Protect *natural wetlands* by:

~~(1) — avoiding a reduction in their values or extent unless:~~

~~(a) — the *loss of values* or extent arises from:~~

- ~~(i) — the customary harvest of food or resources undertaken in accordance with tikaka Māori,~~
- ~~(ii) — restoration activities,~~
- ~~(iii) — scientific research,~~
- ~~(iv) — the sustainable harvest of sphagnum moss,~~
- ~~(v) — the construction or maintenance of *wetland utility structures*,~~
- ~~(vi) — the maintenance of operation of *specific infrastructure*, or *other infrastructure*,~~
- ~~(vii) — *natural hazard works*, or~~

~~(b) — the Regional Council is satisfied that:~~

- ~~(i) — the activity is necessary for the construction or upgrade of *specified infrastructure*,~~
- ~~(ii) — the *specified infrastructure* will provide significant national or regional benefits,~~
- ~~(iii) — there is a *functional need* for the *specified infrastructure* in that location,~~
- ~~(iv) — the *effects* of the activity on indigenous *biodiversity* are managed by applying either ECO-P3 or ECO-P6 (whichever is applicable), and~~
- ~~(v) — the other *effects* of the activity (excluding those managed under (1)(b)(iv)) are managed by applying the *effects management hierarchy*, and~~

~~(2) — not granting resource consents for activities under (1)(b) unless the Regional Council is satisfied that:~~

~~(a) — the application demonstrates how each step of the *effects management hierarchies* in (1)(b)(iv) and (1)(b)(v) will be applied to the *loss of values* or extent of the *natural wetland*, and~~

- ~~(i) — any consent is granted subject to conditions that apply the *effects management hierarchies* in (1)(b)(iv) and (1)(b)(v).~~

~~LF-FW-P10~~ — ~~Restoring natural wetlands~~

Improve the ecosystem health, hydrological functioning, *water* quality and extent of *natural wetlands* that have been degraded or lost by requiring, where possible:

- ~~(1) — an increase in the extent and quality of habitat for indigenous species,~~
- ~~(2) — the restoration of hydrological processes,~~
- ~~(3) — control of pest species and vegetation clearance, and~~
- ~~(4) — the exclusion of stock.~~

LF-FW-P10A – Managing wetlands

Otago's *wetlands* are managed:

- (1) in the coastal environment, in accordance with the NZCPS in addition to (2) and (3) below,¹²¹³
- (2) by applying clause 3.22(1) to (3) of the NPSFM to all wetlands, and
- (3) to improve the ecosystem health, hydrological functioning and extent of wetlands that have been degraded or lost by promoting:¹²¹⁴
 - (a) an increase in the extent and condition of habitat for indigenous species,¹²¹⁵
 - (b) the restoration of hydrological processes,¹²¹⁶
 - (c) control of pest species and vegetation clearance, and¹²¹⁷
 - (d) the exclusion of stock, except where stock grazing is used to enhance wetland values.¹²¹⁸

LF-FW-P11 – Identifying Otago's outstanding water bodies¹²¹⁹

Otago's *outstanding water bodies* are:

- (1) the Kawarau River and tributaries described in the Water Conservation (Kawarau) Order 1997,
- (2) Lake Wanaka and the outflow and tributaries described in the Lake Wanaka Preservation Act 1973, and
- ~~(3) any *water bodies* identified as being wholly or partly within an outstanding natural feature or landscape in accordance with NFL-P1, and~~¹²²⁰
- (4) any other *water bodies* identified in accordance with APP1.

LF-FW-P12 – Protecting Identifying and managing¹²²¹ **outstanding water bodies**

Identify *outstanding water bodies* and their significant and outstanding values in the relevant *regional plans* and *district plans* and protect those values.¹²²²

~~The significant and outstanding values of *outstanding water bodies* are:~~

- ~~(1) identified in the relevant *regional* and *district plans*, and~~
- ~~(2) protected by avoiding adverse *effects* on those values.~~¹²²³

¹²¹³ FPI034.007 Fuel Companies,

¹²¹⁴ FPI024.030 DairyNZ

¹²¹⁵ FPI024.030 DairyNZ

¹²¹⁶ FPI024.030 DairyNZ, FPI020.017 Silver Fern Farms

¹²¹⁷ FPI024.030 DairyNZ

¹²¹⁸ FPI026.032 Federated Farmers, FPI007.065 John Highton, FPI020.017 Silver Fern Farms

¹²¹⁹ Clause 16(2), Schedule 1, RMA

¹²²⁰ 00237.037 Beef + Lamb and DINZ, 00239.087 Federated Farmers

¹²²¹ Clause 16(2), Schedule 1, RMA

¹²²² 00235.095 OWRUG, 00315.032 Aurora Energy, 00305.023 Waka Kotahi

¹²²³ 00230.091 Forest and Bird

LF-FW-P13 – Preserving natural character and instream values¹²²⁴

Preserve the natural character and instream values¹²²⁵ of *lakes* and *rivers* and the natural character of¹²²⁶ their *beds* and margins by:

- (1) avoiding the *loss of values* or extent of a *river*, unless:
 - (a) there is a *functional need* for the activity in that location, and
 - (b) the *effects* of the activity are managed by applying:
 - (i) ~~for effects on indigenous biodiversity, either ECO P3 or ECO P6 (whichever is applicable), and~~
 - (ii) for other effects, the effects management hierarchy (in relation to natural inland wetlands and rivers),¹²²⁷
- (2) not granting resource consent for activities in (1) unless the consent authority ~~Otago Regional Council~~¹²²⁸ is satisfied that:
 - (a) the application demonstrates how each step of the effects management hierarchy (in relation to natural inland wetlands and rivers) ~~effects management hierarchies in (1)(b)~~ will be applied to the *loss of values* or extent of the *river*, and
 - (b) any consent is granted subject to conditions that apply the effects management hierarchy (in relation to natural inland wetlands and rivers) in respect of any *loss of values* or extent of the *river*,¹²²⁹ ~~effects management hierarchies in (1)(b),~~
 - (c) if aquatic offsetting or aquatic compensation is applied, the applicant has complied with principles 1 to 6 in Appendix 6 and 7 of the NPSFM, and has had to regard to the remaining principles in Appendix 6 and 7 of the NPSFM, as appropriate, and
 - (d) if aquatic offsetting or aquatic compensation is applied, any consent granted is subject to conditions that will ensure that the offspring or compensation will be maintained and managed over time to achieve the conservation outcomes,¹²³⁰
- (3) establishing environmental flow and level regimes and *water* quality standards that support the health and well-being of the *water body*,
- (4) to the extent practicable, wherever possible,¹²³¹ sustaining the form and function of a *water body* that reflects its natural behaviours,
- (5) recognising and implementing the restrictions in Water Conservation Orders,
- (6) preventing the impounding or control of the level of Lake Wanaka,
- (7) preventing modification that would permanently¹²³² reduce the braided character of a *river*, ~~and~~

¹²²⁴ 00231.058 Fish and Game

¹²²⁵ 00231.058 Fish and Game

¹²²⁶ Clause 10(2)(b)(i), Schedule 1, RMA - consequential amendment arising from 00231.058 Fish and Game

¹²²⁷ Clause 10(2)(b)(i), Schedule 1, RMA – consequential amendment arising from 00315.014 Aurora Energy, 00235.125 OWRUG, 00511.012 PowerNet, 00320.012 Network Waitaki

¹²²⁸ 00137.074 DOC

¹²²⁹ Clause 10(2)(b)(i), Schedule 1, RMA – consequential amendment arising from 00119.010 Blackthorn, 00206.031 Trojan, 00411.043 Wayfare

¹²³⁰ 00230.005 Forest and Bird

¹²³¹ 00318.015 Contact

¹²³² 00206.034 Trojan, 00411.046 Wayfare, 00119.012 Blackthorn Lodge

- (8) controlling the use of *water* and *land* that would adversely affect the natural character of the *water body*, and
- (9) maintaining or enhancing the values of riparian margins to support habitat and biodiversity, reduce contaminant loss to¹²³³ *water bodies* and support natural flow behaviour.¹²³⁴

LF–FW–P14 – Restoring natural character and instream values¹²³⁵

Where the natural character or instream values¹²³⁶ of *lakes* and *ivers* ~~and~~ or the natural character of^{f1237} their margins has been reduced or lost, promote actions that, where practicable:

- (1) restore a form and function that reflect the natural behaviours of the *water body*,
- (2) improve *water* quality or quantity where it is *degraded*,
- (3) increase the presence, *resilience* and abundance of indigenous flora and fauna, including by providing for fish passage within *river* systems, and where necessary and appropriate, creating fish barriers to prevent incursions from undesirable species,¹²³⁸
- (4) improve *water body* margins by naturalising bank contours and establishing indigenous vegetation and habitat, and
- (5) restore ~~water pathways and~~¹²³⁹ natural connectivity between and within¹²⁴⁰ *water* systems.

LF–FW–P15 – ~~Stormwater and wastewater~~¹²⁴¹ discharges

Minimise the adverse *effects* of direct and indirect *discharges* of *stormwater* ~~and wastewater~~¹²⁴² to *fresh water* by:

- (1) ~~except as required by LF–VM–O2 and LF–VM–O4, preferring *discharges* of *wastewater* to *land* over *discharges* to *water*, unless adverse *effects* associated with a *discharge* to *land* are greater than a *discharge* to *water*, and~~¹²⁴³
- (2) requiring:
 - (a) ~~all sewage, industrial or trade waste to be *discharged* into a reticulated *wastewater* system, where one is available,~~¹²⁴⁴
 - (ab) integrated catchment management plans for management of *stormwater* in *urban areas*,¹²⁴⁵
 - (b) all *stormwater* to be *discharged* into a reticulated system, where one is made available by the operator of the reticulated system, unless alternative treatment and disposal methods

¹²³³ Clause 16(2), Schedule 1, RMA

¹²³⁴ 00226.187 Kāi Tahu ki Otago

¹²³⁵ 00230.093 Forest and Bird, 00231.059 Fish and Game

¹²³⁶ 00230.093 Forest and Bird, 00231.059 Fish and Game

¹²³⁷ Clause 19(1)(b)(i), Schedule 1, RMA - consequential amendment arising from 00230.093 Forest and Bird, 00231.059 Fish and Game

¹²³⁸ 00223.088 Ngāi Tahu ki Murihiku

¹²³⁹ Clause 16(2), Schedule 1, RMA

¹²⁴⁰ 00509.080 Wise Response

¹²⁴¹ FPI044.019 DOC

¹²⁴² FPI044.019 DOC

¹²⁴³ FPI001.021 DCC, FPI017.022 Ravensdown

¹²⁴⁴ FPI001.021 DCC, FPI017.022 Ravensdown, FPI030.033 Kāi Tahu ki Otago

¹²⁴⁵ FPI030.033 Kāi Tahu ki Otago

will result in the same or¹²⁴⁶ improved outcomes for fresh water,¹²⁴⁷

(c) implementation of methods to progressively reduce unintentional stormwater inflows to the frequency and volume of wet weather overflows and minimise the likelihood of dry weather overflows occurring for reticulated stormwater and wastewater systems¹²⁴⁸,

(d) on-site wastewater systems to be designed and operated in accordance with best practice standards,¹²⁴⁹

(e) that any stormwater and wastewater discharges do not prevent water bodies from¹²⁵⁰ to meeting any applicable water quality standards set for FMUs and/or rohe, and

(f) the use of water sensitive urban¹²⁵¹ design techniques to avoid or mitigate the potential adverse effects of contaminants on receiving water bodies from the subdivision, use or development of land,¹²⁵² wherever practicable, and

(3) promoting the reticulation of stormwater and wastewater¹²⁵³ in urban areas where appropriate, and¹²⁵⁴

(4) promoting source control as a method for reducing contaminants in discharges and the use of good practice guidelines for managing stormwater.¹²⁵⁵

LF-FW-P16 – Discharges containing animal effluent, sewage, greywater and industrial and trade waste¹²⁵⁶

Minimise the adverse effects of direct and indirect discharges containing animal effluent, sewage, greywater and industrial and trade waste to fresh water by:¹²⁵⁷

(1) phasing out existing discharges containing sewage or industrial and trade waste directly to water to the extent practicable,¹²⁵⁸

(2) requiring:

(a) new discharges containing sewage or industrial and trade waste to be to land,¹²⁵⁹

(b) discharges of animal effluent from land-based primary production to be to land,¹²⁶⁰

(c) that all discharges containing sewage or industrial and trade waste are discharged into a reticulated wastewater system, where one is made available¹²⁶¹ by its owner, unless alternative treatment and disposal methods will result in improved outcomes for fresh

¹²⁴⁶ FPI013.003 Transpower

¹²⁴⁷ FPI001.021 DCC, FPI017.022 Ravensdown

¹²⁴⁸ FPI001.024 DCC

¹²⁴⁹ FPI019.009 Fonterra, FPI017.022 Ravensdown

¹²⁵⁰ FPI001.021 DCC, FPI017.022 Ravensdown

¹²⁵¹ FPI017.022 Ravensdown

¹²⁵² Out of scope recommendation in accordance with clause 49(2)(a)

¹²⁵³ FPI019.009 Fonterra, FPI017.022 Ravensdown

¹²⁵⁴ FPI046.013 QLDC

¹²⁵⁵ FPI001.021 DCC, FPI017.022 Ravensdown, FPI030.033 Kāi Tahu ki Otago

¹²⁵⁶ FPI019.009 Fonterra, FPI017.011 Ravensdown, FPI030.033 Kāi Tahu ki Otago

¹²⁵⁷ FPI030.033 Kāi Tahu ki Otago

¹²⁵⁸ FPI032.025 Te Rūnanga o Ngāi Tahu

¹²⁵⁹ FPI032.025 Te Rūnanga o Ngāi Tahu

¹²⁶⁰ FPI001.021 DCC

¹²⁶¹ FPI013.003 Transpower

water,¹²⁶²

- (d) implementation of methods to progressively reduce the frequency and volume of wet weather overflows and minimise the likelihood of dry weather overflows occurring from reticulated wastewater systems¹²⁶³,
- (e) on-site wastewater systems and animal effluent systems to be designed and operated in accordance with best practice standards,¹²⁶⁴
- (f) that any discharges do not prevent water bodies from meeting any applicable water quality standards set for FMUs and/or rohe,¹²⁶⁵

(3) to the greatest extent practicable, requiring the reticulation of wastewater in urban areas,¹²⁶⁶ and

(4) promoting source control as a method for reducing contaminants in discharges.¹²⁶⁷

Methods

LF-VM-M3 – Community involvement

Otago Regional Council must work with Kāi Tahu and¹²⁶⁸ communities to achieve the objectives and policies in this chapter, including by:

- (1) engaging with Kāi Tahu,¹²⁶⁹ communities and stakeholders¹²⁷⁰ to identify values and¹²⁷¹ environmental outcomes for Otago's FMUs and rohe and the methods to achieve those outcomes,
- (2) encouraging community stewardship of water resources and programmes to address freshwater issues at a local catchment level, including through catchment groups,¹²⁷²
- (3) supporting community initiatives, industry-led guidelines, codes of practice and environmental accords¹²⁷³ that contribute to maintaining or improving the health and well-being of water bodies, and
- ~~(4) supporting industry-led guidelines, codes of practice and environmental accords where these would contribute to achieving the objectives of this RPS.~~¹²⁷⁴
- (4A) education, advocacy and co-ordination to encourage efficient use of freshwater, including water harvesting, use of storage and consideration of alternative water supply.¹²⁷⁵

¹²⁶² FPI001.022 DCC, FPI017.003 Ravensdown

¹²⁶³ FPI013.003 Transpower

¹²⁶⁴ FPI013.003 Transpower, FPI030.033 Kāi Tahu ki Otago, FPI019.009 Fonterra

¹²⁶⁵ FPI001.026 DCC

¹²⁶⁶ FPI017.003 Ravensdown, FPI019.009 Fonterra

¹²⁶⁷ FPI017.003 Ravensdown

¹²⁶⁸ 00226.175 Kāi Tahu ki Otago

¹²⁶⁹ 00226.175 Kāi Tahu ki Otago

¹²⁷⁰ 00139.096 DCC

¹²⁷¹ 00237.031 Beef + Lamb and DINZ

¹²⁷² 00014.052 John Highton, 00235.089 OWRUG

¹²⁷³ 00231.051 Fish and Game

¹²⁷⁴ 00231.051 Fish and Game

¹²⁷⁵ Clause 10(2)(b)(i), Schedule 1, RMA – consequential amendment arising from freshwater provisions LF-FW-P7A and LF-FW-M6

LF-VM-M4 – Other methods

In addition to method LF-VM-M3, the methods in the LF-WAI, LF-FW, and LF-LS sections are also applicable.

LF-FW-M5 – Outstanding water bodies

No later than 31 December 2023,¹²⁷⁶ Otago Regional Council must:

- (1) ~~in partnership with Kāi Tahu,~~¹²⁷⁷ undertake a review based on existing information and develop a list of *water bodies* likely to contain outstanding values, including those *water bodies* listed in LF-FW-P11, LF-VM-P6,¹²⁷⁸
- (2) identify the outstanding values of those *water bodies* (if any) in accordance with APP1,
- (3) consult with the public and relevant local authorities¹²⁷⁹ during the identification process,
- (4) map *outstanding water bodies* and identify their outstanding and significant values in the relevant *regional plan(s)*, and
- (5) include provisions in *regional plans* ~~that protect to avoid the adverse effects of activities on~~¹²⁸⁰ the significant and outstanding values of *outstanding water bodies*.

LF-FW-M6 – Regional plans

Otago Regional Council must publicly notify a Land and Water *Regional Plan* ~~no later than 31 December 2023~~¹²⁸¹ and, after it is made operative, maintain that *regional plan* to:

- (1A) implement the required steps in the NOF process in accordance with the NPSFM,¹²⁸²
 - ~~(1) identify the compulsory and, if relevant, other values for each *Freshwater Management Unit*,~~¹²⁸³
 - ~~(2) state *environmental outcomes* as objectives in accordance with clause 3.9 of the NPSFM,~~¹²⁸⁴
 - (3) identify *water bodies* that are *over-allocated* and the methods and timeframes for phasing out that *over-allocation* (including through environmental flows and levels and *limits*) within the timeframes required to achieve the relevant *freshwater vision*,¹²⁸⁵ in terms of either their *water quality* or *quantity*,¹²⁸⁶
 - ~~(4) include environmental flow and level regimes for *water bodies* (including *groundwater*) that give effect to *Te Mana o te Wai* and provide for:~~
 - ~~(a) the behaviours of the *water body* including a base flow or level that provides for variability,~~
 - ~~(b) healthy and resilient mahika kai,~~

¹²⁷⁶ Clause 16(2), Schedule 1, RMA

¹²⁷⁷ 00226.326 Kāi Tahu ki Otago

¹²⁷⁸ 00013.012 ECan, 00213.020 Waitaki Irrigators

¹²⁷⁹ 00013.012 ECan

¹²⁸⁰ 00230.091 Forest and Bird, 00119.011 Blackthorn Lodge, 00206.033 Trojan, 00411.045 Wayfare

¹²⁸¹ Clause 16(2), Schedule 1, RMA

¹²⁸² FPI025.030 Beef + Lamb and DINZ

¹²⁸³ FPI025.030 Beef + Lamb and DINZ

¹²⁸⁴ FPI025.030 Beef + Lamb and DINZ

¹²⁸⁵ FPI012.007 Minister for the Environment

¹²⁸⁶ FPI001.028 DCC

~~(c) the needs of indigenous fauna, including taoka species, and aquatic species associated with the water body,~~

~~(d) the hydrological connection with other water bodies, estuaries and coastal margins,~~

~~(e) the traditional and contemporary relationship of Kāi Tahu to the water body, and~~

~~(f) community drinking water supplies, and¹²⁸⁷~~

~~(5A) provide for the allocation and use of fresh water in accordance with LF-FW-P7A, including by providing for off-stream water storage,¹²⁸⁸~~

~~(5) include limits on resource use that:~~

~~(a) differentiate between types of uses, including drinking water, and social, cultural and economic uses, in order to provide long term certainty in relation to those uses of available water,~~

~~(b) for water bodies that have been identified as over-allocated, provide methods and timeframes for phasing out that over-allocation,~~

~~(c) control the effects of existing and potential future development on the ability of the water body to meet, or continue to meet, environmental outcomes,~~

~~(d) manage the adverse effects on water bodies that can arise from the use and development of land, and¹²⁸⁹~~

~~(6) provide for the off-stream storage of surface water where storage will:~~

~~(a) support Te Mana o te Wai,~~

~~(b) give effect to the objectives and policies of the LF chapter of this RPS, and~~

~~(c) not prevent a surface water body from achieving identified environmental outcomes and remaining within any limits on resource use, and¹²⁹⁰~~

~~(7) identify and manage natural¹²⁹¹ wetlands in accordance with LF-FW-P7, LF-FW-P8 and¹²⁹² LF-FW-P9 and LF-FW-P10¹²⁹³ while recognising that some activities in and around natural¹²⁹⁴ wetlands are managed under the NESF and the NESCF¹²⁹⁵, and~~

~~(8) manage the adverse effects of stormwater and wastewater discharges containing animal effluent, sewage, or industrial and trade waste¹²⁹⁶ in accordance with LF-FW-P15 and LF-FW-P16, and¹²⁹⁷~~

¹²⁸⁷ FPI025.030 Beef + Lamb and DINZ

¹²⁸⁸ Clause 10(2)(b)(i), Schedule 1, RMA – consequential amendment arising from including LF-FW-P7A

¹²⁸⁹ FPI025.030 Beef + Lamb and DINZ

¹²⁹⁰ Clause 10(2)(b)(i), Schedule 1, RMA – consequential amendment arising from including new clause (5A) and new policy LF-FW-P7A

¹²⁹¹ Clause 10(2)(b)(i), Schedule 1, RMA – consequential amendment arising from deletion of ‘natural wetlands’ definition

¹²⁹² Clause 16(2), Schedule 1, RMA

¹²⁹³ FPI035.017 Wise Response

¹²⁹⁴ Clause 10(2)(b)(i), Schedule 1, RMA – consequential amendment arising from deletion of ‘natural wetlands’ definition

¹²⁹⁵ FPI014.003 Rayonier Matariki

¹²⁹⁶ FPI001.034 DCC

¹²⁹⁷ Clause 10(2)(b)(i), Schedule 1, RMA – consequential amendment arising from FPI019.009 Fonterra, FPI017.011 Ravensdown, FPI030.033 Kāi Tahu ki Otago

- (9) recognise and respond to Kāi Tahu cultural and spiritual concerns about mixing of water between different catchments.¹²⁹⁸

LF-FW-M7 – District plans

Territorial authorities must prepare or amend and maintain their *district plans* ~~no later than 31 December 2026~~¹²⁹⁹ to:

- (1) map *outstanding water bodies* and identify their outstanding and significant values using the information gathered by Otago Regional Council in LF-FW-M5, and
- (2) include provisions to ~~avoid the adverse effects of activities on~~ protect¹³⁰⁰ the significant and outstanding values of *outstanding water bodies*,
- (1A) include provisions to preserve the natural character of lakes and rivers and their margins from the adverse effects of land use and development and activities on the surface of water.¹³⁰¹
- (3) require, wherever practicable, the adoption of water sensitive ~~urban~~¹³⁰² design techniques when managing the *subdivision*, use or development of *land*, and
- (4) reduce the adverse *effects* of *stormwater discharges* by managing the *subdivision*, use and development of *land* to:
 - (a) minimise the peak volume of *stormwater* needing off-site disposal and the load of *contaminants* carried by it,
 - (b) minimise adverse *effects* on *fresh water* and *coastal water* as the ultimate receiving environments, and the capacity of the *stormwater* network,
 - (c) encourage on-site storage of rainfall to detain peak *stormwater* flows, and
 - (d) promote the use of permeable surfaces.

LF-FW-M8 – Action plans

Otago Regional Council:

- (1) must prepare an action plan for achieving any target *attribute* states for *attributes* described in Appendix 2B of the NPSFM,
- (2) may prepare an action plan for achieving any target *attribute* states for *attributes* described in Appendix 2A of the NPSFM, and
- (2A) may prepare an action plan for any other purpose set out in the NPSFM, and¹³⁰³
- (3) must prepare any action plan in accordance with clause 3.15 of the NPSFM.

¹²⁹⁸ FPI030.034 Kāi Tahu

¹²⁹⁹ FPI001.002 DCC

¹³⁰⁰ FPI047.026 Horticulture NZ

¹³⁰¹ FPI030.035 Kāi Tahu ki Otago, FPI044.021 DOC

¹³⁰² Clause 16(2), Schedule 1, RMA

¹³⁰³ FPI034.007 The Fuel Companies

LF-FW-M8A – Identifying and managing species interactions between trout and salmon and indigenous species

- (1) When making decisions that might affect the interactions between trout and salmon and indigenous species, local authorities will have particular regard to the recommendations of the Department of Conservation, the Fish and Game Council for the relevant areas, Kāi Tahu, and the matters set out in LF-FW-M8A(2)(a) to (c), and
- (2) Otago Regional Council will work with the Department of Conservation, the relevant Fish and Game Council and Kāi Tahu to:
 - (a) describe the habitats required to provide for the protection of indigenous species for the purposes of (2)(a), (b) and (c),
 - (b) identify areas where the protection of the habitat of trout and salmon, including fish passage, will be consistent with the protection of the habitat of indigenous species and areas where it will not be consistent,
 - (c) for areas identified in (b) develop provisions for any relevant action plan(s) prepared under the NPSFM, including for fish passage, that will at minimum:
 - (i) determine information needs to manage the species,
 - (ii) set short, medium and long term objectives for the species involved,
 - (iii) identify appropriate management actions that will achieve the objectives determined in (ii), including measures to manage the adverse effects of trout and salmon on indigenous species where appropriate, and
 - (iv) consider the use of a range of tools, including those in the Conservation Act 1987 and the Freshwater Fisheries Regulations 1983, as appropriate.¹³⁰⁴

LF-FW-M8AA – Integrated catchment management

Otago Regional Council may:

- (1) develop and implement an integrated catchment management programme for the region,
- (2) work in partnership with mana whenua and in collaboration with communities to develop catchment action plans that:
 - (a) collate and build on existing work in the catchments,
 - (b) incorporate science and mātauraka Māori, and
 - (c) identify and target effective environmental management actions, and
- (3) encourage and support community initiatives, at varying catchment levels, that help to deliver catchment action plans.¹³⁰⁵

LF-FW-M9 – Monitoring

Otago Regional Council, for every *FMU*, must:

- (1) establish a long-term monitoring programme that incorporates cultural health monitoring,

¹³⁰⁴ FPI037.021 Fish and Game

¹³⁰⁵ FPI043.061 Federated Farmers, FPI043.061 OWRUG

- (2) record information (including monitoring data) about the state of *water bodies* and *freshwater* ecosystems and the challenges to their health and well-being, ~~and~~¹³⁰⁶
- (3) regularly prepare reports on the matters in (1) and (2) and publish those reports in accordance with clause 3.30 of the NPSFM, and¹³⁰⁷
- (4) where the results of monitoring show the objectives of this regional policy statement are not being met, take the necessary action to achieve the objectives.¹³⁰⁸

LF–FW–M10 – Other methods

In addition to methods LF–FW–M5 to LF–FW–M9, the methods in the LF–WAI, LF–VM and LF–LS sections are also applicable.

Explanation

LF–VM–E2 – Explanation

This section of the LF chapter outlines how the Council will manage *fresh water* within the region. To give effect to *Te Mana o te Wai*, the *freshwater* visions, and the policies set out the actions required in the development of *regional plan* provisions to implement the NPSFM. [Note to reader: originally LF-FW-E3 para 1]

Implementing the NPSFM requires Council to identify *Freshwater Management Units (FMUs)* that include all *freshwater bodies* within the region. Policy LF-VM-P5 identifies Otago’s five *FMUs*: Clutha Mata-au *FMU*, *Taiari Taieri*¹³⁰⁹ *FMU*, North Otago *FMU*, Dunedin & Coast *FMU* and Catlins *FMU*. The Clutha Mata-au *FMU* is divided into five sub-*FMUs* known as ‘rohe’. Policy LF-VM-P6 sets out the relationship between *FMUs* and rohe which, broadly, requires rohe provisions to be no less stringent than the parent *FMU* provisions. This is to avoid any potential for rohe to set lower standards than others which would affect the ability of the *FMU* to achieve its stated outcomes.

The outcomes sought for ~~natural~~¹³¹⁰ *wetlands* are implemented by requiring identification, protection and restoration. The first two policies reflect the requirements of the NPSFM for identification and protection but apply that direction to all ~~natural~~¹³¹¹ *wetlands*, rather than only inland natural wetlands (those outside the *coastal marine area*) as the NPSFM directs. This reflects the views of ~~takata mana~~¹³¹² *whenua* and the community that *fresh* and *coastal water*, including *wetlands*, should be managed holistically and in a consistent way. While the NPSFM requires promotion of the restoration of natural inland wetlands, the policies in this section take a stronger stance, requiring improvement where ~~natural~~¹³¹³ *wetlands* have been *degraded* or lost. This is because of the importance of restoration to Kāi Tahu and in recognition of the

¹³⁰⁶ Clause 16(2) Schedule 1, RMA

¹³⁰⁷ Clause 16(2) Schedule 1, RMA

¹³⁰⁸ 00226.194 Kāi Tahu ki Otago

¹³⁰⁹ 00234.005 Te Rūnanga o Ngāi Tahu

¹³¹⁰ Clause 10(2)(b)(i), Schedule 1, RMA – consequential amendment arising from deletion of ‘natural wetlands’ definition

¹³¹¹ Clause 10(2)(b)(i), Schedule 1, RMA – consequential amendment arising from deletion of ‘natural wetlands’ definition

¹³¹² 00226.196 Kāi Tahu ki Otago

¹³¹³ Clause 10(2)(b)(i), Schedule 1, RMA – consequential amendment arising from deletion of ‘natural wetlands’ definition

historic loss of *wetlands* in Otago and the indigenous biodiversity and hydrological values of wetland systems.¹³¹⁴ [Note to reader: originally LF-FW-E3 para 2]

The policies respond to the NPSFM by identifying a number of *outstanding water bodies* in Otago that have previously been identified for their significance through other processes. Additional *water bodies* can be identified if they are wholly or partly within an outstanding natural feature or landscape or if they meet the criteria in APP1 which lists the types of values which may be considered outstanding: cultural and spiritual, ecology, landscape, natural character, recreation and physical. The significant values of *outstanding water bodies* are to be identified and protected from adverse *effects*. [Note to reader: originally LF-FW-E3 para 3]

Preserving the natural character of *lakes* and *rivers*, and their *beds* and margins, is a matter of national importance under section 6 of the RMA 1991. The policies in this section set out how this is to occur in Otago, reflecting the relevant direction from the NPSFM but also a range of additional matters that are important in Otago, such as recognising existing Water Conservation Orders, the Lake Wanaka Act 1973 and the particular character of braided *rivers*. Natural character has been reduced or lost in some *lakes* or *rivers*, so the policies require promoting actions that will restore or otherwise improve natural character. [Note to reader: originally LF-FW-E3 para 4]

The impact of *discharges* of *stormwater* and *wastewater* on *freshwater bodies* is a significant issue for *mana whenua* and has contributed to *water* quality issues in some *water bodies*. The policies set out a range of actions to be implemented in order to improve the quality of these *discharges* and reduce their adverse *effects* on receiving environments.

Principal reasons

LF-VM-PR2 – Principal reasons

To support the implementation of the NPSFM, the Council is required to develop long-term visions for *fresh water* across the Otago region. *Fresh water* visions for each *FMU* and *rohe* have been developed through engagement with Kāi Tahu and communities. They set out the long-term goals for the *water bodies* (including *groundwater*) and *fresh water* ecosystems in the region that reflect the history of, and environmental pressures on, the *FMU* or *rohe*. They also establish ambitious but reasonable timeframes for achieving these goals. The Council must assess whether each *FMU* or *rohe* can provide for its long-term vision, or whether improvement to the health and well-being of *water bodies* (including *groundwater*) and *fresh water* ecosystems is required to achieve the visions. The result of that assessment will then inform the development of *regional plan* provisions in the *FMU*, including *environmental outcomes*, *attribute states*, *target attribute states* and *limits (in relation to freshwater)*.¹³¹⁵

Otago's *water bodies* are significant features of the region and play an important role in Kāi Tahu beliefs and traditions. They support people and communities to provide for their social, economic, and cultural well-being.¹³¹⁶ A growing population combined with increased *land* use intensification has heightened demand for *water* and increasing nutrient and sediment contamination impacts *water* quality. The legacy of Otago's historical mining privileges, coupled with contemporary urban and rural¹³¹⁷ *land* uses, contribute

¹³¹⁴ 00226.196 Kāi Tahu ki Otago

¹³¹⁵ 00231.009 Fish and Game

¹³¹⁶ FPI009.010 COWA

¹³¹⁷ FPI030.038 Kāi Tahu ki Otago

to ongoing *water quality* and quantity issues in some *water bodies*, with significant cultural effects. [Note to reader: originally LF-FW-PR3 para 1]

This section of the LF chapter contains more specific direction on managing *fresh water* to give effect to *Te Mana o te Wai* and contributes to achieving the long term *freshwater* visions for each *FMU* and *rohe*. It also¹³¹⁸ reflects key direction in the NPSFM for managing the health and well-being of *fresh water*, including *wetlands* and *rivers* in particular, and matters of national importance under section 6 of the RMA 1991. The provisions in this section will underpin the development of the Council's *regional plans* and provide a foundation for implementing the requirements of the NPSFM, including the development of *environmental outcomes*, *attribute states*, *target attribute states* and *limits*. [Note to reader: originally LF-FW-PR3 para 2]

Anticipated environmental resultoutcomes¹³¹⁹

LF-VM-AER3 The *fresh water* visions in this section implement *Te Mana o Te Wai* according to the particular characteristics of *FMUs* and *rohe* underpin Otago's planning framework¹³²⁰ and the outcomes they seek are achieved within the timeframes specified.

Explanation

LF-FW-E3—Explanation

This section of the LF chapter outlines how the Council will manage *fresh water* within the region. To give effect to *Te Mana o te Wai*, the *freshwater* visions, and the policies set out the actions required in the development of *regional plan* provisions to implement the NPSFM. [Note to reader: originally LF-FW-E3 para 1]

The outcomes sought for *natural wetlands* are implemented by requiring identification, protection and restoration. The first two policies reflect the requirements of the NPSFM for identification and protection but apply that direction to all *natural wetlands*, rather than only inland natural wetlands (those outside the *coastal marine area*) as the NPSFM directs. This reflects the views of *mana whenua* and the community that *fresh* and *coastal water*, including *wetlands*, should be managed holistically and in a consistent way. While the NPSFM requires promotion of the restoration of natural inland wetlands, the policies in this section take a stronger stance, requiring improvement where *natural wetlands* have been *degraded* or *lost*. This is because of the importance of restoration to Kāi Tahu and in recognition of the historic loss of *wetlands* in Otago.

The policies respond to the NPSFM by identifying a number of *outstanding water bodies* in Otago that have previously been identified for their significance through other processes. Additional *water bodies* can be identified if they are wholly or partly within an outstanding natural feature or landscape or if they meet the criteria in APP1 which lists the types of values which may be considered outstanding: cultural and spiritual, ecology, landscape, natural character, recreation and physical. The significant values of *outstanding water bodies* are to be identified and protected from adverse effects.

Preserving the natural character of *lakes* and *rivers*, and their *beds* and margins, is a matter of national importance under section 6 of the RMA 1991. The policies in this section set out how this is to occur in

¹³¹⁸ FPI030.038 Kāi Tahu ki Otago

¹³¹⁹ Clause 16(2) Schedule 1, RMA

¹³²⁰ 00223.087 Ngāi Tahu ki Murihiku

Otago, reflecting the relevant direction from the NPSFM but also a range of additional matters that are important in Otago, such as recognising existing Water Conservation Orders, the Lake Wanaka Act 1973 and the particular character of braided *rivers*. Natural character has been reduced or lost in some *lakes* or *rivers*, so the policies require promoting actions that will restore or otherwise improve natural character.

The impact of *discharges* of *stormwater* and *wastewater* on *freshwater bodies* is a significant issue for *mana whenua* and has contributed to *water* quality issues in some *water bodies*. The policies set out a range of actions to be implemented in order to improve the quality of these *discharges* and reduce their adverse *effects* on receiving environments.

Principal reasons

LF-FW-PR3 – Principal reasons

Otago's *water bodies* are significant features of the region and play an important role in Kāi Tahu beliefs and traditions. They support people and communities to provide for their social, economic and cultural; well-being.¹³²¹ A growing population combined with increased *land* use intensification has heightened demand for *water*, and increasing nutrient and sediment contamination impacts *water* quality. The legacy of Otago's historical mining privileges, coupled with contemporary urban and rural¹³²² *land* uses, contribute to ongoing *water* quality and quantity issues in some *water bodies*, with significant cultural effects. [Note to reader: originally LF-FW-PR3 para 1]

This section of the LF chapter contains more specific direction on managing *fresh water* to give effect to *Te Mana o te Wai* and contributes to achieving the long-term *freshwater* visions for each *FMU* and *rohe*. It also reflects key direction in the NPSFM for managing the health and well-being of *fresh water*, including *wetlands* and *rivers* in particular, and matters of national importance under section 6 of the RMA 1991. The provisions in this section will underpin the development of the Council's *regional plans* and provide a foundation for implementing the requirements of the NPSFM, including the development of *environmental outcomes*, *attribute states*, target *attribute states* and limits.

Anticipated environmental results

- LF-FW-AER4** *Fresh water* is allocated within limits that contribute to achieving specified *environmental outcomes* for *water bodies* within timeframes set out in *regional plans* that are no less stringent than the timeframes in the LF-VM section of this chapter.
- LF-FW-AER5** *Specified rivers* and *lakes* are suitable for primary contact within the timeframes set out in LF-FW-P7.
- LF-FW-AER6** *Degraded water* quality is improved so that it meets specified *environmental outcomes* within timeframes set out in *regional plans* that are no less stringent than the timeframes in the objectives in the LF-FW¹³²³ LF-VM section of this chapter.
- LF-FW-AER7** *Water* in Otago's aquifers is suitable for human consumption, unless that *water*

¹³²¹ FPI009.010 COWA

¹³²² FPI030.038 Kāi Tahu ki Otago

¹³²³ Clause 16(2), Schedule 1, RMA

is naturally unsuitable for consumption.

- LF-FW-AER8** Where *water* is not *degraded*, there is no reduction in *water* quality.
- LF-FW-AER9** Direct *discharges* of *wastewater* to *water* are phased out to the greatest extent practicable and the¹³²⁴ frequency of *wastewater* overflows is reduced.
- LF-FW-AER10** The quality of *stormwater discharges* from existing *urban areas* is improved.
- LF-FW-AER11** There is an improvement¹³²⁵ ~~no reduction~~ in the extent and condition¹³²⁶ or quality of Otago's ~~natural~~ wetlands.
- LF-FW-AER11A** The economic, social, and cultural well-being of communities is sustained.¹³²⁷

~~LF-FW – Fresh water~~

Note to readers: As a result of the Hearing Panel's recommendations, the provisions of this chapter have been moved into the previous chapter (notified LF-VM)

LF-LS – Land and soil

Note to readers: As a result of reporting officer recommendations, the following provisions have been moved to the LF-LS chapter:

- (a) UFD-O4 – Development in rural areas
- (b) UFD-P7 – Rural areas
- (c) UFD-P8 – Rural lifestyle and residential zones
- (d) UFD-M2(8) and (9)
- (e) UFD-E1 – Explanation (third paragraph)
- (f) UFD-PR1 – Principal reasons (sixth paragraph)

The notified numbering of UFD-O4 and UFD-P7 has been retained in the LF-LS chapter as an interim measure so that it is easier to link submission points to provisions. The numbering of both chapters will be updated and made chronological following a final decision by Council.

Objectives

LF-LS-O11 – Land and soil

~~The life-supporting capacity of Otago's soil resources is safeguarded and~~¹³²⁸ The availability and productive capacity of highly productive land for *primary production* is protected maintained¹³²⁹ now and for future generations.

¹³²⁴ FPI032.026 Te Rūnanga o Ngāi Tahu, FPI030.040 Kāi Tahu ki Otago

¹³²⁵ FPI035.021 Wise Response

¹³²⁶ FPI046.023 QLDC

¹³²⁷ FPI043.054 OWRUG

¹³²⁸ 00322.021 Fulton Hogan

¹³²⁹ 00114.025 Mt Cardrona Station

LF-LS-O12 – Use, development, and protection of land

The use, development, and protection of land and soil:

- (1) safeguards the life-supporting capacity of soil,
- (2) contributes to achieving *environmental outcomes* for fresh water, and
- (3) recognises the role of these resources in providing for the social, economic, and cultural well-being of Otago’s people and communities.¹³³⁰

~~The use of land in Otago maintains soil quality and contributes to achieving *environmental outcomes* for fresh water.~~

UFD-O4 – Development in rural areas

Development in Otago’s rural areas occurs in a way that:

- ~~(1) avoids impacts on significant values and features identified in this RPS,~~¹³³¹
- ~~(2) avoids as the first priority, land and soils identified as highly productive by LF-LS-P19 unless there is an *operational need* for the development to be located in rural areas,~~¹³³²
- ~~(3) only provides for urban expansion, rural lifestyle and rural residential development and the establishment of *sensitive activities*, in locations identified through strategic planning or zoned within *district plans* as suitable for such development; and~~¹³³³
- ~~(4) provides for the ongoing use of rural areas for *primary production* and *rural industry*, and~~¹³³⁴ ~~outside of areas identified in (3),~~¹³³⁵ ~~maintains and enhances the *natural and physical resources* that support the~~¹³³⁶ ~~productive capacity,~~¹³³⁷ ~~rural character,~~¹³³⁸ ~~and long term viability of the rural sector~~¹³³⁹ ~~and rural communities.~~
- ~~(4A) does not compromise the long term viability of *primary production* and rural communities.~~¹³⁴⁰

Policies

LF-LS-P16A – Managing pests¹³⁴¹

Reduce the impact of pests, including *wilding conifers*, by:

¹³³⁰ 00236.096 Horticulture NZ, 00239.197 Federated Farmers, 00115.034 Oceana Gold

¹³³¹ 00137.154 DOC, 00226.310 Kāi Tahu ki Otago

¹³³² 00139.001, 00139.253 DCC

¹³³³ 00211.045, 00211.048 & 00211.049 LAC, 00210.045, 00210.048 & 00210.049 Lane Hocking, 00209.045, 00209.048 & 00209.049 Universal Developments, 00118.066 Maryhill Ltd, 00014.066 Mt Cardrona Station, 00139.001, 00139.253 DCC

¹³³⁴ 00322.038 Fulton Hogan

¹³³⁵ Clause 10(2)(b)(i), Schedule 1, RMA – consequential amendment arising from 00139.001, 00139.253 DCC

¹³³⁶ 00236.099 Horticulture NZ

¹³³⁷ 00236.005 Horticulture NZ

¹³³⁸ 00139.262 DCC, 00211.050 LAC, 00210.050 Lane Hocking, 00118.066 Maryhill Limited, 00014.066 Mt Cardrona Station, 00209.050 Universal Developments

¹³³⁹ 00322.038 Fulton Hogan, 00230.144 Forest and Bird

¹³⁴⁰ 00137.154 Director General of Conservation, 00226.310 Kāi Tahu ki Otago, 00139.001, 00139.253 & 00139.262 Dunedin City Council, 00211.045, 00211.048, 00211.049 & 00211.050 LAC Properties, 00210.045, 00210.048, 00210.049 & 00210.050 Lane Hocking, 00209.045, 00209.048, 00209.049 & 00209.050 Universal Developments Hawea Limited, 00118.066 Maryhill Ltd, 00014.066 Mt Cardrona Station, 00322.038 Fulton Hogan, 00410.007 Rural Contractors NZ, 00236.099 Horticulture NZ, 00118.066 Maryhill Limited, 00014.066 Mt Cardrona Station, 00322.038 Fulton Hogan, 00230.144 Royal Forest and Bird Protection Society of New Zealand Incorporated.

¹³⁴¹ 00411.006 Wayfare, 00137.084 DOC

- (1) avoiding afforestation and replanting of plantation forests with wilding conifer species listed in APP5 within:
 - (a) areas identified as outstanding natural features, outstanding natural landscapes, or significant natural areas, and
 - (b) buffer zones adjacent to the areas listed in (a) where it is necessary to protect those areas,
- (2) outside plantation forests, avoiding the planting of wilding conifer species listed in APP5 and any other pests in a way that is consistent with the Otago Regional Pest Management Plan 2019-2029,
- (3) enabling the control of pests on land, and
- (4) supporting initiatives to control pests and limit their further spread.

LF-LS-P16 – Maintaining soil quality¹³⁴² ~~Integrated management~~

Maintain ~~Recognise that maintaining~~¹³⁴³ soil quality by managing both ~~requires the integrated management of~~¹³⁴⁴ land and freshwater resources, including the interconnections between soil health, vegetative cover and water quality and quantity.

LF-LS-P17 – Soil values

Maintain the ~~mauri~~, health and productive potential of soils, to the extent reasonably practicable by managing the use and development of land in a way that is suited to the ~~natural~~ soil characteristics and that sustains mauri through healthy:

- (1) soil biological activity and *biodiversity*,
- (2) soil structure, and
- (3) soil fertility.

LF-LS-P18 – Soil erosion

Minimise soil erosion, and the associated risk of sedimentation in water bodies, resulting from land use activities by:

- (2) maintaining vegetative cover on erosion-prone land, to the extent practicable¹³⁴⁵, ~~and~~
- (1) implementing effective¹³⁴⁶ management practices to ~~retain topsoil in situ and~~¹³⁴⁷ minimise the potential for soil to be *discharged* to water bodies, including by controlling the timing, duration, scale and location of soil exposure, and
- (3) promoting activities that enhance soil retention.

¹³⁴² 00226.201 Kāi Tahu ki Otago, 00121.0062 Ravensdown

¹³⁴³ 00226.201 Kāi Tahu ki Otago, 00121.0062 Ravensdown

¹³⁴⁴ 00226.201 Kāi Tahu ki Otago, 00121.0062 Ravensdown

¹³⁴⁵ FPI017.013 Ravensdown Ltd

¹³⁴⁶ FPI024.035 Dairy NZ

¹³⁴⁷ FPI027.036 Contact

LF-LS-P20 – Land use change

Promote changes in *land* use or *land* management practices that support and¹³⁴⁸ improve:

- (1) the sustainability and efficiency of *water* use,
- (2) resilience to the impacts of *climate change*, or
- (3) the health and quality of soil, or
- (4) water quality¹³⁴⁹

LF-LS-P21 – Land use and fresh water

The health and well-being of *water bodies* and freshwater ecosystems is maintained¹³⁵⁰ ~~Achieve the improvement or maintenance of fresh water quantity or quality~~ to meet *environmental outcomes* set for *Freshwater Management Units* and/or rohe by:

- (1) reducing or otherwise maintaining the adverse effects of¹³⁵¹ direct and indirect *discharges* of *contaminants* to *water* from the use and development of *land*, ~~and~~
- (2) managing *land* uses that may have adverse *effects* on the flow of *water* in surface *water bodies* or the recharge of *groundwater*,~~;~~
- (3) recognising the drylands nature of some of Otago and the resulting low water availability, and¹³⁵²
- (4) maintaining or, where degraded, enhancing the habitat and biodiversity values of riparian margins.¹³⁵³

LF-LS-P19 – Highly productive land

Maintain the availability and productive capacity of highly productive *land* by:

- (1) identifying highly productive *land* based on the following criteria:
 - (a) ~~the capability and versatility of the land to support primary production based on the Land-Use Capability classification system,~~
 - (b) ~~the suitability of the climate for primary production, particularly crop production, and~~
 - (c) ~~the size and cohesiveness of the area of land for use for primary production, and~~
 - (d) land must be identified as highly productive land if:
 - (i) it is in a general rural zone or rural production zone, and
 - (ii) it is predominantly LUC 1, 2, or 3 land, and
 - (iii) it forms a large and geographically cohesive area,
 - (e) land may be identified as highly productive land if;

¹³⁴⁸ 00223.096 Ngāi Tahu ki Murihiku

¹³⁴⁹ 00409.015 Ballance

¹³⁵⁰ 00121.066 Ravensdown

¹³⁵¹ FPI029.037 Contact, FPI017.014 Ravensdown, FPI021.006 Ballance

¹³⁵² FPI044.009 Director General of Conservation

¹³⁵³ FPI029.037 Contact, FPI017.014 Ravensdown, FPI044.022 DOC

- (i) it is in a general rural zone or rural production zone, and
- (ii) it is not LUC 1, 2, or 3 land, and
- (iii) it is or has potential to be highly productive for land-based primary production in Otago, having regard to the soil type, the physical characteristics of the land and soil, and the climate, and
- (f) land must not be identified as highly productive land if it was identified for future urban development on or before 17 October 2022, and
- (2) prioritising the use of highly productive land for land-based primary production in accordance with the NPSHPL ahead of other land uses, and
- ~~(3) managing urban development in rural areas, including rural lifestyle and rural residential areas, in accordance with UFD-P4, UFD-P7 and UFD-P8.¹³⁵⁴~~

UFD-P7 –Rural Areas

The management of development in¹³⁵⁵ *rural areas*:

- ~~(1) provides for the maintenance and, wherever possible, enhancement of important features and values identified by this RPS,¹³⁵⁶~~
- (2) outside areas identified in (1),¹³⁵⁷ maintains the productive capacity, amenity and character of rural areas, as places where people live, work and recreate and where a range of activities and services are required to support these rural functions, and provide for social and economic wellbeing within rural communities and the wider region.¹³⁵⁹
- (3) prioritises¹³⁶⁰ land-based¹³⁶¹ primary production particularly on land or soils identified as¹³⁶² on highly productive land¹³⁶³ in accordance with the NPS-HPL LF-LS-P19¹³⁶⁴, except as provided for in (5) below,
- ~~(4) facilitates rural industry and supporting activities,~~
- (5) enables the use by Kāi Tahu of Native Reserves and Māori Land, for papakāika, kāika, nohoaka, marae and marae related activities in accordance with MW-P4, directs rural residential and rural lifestyle development to areas zoned for that purpose in accordance with UFD-P8¹³⁶⁵,

¹³⁵⁴ 00139.120 Dunedin City Council

¹³⁵⁵ 00240.033 New Zealand Pork Industry Board, 00239.172 Federated Farmers, 00236.096 Horticulture New Zealand

¹³⁵⁶ 00226.318 Kāi Tahu ki Otago, 00139.262 DCC, 00411.135 Wayfare, 00206.072 Trojan

¹³⁵⁷ Clause 10(2)(b)(i), Schedule 1, RMA – consequential amendment arising from 00226.318 Kāi Tahu ki Otago, 00139.262 DCC, 00411.135 Wayfare, 00206.072 Trojan

¹³⁵⁸ 00139.262 Dunedin City Council, 00211.050 LAC Properties Trustees Limited, 00210.050 Lane Hocking, 00118.066 Maryhill Limited, 00014.066 Mt Cardrona Station, 00209.05 Universal Development Limited

¹³⁵⁹ 00235.152 OWRUG, 00015.032 Oceana Gold

¹³⁶⁰ 00226.318 Horticulture NZ, Kai Tahu ki Otago, 00015.032 Oceana Gold, 00235.152 OWRUG, 00410.009 Rural Contractors NZ, 00016.024 Alluvium and Stoney Creek

¹³⁶¹ Clause 10(2)(b)(i), Schedule 1, RMA – consequential amendment arising from 00021.002 Matakanui Gold Limited, 00016.009 Alluvium Limited and Stoney Creek Mining, 00017.007 Danny Walker and others, 00226.033 Kāi Tahu ki Otago, 00223.094 Ngāi Tahu ki Murihiku

¹³⁶² 00236.102 Horticulture NZ, 00226.318 Kai Tahu ki Otago, 00015.032 Oceana Gold, 00235.152 OWRUG, 00410.009 Rural Contractors NZ, 00016.024 Alluvium and Stoney Creek

¹³⁶³ 00236.102 Horticulture NZ, 00226.318 Kai Tahu ki Otago, 00015.032 Oceana Gold, 00235.152 OWRUG, 00410.009 Rural Contractors NZ, 00016.024 Alluvium and Stoney Creek

¹³⁶⁴ Clause 10(2)(b)(i), Schedule 1, RMA – consequential amendment arising from 00226.318 Kai Tahu ki Otago, 00235.153 OWRUG

¹³⁶⁵ Clause 10(2)(b)(i), Schedule 1, RMA – consequential amendment arising from 00025.004 Boxer Hills Trust, 00023.005 Waterfall Park Developments Limited

- (6) restricts the establishment of non-rural residential activities, ~~*sensitive activities*~~, and ~~non-rural businesses~~¹³⁶⁶ which could adversely affect, including by way of reverse sensitivity or fragmentation, the productive capacity of highly productive *land*, or existing or anticipated¹³⁶⁷ *primary production* and *rural industry* activities, ~~unless those activities are undertaken in accordance with MW-P4~~ except as provided for in (5)¹³⁶⁸ or the NPS-HPL.¹³⁶⁹ and
- (7) ~~otherwise limits the establishment of residential activities, *sensitive activities*, and non-rural businesses to those that can demonstrate an *operational need* to be located in *rural areas*.~~¹³⁷⁰

UFD-P8 – Rural lifestyle and rural residential zones¹³⁷¹ development¹³⁷²

The establishment, development or expansion of rural lifestyle and rural residential¹³⁷³ zones development only occurs where:¹³⁷⁴

- (1) ~~the *land* is adjacent to existing or planned *urban areas* and ready access to employment and services is available,~~¹³⁷⁵
- (2) ~~despite the direction in (1), also *it*~~¹³⁷⁶ avoids *land* identified for future urban development in a relevant plan or *land* reasonably likely to be required for its future urban development potential, where the rural lifestyle or rural residential development would foreclose or reduce efficient realisation of that urban development potential,
- (3) *it*¹³⁷⁷ minimises impacts on existing or anticipates *primary production, rural industry and other rural activities*¹³⁷⁸ and the potential for reverse sensitivity *effects*. ~~rural production potential, *amenity values*~~¹³⁷⁹
- (4) *it*¹³⁸⁰ avoids, ~~as the first priority,~~ *highly productive land* identified in accordance with LF-LS-P16 except as provided for in the NPS-HPL,¹³⁸¹
- (5) the suitability of the area to accommodate the proposed development is demonstrated, including
 - (a) capacity for servicing by existing or planned *development infrastructure* (including self-servicing requirements),

¹³⁶⁶ Clause 10(2)(b)(i), Schedule 1, RMA – consequential amendment arising from 00213.009 Fonterra Co-operative Group Limited
¹³⁶⁷ 0015.032 Oceana Gold

¹³⁶⁸ 00139.264 Dunedin City Council

¹³⁶⁹ 00014.031 Mt Cardrona Station, 00209.01 Universal Developments, 00210.012 Lane Hocking, 00211.01 LAC Properties.

¹³⁷⁰ 00208.011 AgResearch Ltd, 00414.005 Infinity Investment Group Holdings Ltd, 00413.007 NZ Cherry Corp, 00410.009 Rural Contractors NZ.

¹³⁷¹ Clause 10(2)(b)(i), Schedule 1, RMA – consequential amendment arising from 00221.016 Silver Fern Farms, 00236.103 Horticulture NZ.

¹³⁷² Clause 10(2)(b)(i), Schedule 1, RMA – consequential amendment arising from 00025.004 Boxer Hills Trust, 00023.005 Waterfall Park Developments Limited

¹³⁷³ Clause 10(2)(b)(i), Schedule 1, RMA – consequential amendment arising from 00221.016 Silver Fern Farms, 00236.103 Horticulture NZ.

¹³⁷⁴ Clause 10(2)(b)(i), Schedule 1, RMA – consequential amendment arising from 00025.004 Boxer Hills Trust, 00023.005 Waterfall Park Developments Limited

¹³⁷⁵ Clause 10(2)(b)(i), Schedule 1, RMA – consequential amendment arising from 00025.004 Boxer Hills Trust, 00023.005 Waterfall Park Developments Limited

¹³⁷⁶ Clause 10(2)(b)(i), Schedule 1, RMA – consequential amendment arising from Boxer Hills Trust, 00023.005 Waterfall Park Developments Limited

¹³⁷⁷ Clause 16(2), Schedule 1, RMA

¹³⁷⁸ 00236.103 Horticulture NZ, 00208.012 AgResearch, 00235.153 OWRUG, 00410.010 Rural Contractors NZ

¹³⁷⁹ 00211.050 LAC Properties Trustees Limited, 00210.050 Lane Hocking, 00118.066 Maryhill Limited, 00014.066 Mt Cardrona Station, 00209.05 Universal Development Limited

¹³⁸⁰ Clause 16(2), Schedule 1, RMA

¹³⁸¹ Clause 10(2)(b)(i), Schedule 1, RMA – consequential amendment arising from 00014.031 Mt Cardrona Station, 00209.01 Universal Developments, 00210.012 Lane Hocking, 00211.01 LAC Properties.

- (b) particular regard is given to the individual and cumulative impacts of ~~domestic~~¹³⁸² water supply, *wastewater* disposal, and *stormwater* management including self-servicing, on the receiving or supplying environment and impacts on capacity of *development infrastructure*, if provided, to meet other planned urban area demand, and
- (c) likely future demands or implications for publicly funded services including emergency services¹³⁸³ and *additional infrastructure*, ~~and~~
~~(6) provides for the maintenance and wherever possible, enhancement, of important features and values identified by this RPS.~~¹³⁸⁴

LF-LS-P22 – Public access

Provide for public access to and along *lakes* and *rivers* by:

- (1) maintaining existing public access,
- (2) seeking opportunities to enhance public access, including access¹³⁸⁵ by *mana whenua* in their role as kaitiaki and for gathering of *mahika kai mahika kai*,¹³⁸⁶ and
- (3) encouraging landowners to ~~only~~ avoid restricting access unless where¹³⁸⁷ it is necessary to protect:¹³⁸⁸
 - (a) ~~public~~¹³⁸⁹ health and safety,
 - (b) *significant natural areas*,
 - (c) areas of outstanding natural character,
 - (d) outstanding natural features and landscapes,
 - (e) places or areas with special or outstanding *historic heritage* values, or
 - (f) places or areas of significance to Kāi Tahu, ~~mana whenua~~, including wāhi taoka¹³⁹⁰, wāhi tapu and wāhi tūpuna,²
 - (g) establishing vegetation, or¹³⁹¹
 - (h) a level of security consistent with the operational requirements of a lawfully established activity.¹³⁹²

Methods

LF-LS-M11A – Identification of *highly productive land*¹³⁹³

- (1) In collaboration with territorial authorities and in consultation with *mana whenua*, Otago Regional

¹³⁸² 00219.019 FENZ

¹³⁸³ 00219.018 FENZ

¹³⁸⁴ 00226.319 Kāi Tahu ki Otago, 00411.087 Wayfare

¹³⁸⁵ 00226.206 Kāi Tahu ki Otago

¹³⁸⁶ Clause 10(2)(b)(i) – consequential amendment arising from 00226.038 Kāi Tahu ki Otago

¹³⁸⁷ 00231.065 Fish and Game

¹³⁸⁸ Clause 10(2)(b)(i), Schedule 1, RMA – consequential amendments arising from 00314.028 Transpower

¹³⁸⁹ 00239.094 Federated Farmers

¹³⁹⁰ 00226.207 Kāi Tahu ki Otago

¹³⁹¹ 00206.041 Trojan, 00411.053 Wayfare

¹³⁹² 00237.047 Beef + Lamb and DINZ

¹³⁹³ 00201.018 CODC, 00201.019 CODC, 00206.040 Trojan, 00235.110 OWRUG

Council must identify *highly productive land* in Otago in accordance with LS-LS-P19(1), and

- (2) Otago Regional Council must include maps of the *highly productive land* identified in accordance with (1) in the Regional Policy Statement by the date specified in the National Policy Statement for Highly Productive Land.

LF-LS-M11 – Regional plans

Otago Regional Council must publicly notify a Land and Water *Regional Plan* ~~no later than 31 December 2023~~¹³⁹⁴ and then, when it is made operative, maintain that *regional plan* to:

- (1) manage *land* uses that may affect the ability of *environmental outcomes* for water quality to be achieved by requiring:
- (a) the development and implementation of *certified freshwater farm plans* ~~as required by the RMA and any regulations,~~¹³⁹⁵
 - (b) the adoption of practices that reduce the *risk* of sediment and nutrient loss to *water*, including by minimising the area and duration of exposed soil, using buffers, and actively managing critical source areas,
 - (c) effective management of effluent storage and applications systems, and
 - (d) *earthworks* activities to implement effective sediment and erosion control practices and setbacks from *water bodies* to reduce the *risk* of sediment loss to *water*, and
- (2) provide for changes in *land* use that improve the sustainable and efficient ~~allocation and use of~~ *fresh water* and that ~~reduce water demand where there is existing over-allocation~~¹³⁹⁶, and
- (2A) enable the *discharge* of *contaminants to land* for *pest control*, and¹³⁹⁷
- (3) implement policies LF-LS-P16 to LF-LS~~F~~¹³⁹⁸-P22.

LF-LS-M12 – District plans

Territorial authorities must prepare or amend and maintain their *district plans* no later than 31 December 2026 to:

- (1) manage *land* use change by:
- (aa) avoiding the planting of *pest plants* in accordance with LF-LS-P16A,¹³⁹⁹
 - (a) controlling the establishment of new or any spatial extension of existing *land use activities* ~~plantation forestry activities~~¹⁴⁰⁰ where necessary to give effect to an objective developed under the NPSFM, and
 - (b) minimising the removal of montane¹⁴⁰¹ tall tussock grasslands, to recognise their ability to capture and hold precipitation,¹⁴⁰² and

¹³⁹⁴ Clause 16(2), Schedule 1, RMA

¹³⁹⁵ FPI037.022 Fish & Game, FPI030.043 Kāi Tahu ki Otago

¹³⁹⁶ FPI030.043 Kāi Tahu ki Otago

¹³⁹⁷ FPI044.023 DOC

¹³⁹⁸ Clause 16(2), Schedule 1, RMA

¹³⁹⁹ Clause 10(2)(b)(i), Schedule 1, RMA – consequential amendment arising from 00411.006 Wayfare, 00137.084 DOC (insertion of new LF-LS-P16A)

¹⁴⁰⁰ 00509.092 Wise Response

¹⁴⁰¹ Clause 16(2), Schedule 1, RMA

¹⁴⁰² 00509.092 Wise Response

- (2) provide for and promote ~~encourage~~¹⁴⁰³ the creation and enhancement of vegetated riparian margins and constructed *wetlands*, and maintain these where they already exist, ~~and~~
- (3) facilitate public access to and along¹⁴⁰⁴ *lakes* and *rivers* by:
 - (a) requiring the establishment of *esplanade reserves* and *esplanade strips*, and
 - (b) promoting the use of legal *roads*, including paper *roads*, and any other means of public access rights¹⁴⁰⁵ that connect with *esplanade reserves* and *esplanade strips*, and
- (4) maintain the availability and productive capacity¹⁴⁰⁶ of highly productive land identified and mapped under LF-LS-M11A¹⁴⁰⁷ in accordance with LF-LS-P19, and¹⁴⁰⁸
- (8) manage development in *rural areas* in accordance with UFD-P7,
- (9) manage ~~rural residential~~ and rural lifestyle activities development¹⁴⁰⁹ in ~~rural areas~~¹⁴¹⁰ in accordance with UFD-P8.¹⁴¹¹

LF-LS-M13 – Management of *beds* and riparian margins

Local authorities must prepare or amend and maintain their *regional plans*¹⁴¹² and *district plans* to manage the condition of the *bed* and banks of *water bodies*, riparian margins and associated *lands*, including vegetative cover, to:

- (1) maintain or enhance¹⁴¹³ existing indigenous¹⁴¹⁴ *biodiversity* values,
- (2) increase the presence, resilience and abundance of indigenous flora and fauna, particularly taoka species, including by providing for wetlands and¹⁴¹⁵ *biodiversity* corridors within *river* systems, and requiring riparian buffers that are sufficient to maintain indigenous *biodiversity*,
- (3) support improvement in the functioning of catchment processes where these have been adversely affected by changes in margins and connected *lands* over time, and
- (4) reduce unnatural sedimentation of *water bodies*.

LF-LS-M14 – Other methods

In addition to methods LF-LS-M11 to LF-LS-M13, the methods in the LF-WAI, ~~LF-VM~~¹⁴¹⁶ and LF-FW sections are also applicable.

¹⁴⁰³ 00509.092 Wise Response

¹⁴⁰⁴ 00206.042 Trojan, 00411.054 Wayfare, 00231.097 Fish and Game

¹⁴⁰⁵ 00206.042 Trojan, 00411.054 Wayfare, 00231.067 Fish and Game

¹⁴⁰⁶ Clause 10(2)(b)(i), Schedule 1, RMA – consequential amendment arising from 00014.031 Mt Cardrona Station, 00209.01 Universal Developments, 00210.012 Lane Hocking, 00211.01 LAC

¹⁴⁰⁷ Clause 16(2), Schedule 1, RMA

¹⁴⁰⁸ 00140.023 Waitaki DC

¹⁴⁰⁹ Clause 10(2)(b)(i), Schedule 1, RMA – consequential amendment arising from 00221.016 Silver Fern Farms, 00236.103 Horticulture NZ

¹⁴¹⁰ 00206.074 Trojan, 00411.136 Wayfare

¹⁴¹¹ Clause 10(2)(b)(i), Schedule 1, RMA – consequential amendment arising from 00236.096 Horticulture NZ, 00237.063 Beef + Lamb and DINZ

¹⁴¹² Clause 16(2), Schedule 1, RMA

¹⁴¹³ 00509.093 Wise Response

¹⁴¹⁴ 00137.079 DOC

¹⁴¹⁵ 00509.093 Wise Response

¹⁴¹⁶ Clause 16(2), Schedule 1, RMA

Explanation

LF-LS-E4 – Explanation

The policies in this section of the LF chapter seek to maintain the health of Otago’s soils, reduce the impact of pests¹⁴¹⁷ and manage *land* uses as part of an integrated approach to sustaining soil and *water* health and maintaining the productive capacity of rural land. The connections and interactions between these resources require a holistic approach to management.

~~Managing soil resources, in particular, cannot be undertaken in isolation.~~ The policies require managing the use and development of *land* and *fresh water* to maintain soil values, recognising that soil can be valued for more than its productive use and those values should be maintained. Soil erosion is problematic ~~for~~ and has adverse impacts on both soil and *water* health. The policies provide direction ~~on~~ for managing erosion resulting from *land* use activities to, ~~primarily, retain~~ ensure soil is retained and to prevent its discharge to water.¹⁴¹⁸

In addition, this chapter seeks to manage development in Otago’s rural areas, maintain the character and amenity values of Otago’s rural areas, including by facilitating the use of the natural and physical resources that to¹⁴¹⁹ support the viability of the rural sector. ~~Otago’s rural and urban areas also contain significant natural, cultural and historic values as identified by other parts of this RPS. In all cases while facilitating urban development and managing rural productive activities these values must also be identified, maintained and, wherever possible, enhanced.~~¹⁴²⁰ This approach includes direction on the different types of development within *rural areas*, ~~managing the expansion and location of urban areas, and including~~¹⁴²¹ rural lifestyle and rural residential¹⁴²² development, ~~and directing that growth be enabled in urban areas to minimise the need for development to occur within rural areas,~~¹⁴²³ other than what is needed to facilitate rural community and rural productive activities.¹⁴²⁴ These provisions work closely with those in the UFD chapter, which include direction on managing the impacts of urban growth on rural areas.¹⁴²⁵

Highly productive land is *land* used for land-based primary production ~~primary production~~¹⁴²⁶ that provides economic and employment benefits. Providing for and managing such *land* types is essential to ensure its sustainability. The policies seek to identify and prioritise *land* used for productive purposes managing urban encroachment into rural environments where appropriate.

Responding to *climate change* and achieving *freshwater* visions is likely to require changes in *land* uses

¹⁴¹⁷ Clause 10(2)(b)(i), Schedule 1, RMA – consequential amendment arising from 00411.006 Wayfare, 00137.084 DOC (insertion of new LF-LS-P16A)

¹⁴¹⁸ 00226.212 Kāi Tahu ki Otago

¹⁴¹⁹ Clause 10(2)(b)(i), Schedule 1, RMA – consequential amendments arising from 00240.033 New Zealand Pork Industry Board, 00239.172 Federated Farmers, 00236.096 Horticulture New Zealand, 00211.050 LAC Properties Trustees Limited, 00210.050 Lane Hocking, 00118.066 Maryhill Limited, 00014.066 Mt Cardrona Station, 00209.05 Universal Development Limited

¹⁴²⁰ Clause 10(2)(b)(i), Schedule 1, RMA – consequential amendment arising from 00137.151 Director General of Conservation, 00226.307 Kāi Tahu ki Otago

¹⁴²¹ Clause 10(2)(b)(i), Schedule 1, RMA – consequential amendment arising from 00236.096 Horticulture NZ, 00237.063 Beef + Lamb and DINZ

¹⁴²² Clause 10(2)(b)(i), Schedule 1, RMA – consequential amendment arising from 00221.016 Silver Fern Farms, 00236.103 Horticulture NZ

¹⁴²³ Clause 10(2)(b)(i), Schedule 1, RMA – consequential amendment arising from 00236.096 Horticulture NZ, 00237.063 Beef + Lamb and DINZ

¹⁴²⁴ Clause 10(2)(b)(i), Schedule 1, RMA – consequential amendment arising from 00236.096 Horticulture NZ, 00237.063 Beef + Lamb and DINZ

¹⁴²⁵ Clause 10(2)(b)(i), Schedule 1, RMA – consequential amendment arising from 00236.096 Horticulture NZ, 00237.063 Beef + Lamb and DINZ

¹⁴²⁶ Clause 10(2)(b)(i), Schedule 1, RMA – consequential amendment arising from 00021.002 Matakanui Gold Limited, 00016.009 Alluvium Limited and Stoney Creek Mining, 00017.007 Danny Walker and others, 00226.033 Kāi Tahu ki Otago, 00223.094 Ngāi Tahu ki Murihiku

and land management practices in parts of Otago. This is recognised in the policies which seek to promote changes in *land* use or management that improve efficient and sustainable¹⁴²⁷ use of *water*, *resilience to climate change*, and the health and quality of soil, and water quality.¹⁴²⁸ The policies also require reducing *discharges to water* from the use and development of *land* and managing *land* uses that are unsupportive of *environmental outcomes for fresh water* as identified by each *FMU*.

Maintaining public access to and along *lakes* and *rivers* is a matter of national importance under section 6 of the RMA 1991.¹⁴²⁹ The policies in this section seek to maintain existing public access opportunities¹⁴³⁰ and where appropriate promote enhanced¹⁴³¹ public access to and along *lakes* and *rivers*. Circumstances which restrict public access are set out where, for example, public¹⁴³² health and safety is at *risk* or valued parts of the *environment* may be compromised.

Principal reasons

LF-LS – PR4 – Principal reasons

*Pests, including wilding conifers, pose a range of threats to Otago’s environment. While the regional pest management plan is the primary tool for controlling pests under the Biosecurity Act 1993, it is important that the management of land works alongside that tool to reduce the impacts of pests.*¹⁴³³

Population growth and *land* use intensification in urban and rural environments has increased demand for *land* and soil resources. It has also impacted on the quality of our *water*, increasing contamination such as by nutrients and sediment and harming ecosystems. In Otago, historical and contemporary *land* uses have *degraded* some *water bodies*, both in terms of their quantity and quality, leading to adverse effects on the mauri of *water* and the diversity and abundance of *mahika kai mahika kai*¹⁴³⁴ resources.

Soil health is vital to wider ecological health, human health, and economic *resilience*. Otago has a rich and long history of varied forms of *land-based primary production* ~~primary production~~¹⁴³⁵ on a wide range of soil types and in variable climatic conditions. Otago’s highest quality soils (in terms of suitability for *land-based primary production* ~~primary production~~¹⁴³⁶) are mainly on the *Taiari Taieri*¹⁴³⁷ Plain, North Otago downlands, South Otago lowlands, parts of Central Otago and the Strath Taieri, and along some *river* margins. Their extent is limited and use of these soils can be constrained by external factors such as economics, erosion, natural and human induced hazards, animal, and plant pests.

Managing *land* uses is a critical component of implementing the NPSFM due to the effects of *land* use on the health and well-being of *water*. This chapter assists the Council to recognise and provide for the connections and interactions between Otago’s *land* and *fresh water*, while managing the use and

¹⁴²⁷ 00226.212 Kāi Tahu ki Otago

¹⁴²⁸ Clause 10(2)(b)(i), Schedule 1, RMA – consequential amendment arising from 00409.015 Ballance

¹⁴²⁹ Clause 16(2), Schedule 1, RMA

¹⁴³⁰ 00226.212 Kāi Tahu ki Otago

¹⁴³¹ 00226.212 Kāi Tahu ki Otago

¹⁴³² Clause 10(2)(b)(i), Schedule 1, RMA – consequential amendment arising from 00239.094 Federated Farmers

¹⁴³³ Clause 10(2)(b)(i), Schedule 1, RMA – consequential amendment arising from 00411.006 Wayfare, 00137.084 DOC (insertion of new LF-LS-P16A)

¹⁴³⁴ Clause 10(2)(b)(i) – consequential amendment arising from 00226.038 Kāi Tahu ki Otago

¹⁴³⁵ Clause 10(2)(b)(i), Schedule 1, RMA – consequential amendment arising from 00021.002 Matakanui Gold Limited, 00016.009 Alluvium Limited and Stoney Creek Mining, 00017.007 Danny Walker and others, 00226.033 Kāi Tahu ki Otago, 00223.094 Ngāi Tahu ki Murihiku

¹⁴³⁶ Clause 10(2)(b)(i), Schedule 1, RMA – consequential amendment arising from 00021.002 Matakanui Gold Limited, 00016.009 Alluvium Limited and Stoney Creek Mining, 00017.007 Danny Walker and others, 00226.033 Kāi Tahu ki Otago, 00223.094 Ngāi Tahu ki Murihiku

¹⁴³⁷ 00234.005 Te Rūnanga o Ngāi Tahu

development of this *land*, and its effects on *fresh water*.

Rural areas are attractive as residential living areas, and for other non-rural activities. However, they contain areas, activities and resources critical for rural production. There is pressure from non-rural activities and rural lifestyle development to locate within the rural area, but these activities that can be impacted by sensitive to *primary production or rural industry* and can adversely affect rural production activities.¹⁴³⁸ ~~Non-urban areas also contain a wide range of other values that can be negatively impacted by the impacts of rural residential and other activities, that do not have a functional need to be in rural areas.~~¹⁴³⁹ The provisions in this chapter focus on managing where rural living opportunities and other non-rural activities are provided for, so that¹⁴⁴⁰ the potential effects of development on the rural character,¹⁴⁴¹ productive potential and the wide range of environmental values, features and resources that *rural areas* also contain are appropriately managed.¹⁴⁴² The supply of rural lifestyle opportunities to meet demand should be directed to suitably located and zoned areas to minimise impacts on values in *rural areas*. In designing and planning for rural residential and rural¹⁴⁴³ lifestyle development, local authorities will need to be aware of the potential future constraints on future urban expansion and development, including the cumulative impacts of infrastructure servicing irrespective of whether this is onsite, community or through connections to urban reticulated schemes.

Riparian areas, in particular, play a key role in supporting the *water* quality and ecosystem values of *water bodies*, and it is important that this role is maintained.¹⁴⁴⁴

Anticipated environmental results

LF-LS-AER12A	The area of <i>land</i> vegetated by <i>wilding conifers</i> is reduced. ¹⁴⁴⁵
LF-LS-AER12B	The extent and distribution of <i>pests</i> does not increase. ¹⁴⁴⁶
LF-LS-AER12	The life-supporting capacity of soil is maintained or improved throughout Otago.
LF-LS-AER13	The availability and capability of Otago's highly productive land is maintained.
LF-LS-AER14	The use of <i>land</i> supports the achievement of <i>environmental outcomes</i> and objectives in Otago's <i>FMUs</i> and rohe.
UFD-AER11	All new rural residential or rural ¹⁴⁴⁷ lifestyle development occurs within areas zoned <u>appropriate</u> for this use. ¹⁴⁴⁸

¹⁴³⁸ 00236.106 Horticulture NZ

¹⁴³⁹ Clause 10(2)(b)(i), Schedule 1, RMA – consequential amendment arising from changes recommended to UFD-P7 and UFD-P8.

¹⁴⁴⁰ Clause 10(2)(b)(i), Schedule 1, RMA – consequential amendment arising from changes recommended to UFD-P7 and UFD-P8

¹⁴⁴¹ 00211.050 LAC Properties Trustees Limited, 00210.050 Lane Hocking, 00118.066 Maryhill Limited, 00014.066 Mt Cardrona Station, 00209.05 Universal Development Limited

¹⁴⁴² Clause 10(2)(b)(i), Schedule 1, RMA – consequential amendment arising from changes recommended to UFD-P7 and UFD-P8

¹⁴⁴³ Clause 10(2)(b)(i), Schedule 1, RMA – consequential amendment arising from 00221.016 Silver Fern Farms, 00236.103 Horticulture NZ

¹⁴⁴⁴ 00226.213 Kāi Tahu ki Otago

¹⁴⁴⁵ Clause 10(2)(b)(i), Schedule 1, RMA – consequential amendment arising from 00411.006 Wayfare, 00137.084 DOC (insertion of new LF-LS-P16A)

¹⁴⁴⁶ Clause 10(2)(b)(i), Schedule 1, RMA – consequential amendment arising from 00411.006 Wayfare, 00137.084 DOC (insertion of new LF-LS-P16A)

¹⁴⁴⁷ Clause 10(2)(b)(i), Schedule 1, RMA – consequential amendment arising from 00221.016 Silver Fern Farms, 00236.103 Horticulture NZ

¹⁴⁴⁸ Clause 10(2)(b)(i), Schedule 1, RMA – consequential amendment arising from 00025.004 Boxer Hills Trust, 00023.005 Waterfall Park Developments Limited

LF-LS-AER15

The establishment of activities within *rural areas* does not result in adverse effects on activities functionally dependent on rural resources and rural surroundings.¹⁴⁴⁹

¹⁴⁴⁹ Consequential amendment due to restructure of the UFD chapter

TOPICS

ECO – Ecosystems and indigenous *biodiversity*

Objectives

ECO–01 – Indigenous *biodiversity*

Otago's *indigenous biodiversity* is healthy and thriving and any overall¹⁴⁵⁰ decline in condition,¹⁴⁵¹ ~~quality~~ quantity and diversity is halted.

ECO–02 – Restoring ~~or~~ and¹⁴⁵² enhancing

Restoration and¹⁴⁵³ enhancement activities result in an A¹⁴⁵⁴ ~~net overall~~¹⁴⁵⁵ increase in the extent and occupancy¹⁴⁵⁶ of Otago's *indigenous biodiversity* ~~results from restoration or enhancement~~.¹⁴⁵⁷

ECO–03 – ~~Kaitiaki~~ Kaitiakitaka¹⁴⁵⁸ and stewardship

Mana whenua exercise their role ~~are recognised~~¹⁴⁵⁹ as kaitiaki of Otago's *indigenous biodiversity*, and Otago's communities are recognised as stewards, who are responsible for:

- (1) te hauora o te koiora (the health of ~~indigenous~~ *indigenous biodiversity*), te hauora o te taoka (the health of species and ecosystems that are taoka), and te hauora o te taiao (the health of the wider *environment*), while
- (2) providing for te hauora o te takata (the health of the people).

Policies

ECO–P1 – Kaitiakitaka

~~Recognise the role of~~ Enable¹⁴⁶⁰ Kāi Tahu to exercise their role¹⁴⁶¹ as kaitiaki of Otago's *indigenous biodiversity* by:

- (1) ~~involving~~ partnering with¹⁴⁶² Kāi Tahu in the management of ~~indigenous~~ *indigenous biodiversity* to

¹⁴⁵⁰ 00139.129 DCC, 00237.049 Beef & Lamb NZ

¹⁴⁵¹ 00306.042 Meridian

¹⁴⁵² 00226.215 Kāi Tahu ki Otago

¹⁴⁵³ 00226.215 Kāi Tahu ki Otago

¹⁴⁵⁴ 00322.026 Fulton Hogan Limited

¹⁴⁵⁵ Clause 10(2)(b)(i), Schedule 1, RMA – consequential amendment from 00139.129 DCC, 00237.049 Beef & Lamb NZ

¹⁴⁵⁶ 00223.099 Ngāi Tahu ki Murihiku, 00226.215 Kāi Tahu ki Otago

¹⁴⁵⁷ 00322.026 Fulton Hogan

¹⁴⁵⁸ 00234.031 Te Rūnanga o Ngāi Tahu

¹⁴⁵⁹ 00139.129 DCC, 00237.049 Beef & Lamb NZ

¹⁴⁶⁰ 00226.217 Kāi Tahu ki Otago

¹⁴⁶¹ 00226.217 Kāi Tahu ki Otago

¹⁴⁶² 00139.129 DCC, 00237.049 Beef & Lamb NZ

the extent desired by *mana whenua*,¹⁴⁶³

- (1A) working with Kāi Tahu to identify and the identification of¹⁴⁶⁴ *indigenous species* and ecosystems that are taoka,
- (2) incorporating the use of mātauraka Māori in the management and monitoring of ~~indigenous~~ *indigenous biodiversity*, and
- (3) ~~providing for~~ facilitating¹⁴⁶⁵ access to and use of ~~indigenous~~ *indigenous biodiversity* by Kāi Tahu, including mahika kai, according to tikaka.

ECO-P2 – Identifying *significant natural areas* and taoka

Identify and map:¹⁴⁶⁶

- (1) the areas of *significant indigenous vegetation* or *significant habitat* of indigenous fauna that qualify as *significant natural areas* using the assessment criteria in APP2 and in accordance with ECO-M2,¹⁴⁶⁷ ~~and values of *significant natural areas* in accordance with APP2,~~ and
- (2) where appropriate,¹⁴⁶⁸ *indigenous species and ecosystems that are taoka, including those identified by *mana whenua* as requiring protection,*¹⁴⁶⁹ in accordance with ECO-M3.

ECO-P3 – Protecting *significant natural areas* and taoka

Outside the coastal environment, and E~~except~~¹⁴⁷⁰ as provided for by ECO-P4 and ~~ECO-P5~~ ECO-P5A, protect *significant natural areas* and indigenous species and ecosystems that are taoka by:

- (1) first¹⁴⁷¹ avoiding adverse *effects* that result in:
 - (a) ~~any reduction of the area or values (even if those values are not themselves significant) identified under ECO-P2(1), or~~¹⁴⁷²
 - (aa) loss of ecosystem representation and extent,
 - (ab) disruption to sequences, mosaics, or *ecosystem function*,
 - (ac) fragmentation of *significant natural areas* or the loss of buffers or connections within an SNA,
 - (ad) a reduction in the function of the *significant natural area* as a buffer or connection to other important habitats or ecosystems, or
 - (ae) a reduction in the population size or occupancy of *Threatened or At Risk (declining) species* that use an *significant natural area* for any part of their life cycle,¹⁴⁷³

¹⁴⁶³ 00139.129 DCC, 00237.049 Beef & Lamb NZ

¹⁴⁶⁴ 00139.129 DCC, 00237.049 Beef & Lamb NZ

¹⁴⁶⁵ 00239.099 Federated Farmers

¹⁴⁶⁶ 00020.018 Rayonier Matariki

¹⁴⁶⁷ 00139.129 DCC, 00237.049 Beef & Lamb NZ

¹⁴⁶⁸ 00226.218 Kāi Tahu ki Otago

¹⁴⁶⁹ 00239.100 Federated Farmers

¹⁴⁷⁰ Clause (10(2)(b)(i), Schedule 1, RMA – consequential amendment arising from 00301.028 Port Otago

¹⁴⁷¹ 00223.100 Ngāi Tahu ki Murihiku

¹⁴⁷² 00230.102 Forest and Bird

¹⁴⁷³ 00139.129 DCC, 00237.049 Beef & Lamb NZ

- (b) any loss of Kāi Tahu taoka¹⁴⁷⁴ values identified by *mana whenua* as requiring protection¹⁴⁷⁵ under ECO-P2(2),¹⁴⁷⁶ and
- (2) after (1), applying the *biodiversity effects management hierarchy (in relation to indigenous biodiversity)* in ECO-P6, to areas and values other than those covered by ECO-P3(1),¹⁴⁷⁷ and
- (3) prior to *significant natural areas* and indigenous species and ecosystems that are taoka being identified and mapped¹⁴⁷⁸ in accordance with ECO-P2, adopt a precautionary approach towards activities in accordance with ~~IM-P15~~ IM-P6(2).¹⁴⁷⁹

ECO-P4 – Provision for new activities

Outside of the coastal environment, maintain¹⁴⁸⁰ Otago’s indigenous *biodiversity* by following the sequential steps in the *effects management hierarchy (in relation to indigenous biodiversity)* ~~effects management hierarchy set out in ECO-P6~~ when making decisions on plans, applications for resource consent or notices of requirement for the following activities in *significant natural areas*, or where they may adversely affect indigenous species and ecosystems that are taoka that have been identified by *mana whenua* as requiring protection:

- (1) the development, operation, maintenance¹⁴⁸¹ or upgrade of *specified infrastructure*¹⁴⁸² ~~*nationally significant infrastructure and regionally significant infrastructure*~~¹⁴⁸³ that provides significant national or regional public benefit¹⁴⁸⁴ that has a *functional need*¹⁴⁸⁵ or *operational need* to locate within the relevant *significant natural area(s)* or where they may adversely affect indigenous species or ecosystems that are taoka, and there are no practicable alternative locations,¹⁴⁸⁶
- (1A) the development, operation and maintenance of *mineral* extraction activities that provide a significant national public benefit that could not otherwise be achieved within New Zealand and that have a *functional need* or *operational need* to locate within the relevant *significant natural area(s)* or where they may adversely affect *indigenous species* or ecosystems that are taoka,¹⁴⁸⁷ and there are no practicable alternative locations,¹⁴⁸⁸
- (1B) the development, operation and maintenance of aggregate extraction activities that provide a significant national or regional benefit that could not otherwise be achieved within New Zealand and that have a *functional need* or *operational need* to locate within the relevant *significant natural area(s)* or where they may adversely affect *indigenous species* or ecosystems that are taoka,¹⁴⁸⁹
- (1C) the operation or expansion of any coal mine that was lawfully established before August 2023 that has a *functional need* or *operational need* to locate within the relevant *significant natural area(s)* or where they may adversely affect *indigenous species* or ecosystems that are taoka, and there are no practicable alternative locations; except that, after 31 December 2030, this exception applies

¹⁴⁷⁴ 00139.129 DCC

¹⁴⁷⁵ Consequential change to 00239.100 Federated Farmers

¹⁴⁷⁶ 00138.033 QLDC

¹⁴⁷⁷ Consequential change to 00239.100 Federated Farmers

¹⁴⁷⁸ 00020.018 Rayonier Matariki

¹⁴⁷⁹ 00139.040 DCC, 00121.027 Ravensdown

¹⁴⁸⁰ Clause (10)(2)(b)(i), Schedule 1, RMA – consequential amendment arising from 00301.028 Port Otago

¹⁴⁸¹ 00311.022 Trustpower Limited

¹⁴⁸² 00139.129 DCC, 00237.049 Beef & Lamb NZ

¹⁴⁸³ 00139.129 DCC, 00237.049 Beef & Lamb NZ

¹⁴⁸⁴ 00139.129 DCC, 00237.049 Beef & Lamb NZ

¹⁴⁸⁵ 00315.046 Aurora Energy, 00138.116 QLDC

¹⁴⁸⁶ 00139.129 DCC, 00237.049 Beef & Lamb NZ

¹⁴⁸⁷ 00115.022 Oceana Gold (New Zealand) Ltd

¹⁴⁸⁸ 00139.129 DCC, 00237.049 Beef & Lamb NZ

¹⁴⁸⁹ 00115.022 Oceana Gold (New Zealand) Ltd

only to such coal mines that extract coking coal,¹⁴⁹⁰

- (2) the development of *papakāika*, marae and ancillary facilities associated with customary activities on Native reserves and Māori land,¹⁴⁹¹
- (2A) the sustainable use of *mahika kai*¹⁴⁹² and kaimoana (seafood) by *mana whenua*,¹⁴⁹³
- (3) the use of Native reserves and Māori land in a way that will make a significant contribution¹⁴⁹⁴ to enable *mana whenua* to maintain their connection to their whenua and enhancing the¹⁴⁹⁵ social, cultural or economic well-being_z of *mana whenua*,¹⁴⁹⁶
- (4) activities that are for the purpose of protecting, maintaining,¹⁴⁹⁷ restoring or enhancing a *significant natural area* or *indigenous species* or ecosystems that are taoka, ~~or~~¹⁴⁹⁸
- (5) activities that are for the purpose of addressing a severe ~~and~~ or¹⁴⁹⁹ immediate risk to public health or safety_z,
- (6) activities that are for the purpose of a developing a single residential dwelling on an allotment that was created before 4 August 2023, and can demonstrate there is no practicable location within the allotment where a single residential dwelling and essential associated on-site infrastructure can be constructed, or¹⁵⁰⁰
- (7) activities that are for the purpose of harvesting indigenous tree species from an *significant natural area* carried out in accordance with a forest management plan or permit under Part 3A of the Forests Act 1949.¹⁵⁰¹

ECO-P5 – Existing activities in significant natural areas

Except as provided for by ECO-P4, provide for existing activities within *significant natural areas* and that may adversely affect indigenous species and ecosystems that are taoka, if:

- (1) ~~the continuation of an existing activity will not lead to the loss (including through cumulative loss) of extent or *degradation* of the ecological integrity of any *significant natural area* or indigenous species or ecosystems that are taoka, and~~
- (2) ~~the adverse *effects* of an existing activity are no greater in character, spatial extent, intensity or scale than they were before this RPS became operative.~~

ECO-P5A – Managing adverse effects of established activities on significant natural areas

Outside of the coastal environment, enable the maintenance, operation, and upgrade of established activities (excluding activities managed under ECO-P3 and ECO-P4), where the *effects* of the activity, including cumulative *effects*, on a *significant natural area*:

¹⁴⁹⁰ 00139.129 DCC, 00237.049 Beef & Lamb NZ

¹⁴⁹¹ 00234.009 Te Rūnanga o Ngāi Tahu, 00226.053 Kāi Tahu ki Otago, 00010.002 Cain whanau

¹⁴⁹² 00226.0038 Kāi Tahu ki Otago

¹⁴⁹³ 00226.220 Kāi Tahu ki Otago

¹⁴⁹⁴ 00234.032 Te Rūnanga o Ngāi Tahu

¹⁴⁹⁵ 00234.032 Te Rūnanga o Ngāi Tahu

¹⁴⁹⁶ 00234.032 Te Rūnanga o Ngāi Tahu

¹⁴⁹⁷ 00139.129 DCC, 00237.049 Beef & Lamb NZ

¹⁴⁹⁸ 00139.129 DCC, 00237.049 Beef & Lamb NZ

¹⁴⁹⁹ 00139.130 DCC

¹⁵⁰⁰ 00139.129 DCC, 00237.049 Beef & Lamb NZ

¹⁵⁰¹ 00139.129 DCC, 00237.049 Beef & Lamb NZ

- (1) are no greater in intensity, scale, or character over time than at 4 August 2023, and
- (2) do not result in the loss of extent or degradation of *ecological integrity* of a *significant natural area*.¹⁵⁰²

ECO-P6 – Maintaining indigenous *biodiversity*

Outside the coastal environment and excluding areas managed protected¹⁵⁰³ under ECO-P3, Maintain¹⁵⁰⁴ manage¹⁵⁰⁵ Otago's *indigenous biodiversity* (excluding the coastal environment and¹⁵⁰⁶ areas managed under ECO-P3) by:¹⁵⁰⁷

- (1) applying the following *biodiversity effects management hierarchy* (in relation to *indigenous biodiversity*)¹⁵⁰⁸ to manage significant adverse effects on *indigenous biodiversity*), and¹⁵⁰⁹
- (2) requiring the *maintenance of indigenous biodiversity* for all other adverse effects of any activity, and¹⁵¹⁰
- (3) notwithstanding (1) and (2) above, for *regionally significant infrastructure* and *nationally significant infrastructure* that is either *renewable electricity generation* or the *National Grid* avoid, remedy or mitigate adverse effects to the extent practicable.¹⁵¹¹

in decision making on applications for *resource consent*, and notices of requirement:

- (1) ~~avoid adverse effects as the first priority,~~
- (2) ~~where adverse effects demonstrably cannot be completely avoided, they are remedied,~~
- (3) ~~where adverse effects demonstrably cannot be completely avoided or remedied, they are mitigated,~~
- (4) ~~where there are residual adverse effects after avoidance, remediation, and mitigation, then the residual adverse effects are offset in accordance with APP3, and~~
- (5) ~~if *biodiversity* offsetting of residual adverse effects is not possible, then:~~
 - (a) ~~the residual adverse effects are compensated for in accordance with APP4, and~~
 - (b) ~~if the residual adverse effects cannot be compensated for in accordance with APP4, the activity is avoided.~~

ECO-P7 – Coastal indigenous *biodiversity*

~~Coastal indigenous *Indigenous biodiversity* in the coastal environment is managed by CE-P5, in addition to all objectives and policies of the ECO chapter except ECO-P3, ECO-P4, ECO-P5A and ECO-P6 and implementation of CE-P5 also contributes to achieving ECO-O1.~~

¹⁵⁰² 00139.129 DCC, 00237.049 Beef & Lamb NZ

¹⁵⁰³ 00230.105 Forest and Bird

¹⁵⁰⁴ Clause (10(2)(b)(i), Schedule 1, RMA – consequential amendment arising from 00301.028 Port Otago

¹⁵⁰⁵ 00139.129 DCC, 00237.049 Beef & Lamb NZ

¹⁵⁰⁶ Clause 10(2)(b)(i) - Consequential amendment arising from 00226.223 Kāi Tahu ki Otago

¹⁵⁰⁷ 00139.129 DCC, 00237.049 Beef & Lamb NZ

¹⁵⁰⁸ 00016.013 Alluvium and Stoney Creek, 0017.011 Danny Walker and Others, 00321.022 Te Waihanga

¹⁵⁰⁹ 00016.013 Alluvium and Stoney Creek, 0017.011 Danny Walker and Others, 00321.022 Te Waihanga

¹⁵¹⁰ 00139.129 DCC, 00237.049 Beef & Lamb NZ

¹⁵¹¹ 00139.129 DCC, 00237.049 Beef & Lamb NZ

ECO-P8 – Restoration and eEnhancement¹⁵¹²

The extent, occupancy¹⁵¹³ and condition of Otago’s indigenous *biodiversity* is increased by:

- (1) restoring and enhancing habitat for indigenous species, including taoka and mahika kai species,
- (2) improving the health and *resilience* of *indigenous biodiversity*, including ecosystems, species, ~~important~~¹⁵¹⁴ ecosystem function, and *intrinsic values*, and
- (3) buffering or linking ecosystems, habitats and ecological corridors-, ki uta ki tai¹⁵¹⁵ and¹⁵¹⁶
- (4) prioritising all the following for restoration:
 - (a) significant natural areas whose ecological integrity is degraded,
 - (b) threatened and rare ecosystems representative of naturally occurring and formerly present ecosystems,
 - (c) areas that provide important connectivity or buffering functions,
 - (d) areas of *indigenous biodiversity* on native reserves and Māori land where restoration is advanced by the Māori landowners,
 - (e) any other priorities specified in regional biodiversity strategies or any national priorities for *indigenous biodiversity restoration*.¹⁵¹⁷

ECO-P9 – ~~Wilding conifers~~

Reduce the impact of ~~wilding conifers~~ on indigenous *biodiversity* by:

- (1) ~~avoiding afforestation and replanting of plantation forests with wilding conifer species listed in APP5 within:~~
 - (a) ~~areas identified as *significant natural areas*, and~~
 - (b) ~~buffer zones adjacent to *significant natural areas* where it is necessary to protect the *significant natural area*, and~~
- (2) ~~supporting initiatives to control existing *wilding conifers* and limit their further spread.~~

ECO-P10 – Integrated approach management¹⁵¹⁸

Manage *indigenous biodiversity* and the effects on it from subdivision, use and development in an integrated way, which means: ~~Implement an integrated and co-ordinated approach to managing Otago’s ecosystems and indigenous *biodiversity* that:~~¹⁵¹⁹

- (1) ensuring¹⁵²⁰ any permitted or controlled activity in a *regional plan*¹⁵²¹ or *district plan* rule does not compromise the achievement of ECO-O1,

¹⁵¹² 00226.224 Kāi Tahu ki Otago

¹⁵¹³ 00223.099 Ngāi Tahu ki Murihiku, 00226.215 Kāi Tahu ki Otago

¹⁵¹⁴ 00137.091 DOC

¹⁵¹⁵ 00138.037 QLDC

¹⁵¹⁶ 00139.129 DCC, 00237.049 Beef & Lamb NZ

¹⁵¹⁷ 00139.129 DCC, 00237.049 Beef & Lamb NZ

¹⁵¹⁸ 00226.226 Kāi Tahu ki Otago

¹⁵¹⁹ 00139.129 DCC, 00237.049 Beef & Lamb NZ

¹⁵²⁰ 00139.129 DCC, 00237.049 Beef & Lamb NZ

¹⁵²¹ Clause 16(2), Schedule 1, RMA

- (2) recognises¹⁵²² the interactions ki uta ki tai (from the mountains to the sea) between the terrestrial *environment, fresh water, and the coastal marine area*, including:
 - (a) the migration of fish species between *fresh and coastal waters*, and¹⁵²³
 - (b) the effects of land-use activities on coastal biodiversity and ecosystems,¹⁵²⁴
- (2A) acknowledging that *climate change* will affect *indigenous biodiversity* and managing activities which may exacerbate the *effects of climate change*,¹⁵²⁵
- (3) providing for the coordinated management and control of subdivision, use and development, as it affects *indigenous biodiversity* across administrative boundaries, ~~promotes collaboration between individuals and agencies with *biodiversity* responsibilities,~~¹⁵²⁶
- (4) working towards aligning strategies and other planning tools required or provided for in legislation that are relevant to *indigenous biodiversity*, ~~supports the various statutory and non-statutory approaches adopted to manage *indigenous biodiversity*,~~¹⁵²⁷
- (5) recognises¹⁵²⁸ the critical role of people and communities in actively managing the remaining *indigenous biodiversity* occurring on private *land*, and
- (6) adopts¹⁵²⁹ regulatory and non-regulatory regional *pest* management programmes.

ECO-P11 – Resilience to *climate change*¹⁵³⁰

Promote the resilience of *indigenous biodiversity* to *climate change*, including at least by:

- (1) allowing and supporting the natural adjustment of *habitats* and ecosystems to the changing climate, and
- (2) considering the *effects of climate change* when making decisions on:
 - (a) *restoration proposals*, and
 - (b) managing and reducing new and existing biosecurity risks, and
- (3) maintaining and promoting the enhancement of the connectivity between ecosystems, and between existing and potential *habitats*, to enable migrations so that species can continue to find viable niches as the climate changes, and
- (4) recognising the role of *indigenous biodiversity* in mitigating the *effects of climate change*.¹⁵³¹

ECO-P12 – Plantation forestry activities¹⁵³²

Manage:

- (1) the adverse *effects of plantation forestry* activities in any existing *plantation forest* on any *significant natural area* in a manner that:

¹⁵²² 00139.129 DCC, 00237.049 Beef & Lamb NZ

¹⁵²³ 00226.226 Kāi Tahu ki Otago

¹⁵²⁴ 00226.226 Kāi Tahu ki Otago

¹⁵²⁵ 00234.033 Te Rūnanga o Ngāi Tahu

¹⁵²⁶ 00139.129 DCC, 00237.049 Beef & Lamb NZ

¹⁵²⁷ 00139.129 DCC, 00237.049 Beef & Lamb NZ

¹⁵²⁸ 00139.129 DCC, 00237.049 Beef & Lamb NZ

¹⁵²⁹ 00139.129 DCC, 00237.049 Beef & Lamb NZ

¹⁵³⁰ 00139.129 DCC, 00237.049 Beef & Lamb NZ

¹⁵³¹ 00139.129 DCC, 00237.049 Beef & Lamb NZ

¹⁵³² 00139.129 DCC, 00237.049 Beef & Lamb NZ

- (a) maintains *indigenous biodiversity* in the *significant natural area* as far as practicable, while
- (b) provides for *plantation forestry* activities to continue, and
- (2) over the course of consecutive rotations of production, any part of a *significant natural area* that is within an area of an existing *plantation forest* that is planted, or is intended to be, replanted in trees for harvest in the manner necessary to maintain the long-term populations of any *Threatened or At Risk (declining) species* present in the area.¹⁵³³

Methods

ECO–M1 – Statement of responsibilities

In accordance with section 62(1)(i)(iii) of the RMA 1991, the *local authorities* responsible for the control of *land* use to maintain indigenous *biological diversity* are:

- (1) the Regional Council and *territorial authorities* are responsible for specifying objectives, policies and methods in *regional* and *district plans* for managing the margins of *wetlands, rivers* and *lakes*,
- (2) the Regional Council is responsible for specifying objectives, policies and methods in *regional plans*:
 - (a) in the *coastal marine area*,
 - (b) in *wetlands, lakes* and *rivers*, and
 - (c) in, on or under the *beds* of *rivers* and *lakes*,
- (3) in addition to (1), *territorial authorities* are responsible for specifying objectives, policies and methods in *district plans* outside of the areas listed in (2) above if they are not managed by the Regional Council under (4), and
- (4) the Regional Council may be responsible for specifying objectives, policies and methods in *regional plans* outside of the areas listed (1) above if:
 - (a) the Regional Council reaches agreement with the relevant *territorial authority* or *territorial authorities*, and
 - (b) if applicable, a transfer of powers in accordance with section 33 of the RMA 1991 occurs from the relevant *territorial authority* or *territorial authorities* to the Regional Council.

ECO–M2 – Identification of *significant natural areas*

Local authorities must:

- (1) in accordance with the statement of responsibilities in ECO–M1, identify the areas and *indigenous biodiversity*¹⁵³⁴ values of *significant natural areas* as required by ECO–P2, and
- (2) map and verify¹⁵³⁵ the areas and include the *indigenous biodiversity*¹⁵³⁶ values identified under (1) in the relevant *regional plans*¹⁵³⁷ and *district plans*; no later than 31 December 2030,¹⁵³⁸

¹⁵³³ 00139.129 DCC, 00237.049 Beef & Lamb NZ

¹⁵³⁴ 00226.228 Kāi Tahu ki Otago

¹⁵³⁵ 00020.018 Rayonier Matariki

¹⁵³⁶ 00226.228 Kāi Tahu ki Otago

¹⁵³⁷ Clause 16(2), Schedule 1, RMA

¹⁵³⁸ 00139.036 DCC

- (3A) identify areas and values of *indigenous biodiversity* within their jurisdictions in accordance with CE-P5, map the areas and describe their values in the relevant *regional plans*¹⁵³⁹ and *district plans*, and¹⁵⁴⁰
- (3) recognise that indigenous *biodiversity* spans jurisdictional boundaries by:
- (a) working collaboratively to ensure the areas identified by different *local authorities* are not artificially fragmented when identifying *significant natural areas* that span jurisdictional boundaries, and
- (b) ensuring that indigenous *biodiversity* is managed in accordance with this RPS,
- (4) until *significant natural areas* are identified and mapped in accordance with (1) and (2),¹⁵⁴¹ require ecological assessments to be provided with applications for resource consent, *plan changes*¹⁵⁴² and notices of requirement that identify whether affected areas are *significant natural areas* in accordance with APP2, and¹⁵⁴³
- (5) in the following areas, prioritise identification under (1) ~~no later than 31 December 2025:~~¹⁵⁴⁴
- (a) intermontane basins that contain indigenous vegetation and habitats,
- (b) areas of dryland shrubs,
- (c) braided *rivers*, including the Makarore, Makarora Mātakitaki¹⁵⁴⁵ ~~Mātukituki~~ and Lower Waitaki Rivers,
- (d) areas of montane tall tussock grasslands, and
- (e) limestone habitats.
- (6) When identifying *significant natural areas*, ensuring that:
- (a) if the values or extent of a proposed *significant natural area* are disputed by the landowner, the local authority:
- (i) conducts a physical inspection of the area,
- (ii) or, if a physical inspection is not practicable, uses the best information available to it at the time, and
- (b) if requested by a *territorial authority*, the *regional council* will assist the *territorial authority* in undertaking its district-wide assessment, and
- (c) where a *territorial authority* has identified a *significant natural area* prior to 4 August 2023, and prior to 4 August 2027, a suitably qualified ecologist is engaged by the *territorial authority* to confirm that the methodology originally used to identify the area as a *significant natural area*, and its application, is consistent with the assessment approach in APP2, and
- (d) if a *territorial authority* becomes aware (as a result of a resource consent application, notice of requirement or any other means) that an area may be an area of significant *indigenous*

¹⁵³⁹ Clause 16(2), Schedule 1, RMA

¹⁵⁴⁰ Clause 10(2)(b)(i), schedule 1, RMA – CE-M2(3) moved to ECO-M2(3A) as a consequential amendment arising from moving coastal biodiversity provisions from CE to ECO in response to 00301.028 Port Otago

¹⁵⁴¹ 00311.014 Queenstown Airport

¹⁵⁴² Consequential change to 00138.036 Queenstown Lakes District Council

¹⁵⁴³ Clause 16(2), Schedule 1, RMA

¹⁵⁴⁴ 00139.002 DCC

¹⁵⁴⁵ 00226.024 Kāi Tahu ki Otago

vegetation or significant habitat of indigenous fauna that qualifies as a significant natural area, the territorial authority:

- (i) conducts an assessment of the area in accordance with APP2 as soon as practicable, and
 - (ii) if a new significant natural area is identified as a result, includes it in the next appropriate plan or plan change notified by the territorial authority, and
 - (e) when a territorial authority does its 10-yearly plan review, it assesses its district in accordance with ECO-P2 and APP2 to determine whether changes are needed, and
- (7) allow an area of Crown-owned land to qualify as a significant natural area without the need for the assessment required by ECO-P2, using APP2, if:
- (a) the land is managed by the Department of Conservation under the Conservation Act 1987 or any other Act specified in Schedule 1 of that Act, and
 - (b) the territorial authority is reasonably satisfied, after consultation with the Department of Conservation, that all or most of the area would qualify as a significant natural area under APP2, and
 - (c) the area is:
 - (i) a large and more-or-less contiguous area managed under a single protection classification (such as a national park), or
 - (ii) a large, compact, and more-or-less contiguous area under more than one classification (such as adjoining reserves and a conservation park), or
 - (iii) a well-defined landscape or geographical feature (such as an island or mountain range), or
 - (iv) a scientific, scenic or nature reserve under the Reserves Act 1977, a sanctuary area, ecological area, or wildlife management area under the Conservation Act 1987, or an isolated part of a national park.¹⁵⁴⁶

ECO-M3 – Identification of taoka

Local authorities must:

- (1) work together with *mana whenua* to agree a process for:
 - (a) identifying indigenous species and ecosystems that are taoka, including those identified by *mana whenua* as requiring protection, and how they are values with reference to mātauraka Māori,¹⁵⁴⁷
 - (b) describing the taoka identified in (1)(a),
 - (c) mapping or describing the location of the taoka identified in (1)(a), and
 - (d) describing the values of each taoka identified in (1)(a), and
- (2) notwithstanding (1), recognise that *mana whenua* have the right to choose not to identify taoka and to choose the level of detail at which identified taoka, or their location or values, are

¹⁵⁴⁶ 00139.129 DCC, 00237.049 Beef & Lamb NZ

¹⁵⁴⁷ Clause 10(2)(b)(i), Schedule 1, RMA – consequential amendment arising from 00239.100 Federated Farmers

described, and

- (3) to the extent agreed by *mana whenua*, amend their *regional* and *district plans* to include matters (1)(b) to (1)(d) above, and
- (4) recognise that the possible adverse effects on identified taoka include effects on:
 - (a) the mauri of the taoka,
 - (b) the values of the taoka as identified by mana whenua
 - (c) the historical, cultural, and spiritual relationship of the tangata whenua with the taoka, as identified by mana whenua, and
- (5) notify the relevant landowner of the present of the taoka prior to identifying acknowledged taoka in a proposed district plan.¹⁵⁴⁸

ECO–M4 – Regional plans

Otago Regional Council must prepare or amend and maintain its *regional plans* to:

- (1) if the requirements of ECO–P3 ~~and to~~¹⁵⁴⁹ ECO–P6 can be met, provide for the use of *lakes* and *rivers* and their *beds*, including:
 - (a) activities undertaken for the purposes of pest control or maintaining or enhancing the habitats of indigenous fauna, and
 - (b) the maintenance and use of existing *structures* that are lawfully established¹⁵⁵⁰ (including *infrastructure*), and
 - (c) *infrastructure* that has a *functional need*¹⁵⁵¹ or *operational need* to be sited or operated in a particular location,
- (1A) manage the clearance or modification of indigenous vegetation, while allowing for mahika kai¹⁵⁵² and kaimoana (seafood) activities¹⁵⁵³ (including through the development, in partnership with mana whenua, of provisions for mahika kai and kaimoana activities that may provide an alternative approach to effects management than the policies in this ECO chapter,¹⁵⁵⁴
- (2) require:
 - (a) resource consent applications to include information that demonstrates that the sequential steps in the effects management hierarchy (in relation to indigenous biodiversity)¹⁵⁵⁵ ~~in~~ ~~ECO–P6~~¹⁵⁵⁶ have been followed, and
 - (b) that consents are not granted if the sequential steps in the effects management hierarchy (in relation to indigenous biodiversity)¹⁵⁵⁷ in ECO–P6 have not been followed, and

¹⁵⁴⁸ 00139.129 DCC, 00237.049 Beef & Lamb NZ

¹⁵⁴⁹ Clause 16(2), Schedule 1, RMA

¹⁵⁵⁰ 00230.113 Forest and Bird

¹⁵⁵¹ 00315.046 Aurora Energy, 00138.116 QLDC

¹⁵⁵² 00226.0038 Kāi Tahu ki Otago

¹⁵⁵³ 00226.230 Kāi Tahu ki Otago / Aukaha

¹⁵⁵⁴ 00139.129 DCC, 00237.049 Beef & Lamb NZ

¹⁵⁵⁵ 00016.013 Alluvium and Stoney Creek, 0017.011 Danny Walker and Others, 00321.022 Te Waihanga, 00137.009 DOC

¹⁵⁵⁶ 00139.129 DCC, 00237.049 Beef & Lamb NZ

¹⁵⁵⁷ 00016.013 Alluvium and Stoney Creek, 0017.011 Danny Walker and Others, 00321.022 Te Waihanga, 00137.009 DOC

- (3) provide for activities undertaken for the purpose of restoring or enhancing the habitats of indigenous fauna.

ECO – M4A – Increasing indigenous vegetation cover¹⁵⁵⁸

Otago Regional Council must:

- (1) assess the percentage of indigenous vegetation cover in
 - (a) each of its urban environments; and
 - (b) its non-urban environments
- (2) the assessment may be done by a desktop analysis, by ground truthing, or both, and must be done in collaboration with relevant territorial authorities, and *mana whenua* (to the extent they wish to be involved),
- (3) set a target of at least 10% indigenous vegetation cover for any urban or non-urban environment that has less than 10% cover of indigenous vegetation, and
 - (a) consider, in consultation with mana whenua and territorial authorities, setting higher targets for urban and non-urban environments that already have at least 10% coverage of indigenous vegetation, and
 - (b) include any indigenous vegetation cover targets in their regional policy statements.

Local authorities must:

- (4) promote the increase of indigenous vegetation cover in their regions and districts through objectives, policies, and methods in their policy statements and plans:
 - (a) having regard to any targets set under ECO-M4A(3); and
 - (b) giving priority to all the following:
 - i. areas referred to in ECO-P8(4):
 - ii. ensuring *indigenous species* richness appropriate to the ecosystem:
 - iii. *restoration* at a landscape scale across the region; and
 - iv. using species, and seed from species, that are local to the area.¹⁵⁵⁹

ECO – M4B – Specified highly mobile fauna

Local authorities must:

- (1) include objectives, policies, or methods in their policy statements and plans for managing the adverse effects of new subdivision, use, and development on highly mobile fauna areas, in order to maintain viable populations of specified highly mobile fauna across their natural range.
- (2) provide information to their communities about:
 - (a) highly mobile fauna and their *habitats*; and
 - (b) best practice techniques for managing adverse effects on any specified highly mobile fauna and their *habitats* in their regions and districts.¹⁵⁶⁰

¹⁵⁵⁸ 00139.129 DCC, 00237.049 Beef & Lamb NZ

¹⁵⁵⁹ 00139.129 DCC, 00237.049 Beef & Lamb NZ

¹⁵⁶⁰ 00139.129 DCC, 00237.049 Beef & Lamb NZ

ECO – M4C – Maintenance of improved pasture for farming¹⁵⁶¹

Local authorities must:

- (1) allow the maintenance of improved pasture to continue if:
 - (a) there is adequate evidence to demonstrate that the maintenance of improved pasture is part of a regular cycle of periodic maintenance of that pasture; and
 - (b) any adverse effects of the maintenance of improved pasture on a significant natural area are no greater in intensity, scale, or character than the effects of activities previously undertaken as part of the regular cycle of periodic maintenance of that pasture; and
 - (c) the improved pasture has not itself become an significant natural area; and
 - (d) the land is not an uncultivated Depositional landform; and
 - (e) the maintenance of improved pasture will not adversely affect a Threatened or At Risk (declining) species.¹⁵⁶²

ECO – M4D – Native reserves and Māori land¹⁵⁶³

Local authorities must:

- (1) work in partnership (which includes acting in good faith) with mana whenua and owners of native reserves and Māori land to develop, and include in district plans and regional plans objectives, policies, and methods that may include providing an alternative approach to effects management for indigenous biodiversity than the policies in this ECO chapter (excluding CE-P5). These objectives, policies and methods will seek, to the extent practicable to,:
 - (a) maintain and restore indigenous biodiversity on native reserves and Māori land, and
 - (b) protect SIGNIFICANT NATURAL AREAs and identified taoka on native reserves and Māori land, and
- (2) ensure that objectives, policies, and methods developed under (6):
 - (a) enable new occupation, use, and development of nature reserves and Māori land to support the social, cultural, and economic wellbeing of mana whenua, and
 - (b) enable the provision of new papakāika, marae and ancillary community facilities, dwellings, and associated infrastructure, and
 - (c) enable alternative approaches to, or locations for, new occupation, use and development that avoid, minimise, or remedy adverse effects on significant natural areas and identified taoka on native reserves and Māori land, and enable options for offsetting and compensation, and
 - (d) recognise and be responsible to the fact there may be no or limited alternative location for mana whenua to occupy, use, and develop their lands, and

¹⁵⁶¹ 00139.129 DCC, 00237.049 Beef & Lamb NZ

¹⁵⁶² 00139.129 DCC, 00237.049 Beef & Lamb NZ

¹⁵⁶³ 00139.129 DCC, 00237.049 Beef & Lamb NZ

- (e) recognise that there are circumstances where development will prevail over *indigenous biodiversity*, and
- (f) recognise and be responsive to any recognised historical barriers *mana whenua* have faced in occupying, using, and developing their ancestral lands.¹⁵⁶⁴

ECO–M5 – District plans

Territorial authorities must prepare or amend and maintain their *district plans* to:

- (1) if the requirements of ECO–P3 ~~and to~~¹⁵⁶⁵ ECO–P6 are met, provide for the use of *land* and the surface of *water bodies* including:
 - (a) activities undertaken for the purposes of pest control or maintaining or enhancing the habitats of indigenous fauna, and
 - (b) the maintenance and use of existing *structures* (including *infrastructure*), and
 - (c) *infrastructure* that has a *functional* or *operational need* to be sited or operated in a particular location,
- (2) manage control¹⁵⁶⁶ the clearance or modification of indigenous vegetation, while allowing for *mahika kai*¹⁵⁶⁷ activities¹⁵⁶⁸ (including through the development, in partnership with *mana whenua*, of provisions for *mahika kai* activities that may provide an alternative approach to effects management than the policies in this ECO chapter),¹⁵⁶⁹
- (3) promote the establishment of *esplanade reserves* and *esplanade strips*, particularly where they would support ecological corridors, buffering or connectivity between *significant natural areas*, or access to *mahika kai*,¹⁵⁷⁰
- (4) require:
 - (a) resource consent applications to include information that demonstrates that the sequential steps in the effects management hierarchy (*in relation to indigenous biodiversity*)¹⁵⁷¹ ~~in ECO–P6~~¹⁵⁷² have been followed, and
 - (b) that consents are not granted if the sequential steps in the effects management hierarchy (*in relation to indigenous biodiversity*)¹⁵⁷³ ~~in ECO–P6~~¹⁵⁷⁴ have not been followed, and
- (5) provide for activities undertaken for the purpose of restoring or enhancing the habitats of indigenous fauna, and
- (6) ~~prohibit the planting of *wilding conifer* species listed in APP5 within areas identified as *significant natural areas*.~~¹⁵⁷⁵

¹⁵⁶⁴ 00139.129 DCC, 00237.049 Beef & Lamb NZ

¹⁵⁶⁵ Clause 16(2), Schedule 1, RMA

¹⁵⁶⁶ Clause 16(2), Schedule 1, RMA

¹⁵⁶⁷ 00226.0038 Kāi Tahu ki Otago

¹⁵⁶⁸ 00226.231 Kāi Tahu ki Otago

¹⁵⁶⁹ 00139.129 DCC, 00237.049 Beef & Lamb NZ

¹⁵⁷⁰ 00226.231 Kāi Tahu ki Otago, 00226.0038 Kāi Tahu ki Otago

¹⁵⁷¹ 00016.013 Alluvium and Stoney Creek, 0017.011 Danny Walker and Others, 00321.022 Te Waihanga, 00137.009 DOC

¹⁵⁷² 00139.129 DCC, 00237.049 Beef & Lamb NZ

¹⁵⁷³ 00016.013 Alluvium and Stoney Creek, 0017.011 Danny Walker and Others, 00321.022 Te Waihanga, 00137.009 DOC

¹⁵⁷⁴ 00139.129 DCC, 00237.049 Beef & Lamb NZ

¹⁵⁷⁵ Clause 10(2)(b)(i), Schedule 1, RMA – consequential amendment arising from 00411.006 Wayfare, 00137.084 DOC (insertion of new LF-LS-P16A)

- (7) require buffer zones adjacent to *significant natural areas* where it is necessary to protect the *significant natural area*.¹⁵⁷⁶

ECO–M6 – Engagement

Local authorities, when implementing the policies in this chapter, will:

- (1) work collaboratively with other *local authorities* to adopt an integrated approach to managing Otago’s *biodiversity* across administrative boundaries,
- (2) engage with individuals (including landowners and *land* occupiers), community groups, government agencies and other organisations with a role or an interest in *biodiversity* management, and
- (3) consult directly with landowners and *land* occupiers whose properties potentially contain or are part of *significant natural areas*.

ECO – M7A – Kāi Tahu kaitiakitaka¹⁵⁷⁷

Local authorities must partner with Kāi Tahu in the management of *indigenous biodiversity* to the extent desired by *mana whenua*, including by:

- (1) ensuring that engagement with *mana whenua* is early, meaningful, and in accordance with tikanga Māori,¹⁵⁷⁸
- (2) actively supporting the role of *mana whenua* as kaitiaki,
- (3) facilitating opportunities for *mana whenua* to be involved in resource management (including decision-making),
- (4) enabling the *mahika kai* practices of *mana whenua* in accordance with tikaka, including the customary use of identified taoka,¹⁵⁷⁹
- (5) supporting *mana whenua* initiatives that contribute to restoring or enhancing te hauora o te kaiora (the health of *indigenous biodiversity*),
- (6) where appropriate, incorporating Kāi Tahu mātauraka and tikaka in *indigenous biodiversity* management and monitoring, and
- (7) providing relevant information to *mana whenua* for the purposes of *indigenous biodiversity* management and monitoring.

ECO – M7B – Information requirements¹⁵⁸⁰

Local authorities must:

- (1) require that, in relation to an application for a resource consent for an activity that would have more than minor adverse effects on *indigenous biodiversity*, the application is not considered unless it includes a report that:

¹⁵⁷⁶ 00140.026 Waitaki DC

¹⁵⁷⁷ 00226.232 Kāi Tahu ki Otago

¹⁵⁷⁸ 00139.129 DCC, 00237.049 Beef & Lamb NZ

¹⁵⁷⁹ 00139.129 DCC, 00237.049 Beef & Lamb NZ

¹⁵⁸⁰ 00139.129 DCC, 00237.049 Beef & Lamb NZ

- (a) is prepared by a suitably qualified ecologist and, as required, any other person with suitable expertise, such as someone with expertise in mātauraka Māori; and
 - (b) complies with subclause (2); and
 - (c) is commensurate with the scale and significance (to *indigenous biodiversity*) of the proposal.
- (2) the report required within ECO-M2(4A) above must:
- (a) include a description of the existing ecological features and values of the site; and
 - (b) include a description of the adverse effects of the proposal on *indigenous biodiversity* and how those effects will be managed; and
 - (c) identify any effects on identified taoka; and
 - (d) identify the ecosystem services associated with *indigenous biodiversity* at the site; and
 - (e) include an assessment of the ecological integrity and connectivity within and beyond the site; and
 - (f) include mātauraka Māori and tikaka Māori assessment methodology, where relevant; and
 - (g) if *biodiversity offsetting* is proposed, set out:
 - (i) a detailed plan of what is proposed, including a quantified loss and gain calculation, the currency used in the calculation, and the data that informs the calculation and plan; and
 - (ii) a description of how the relevant principles in APP3 have been addressed; and
 - (iii) an assessment of the likely success of the plan in achieving a net gain in biodiversity values; and
 - (h) if *biodiversity compensation* is proposed, set out:
 - (i) a detailed plan of what is proposed; and
 - (ii) a description of how the relevant principles in APP4 have been addressed; and
 - (iii) an assessment of the likely success of the plan in achieving its outcomes.¹⁵⁸¹

ECO-M7 – Monitoring

Local authorities will:

- (1) establish long-term monitoring programmes for areas identified under ECO-P2 ~~ECO-P1~~¹⁵⁸² that measure the net loss and gain of indigenous *biodiversity*,
- (2) record information (including data) over time¹⁵⁸³ about the state of species, vegetation types and ecosystems, including *mahika kai*¹⁵⁸⁴ species and ecosystems,¹⁵⁸⁵

¹⁵⁸¹ 00139.129 DCC, 00237.049 Beef & Lamb NZ

¹⁵⁸² 00137.095 DOC, 00226.233 Kāi Tahu ki Otago

¹⁵⁸³ 00226.233 Kāi Tahu ki Otago

¹⁵⁸⁴ 00226.038 Kāi Tahu ki Otago

¹⁵⁸⁵ 00226.233 Kāi Tahu ki Otago

- (3) to the extent possible, use mātauraka Māori and tikaka Māori monitoring methods, as well as scientific monitoring methods, and
- (4) regularly report on matters in (1) and (2) and publish these reports.

ECO–M8 – Other incentives and mechanisms

Local authorities are encouraged to consider the use of other mechanisms or incentives to assist in achieving Policies ECO–P1 to ECO–P10, including:

- (1) providing information and guidance on the maintenance, restoration and enhancement of indigenous ecosystems ~~and~~¹⁵⁸⁶ habitats, taoka and mahika kai¹⁵⁸⁷ species and ecosystems,¹⁵⁸⁸
- (2) funding assistance for restoration projects (for example, through Otago Regional Council’s ECO Fund),
- (3) supporting the control of pest plants and animals, including through the provision of advice and education and implementing regulatory programmes such as the Regional Pest Management Plan,
- (4) financial incentives,
- (5) covenants to protect areas of indigenous biodiversity land¹⁵⁸⁹, including through the QEII National Trust,
- (6) advocating for a collaborative approach between central and local government to fund indigenous *biodiversity* maintenance and enhancement, and
- (7) gathering information on indigenous ecosystems, ~~and~~¹⁵⁹⁰ habitats, and taoka and mahika kai¹⁵⁹¹ species and ecosystems,¹⁵⁹² including outside *significant natural areas*.¹⁵⁹³

ECO – M9 – Regional Biodiversity Strategy

The Regional Council must initiate preparation of a regional biodiversity strategy that complies with Appendix 5 of the National Policy Statement for Indigenous Biodiversity 2023.¹⁵⁹⁴

Explanation

ECO–E1 – Explanation

The first policy in this chapter outlines how the kaitiaki role of Kāi Tahu will be recognised in Otago. The policies which follow then set out a management regime for identifying *significant natural areas* and indigenous species and ecosystems that are taoka and protecting them by avoiding particular adverse effects on them. The policies recognise that these restrictions may be unduly restrictive for some activities within *significant natural areas*, including existing activities already established. To maintain ecosystems and indigenous *biodiversity*, the policies set out mandatory and sequential steps in an effects

¹⁵⁸⁶ 00226.234 Kāi Tahu ki Otago

¹⁵⁸⁷ 00226.038 Kāi Tahu ki Otago

¹⁵⁸⁸ 00226.234 Kāi Tahu ki Otago

¹⁵⁸⁹ 00230.117 Forest and Bird

¹⁵⁹⁰ 00226.234 Kāi Tahu ki Otago

¹⁵⁹¹ 00226.038 Kāi Tahu ki Otago

¹⁵⁹² 00226.234 Kāi Tahu ki Otago

¹⁵⁹³ 00139.129 DCC, 00237.049 Beef & Lamb NZ

¹⁵⁹⁴ 00139.129 DCC, 00237.049 Beef & Lamb NZ

management hierarchy to be implemented through decision making, including providing for *biodiversity* offsetting and compensation if certain criteria are met.

Although the objectives of this chapter apply within the coastal environment, the specific management approach for *biodiversity* is contained in the CE – Coastal environment chapter. Given the *biodiversity* loss that has occurred in Otago historically, restoration or enhancement will play a part in achieving the objectives of this chapter and these activities are promoted.

~~Wilding conifers are a particular issue for *biodiversity* in Otago. Although *plantation forestry* is managed under the NESPF, the NESPF allows plan rules to be more stringent if they recognise and provide for the protection of *significant natural areas*. The policies adopt this direction by requiring *district* and *regional plans* to prevent *afforestation* within *significant natural areas* and establish buffer zones where they are necessary to protect *significant natural areas*.¹⁵⁹⁵~~

The policies recognise that managing ecosystems and indigenous *biodiversity* requires co-ordination across different areas and types of resources, as well as across organisations, communities and individual landowners. This articulates the stewardship role of all people and communities in Otago in respect of indigenous *biodiversity*.

Principal reasons

ECO-PR1 – Principal reasons

The health of New Zealand's *indigenous biodiversity* has declined significantly since the arrival of humans and remains under significant pressure. ~~*Mahika kai*~~ *Mahika kai* and taoka species, including their abundance, have been damaged or lost through resource use, *land* use change and development in Otago. The provisions in this chapter seek to address this loss and pressure through providing direction on how ~~indigenous~~ *indigenous biodiversity* is to be managed.

The provisions in this chapter assist in maintaining, protecting and restoring ~~indigenous~~ *indigenous biodiversity* by:

- stating the outcomes sought for ecosystems and ~~indigenous~~ *indigenous biodiversity* in Otago,
- requiring identification and protection of *significant natural areas* and indigenous species and ecosystems that are taoka, and
- directing how ~~indigenous~~ *indigenous biodiversity* is to be maintained.

This chapter will assist with achieving the outcomes sought by *Te Mana o te Taiao – Aotearoa New Zealand Biodiversity Strategy 2020*. Implementation of the provisions in this chapter will occur primarily through *regional plan*¹⁵⁹⁶ and *district plan* provisions, however *local authorities* may also choose to adopt additional non-regulatory methods to support the achievement of the objectives.

Anticipated environmental results

ECO-AER1 There is no further decline in the condition ~~quality~~,¹⁵⁹⁷ quantity or diversity

¹⁵⁹⁵ Clause 10(2)(b)(i), Schedule 1, RMA – consequential amendment arising from 00411.006 Wayfare, 00137.084 DOC (insertion of new LF-LS-P16A)

¹⁵⁹⁶ Clause 16(2), Schedule 1, RMA

¹⁵⁹⁷ *Consequential amendment to 00306.042 Meridian*

of Otago's indigenous *biodiversity*.

ECO-AER2 The condition ~~quality~~,¹⁵⁹⁸ quantity and diversity of indigenous *biodiversity* within Otago improves over the life of this Regional Policy Statement.

ECO-AER3 Kāi Tahu are involved in the management of indigenous *biodiversity* and able to effectively exercise their *kaitiakitaka*.

~~**ECO-AER4** Within *significant natural areas*, the area of *land* vegetated by *wilding conifers* is reduced.~~

¹⁵⁹⁸ Consequential amendment to 00306.042 Meridian

EIT – Energy, infrastructure and transport

Note to reader: This Chapter of the PORPS has been re-ordered compared to the Notified version under clause 16(2), Schedule 1, RMA.

EIT-INF – Infrastructure¹⁵⁹⁹

Objectives

EIT-INF-04 – Provision of *infrastructure*

Effective, efficient, safe¹⁶⁰⁰ and resilient *infrastructure*, *nationally significant infrastructure* and *regionally significant infrastructure*¹⁶⁰¹ enables the people and communities of Otago¹⁶⁰² to provide for their social and cultural well-being, their health and safety, and supports sustainable economic development and growth in ~~within~~ the region,¹⁶⁰³ ~~within environmental limits.~~¹⁶⁰⁴

EIT-INF-05 – Integration

Development of ~~*nationally significant infrastructure*~~ and ~~*regionally significant*~~¹⁶⁰⁵ *infrastructure*, as well as *land* use change, occurs in a co-ordinated manner to minimise adverse *effects* on the *environment* and increase efficiency in the delivery, operation and use of the *infrastructure*.

~~EIT-INF-06 – Long term planning for the electricity transmission infrastructure~~

~~Long term investment in, and planning for, electricity transmission *infrastructure*, and its integration with *land* use, is sustained.~~¹⁶⁰⁶

Policies

EIT-INF-P10 – Recognising resource requirements

Decision making on the allocation or use of *natural and physical resources* must take into account the *functional needs* and *operational*¹⁶⁰⁷ *needs* of *nationally significant infrastructure*¹⁶⁰⁸ and *regionally significant infrastructure*.

~~EIT-INF-P11 – Operation and maintenance~~

~~Except as provided for by ECO-P4, allow for the operation and maintenance of existing *nationally* and *regionally significant infrastructure* while:~~

¹⁵⁹⁹ Clause 16(2), Schedule 1, RMA

¹⁶⁰⁰ 00307.015 Christchurch International Airport Limited (CIAL)

¹⁶⁰¹ Clause 10(2)(b)(i), Schedule 1, RMA – consequential amendment arising from 00313.020 Queenstown Airport

¹⁶⁰² 00314.033 Transpower

¹⁶⁰³ 00239.124 Federated Farmers

¹⁶⁰⁴ 00231.009 Fish and Game, 00315.043 Aurora Energy

¹⁶⁰⁵ 00239.125 Federated Farmers, 00235.114 OWRUG

¹⁶⁰⁶ Moved to EIT-EN – clause 16(2), Schedule 1, RMA

¹⁶⁰⁷ 00315.046 Aurora Energy Energy, 00138.116 QLDC

¹⁶⁰⁸ 00314.001 Transpower

- (1) ~~avoiding, as the first priority, significant adverse effects on the environment, and~~
 (2) ~~if avoidance is not practicable, and for other adverse effects, minimising adverse effects.~~

EIT-INF-P12 – Upgrades and development

Provide for upgrades to existing, and development of new¹⁶⁰⁹, nationally significant infrastructure¹⁶¹⁰ or regionally significant infrastructure while ensuring that:

- (1) ~~infrastructure it~~¹⁶¹¹ is designed and located, as far as practicable, to maintain functionality during and after *natural hazard events*,
- (2) it is, as far as practicable, co-ordinated with long-term *land use* planning, and
- (3) ~~increases efficiency in the its~~¹⁶¹² delivery, operation or use ~~of the infrastructure is efficient.~~¹⁶¹³

EIT-INF-P13 – Locating and managing effects of infrastructure, nationally significant infrastructure and regionally significant infrastructure¹⁶¹⁴ outside the coastal environment¹⁶¹⁵

When providing for new *infrastructure, nationally significant infrastructure and regionally significant infrastructure*¹⁶¹⁶ outside the coastal environment:

- (1) avoid, as the first priority, locating *infrastructure* in all of the following:
 - (a) *significant natural areas*,
 - (b) outstanding natural features and landscapes,
 - (c) ~~natural~~¹⁶¹⁷ *wetlands*,
 - (d) *outstanding water bodies*,
 - (e) ~~areas of high or outstanding natural character,~~¹⁶¹⁸
 - (f) areas or places of significant or outstanding *historic heritage*, and
 - (g) wāhi tupuna, wāhi tapu, wāhi taoka, and areas with protected customary rights,¹⁶¹⁹ and
 - (h) ~~areas of high recreational and high amenity value, and~~¹⁶²⁰
- (2) if it is not reasonably practicable possible¹⁶²¹ to avoid locating in the areas listed in (1) above because of the functional needs¹⁶²² or operational needs of the *infrastructure, nationally significant*

¹⁶⁰⁹ 00139.164 DCC

¹⁶¹⁰ 00314.001 Transpower

¹⁶¹¹ 00315.048 Aurora Energy

¹⁶¹² 00315.048 Aurora Energy

¹⁶¹³ 00315.048 Aurora Energy

¹⁶¹⁴ Clause 10(2)(b)(i), Schedule 1, RMA – consequential amendment arising from 00313.020 Queenstown Airport

¹⁶¹⁵ Clause 10(2)(b)(i), Schedule 1, RMA – consequential amendment arising from 00137.107 DOC, 00301.042 Port Otago, 00226.241 Kāi Tahu ki Otago, 00223.108 Ngāi Tahu ki Murihiku, 00301.040 Port Otago

¹⁶¹⁶ Clause 10(2)(b)(i), Schedule 1, RMA – consequential amendment arising from 00313.020 Queenstown Airport

¹⁶¹⁷ Clause 10(2)(b)(i), Schedule 1, RMA – consequential amendment arising from deletion of ‘natural wetlands’ definition

¹⁶¹⁸ 00311.047 Trustpower

¹⁶¹⁹ 00226.241 Kāi Tahu ki Otago

¹⁶²⁰ 00313.020 Queenstown Airport Corporation

¹⁶²¹ 00321.057 New Zealand Infrastructure Commission

¹⁶²² Clause 16(2), Schedule 1, RMA

infrastructure and regionally significant infrastructure¹⁶²³ manage adverse effects as follows:

- (a) for nationally or regionally significant infrastructure:
- (i) in significant natural areas, in accordance with ECO-P4, and ECO-P6,
 - (ii) in ~~natural~~¹⁶²⁴ wetlands, in accordance with the relevant provisions in the NESF,
 - (iii) in outstanding water bodies, in accordance with LF-FW-¹⁶²⁵P12,
 - (iiia) in relation to wāhi tūpuna, in accordance with HCV-WT-P2,¹⁶²⁶
 - (iv) in other areas listed in EIT-INF-P13 (1) above, minimise the adverse effects of the infrastructure on the values that contribute to the area's importance, and shall be:
 - (I) remedied or mitigated to the extent practicable,
 - (II) where they cannot be practicably remedied or mitigated, regard shall be had to offsetting and/or compensation of more than minor residual adverse effects.¹⁶²⁷
- (b) for all infrastructure that is not nationally significant infrastructure¹⁶²⁸ or regionally significant infrastructure,¹⁶²⁹ avoid adverse effects on the values that contribute to the area's outstanding nature or significance except in relation to historic heritage which is not significant or outstanding, then HCV-HH-P5(3) will apply.¹⁶³⁰

EIT-INF-P13A – Managing the effects of infrastructure, nationally significant infrastructure and regionally significant infrastructure within the coastal environment

When managing the effects of infrastructure, nationally significant infrastructure and regionally significant infrastructure within the coastal environment the provisions of the CE – Coastal environment chapter apply.¹⁶³¹

EIT-INF-P14 – Decision making considerations

When considering proposals to develop or upgrade infrastructure:

- (1) require consideration of alternative sites, methods and designs if adverse effects are potentially significant or irreversible, and
- (2) utilise the opportunity of substantial upgrades of infrastructure to reduce adverse effects that result from the existing infrastructure, including on sensitive activities, where appropriate.¹⁶³²

¹⁶²³ Clause 10(2)(b)(i), Schedule 1, RMA – consequential amendment arising from 00313.020 Queenstown Airport

¹⁶²⁴ Clause 10(2)(b)(i), Schedule 1, RMA – consequential amendment arising from deletion of 'natural wetlands' definition

¹⁶²⁵ Clause 16(2), Schedule 1, RMA

¹⁶²⁶ 00226.241 Kāi Tahu ki Otago

¹⁶²⁷ 00311.037 Manawa Energy

¹⁶²⁸ Clause 16(2), Schedule 1, RMA

¹⁶²⁹ Clause 16(2), Schedule 1, RMA

¹⁶³⁰ 00239.159 Federated Farmers of New Zealand, 00310.013 Chorus, New Zealand Limited, Spark New Zealand Trading Limited and Vodafone New Zealand, 00313.028 Queenstown Airport Corporation

¹⁶³¹ 00137.107 DOC, 00301.042 Port of Otago Ltd, 00226.241 Kāi Tahu ki Otago, 00223.108 Ngāi Tahu ki Murihiku, 00301.040 Port of Otago

¹⁶³² 00321.0581 Te Waihangā

EIT-INF-P15 – Protecting nationally significant infrastructure¹⁶³³ ~~and or~~¹⁶³⁴ regionally significant infrastructure

Protect the efficient and effective operation of nationally significant infrastructure and regionally significant infrastructure by:

- (1) avoiding activities, to the extent reasonably practicable,¹⁶³⁵ that may give rise to an adverse effect on the functional needs or operational needs of nationally significant infrastructure or regionally significant infrastructure,
- (2) avoiding activities, to the extent reasonably practicable,¹⁶³⁶ that may result in reverse sensitivity effects on nationally significant infrastructure or regionally significant infrastructure, and
- (3) avoid or minimise the effects of activities and development so that the opportunity to adapt, upgrade or extend existing nationally significant infrastructure or regionally significant infrastructure to meet future demand is not compromised.¹⁶³⁷

Seek to avoid the establishment of activities that may result in reverse sensitivity effects on nationally or regionally significant infrastructure, and/or where they may compromise the functional or operational needs of nationally or regionally significant infrastructure.¹⁶³⁸

EIT-INF-P16 – Providing for electricity transmission and the National Grid

Maintain a secure and sustainable electricity supply in Otago by:

- (1) ~~providing for development of, and upgrades to, the electricity transmission network and requiring, as far as practicable, its integration with land use,~~
- (2) ~~considering the requirements of and constraints associated with the functional and operational needs of the electricity transmission network,~~
- (3) ~~providing for the efficient and effective development, operation, maintenance, and upgrading of the National Grid,~~
- (4) ~~enabling the reasonable operation, maintenance and minor upgrade requirements of established electricity transmission assets, and~~
- (5) ~~minimising the adverse effects of the electricity transmission network on urban amenity, and avoiding adverse effects on town centres, areas of high amenity or recreational value and existing sensitive activities.~~¹⁶³⁹

EIT-INF-P17 – Urban growth and infrastructure

Provide for development infrastructure and additional infrastructure required to service existing, planned and expected urban growth demands in the short, medium and long term, taking in account UFD-P1 to UFD-P10.

Methods

¹⁶³³ Clause 16(2), Schedule 1, RMA

¹⁶³⁴ Clause 16(2), Schedule 1, RMA

¹⁶³⁵ 00236.079 Horticulture NZ

¹⁶³⁶ 00236.079 Horticulture NZ

¹⁶³⁷ 00313.022 Queenstown Airport

¹⁶³⁸ 00313.022 Queenstown Airport

¹⁶³⁹ Moved to EIT-EN – Clause 16(2), Schedule 1, RMA

EIT-INF-M4 – Regional plans

Otago Regional Council must prepare or amend and maintain its *regional plans* to:

- (1) manage the adverse *effects* of *infrastructure* activities, including, where appropriate, identifying activities that qualify as minor upgrades,¹⁶⁴⁰ that:
 - (a) are in the *beds* of *lakes* and *rivers*, or
 - (b) are in the *coastal marine area*, or
 - (c) involve the taking, use, damming or diversion of *water* or,
 - (d) involve the *discharge* of *water* or *contaminants*, and
- ~~(2) require the prioritisation of sites for *infrastructure* where adverse *effects* on highly valued *natural and physical resources* and *mana whenua* values can be avoided or, at the very least, minimised.~~¹⁶⁴¹

EIT-INF-M5 – District plans

Territorial authorities must prepare or amend and maintain their *district plans* to:

- (1) require a strategic approach to the integration of *land* use and *infrastructure*,¹⁶⁴² *nationally significant infrastructure*¹⁶⁴³ or *regionally significant infrastructure*,
- ~~(2) enable planning for the electricity transmission network and *National Grid* to achieve efficient distribution of electricity,~~¹⁶⁴⁴
- ~~(3) map the electricity transmission network, and in relation to the *National Grid*, identify a buffer corridor within which *sensitive activities* shall generally not be allowed, and~~¹⁶⁴⁵
- (4) manage the *subdivision*, use and development of *land* to ensure *infrastructure*¹⁶⁴⁶, *nationally significant infrastructure*¹⁶⁴⁷ or *regionally significant infrastructure* can develop to meet increased demand,
- (5) manage the adverse *effects* of developing, operating, maintaining, or upgrading *infrastructure*,¹⁶⁴⁸ *nationally significant infrastructure*¹⁶⁴⁹ or *regionally significant infrastructure*, including, where appropriate, identifying activities that qualify as minor upgrades,¹⁶⁵⁰ that are on:
 - (a) the surface of *rivers* and *lakes* and on *land* outside the *coastal marine area*, and
 - (b) the *beds* of *lakes* and *rivers*,
- (6) ensure that development is ~~avoided where:~~
 - (c) ~~it cannot be~~ adequately served with *infrastructure*,
 - ~~(d) it utilises *infrastructure* capacity for other planned development, or~~

¹⁶⁴⁰ 00139.164 DCC, 00305.043 Waka Kotahi

¹⁶⁴¹ 00206.050 Trojan Holdings Limited

¹⁶⁴² Consequential amendment from 00239.125 Federated Farmers, 00235.114 OWRUG

¹⁶⁴³ Clause 16(2), Schedule 1, RMA

¹⁶⁴⁴ Moved to EIT-EN-M2(6) – Clause 16(2), Schedule 1, RMA

¹⁶⁴⁵ Moved to EIT-EN-M2(7) – Clause 16(2), Schedule 1, RMA

¹⁶⁴⁶ Consequential amendment from 00239.125 Federated Farmers, 00235.114 OWRUG

¹⁶⁴⁷ Clause 16(2), Schedule 1, RMA

¹⁶⁴⁸ Consequential amendment from 00239.125 Federated Farmers, 00235.114 OWRUG

¹⁶⁴⁹ Clause 16(2), Schedule 1, RMA

¹⁶⁵⁰ 00139.164 DCC, 00305.043 Waka Kotahi

- ~~(e) — the required upgrading of *infrastructure* is not funded, and~~
- ~~(7) — require the prioritisation of sites where adverse *effects* on highly valued *natural and physical resources* and *mana whenua* values can be avoided or, at the very least, minimised.~~¹⁶⁵¹

EIT-INF-M6 – Advocacy

Local authorities ~~should~~ must:¹⁶⁵²

- ~~(1) — advocate for the upgrading or replacement of existing *nationally or regionally significant infrastructure* if the operation of *infrastructure* results in significant adverse *effects*, and~~¹⁶⁵³
- ~~(2) — work proactively with *infrastructure* providers to co-ordinate the upgrading or development of *nationally significant infrastructure*¹⁶⁵⁴ or *regionally significant infrastructure* to support co-location or concurrent construction to reduce adverse *effects*.~~

Explanation

EIT-INF-E2 – Explanation

The policies in this section recognise the critical importance of *infrastructure* to communities and provide for the continued operation of existing *infrastructure* and the development of upgraded or new *infrastructure* where adverse *effects* are managed. As many assets rely on particular resource requirements or specific locations, decisions on allocating *natural and physical resources* shall make provision for the *functional needs*¹⁶⁵⁵ or *operational needs* of *nationally significant infrastructure*¹⁶⁵⁶ and *regionally significant infrastructure*. For *infrastructure* in the coastal environment, the provisions of the CE – Coastal environment chapter are also applicable to ensure the NZCPS is given effect.

Given the potential magnitude of adverse *effects* associated with this *infrastructure*, consideration is required of the ability to remedy or mitigate unavoidable adverse *effects*, alternative options and offsetting or compensation.

To ensure *infrastructure* is planned for, and used efficiently, the provisions require that the benefits of existing *nationally significant infrastructure*¹⁶⁵⁷ and *regionally significant infrastructure* are maximised, and *infrastructure* provision is undertaken in a co-ordinated manner. The policies also seek to manage the potential adverse *effects* of other activities on *nationally significant infrastructure*¹⁶⁵⁸ and *regionally significant infrastructure* to ensure the ability to operate these assets is not compromised.

Principal reasons

EIT-INF-PR2 – Principal reasons

Infrastructure is fundamental to the health and safety of communities, and their social and economic well-being and functioning. The nature of *infrastructure* means there are typically operational and functional

¹⁶⁵¹ 00411.064 Wayfare Group Ltd

¹⁶⁵² 00139.172 DCC

¹⁶⁵³ 00311.051 Trustpower, 00305.054 Waka Kotahi

¹⁶⁵⁴ Clause 16(2), Schedule 1, RMA

¹⁶⁵⁵ Clause 16(2), Schedule 1, RMA

¹⁶⁵⁶ 00314.001 Transpower

¹⁶⁵⁷ 00314.001 Transpower

¹⁶⁵⁸ Clause 16(2), Schedule 1, RMA

constraints which dictate where and how these activities operate to properly serve local communities. These types of assets also tend to require significant investment, although some have at times been subject to under-investment.

The scale and type of activities involved in the development, operation, maintenance, and upgrading of *infrastructure* are such that adverse *effects* on the *environment* are likely and, at times, significant. Efforts are required to reduce impacts from *infrastructure*, by avoiding its location in areas that are important to Otago, where this is practicable¹⁶⁵⁹, particularly where alternatives are available. If it is necessary to locate in those areas, then it is necessary that the values that make those areas important are protected. There are instances however, when residual *effects* cannot be avoided, in which case *effects* should be remedied or mitigated and offsetting or compensation may be necessary if it meets any criteria set. Given the potential for adverse *effects*, it is important that *local authorities* monitor and enforce the standards set in plans and on *resource consents* and designations.

The policies in this chapter give effect to the NPSREG, NPSET, NPSFM and NPSUD and recognise *infrastructure* that has benefits for the wider Otago region and nationally. Implementation of the provisions will occur through the *regional* and *district plan* provisions.

Anticipated environmental results

EIT-INF-AER5	<i>Infrastructure</i> provides safe, effective and efficient services to the Otago community <u>and beyond</u> . ¹⁶⁶⁰
EIT-INF-AER6	The provision of <i>infrastructure</i> is co-ordinated and integrated to service growth efficiently.
EIT-INF-AER7	<i>Nationally</i> and <i>regionally significant infrastructure</i> is protected from <u>adverse effects, including</u> ¹⁶⁶¹ reverse sensitivity <i>effects</i> caused by incompatible activities.
EIT-INF-AER8	The adverse <i>effects</i> associated with <i>nationally and regionally significant infrastructure</i> <i>infrastructure</i> are avoided ¹⁶⁶² <u>to the extent practicable</u> ¹⁶⁶³ or are minimised.

¹⁶⁵⁹ 00305.059 Waka Kotahi NZ Transport Agency

¹⁶⁶⁰ 00314.041 Transpower New Zealand Limited

¹⁶⁶¹ 00314.042 Transpower New Zealand Limited

¹⁶⁶² 00223.113 Te Ao Marama

¹⁶⁶³ Clause 10(2)(b)(i), Schedule 1, RMA – consequential amendment arising from 00235.128 OWRUG

EIT-EN – Energy

Note to readers: As a result of recommendations made by the reporting officer through supplementary evidence, some provisions in this chapter have been re-ordered and others have been moved from other chapters. The notified numbering has been retained as an interim measure while the hearing on these provisions occurs so that it is easier for submission points to be read alongside the chapter. The numbering of this chapter will be made chronological following a final decision by Council.

Objectives

EIT-EN-O1 – Energy and social and economic well-being

The health and wellbeing of¹⁶⁶⁴ Otago’s communities and economy are supported by ~~renewable energy generation~~ renewable energy generation¹⁶⁶⁵ within the region that is safe, secure, and *resilient*.

EIT-EN-O3 – Energy use

Development is located and designed to facilitate the efficient use of energy and to reduce demand if possible, minimising the contribution that Otago makes to total *greenhouse gas* emissions.

EIT-EN-O2A – Greenhouse gas emissions and renewable energy targets

Otago’s renewable energy generation supports the overall reduction in New Zealand greenhouse gas emissions and achieving the national target for emissions reduction.¹⁶⁶⁶

EIT-EN-O2 – Renewable electricity generation

The generation capacity of *renewable electricity generation activities* in Otago:

- (1) is protected and¹⁶⁶⁷ maintained and, where appropriate, increased ~~if practicable maximised, within environmental limits~~¹⁶⁶⁸, and
- (2) contributes to meeting New Zealand’s national target for *renewable electricity generation*.

EIT-INF-O6 – Long-term planning for the National Grid electricity transmission¹⁶⁶⁹ and distribution¹⁶⁷⁰ infrastructure

Long-term investment in, and planning for, electricity transmission *infrastructure*, and its integration with *land* use, is sustained.

Policies

¹⁶⁶⁴ 00311.030 Manawa Energy, 00509.094 Wise Response Society Inc

¹⁶⁶⁵ Clause 16(2), Schedule 1, RMA.

¹⁶⁶⁶ 00318.024 Contact, 00311.031 Trustpower, 00311.039 Trustpower, 00321.040 NZIC

¹⁶⁶⁷ 00318.024 Contact

¹⁶⁶⁸ 00318.024 Contact Energy

¹⁶⁶⁹ 00236.080 Horticulture NZ

¹⁶⁷⁰ 00315.045 Aurora Energy

EIT-EN-P1 – Operation, ~~and~~ maintenance, and upgrade

The operation, ~~and~~ maintenance, and upgrade of existing *renewable electricity generation activities* is provided for including the maintenance of generation output and protection of operational capacity, while minimising its adverse effects.¹⁶⁷¹

EIT-EN-P2 – Recognising renewable electricity generation activities in decision making

Decisions on the allocation and use of *natural and physical resources*, including the use of *fresh water* and development of *land*:

- (1) recognise the national significance of renewable electricity generation activities, including the¹⁶⁷² national, regional and local benefits of ~~existing~~¹⁶⁷³ *renewable electricity generation activities*,
- (2) ~~take into account~~ have particular regard to¹⁶⁷⁴ the ~~need to at least~~¹⁶⁷⁵ maintain maintenance of¹⁶⁷⁶ current *renewable electricity generation capacity*,¹⁶⁷⁷ and
- (3) recognise that the attainment of increases in *renewable electricity generation capacity* will require significant development of *renewable electricity generation activities*.

EIT-EN-P3 – ~~Development and upgrade of~~ The security of renewable electricity generation supply activities¹⁶⁷⁸

The security and installed capacity¹⁶⁷⁹ of renewable electricity supply is maintained or improved in Otago through appropriate provision for the development or upgrading of *renewable electricity generation activities* and diversification of the type or location of renewable¹⁶⁸⁰ *electricity generation activities*.

EIT-EN-P4 – Identifying new sites or resources

Provide for activities associated with the investigation, identification and assessment of potential sites and energy sources for *renewable electricity generation*, ~~and, when selecting a site for new renewable electricity generation, prioritise those where adverse effects on highly valued natural and physical resources and mana whenua values can be avoided or, at the very least, minimised.~~¹⁶⁸¹

EIT-EN-P5 – Non-renewable energy generation

In relation to non-renewable energy generation:

- (1) except as provided for in (2) below, Avoid restrict the development of non-renewable energy generation activities in Otago, where practicable, and facilitate the replacement of non-renewable energy sources, including the use of fossil fuels, in energy generation, ~~and~~ and
- (2) in relation to new heat devices for industrial process heat:

¹⁶⁷¹ 00318.025 Contact Energy

¹⁶⁷² 00306.054 Meridian

¹⁶⁷³ 00137.100 DCC

¹⁶⁷⁴ 00306.054 Meridian

¹⁶⁷⁵ 00318.026 Contact

¹⁶⁷⁶ 00318.026 Contact

¹⁶⁷⁷ 00306.054 Meridian, 00311.034 Trustpower, 00321.043 NZIC

¹⁶⁷⁸ Clause 16(2), Schedule 1, RMA

¹⁶⁷⁹ 00318.027 Contact Energy

¹⁶⁸⁰ Clause 16(2), Schedule 1, RMA

¹⁶⁸¹ 00318.028 Contact Energy

- (a) avoid discharges from *new heat devices* that burn coal and deliver heat at or above 300 degrees Celsius, unless there is no technically feasible and financially viable lower emissions alternative,
 - (b) avoid discharges from *new heat devices* that burn coal and deliver heat below 300 degrees Celsius, and
 - (c) avoid discharges from *new heat devices* that burn any *fossil fuel* other than coal, unless there are no technically feasible and financially viable lower emissions alternative, and
- (3) in relation to *existing heat devices* for *industrial process heat*:
- (a) restrict *discharges* from *existing heat devices* that burn coal and deliver heat at or above 300 degrees Celsius,
 - (b) restrict and phase out *discharges* from *existing heat devices* that burn coal and deliver heat below 300 degrees Celsius, and
 - (c) restrict *discharges* from *existing heat devices* that burn any *fossil fuel* other than coal.¹⁶⁸²

EIT-EN-P6 – Managing effects

Manage the adverse *effects* of *renewable electricity generation activities* by:

- (1) applying EIT-INF-P13,
- (2) having particular¹⁶⁸³ regard to:
 - (a) the *functional need* to locate *renewable electricity generation activities* where resources are available,
 - (b) the *operational need* to locate where it is possible to connect to the *National Grid* or *electricity sub-transmission infrastructure*, and
- (3) having regard to (e) the extent and magnitude of adverse *effects* on the *environment* and the degree to which unavoidable adverse *effects* can be remedied or mitigated, or significant¹⁶⁸⁴ residual adverse *effects* are offset or compensated for; and
- (4) requiring consideration of alternative sites, methods and designs, and offsetting or compensation measures (in accordance with any specific requirements for their use in this RPS), where adverse *effects* are potentially significant or irreversible.

EIT-EN-P7 – Reverse sensitivity

Activities that may result in reverse sensitivity *effects* on consented or existing *renewable electricity generation activities*¹⁶⁸⁵ or compromise the operation or maintenance of *renewable electricity generation activities* are, as the first priority, prevented from establishing and only if that is not reasonably practicable, managed so that reverse sensitivity *effects* are minimised.

EIT-EN-P8 – Small and community scale distributed electricity generation

Provide for *small and community scale distributed electricity generation* activities that increase the local

¹⁶⁸² 00139.150 DCC, 00138.107 QLDC

¹⁶⁸³ 00306.057 Meridian

¹⁶⁸⁴ 00306.057 Meridian Energy

¹⁶⁸⁵ 00239.119 Federated Farmers, 00306.058 Meridian

community's *resilience* and security of energy supply.

EIT-EN-P9 – Energy conservation and efficiency

Development supports energy conservation and efficiency by designing subdivisions to maximise solar access, and locating subdivision development to minimise, as far as practicable, transportation costs, car dependency and *greenhouse gas* emissions is designed, including through roading, lot size, dimensions, layout, and orientation so that energy use is efficient, energy waste is minimised, and solar gain is optimised.¹⁶⁸⁶

EIT-INF-P16 – Providing for electricity transmission and¹⁶⁸⁷ the *National Grid*¹⁶⁸⁸

Maintain a secure and sustainable electricity supply in Otago by:

- (1) providing for the effective operation, maintenance, upgrading and development of the *National Grid* development of, and upgrades to, the electricity transmission network¹⁶⁸⁹ and requiring, as far as reasonably¹⁶⁹⁰ practicable, its integration with *land* use,
- (2) considering the requirements of and constraints associated with the *functional* and *operational needs* of the *National Grid*¹⁶⁹¹ electricity transmission network in its management,
- ~~(3) providing for the efficient and effective development, operation, maintenance, and upgrading of the *National Grid*,~~
- (4) enabling the reasonable operation, maintenance and minor upgrade requirements of established *National Grid*¹⁶⁹² electricity transmission assets, and
- (5) minimising the adverse *effects* of the *National Grid*¹⁶⁹³ electricity transmission network on urban amenity, and avoiding adverse *effects* on town centres, areas of high amenity or recreational value and existing *sensitive activities*.
- (6) in rural areas, seek to avoid adverse effects in areas of high natural character and areas of high recreation value and amenity, and, where this is not practicable, apply EIT-INF-P13(2)(a)(iv), and
- (7) in addition to clause (6), apply EIT-INF-P13 where relevant.

EIT-EN-P9A – Providing for electricity distribution

Recognise and provide for electricity distribution infrastructure, by all of the following:

- (1) recognising the functional needs of electricity distribution activities;
- (2) restricting the establishment of activities that may result in reverse sensitivity effects;
- (3) avoiding, remedying or mitigating adverse effects from other activities on the functional needs of that infrastructure;

¹⁶⁸⁶ 00139.154 DCC

¹⁶⁸⁷ 00236.080 Horticulture NZ

¹⁶⁸⁸ Moved from EIT-INF – Clause 16(2), Schedule 1, RMA

¹⁶⁸⁹ 00236.080 Horticulture NZ

¹⁶⁹⁰ 00236.080 Horticulture NZ

¹⁶⁹¹ 00236.080 Horticulture NZ

¹⁶⁹² 00236.080 Horticulture NZ

¹⁶⁹³ 00236.080 Horticulture NZ

- (4) minimising adverse effects of new and upgraded electricity distribution infrastructure on existing land uses;
- (5) identifying significant electricity distribution infrastructure and managing effects of potentially incompatible activities through methods such as corridors.¹⁶⁹⁴

Methods

EIT-EN-M1 – Regional plans

Otago Regional Council must prepare or amend and maintain its *regional plans* to:

- (1) provide for activities associated with the investigation, identification and assessment of potential sites and energy sources for *renewable electricity generation*,
- ~~(2) require the prioritisation of sites for new *renewable electricity generation activities* where adverse effects on highly valued *natural and physical resources* and *mana whenua* values can be avoided or, at the very least, minimised,~~¹⁶⁹⁵
- (3) manage the adverse *effects* of developing or upgrading *renewable electricity generation activities*, including identifying activities that qualify as minor upgrades,¹⁶⁹⁶ that:
 - (a) are within the *beds of lakes* and *rivers* and the *coastal marine area*, or
 - (b) involve the taking, use, damming or diversion of *water* and *discharge of water* or *contaminants*,
- (4) provide for the operation and maintenance of existing *renewable electricity generation activities*, including their *natural and physical resource* requirements, along with opportunities to increase the installed capacity of renewable electricity generation assets¹⁶⁹⁷ ~~within the environmental limits,~~¹⁶⁹⁸ and
- (5) restrict the establishment of activities that may adversely affect the efficient functioning of *renewable electricity generation activities infrastructure*¹⁶⁹⁹ (including impacts on generation capacity).

EIT-EN-M2 – District plans

Territorial authorities must prepare or amend and maintain their *district plans* to:

- (1) provide for activities associated with the investigation, identification and assessment of potential sites and energy sources for *renewable electricity generation*,
- ~~(2) require the prioritisation of sites for new *renewable electricity generation activities* where adverse effects on highly valued *natural and physical resources* and *mana whenua* values can be avoided or, at the very least, minimised,~~¹⁷⁰⁰
- (3) manage the adverse *effects* of developing or upgrading *renewable electricity generation activities*

¹⁶⁹⁴ 00315.058 Aurora Energy, 00320.026 Network Waitaki and 00511.026 PowerNet

¹⁶⁹⁵ 00306.061 Meridian Energy

¹⁶⁹⁶ 00305.043 Waka Kotahi

¹⁶⁹⁷ 00311.040 Manawa Energy

¹⁶⁹⁸ 00226.237 Kāi Tahu ki Otago

¹⁶⁹⁹ 00306.061 Meridian

¹⁷⁰⁰ 00306.062 Meridian Energy

and electricity transmission *National Grid*¹⁷⁰¹ infrastructure, including identifying activities that qualify as minor upgrades,¹⁷⁰² that:

- (a) are on the surface of *rivers* and *lakes* and on *land* outside the *coastal marine area*, or
 - (b) the *beds* of *lakes* and *rivers*,
- (4) provide for the continued operation and maintenance of *renewable electricity generation activities* on the surface of *rivers* and *lakes* and on *land* outside the *coastal marine area* and the *beds* of *lakes* and *rivers*,
- (5) restrict the establishment or occurrence of activities that may adversely affect the efficient functioning of *renewable electricity generation infrastructure*,
- (5A) enable planning for *National Grid*,¹⁷⁰³
- (5B) map the *National Grid*, and identify a buffer corridor within which *sensitive activities* shall generally not be allowed,¹⁷⁰⁴
- (5C) map *significant electricity distribution infrastructure* and, where necessary, provide controls on activities to ensure that the *functional needs* of the *significant electricity distribution infrastructure* are not compromised,¹⁷⁰⁵
- (5D) where necessary, establishing controls for *buildings, structures* and other activities adjacent to *electricity infrastructure*, to ensure the *functional needs* of that *infrastructure* are not compromised based on NZECP34:2001 Electrical Code of Practice for Electrical Safe Distances and the Electricity (Hazards from Trees) Regulations 2003 (prepared under the Electricity Act 1992), and¹⁷⁰⁶
- (6) require the design of *subdivision* development to optimise solar gain, including through roading, lot size, dimensions, layout and orientation,¹⁷⁰⁷ and

EIT-EN-M3 – Education and information

- (1) *Local authorities* must provide education and information to improve energy efficiency and provide for the adoption of renewable energy sources, including:
- (a) ways to increase measures for increased¹⁷⁰⁷ energy efficiency and energy conservation, and
 - (b) opportunities for *small and community scale distributed electricity generation*.
- (2) *Territorial authorities* must provide information on design techniques to optimise solar gain, including through roading, lot size, dimensions, layout, and orientation.

Explanation

EIT-EN-E1 – Explanation

The policies in this section are designed to set a clear preference for *renewable electricity generation activities* contributing to meeting New Zealand's national target for *renewable electricity generation*.

¹⁷⁰¹ 00236.080 Horticulture NZ

¹⁷⁰² Clause 10(2)(b)(i), Schedule 1, RMA – consequential amendment from 00305.043 Waka Kotahi

¹⁷⁰³ 00314.040 Transpower; Moved from EIT-INF-M5(2) – Clause 16(2), Schedule 1, RMA

¹⁷⁰⁴ Moved from EIT-INF-M5(3) – Clause 16(2), Schedule 1, RMA

¹⁷⁰⁵ 00315.058 Aurora Energy, 00320.026 Network Waitaki and 00511.026 PowerNet

¹⁷⁰⁶ 00315.058 Aurora Energy, 00320.026 Network Waitaki and 00511.026 PowerNet

¹⁷⁰⁷ 00139.157 DCC

Renewable electricity generation is a matter of national importance and a key component in responding to climate change and energy demands. Increasing energy security will assist with ensuring that communities have options for clean heat and electricity for health and wellbeing services.¹⁷⁰⁸

Renewable electricity generation activities are promoted by providing for the investigation, operation and maintenance of these sites and ensuring that decisions on allocating natural resources and the use of *land*, for example, recognise the benefits of *renewable electricity generation activities* arising from maintaining or increasing generation capacity. It is noted that *renewable electricity generation activities* will come within the definition of *infrastructure*, and that provisions relating to *infrastructure* also apply.

The potential magnitude of adverse *effects* and *functional needs*¹⁷⁰⁹ and *operational needs* associated with *renewable electricity generation activities* is recognised by requiring consideration of those needs, and the extent to which unavoidable *effects* can be remedied or mitigated. Where significant¹⁷¹⁰ residual adverse *effects* remain, consideration is given to proposals to offset these, or compensate for them. Increasing energy security will assist with ensuring that communities have options for clean heat.

To ensure the on-going functionality of *renewable electricity generation*¹⁷¹¹ assets and to maximise their benefits, reverse sensitivity *effects* or activities that may compromise the operation or maintenance of *renewable electricity generation activities* are to be avoided or their impacts minimised.

The policies also seek that energy use is efficient and energy waste is reduced, which will have consequential *effects* on minimising Otago's contribution to the nation's *greenhouse gas* emissions.

In addition, the policies also contain relevant considerations for the transmission of electricity, both in terms of the *National Grid, significant electricity distribution infrastructure* and other electricity transmission and distribution activities.¹⁷¹²

Principal reasons

EIT-EN-PR1 – Principal reasons

Energy is a basic requirement of life in Otago. It enables communities to provide for their well-being, and health and safety, and is essential to the regional economy. Everyday life is significantly affected when energy supply is disrupted. Therefore, ensuring the security of energy supplies that meet demand is crucial. The ability of existing energy generation activities to continue operating is dependent on access to resources such as *water* in hydro *lakes* and the operator's ability to maintain existing *infrastructure*.

Otago is fortunate to have several existing *renewable electricity generation* sites and potential to increase *renewable electricity generation*. The benefits of *renewable electricity generation* include reducing *greenhouse gas* emissions, dependence on imported energy and greater supply security. These benefits are afforded to Otago communities and nationally as exported energy is significant for other regions. Because of this, providing for new *renewable electricity generation* opportunities to meet increasing energy demand is necessary. Additionally, addressing inefficiencies in energy use can ensure that existing *infrastructure* is better utilised to reduce the need for new generation sites.

Renewable electricity generation facilities can cause significant adverse *effects* on the environment because of their *functional need* to locate in particular areas. These areas are where resources are

¹⁷⁰⁸ 00311.042 Trustpower

¹⁷⁰⁹ Clause 16(2), Schedule 1, RMA

¹⁷¹⁰ Clause 10(2)(b)(i), Schedule 1, RMA consequential change to 00306.057 Meridian Energy

¹⁷¹¹ 00306.063 Meridian

¹⁷¹² Clause 10(2)(b)(i), Schedule 1, RMA – consequential amendment arising from moving some policies from EIT-INF to EITEN.

available, for example *water* for hydro-electricity generation, but they may also contain other significant values such as outstanding natural features or landscapes, significant *indigenous vegetation* or sites of significance to *mana whenua* values. In some situations, it may not be possible to avoid adverse *effects* on these significant values after considering alternative sites or design options. In these circumstances the *effects* should be remedied or mitigated, and consideration should be given to whether those *effects* that cannot be avoided are offset or compensated.

In relation to the *National Grid and significant electricity distribution infrastructure*¹⁷¹³ (which are both a subset of infrastructure), specific provision is made which recognises some of the operational and functional constraints for conveying electricity,¹⁷¹⁴ as well as addressing matters that are required to be given effect to by the NPSET.¹⁷¹⁵

The provisions in this chapter assist in giving effect to the NPSREG, NPSET¹⁷¹⁶ and NPSFM and implementing section 7(j) of the RMA 1991. Implementation of the provisions will occur primarily through *regional plans*¹⁷¹⁷ and *district plan* provisions but regional, city and district councils also have a role in providing education and information to the community.

Anticipated environmental results

- | | |
|--------------------|--|
| EIT-EN-AER1 | The proportion of electricity generated by <i>renewable energy generation activities</i> (including <u><i>small and community scale distributed electricity generation</i></u> small and community scale electricity generation) ¹⁷¹⁸ in Otago increases over time. |
| EIT-EN-AER2 | Energy use in Otago becomes more efficient over time and security of supply is maintained. |
| EIT-EN-AER3 | The adverse <i>effects</i> associated with <i>renewable energy generation activities</i> are minimised <u>avoided, remedied or mitigated, or where appropriate, offset or compensated for.</u> ¹⁷¹⁹ |
| EIT-EN-AER4 | The proportion of <i>greenhouse gas</i> emissions per capita from energy generation reduces over time. |

¹⁷¹³ Clause 10(2)(b)(i), Schedule 1, RMA

¹⁷¹⁴ Clause 10(2)(b)(i), Schedule 1, RMA

¹⁷¹⁵ Clause 10(2)(b)(i), Schedule 1, RMA – consequential amendment arising from moving some policies from EIT-INF to EIT-EN.

¹⁷¹⁶ Clause 16(2), Schedule 1, RMA

¹⁷¹⁷ Clause 16(2), Schedule 1, RMA

¹⁷¹⁸ Clause 16(2), Schedule 1, RMA

¹⁷¹⁹ 00311.045 Trustpower Limited

EIT-TRAN – Transport¹⁷²⁰

Objectives

EIT-TRAN-07 – Effective, efficient, and safe transport

Otago has an integrated air, *land* and water-based-sea¹⁷²¹ transport network that:

- (1) is effective, efficient and safe,
- (2) connects communities and their activities within Otago, with other regions, and internationally, and
- (3) is *resilient to natural hazards* and the effects of climate change, and the changing needs of communities.¹⁷²²

EIT-TRAN-08 – Transport system

The transport system within Otago supports the movement of people, goods and services, is integrated with *land* use, provides a choice of transport modes and is adaptable to changes in demand.

EIT-TRAN-09 – Effects of the transport system

The contribution of transport to Otago's *greenhouse gas* emissions is reduced and communities are less reliant on fossil fuels for transportation.

EIT-TRAN-010 – Commercial port activities

Commercial port activities operate safely and efficiently, ~~and within environmental limits~~.¹⁷²³

Policies

EIT-TRAN-P18 – Integration of the transport system

The transport system contributes to the social, cultural and economic well-being of the people and communities¹⁷²⁴ of Otago through:

- (1) integration with *land* use activities and across transport modes, and
- (2) provision of transport *infrastructure* that enables safe and¹⁷²⁵ efficient¹⁷²⁶ service delivery in response to demand ~~as demand requires~~.¹⁷²⁷

EIT-TRAN-P19 – Transport system design

Resilience and adaptability of the transport system supports efficient networks for the transport of

¹⁷²⁰ Clause 16(2), Schedule 1, RMA

¹⁷²¹ 00411.065 Wayfare

¹⁷²² 00307.024 CIAL

¹⁷²³ 00301.043 Port of Otago

¹⁷²⁴ 00239.134 Federated Farmers

¹⁷²⁵ 00305.046 Waka Kotahi

¹⁷²⁶ 00239.134 Federated Farmers

¹⁷²⁷ 00305.046 Waka Kotahi

people and goods that are sustained, ~~and improved,~~ and responsive to growth¹⁷²⁸ by:

- (1) promoting a consolidated urban form that integrates *land* use activities with the transport system,
- (2) placing a high priority on *active transport* and *public transport* and their integration into the design of development and transport networks, and
- (3) encouraging regional connectivity, including to key visitor destinations, and¹⁷²⁹ improved access to public spaces, including the *coastal marine area, lakes and rivers*.

EIT-TRAN-P20 – Public transport

~~Plans and proposals for m~~ Maintenance and development of the transport system ~~enhance~~ enhances¹⁷³⁰ the uptake of *public transport* by:

- (1) ~~promoting providing~~ safe and reliable alternatives to low occupancy¹⁷³¹ private vehicle use ~~transport~~¹⁷³²,
- (2) including measures to ensure pedestrian and cyclist safety and amenity, and
- (3) taking into consideration the accessibility needs of the community.

EIT-TRAN-P21 – Operation of the transport system

The efficient and effective operation of the transport system is maintained by:

- (1) avoiding or mitigating¹⁷³³ adverse *effects* of activities on the functioning of the transport system,
- (2) avoiding the impacts of incompatible activities, to the extent reasonably practicable,¹⁷³⁴ including those that may result in reverse sensitivity *effects*,
- (3) avoiding or minimising the effects of activities and development so that the opportunity to adapt, upgrade or develop the transport system to meet future transport demand, is not compromised,¹⁷³⁵
- (4) promoting the development and use of transport hubs that enable an efficient transfer of goods for transport and distribution across different freight and people transport modes,
- (5) promoting methods that provide more efficient use of, or reduce reliance on, private motor vehicles, including ridesharing, park and ride facilities, bus hubs, bicycle facilities,¹⁷³⁶ demand management and alternative transport modes, and
- (6) encouraging a shift to using renewable energy sources.

EIT-TRAN-P22 – Sustainable transportation

Enable the development of sSustainable transport networks that enhance the uptake of new technologies and reduce reliance on fossil fuels ~~are developed~~ throughout Otago.¹⁷³⁷

¹⁷²⁸ 00138.130 QLDC

¹⁷²⁹ 00206.052 Trojan, 00411.066 Wayfare

¹⁷³⁰ 00305.048 Waka Kotahi

¹⁷³¹ 00139.182 DCC

¹⁷³² 00139.182 DCC

¹⁷³³ 00139.183 DCC

¹⁷³⁴ 00139.183 DCC

¹⁷³⁵ 00139.183 DCC

¹⁷³⁶ 00139.183 DCC

¹⁷³⁷ 00139.184 DCC

EIT-TRAN-P23 – Commercial port activities

Recognise the national and regional significance of the *commercial port activities* associated with the ports at Port Chalmers and Dunedin (respectively)¹⁷³⁸ by:

- (1) ~~within environmental limits as set out in Policies CE-P3 to CE-P12,~~¹⁷³⁹ providing for the efficient and safe operation of these the¹⁷⁴⁰ ports and efficient connections with other transport modes,
- (2) ~~within the environmental limits set out in Policies CE-P3 to CE-P12,~~¹⁷⁴¹ providing for the development of the ports' capacity for national and international shipping in and adjacent to existing port activities, ~~and~~
- (3) ensuring that development in the coastal environment does not adversely affect the efficient and safe operation of these ports, or their connections with other transport modes, and
- (4) if any of policies CE-P3 to CE-P12 cannot be achieved while providing for the safe and efficient operation or development of *commercial port activities*, then resource consent for such activities may be sought where:
 - (a) the proposed work is required for the safe and efficient operation of *commercial port activities*, and
 - (b) the adverse effects from the operation or development are established to be the minimum necessary to achieve the safe and efficient operation of the *commercial port activities*.¹⁷⁴²

Methods

EIT-TRAN-M7 – Regional plans

Otago Regional Council must prepare or amend and maintain its *regional plans* to:

- (1) provide for the development, operation, maintenance, or upgrade of the transport system that:
 - (a) is within the *beds of lakes and rivers* or the *coastal marine area*, or
 - (b) involves the taking, use, damming or diversion of *water* and *discharge of water* and *contaminants*,
- (2) ~~manage the adverse effects of infrastructure activities that:~~
 - (a) ~~provide for the establishment of transport infrastructure that supports modes of transport that are not reliant on fossil fuels, and~~¹⁷⁴³
 - (b) ~~include policies and methods that provide for the *commercial port activities* associated with the operations at Otago Harbour and the ports at Port Chalmers and Dunedin,~~¹⁷⁴⁴ and
- (3) ~~within environmental limits,~~¹⁷⁴⁵ facilitate the safe and efficient operation and development of

¹⁷³⁸ Clause 16(2), Schedule 1, RMA

¹⁷³⁹ 00301.001 Port Otago

¹⁷⁴⁰ Clause 16(2), Schedule 1, RMA

¹⁷⁴¹ 00301.001 Port Otago

¹⁷⁴² 00301.001 Port Otago

¹⁷⁴³ 00301.045 Port Otago

¹⁷⁴⁴ Clause 10(2)(b)(i), Schedule 1, RMA – consequential amendment arising from 00301.044 Port Otago

¹⁷⁴⁵ 00231.009 Fish and Game, 00301.045 Port Otago

~~commercial port activities at Port Chalmers and Dunedin. This includes including~~¹⁷⁴⁶ previously approved *resource consents* for the following activities in the coastal development area mapped in MAP2:

- (a) dredging of Otago lower ~~harbour~~ harbour¹⁷⁴⁷ (to 17.5m for entrance channel, and 14.5m through to Port Chalmers),
- (b) dredging of Otago upper harbour to 10.5m,
- (c) management of upper and lower harbour navigation beacons,
- (d) *discharge* of dredging spoil to the disposal grounds at Heyward Point, Aramoana, Shelley Beach, and ~~AO-A0~~¹⁷⁴⁸, and
- (e) placement and use of scientific buoys.

EIT-TRAN-M8 – District plans

Territorial authorities must prepare or amend and maintain their *district plans* to:

- (1) require a strategic approach to the integration of the transport system with *land* uses and between modes,
- (2) require high trip generating activities to be integrated with public transport services where sufficient public transport services exist or are planned¹⁷⁴⁹ and provide for safe pedestrian and cycling access, where this is practicable,¹⁷⁵⁰
- (3) include *subdivision* and *infrastructure* design standards to ~~minimise private vehicle use,~~ facilitate the use of travel modes other than private vehicles,¹⁷⁵¹ enable public transport networks to operate where this is practicable,¹⁷⁵² provide access for emergency services,¹⁷⁵³ and recognise the accessibility needs of the community, including the mobility impaired, the elderly and children,
- ~~(3A) require the design of transport infrastructure to that provides~~¹⁷⁵⁴ for multi-modal transport options in urban areas, and in rural lifestyle locations where there is a practical opportunity to connect with an existing transport infrastructure network. and rural residential locations.¹⁷⁵⁵
- (4) restrict or prevent the establishment or expansion of activities adjacent to transport *infrastructure* that may compromise the operation or safety of the transport system,
- (5) provide for the establishment of transport *infrastructure* that supports modes of transport that are not reliant on fossil fuels, and
- (6) include policies and methods that provide for ~~commercial port activities associated with the operations at Otago Harbour and the ports at Port Chalmers and Dunedin~~¹⁷⁵⁶ and avoid encroachment of activities which give rise to reverse sensitivity effects.¹⁷⁵⁷

¹⁷⁴⁶ Clause 10(2)(b)(i), Schedule 1, RMA – consequential amendment arising from 00301.044 Port Otago

¹⁷⁴⁷ Clause 16(2), Schedule 1, RMA

¹⁷⁴⁸ 00137.007 DCC

¹⁷⁴⁹ 00420.020 Hopkins, Jim, 00411.067 Wayfare

¹⁷⁵⁰ 00138.187 DCC

¹⁷⁵¹ 00139.187 DCC

¹⁷⁵² Consequential amendment made 00138.187 DCC

¹⁷⁵³ 00219.008 FENZ

¹⁷⁵⁴ 00139.156 DCC

¹⁷⁵⁵ 00138.108 QLDC – EIT-EN-M2(7) relocated to EIT-TRAN-M8

¹⁷⁵⁶ Clause 16(2), Schedule 1, RMA

¹⁷⁵⁷ 00510.047 The Oil Companies

- (7) require the design of transport *infrastructure* to that provides¹⁷⁵⁸ for multi-modal transport options in urban areas, and in rural lifestyle locations where there is a practical opportunity to connect with an existing transport infrastructure network. and rural residential locations.¹⁷⁵⁹

EIT–TRAN–M9 – Regional Land Transport Plan

Otago Regional Council will take into account the objectives, provisions and methods of this chapter in preparing its Regional Land Transport Plan and Regional Public Transport Plan.

Explanation

EIT–TRAN–E3 – Explanation

The policies in this section seek to ensure that transport *infrastructure* is well designed and functions effectively, including providing for accessibility for different modes and purposes. This includes managing potential *effects* of other activities on the transport system and ensuring strategic decision making in the provision of transport *infrastructure* to best provide for connectivity. The policies also recognise the contribution of the transport system to emissions and provide for networks that seek to adopt technologies which reduce the adverse *effects* on the *environment* arising from fuel usage. In relation to *commercial port activities* taking place within the coastal environment, the provisions of the CE – Coastal Environment chapter also apply.

Principal reasons

EIT–TRAN–PR3 – Principal reasons

The transport system is critical for connecting people and communities and transporting goods, the effective functioning of Otago’s economy and the well-being of Otago’s community. The transport network can, however, have adverse *effects* on the *environment* and impact on community well-being. If there is sufficient demand, integration and the necessary *infrastructure*, modal choices can be provided and by giving preference to modes with lower environmental *effects*, the adverse impacts of the transport system can be reduced. However, as large parts of the Otago region are rural, reliance on private vehicles will remain the preferred, or the only practical, transport option for many people. This should not exclude the potential for improvements in modal choice or accessibility for a range of abilities and sectors of the community. Planning for transport *infrastructure* should be co-ordinated with urban and commercial growth and development to enable the transport system to effectively serve local communities and avoid reducing the efficiency of existing *infrastructure*.

Anticipated environmental results

- | | |
|----------------|---|
| EIT–TRAN–AER9 | Structure planning and <i>district plans</i> make explicit provision for all modes of transport. |
| EIT–TRAN–AER10 | The number of people participating in active transport increases. |
| EIT–TRAN–AER11 | The number of dwellings per hectare in areas accessible to <i>public transport</i> increases over the life of this RPS. |

¹⁷⁵⁸ 00139.156 DCC

¹⁷⁵⁹ 00138.108 QLDC

- EIT-TRAN-AER12** *Public transport patronage increases and congestion levels decrease*¹⁷⁶⁰ over the life of this RPS.
- EIT-TRAN-AER13** *Greenhouse gas emissions arising from the transport system reduce over time from increased active transport, shared travel and *public transport* patronage, increased use of rail for freight,¹⁷⁶¹ and reduced reliance on fossil fuels.*
- EIT-TRAN-AER14** The transport of people, goods and services within Otago is achieved in a timely manner and at costs comparable to other regions.

¹⁷⁶⁰ 00139.189 DCC

¹⁷⁶¹ 00139.190 DCC

HAZ – Hazards and *risks*

HAZ–NH – *Natural hazards*

Objective

HAZ–NH–O1 – *Natural hazards*

Risks Levels of risk¹⁷⁶² to people, communities and property from *natural hazards* within Otago are maintained where they are acceptable, and managed to ensure they¹⁷⁶³ do not exceed a tolerable level.

HAZ–NH–O2 – *Adaptation*¹⁷⁶⁴

Otago’s people, ~~property and~~ communities, and property¹⁷⁶⁵ are prepared for and able to adapt to the effects of *natural hazards*, including *natural hazard risks* that are exacerbated by¹⁷⁶⁶ *climate change*.

Policies

HAZ–NH–P1A – Identifying areas subject to *coastal hazards*

Identify areas that are potentially affected by *coastal hazards* (including tsunami), giving priority to the identification of areas at high *risk* of being affected.¹⁷⁶⁷

HAZ–NH–P1 – Identifying areas subject to *natural hazards*

For *hazards* not identified in accordance with HAZ–NH–P1A,¹⁷⁶⁸ ~~Using the best available information,~~¹⁷⁶⁹ identify areas where *natural hazards* may adversely affect Otago’s people, communities and property, by assessing:

- (1) the hazard type and characteristics,
- (2) *multiple and cascading hazards*, where present,
- (3) any cumulative *effects*,
- (4) any *effects of climate change*,
- (5) the likelihood of different hazard scenarios occurring, using the best available information,¹⁷⁷⁰ and
- (6) any other exacerbating factors.

¹⁷⁶² 00138.145 QLDC

¹⁷⁶³ 00138.142 QLDC

¹⁷⁶⁴ 00138.143 QLDC

¹⁷⁶⁵ 00139.194 DCC

¹⁷⁶⁶ 00321.073 NZ Infrastructure Commission

¹⁷⁶⁷ 00301.047 Port Otago

¹⁷⁶⁸ 00301.047 Port Otago

¹⁷⁶⁹ 00139.194 DCC

¹⁷⁷⁰ 00139.194 DCC

HAZ–NH–P2 – Risk assessments

Within areas identified under HAZ-NH-P1 as being to *natural hazards*, Assess¹⁷⁷¹ the level of¹⁷⁷² *natural hazard risk* as significant, tolerable, or acceptable¹⁷⁷³ by determining a range of *natural hazard* event scenarios and their potential consequences in accordance with the criteria set out within APP6.

HAZ–NH–P3 – New activities

Once the level of *natural hazard risk* associated with an activity has been determined in accordance with HAZ–NH–P2, manage new activities to achieve the following outcomes:

- (1) ~~significant when the *natural hazard risks* are avoided, is significant, the activity is avoided,~~¹⁷⁷⁴
- (2) when the *natural hazard risk* is tolerable, manage the level of *risk* so that it does not exceed tolerable ~~become significant,~~¹⁷⁷⁵ and
- (3) when the *natural hazard risk* is acceptable, maintain the level of *risk*.

HAZ–NH–P4 – Existing *natural hazard risk* activities¹⁷⁷⁶

In areas identified under HAZ-NH-P1 as subject to *natural hazards*,¹⁷⁷⁷ Reduce existing *natural hazard risk* to a tolerable or acceptable level¹⁷⁷⁸ by:

- (1) encouraging activities that reduce *risk*, or reduce community vulnerability,
- ~~(2) restricting activities that increase *risk*, or increase community vulnerability,~~¹⁷⁷⁹
- (3) managing existing activities ~~land uses~~¹⁷⁸⁰ within areas of significant *risk* to people, ~~and~~ communities, and property,¹⁷⁸¹
- (4) encouraging design that facilitates:
 - (a) ~~recovery from *natural hazard* events, or~~¹⁷⁸²
 - (b) relocation to areas of acceptable *risk*, or
 - (c) reduction of *risk*,
- (5) relocating *lifeline utilities*, and facilities for essential and emergency services, away from areas of significant *risk*, where appropriate and practicable, and
- (6) enabling development, upgrade, maintenance and operation of *lifeline utilities* and facilities for essential and emergency services.

HAZ–NH–P5 – Precautionary approach to *natural hazard risk*

Where the *natural hazard risk*, either individually or cumulatively, is uncertain or unknown, but potentially

¹⁷⁷¹ 00236.085 Horticulture NZ

¹⁷⁷² 00138.145 QLDC

¹⁷⁷³ 0138.145 QLDC

¹⁷⁷⁴ 00314.044 Transpower

¹⁷⁷⁵ 00138.148 QLDC

¹⁷⁷⁶ 00138.149 QLDC

¹⁷⁷⁷ 00301.047 Port Otago

¹⁷⁷⁸ 00138.149 QLDC

¹⁷⁷⁹ 00321.077 Te Waihanga

¹⁷⁸⁰ 00022.022 Graymont NZ

¹⁷⁸¹ 00138.149 QLDC

¹⁷⁸² 00138.149 QLDC

significant or irreversible, apply a precautionary approach to identifying, assessing and managing that *risk* by adopting an avoidance or adaptive management response to ~~diminish the risk and uncertainty.~~¹⁷⁸³

HAZ–NH–P6 – Protecting features and systems that provide hazard mitigation

Protect the ability of¹⁷⁸⁴ natural or modified features and systems ~~that contribute~~¹⁷⁸⁵ to mitigate ~~mitigating~~¹⁷⁸⁶ the *effects of natural hazards and climate change*.

HAZ–NH–P7 – Mitigating *natural hazards*

Prioritise *risk* management approaches that reduce the need for *hard protection structures* or similar engineering interventions, and provide for *hard protection structures* only when:

~~(1) *hard protection structures* are essential to manage *risk* to a level the community is able to tolerate,~~¹⁷⁸⁷

(1A) the following apply:¹⁷⁸⁸

(2a) there are no reasonable alternatives that manage or reduce ~~result in reducing~~¹⁷⁸⁹ the *risk* exposure to a level the community is able to tolerate,¹⁷⁹⁰

(3b) *hard protection structures* would not result in a more than minor ~~an~~ increase in *risk* to people, communities and property, including displacement of *risk* off-site,

(4c) the adverse *effects* of the *hard protection structures* can be adequately managed, and

(5d) the mitigation is viable in the reasonably foreseeable long term or provides time for future adaptation methods to be implemented, or

~~(61B)~~ the *hard protection structure* protects a *lifeline utility*, or a facility for essential or emergency services.

HAZ–NH–P8 – *Lifeline utilities* and facilities for essential or emergency services

Locate, ~~relocate,~~¹⁷⁹¹ and design *lifeline utilities* and facilities for essential or emergency services to:

(1) maintain their ability to function to the fullest extent possible, during and after *natural hazard* events, and

(2) take into account their operational co-dependence with other *lifeline utilities* and essential services to ensure their effective operation.

HAZ–NH–P9 – Protection of hazard mitigation measures, *lifeline utilities*, and essential or emergency services¹⁷⁹²

Protect the *functional needs and operational*¹⁷⁹³ of hazard mitigation measures, *lifeline utilities*, and essential or emergency services, including by:

¹⁷⁸³ 00138.150 QLDC

¹⁷⁸⁴ 00139.199 DCC

¹⁷⁸⁵ 00139.199 DCC

¹⁷⁸⁶ 00139.199 DCC

¹⁷⁸⁷ 00301.050 Port Otago, 00119.019 Blackthorn Lodge Glenorchy Limited, 00138.152 QLDC

¹⁷⁸⁸ Clause 16(2), Schedule 1, RMA

¹⁷⁸⁹ 00301.050 Port Otago

¹⁷⁹⁰ 00137.130 DOC, 00230.139 Forest and Bird

¹⁷⁹¹ 00138.149 QLDC

¹⁷⁹² 00139.202 DCC, 00510.056 The Fuel Companies

¹⁷⁹³ 00313.026 Queenstown Airport

- (1) avoiding significant adverse *effects* on those measures, utilities or services,
- (2) avoiding, and only where avoidance is not practicable, remedying or mitigating other adverse *effects* on those measures, utilities or services,
- (3) maintaining access to those measures, utilities or services for maintenance and operational purposes, and
- (4) restricting the establishment of other activities that may result in reverse sensitivity *effects* on those measures, utilities or services.

HAZ–NH–P10 – Coastal hazards

In addition to HAZ–NH–P1 to HAZ–NH–P9 above, on any *land* that is potentially affected by coastal hazards over at least the next 100 years:

- (1) avoid increasing the *risk* of social, environmental and economic harm from coastal hazards,
- (2) ensure no *land* use change or redevelopment occurs that would increase the *risk* to people and communities from that coastal hazard,
- (3) encourage *land* use change or redevelopment that reduces the *risk* from that coastal hazard, and
- (4) ensure decision making about the nature, scale and location of activities considers the ability of Otago’s people and communities to adapt to, or mitigate the *effects* of, sea level rise and *climate change*, and
- (5) apply HAZ-NH-P5 to HAZ-NH-P9.¹⁷⁹⁴

HAZ-NH-P11 – Kāi Tahu rakatirataka ~~Kaitiaki decision making~~

Recognise and provide for the rakatirataka of Kāi Tahu by:

- (1) enabling *mana whenua* to lead approaches on the management of *natural hazard risks* affecting native reserves and Māori *land*, and
- (2) including Kāi Tahu in decision-making on the management of *natural hazard risks* affecting the values of *wāhi tūpuna*.¹⁷⁹⁵

~~Recognise and provide for the role of Kāi Tahu as kaitiaki over *wāhi tūpuna*, Māori reserves and freehold land that is susceptible to *natural hazards* by involving *mana whenua* in decision making and management processes.~~¹⁷⁹⁶

Methods

HAZ–NH–M1 – Statement of responsibilities

In accordance with section 62(1)(i)(i) of the RMA 1991,¹⁷⁹⁷ the responsibilities for the control of *land* use to avoid or mitigate *natural hazards* or any group of hazards are as follows:

- (1) the Regional Council and *territorial authorities* are both responsible for specifying objectives, policies and methods in *regional plans*¹⁷⁹⁸ and *district plans* for managing *land* subject to *natural*

¹⁷⁹⁴ Clause 16(2), Schedule 1, RMA

¹⁷⁹⁵ 00226.048 Kāi Tahu ki Otago

¹⁷⁹⁶ 00310.011 The Telecommunications Companies

¹⁷⁹⁷ Clause 16(2), Schedule 1, RMA

¹⁷⁹⁸ Clause 16(2), Schedule 1, RMA

hazard risk,

- (2) the Regional Council is responsible for:
 - (a) specifying objectives, policies and methods in *regional plans*:
 - (i) in the *coastal marine area*,
 - (ii) in *wetlands, lakes and rivers*, ~~and~~
 - (iii) in, on or under the *beds of rivers and lakes*, and
 - (iv) on land in relation to *risk reduction*,¹⁷⁹⁹
 - (b) identifying areas in the region subject to *natural hazards* and describing their characteristics as required by Policy HAZ–NH–P1, mapping the extent of those areas in the relevant *regional plan(s)* and including those maps on a *natural hazard* register or database,
 - (c) ~~in the coastal environment~~, identifying the *coastal hazards* as required by ~~CE–P2(3)~~¹⁸⁰⁰ HAZ–NH–P1A¹⁸⁰¹ in accordance with Policy 24 of the NZCPS, mapping the extent of those areas in the relevant *regional plan(s)* and including those maps on a *natural hazard* register or database, and
 - (d) continually monitoring *natural hazard risk* to understand how levels of *natural hazard risk* change overtime, and where required, update the *natural hazard* mapping areas identified in 2(b) and (c) above,¹⁸⁰²
- (3) *territorial authorities* are responsible for:¹⁸⁰³
 - (a) specifying objectives, policies and methods in *district plans* for *land* outside of the areas listed in (2)(a), and
 - (b) mapping or identifying via the *natural hazard* register or database, areas identified in 2(a), (b) and (c) above subject to natural hazards and describing the characteristics ~~and the extent~~¹⁸⁰⁴ of those areas in the relevant *district plan(s)*.

HAZ–NH–M2 – Local authorities

Local authorities must work collaboratively to:¹⁸⁰⁵

- (1) assess the level of *natural hazard risk* in their region or district in accordance with HAZ–NH–P2 and APP6, including by:
 - (a) consulting with communities, stakeholders and Kāi Tahu, including with *local authorities in neighbouring regions*¹⁸⁰⁶ partners regarding *risk* levels thresholds, ~~and~~
 - (b) developing a Risk Table in accordance with Step 3 of APP6 at a district or community scale, and
 - (c) identifying areas of significant *risk*,¹⁸⁰⁷

¹⁷⁹⁹ 00138.155 QLDC

¹⁸⁰⁰ 00137.135 DOC

¹⁸⁰¹ 00301.047 Port Otago

¹⁸⁰² Clause 16(2), Schedule 1, RMA

¹⁸⁰³ Clause 16(2), Schedule 1, RMA

¹⁸⁰⁴ 00138.155 QLDC

¹⁸⁰⁵ 00138.156 QLDC

¹⁸⁰⁶ 00013.015 ECan

¹⁸⁰⁷ 00236.088 Horticulture NZ

- (2) continue to undertake research on the identification of *natural hazard risk* and amend *natural hazard registers, databases, regional plans*¹⁸⁰⁸ and/or *district plans* as required,
- (3) investigate options for reducing the level of *natural hazard risk* within areas of existing development to a tolerable or lower level, including by managing existing use rights under Sections 10 and 20A of the RMA,
- (4) prepare or amend and maintain their *regional plans*¹⁸⁰⁹ or *district plans* to take into account the *effects* of *climate change* by:
 - (a) using the best relevant *climate change* data and projections to 2115,
 - (b) taking a precautionary approach when assessing and managing the *effects* of *climate change* where there is scientific uncertainty and potentially significant or irreversible *effects*,
 - (c) providing for activities that assist to reduce or mitigate the *effects* of *climate change*, and
 - (d) encouraging system *resilience*.

HAZ–NH–M3 – Regional plans

Otago Regional Council must prepare or amend and maintain its *regional plans* to:

- (1) manage activities in the *coastal marine area, beds of lakes and rivers, and wetlands* to achieve policies HAZ–NH–P23¹⁸¹⁰ to HAZ–NH–P6 and APP6, and the outcomes of the Risk Table established within HAZ-NH-M2(1).¹⁸¹¹
- (2) include *natural hazard risk*¹⁸¹² reduction measures, such as removing or restricting existing *land* uses, where there is significant *risk* to people or property,
- (3) protect natural or modified features and systems that provide mitigation from the adverse *effects* of *natural hazards* in accordance with HAZ–NH–P6,
- (4) provide for *hard protection structures* in accordance with HAZ–NH–P7,
- (5) provide for the *functional needs* of hazard mitigation measures, *lifeline utilities*, and essential or emergency services in accordance with HAZ–NH–P8 and HAZ–NH–P9,
- (6) include provisions that require decision makers to apply the precautionary approach set out in HAZ–NH–P5 when considering applications for *resource consent* for activities that will change the use of *land* and thereby increase the *risk* from *natural hazards* within areas subject to *natural hazard risk* that is uncertain or unknown, but potentially significant or irreversible, and
- (7) require a *natural hazard risk* assessment commensurate with the level of risk from the proposed activity¹⁸¹³ be undertaken where an activity requires a *resource consent* to change the use of *land* ~~which will increase the risk from natural hazards with~~¹⁸¹⁴ in areas subject to *natural hazards*, and where the *resource consent* is lodged prior to the *natural hazard risk* assessment required by HAZ–

¹⁸⁰⁸ Clause 16(2), Schedule 1, RMA

¹⁸⁰⁹ Clause 16(2), Schedule 1, RMA

¹⁸¹⁰ 00138.158 QLDC

¹⁸¹¹ 00119.021 Blackthorn Lodge

¹⁸¹² 00138.157 QLDC

¹⁸¹³ 00236.089 Horticulture NZ

¹⁸¹⁴ 00138.158 QLDC

NH-M2(1) being completed, included in the *regional plan* and made operative,¹⁸¹⁵ the *natural hazard risk* assessment must include:

- (a) an assessment of the level of *natural hazard risk* associated with the proposal in accordance with APP6, and
 - (b) an assessment demonstrating how the proposal will achieve the outcomes set out in Policies HAZ-NH-P3 and HAZ-NH-P4, and
- (8) not require a *natural hazard risk* assessment in accordance with APP6 for *resource consent* applications, once the *natural hazard risk* assessment required by HAZ-NH-M2(1) has been completed, included in the relevant *regional plan* and made operative, unless otherwise expressly required by the relevant *regional plan*.¹⁸¹⁶

HAZ-NH-M4 – District plans

Territorial authorities must prepare or amend and maintain their *district plans* to:

- (1) achieve policies HAZ-NH-P2~~3~~¹⁸¹⁷ to HAZ-NH-P6, and APP6 and incorporate the outcomes of the Risk Table established within HAZ-NH-M2(1),¹⁸¹⁸ on *land* outside the *coastal marine area*, *beds of lakes* and *rivers*, and *wetlands* by managing the location, scale and density of activities that are ~~may be~~¹⁸¹⁹ subject to *natural hazard risk*,
- (2) ~~require implementation of *natural hazard risk* reduction measures, including to existing activities in accordance with HAZ-NH-P4,~~¹⁸²⁰
- (3) protect the role of natural or modified features and systems that provide mitigation from the adverse *effects* of *natural hazards* in accordance with HAZ-NH-P6,
- (4) provide for *hard protection structures* in accordance with HAZ-NH-P7,
- (5) provide for the *functional needs* of hazard mitigation measures, *lifeline utilities*, and essential or emergency services in accordance with HAZ-NH-P8 and HAZ-NH-P9,
- (6) include provisions that require decision makers to apply the precautionary approach set out in HAZ-NH-P5 when considering applications for *resource consent* for activities that will change the use of *land* and which may increase the *risk* from *natural hazards* within areas subject to *natural hazard risk* that is uncertain or unknown, but potentially significant or irreversible, and
- (7) require a *natural hazard risk* assessment commensurate with the level of *risk* from the proposed activity¹⁸²¹ be undertaken where an activity requires a plan change or *resource consent* to change the use of *land* ~~which will increase the *risk* from *natural hazards* with~~¹⁸²² in areas subject to *natural hazards*, and where the application is lodged prior to the *natural hazard risk* assessment required by HAZ-NH-M2(1) being completed, included in the *district plan* and made operative,¹⁸²³ the *natural hazard risk* assessment must include:
 - (a) an assessment of the level of *natural hazard risk* associated with the proposal in accordance with APP6, and

¹⁸¹⁵ 00301.052 Port Otago

¹⁸¹⁶ 00301.052 Port Otago

¹⁸¹⁷ 00119.021 Blackthorn Lodge

¹⁸¹⁸ 00138.158 QLDC

¹⁸¹⁹ 00119.022 Blackthorn Lodge

¹⁸²⁰ 00138.158 QLDC

¹⁸²¹ 00236.090 Horticulture NZ, 00239.14 Federated Farmers

¹⁸²² 00138.158 QLDC

¹⁸²³ 00301.047 Port Otago

- (b) an assessment demonstrating how the proposal will achieve the outcomes set out in Policies HAZ–NH–P3 and HAZ–NH–P4, and
- (8) not require a natural hazard risk assessment in accordance with APP6 for resource consent applications, once the natural hazard risk assessment required by HAZ–NH–M2(1) has been completed, included in the relevant regional plan and made operative, unless otherwise expressly required by the relevant regional plan.¹⁸²⁴

HAZ–NH–M5 – Other incentives and mechanisms

Local authorities are encouraged to consider the use of other mechanisms or incentives to assist in achieving Policies HAZ–NH–P1 to HAZ–NH–P11, including but not limited to.¹⁸²⁵

- (1) preparing *natural hazard* strategies or other similar documents to assist in the management and reduction of *natural hazard risk* and adaptation to, and mitigation of, the *effects of climate change*,
- (2) developing community relevant responses to the impacts of *natural hazards* and *climate change*, in collaboration with key stakeholders and affected community,
- (3) undertaking research in collaboration with other *local authorities* and other stakeholders as appropriate, into *natural hazards* and *climate change* in Otago, and
- (4) providing information and guidance on:
 - (a) management approaches to the avoidance or mitigation of *natural hazards*,
 - (b) ways to adapt to and mitigate the *effects of climate change*, and
 - (c) the benefits of natural features and systems in mitigating *natural hazards*.

Explanation

HAZ–NH–E1 – Explanation

The policies in this chapter are designed to reduce the level of *natural hazard risk* within the region through sound preparation, investigation and planning. These provisions take a risk-based approach, taking into consideration the likelihood of the hazard and the vulnerability of people, communities, and the *environment*. The approach ensures consistent planning by applying the same framework irrespective of the type of *natural hazard* that may exist. It allows for the full range of *risk* mitigation measures (regulatory and non-regulatory) to be taken into account in determining the level of *risk* that exists at a particular locality.

Once the level of *risk* has been established, following consultation with communities, stakeholders and partners,¹⁸²⁶ the provisions direct that *district plans*¹⁸²⁷ and *regional plans* require activities to be undertaken in a manner that results in the *natural hazard risk* to people, the community and property being tolerable or lower. Where a *natural hazard risk* to people, the community and property cannot be reduced to a tolerable level, the activity must be avoided. The provisions require that the same risk-based approach is taken when considering the management of existing development, by ensuring that the *risk*

¹⁸²⁴ 00301.052 Port Otago

¹⁸²⁵ 00219.005 FENZ

¹⁸²⁶ 00119.023 Blackthorn Lodge

¹⁸²⁷ Clause 16(2), Schedule 1, RMA

associated with existing development is tolerable or lower.

The provisions also set direction on *natural hazard* management methods such as use of the precautionary approach, protecting natural features and systems that provide hazard mitigation, the use of *hard protection structures*, and the location and design of *lifeline utilities* and facilities for essential or emergency services. These provisions are designed to reduce the level of *natural hazard risk* within the region.

Principal reasons¹⁸²⁸

HAZ–NH–PR1 – Principal reasons

The Otago region is exposed to a wide variety of *natural hazards* that impact on people, property, *infrastructure* and the wider *environment*. Given the wide variety of landscapes that make up the Otago region, the *natural hazards* threats range from coastal erosion and flooding in the lowland coastal areas of the region to alluvial fan deposition, landslip, fire, earthquakes, rock fall, and *river* breaches in the alpine areas of the region. The *effects* of *natural hazards* vary in terms of both their likelihood and consequence. Some *natural hazards*, such as flooding, may occur relatively frequently and may damage property and disrupt people’s lives and economic, social and cultural activities, whereas *natural hazards* such as tsunami occur infrequently, but when they do occur, they pose serious *risk* to life.

~~The negative effects of natural hazards are generally best managed by avoiding development in areas that are known to be subject to natural hazards. However,~~¹⁸²⁹ The majority of the region is subject to some form of hazards *risk*, to a greater or lesser extent. While avoidance of *natural hazard risk*¹⁸³⁰ may be the preferred option in many cases, in other situations mitigating the *effects* of *natural hazards* to tolerable levels will be a feasible option to ensure the health, safety and well-being of the community. The changing nature of *natural hazards risk* due to *climate change* means that planning provisions need to be able to adapt to a future *natural hazards environment*.

Consultation with communities, stakeholders and partners is essential to an understanding of risk tolerance.¹⁸³¹ Preparing natural hazard risk assessments requires consultation with these groups.¹⁸³² Communities need consistent guidance on sea level rise, extreme weather events, and all other adverse *effects* of *climate change* if they are to appropriately manage those *effects*. *Climate change* is resulting in rising sea levels and is increasing the frequency and severity of climate related *natural hazards* including flooding, wind events, fires, landslips, erosion and drought. *Stormwater* systems may not be able to cope with heavier rainfall. Other *effects* of *climate change* include changing distributions of plants and animals, and consequential *effects*, such as the *risk* of saltwater intrusion into *groundwater* as a result of sea level rise in combination with increased *groundwater* abstraction, and *groundwater* ponding. There may be other adverse *effects* from *climate change* that are not yet known. A precautionary approach is required where there is scientific uncertainty. The *effects* of *climate change* will result in social, environmental and economic costs. It is prudent that these changes are planned for now, so that the impacts can be reduced.

~~In addition to the objectives and policies in this chapter, the management of natural hazards are also recognised and provided for in the following chapters of this RPS:~~

¹⁸²⁸ Clause 16(2)

¹⁸²⁹ 00119.024 Blackthorn Lodge

¹⁸³⁰ 00119.024 Blackthorn Lodge

¹⁸³¹ 00119.024 Blackthorn Lodge

¹⁸³² 00119.024 Blackthorn Lodge

- ~~IM~~ — Integrated management
- ~~CE~~ — Coastal environment
- ~~EIT~~ — Energy, infrastructure and transport
- ~~UFD~~ — Urban form and development¹⁸³³

Anticipated environmental results

- HAZ–NH–AER1** The location and design of new developments and natural resource use reduces community exposure to the adverse *effects of natural hazards* events and processes.
- HAZ–NH–AER2** No developments proceed that have a significant level of *risk*.
- HAZ–NH–AER3** The level of *risk* associated with new development does not exceed a tolerable level.
- HAZ–NH–AER4** Where existing development is subject to *risks from natural hazards*, the level of *risk* is reduced to a tolerable level.
- HAZ–NH–AER5** The impact on people, communities and life,¹⁸³⁴ property, *lifeline utilities*, and essential services from *natural hazards* and *climate change* is managed to a tolerable or acceptable level.¹⁸³⁵

¹⁸³³ 00120.006 Yellow-eyed Penguin Trust

¹⁸³⁴ 00239.144 Federated Farmers

¹⁸³⁵ 00138.163 QLDC

HAZ–CL – Contaminated land

Objectives

HAZ–CL–O3 – Contaminated land

Contaminated land and waste materials are managed to protect human health and do not harm¹⁸³⁶ Kāi Tahu,¹⁸³⁷ *mana whenua* values and the *environment* in Otago.

Policies

HAZ–CL–P13 – Identifying contaminated land

Identify sites of known or potentially *contaminated land* in Otago using the Ministry for the Environment's *Hazardous Activities and Industries List*.¹⁸³⁸

HAZ–CL–P14 – Managing contaminated land

Actively manage¹⁸³⁹ contaminated or potentially *contaminated land* so that it does not pose an unacceptable *risk* to people and the *environment*, by:

- (1) assessing and, if required,¹⁸⁴⁰ monitoring *contaminant* levels and environmental *risks*,
- (2) protecting human health in accordance with regulatory requirements,
- (3) avoiding, as the first priority, and only where avoidance is not reasonably practicable, mitigating or remediating, adverse *effects* of the *contaminants* on the *environment*, ~~and~~
- (4) requiring closed *landfills* to be managed in accordance with a closure plan that sets out monitoring requirements and, where necessary, any remedial actions required to address ongoing *risks*, and
- (5) prioritising the identification and management of closed *landfills* and *contaminated land* at risk from the *effects* of *climate change*.¹⁸⁴¹

HAZ–CL–P15 – New contaminated land

Avoid the creation of new *contaminated land* or, where this is not practicable, minimise to the extent reasonably practicable¹⁸⁴² adverse *effects* on the *environment* and Kāi Tahu *mana whenua*¹⁸⁴³ values.

HAZ–CL–P16 – Waste minimisation responses

Apply the principles of the *waste* management hierarchy (reduce, reuse, recycle, recover, residual *waste* management) to the management of all *waste* streams.

HAZ–CL–P17 – Disposal of waste materials

Provide for the development and operation of facilities and services for the storage, recycling, recovery

¹⁸³⁶ 00236.091 Horticulture NZ, 00239.145 Federated Farmers

¹⁸³⁷ 00226.264 Kāi Tahu ki Otago

¹⁸³⁸ 00510.060 The Fuel Companies

¹⁸³⁹ 00510.061 The Fuel Companies

¹⁸⁴⁰ 00510.061 The Fuel Companies

¹⁸⁴¹ 00223.119 Ngāi Tahu ki Murihiku

¹⁸⁴² 00313.027 Queenstown Airport

¹⁸⁴³ 00226.267 Kāi Tahu ki Otago

and treatment of *waste* materials but only for the disposal of *waste* materials if those materials cannot be recycled, recovered or treated for re-use.

HAZ-CL-P18 – Waste facilities and services

When providing for the development of facilities and services for the storage, recycling, recovery, treatment and disposal of *waste* materials:

- (1) avoid adverse *effects* on the health and safety of people,
- (2) to the extent reasonably practicable,¹⁸⁴⁴ minimise the potential for adverse *effects* on the *environment* to occur,
- (3) minimise *risk* associated with *natural hazard* events, and
- (4) restrict the establishment of activities that may result in reverse sensitivity *effects* near *waste* management facilities and services.

Methods

HAZ-CL-M6 – Regional plans

Otago Regional Council must:

- (1) in accordance with HAZ-CL-P13,¹⁸⁴⁵ maintain a register or database of sites of known or potentially contaminated land in Otago ~~where hazardous activities and industries are or have been located in Otago~~,¹⁸⁴⁶
- (2) prepare or amend and maintain its *regional plans* to:
 - (a) in accordance with HAZ-CL-P14 and HAZ-CL-P15 manage the *effects* of the use of *contaminated land* on:
 - (i) the quality of air, *water* and *land*; and
 - (ii) the *coastal marine area*, and the *beds* of *rivers, lakes* and other *water bodies*,
 - (b) require *waste* disposal facilities to be designed, constructed and operated in accordance with best industry practice, and
 - (c) require *waste* disposal facilities to monitor, record and report on the quantity and composition of *waste* being deposited to *landfill*.

HAZ-CL-M7 – District plans

Territorial authorities must prepare or amend and maintain their *district plans* to provide for the development of facilities and services for the storage, recycling, recovery, treatment and disposal of *waste* while achieving the outcomes listed in HAZ-CL-P14 to HAZ-CL-P16.

HAZ-CL-M8 – Waste management and minimisation plans

Local authorities must develop *waste* management and minimisation plans in accordance with the Waste Minimisation Act 2008.

¹⁸⁴⁴ 00226.270 Kāi Tahu ki Otago, 00230.140 Forest and Bird

¹⁸⁴⁵ 00236.093 Horticulture NZ

¹⁸⁴⁶ 00239.147 Federated Farmers

HAZ-CL-M8A – Prioritisation and action plans

Otago Regional Council and territorial authorities, in consultation with Kāi Tahu and the community, must together:

- (1) identify closed *landfills* and *contaminated land* risk from the effects of *climate change*,
- (2) assess the *risk* and the potential *effects* of release of *contaminants*,
- (3) develop and implement action plans to avoid release of *contaminants* from the identified closed *landfills* and *contaminated land*, prioritising sites at greatest *risk*, and
- (4) review sites and their level of *risk* every five years.¹⁸⁴⁷

HAZ-CL-M9 – Other incentives and mechanisms

Local authorities may:

- (1) encourage the application of the *waste* management hierarchy by:
 - (a) giving preference to reducing waste generated,
 - (b) reusing *waste*,
 - (c) recycling *waste*,
 - (d) recovering resources from *waste*, and
 - (e) only disposing residual *waste* to a disposal facility,
- (2) provide information and guidance on *waste* minimisation and management, and
- (3) advocate for:
 - (a) the implementation of the *waste* hierarchy throughout the region, and
 - (b) the development of *infrastructure* and services to provide for recycling and disposal services across the region.

Explanation

HAZ-CL-E2 – Explanation

The policies in this chapter are designed to ensure that *contaminated land* and *waste* materials do not harm human health or the *environment*. To achieve this, areas of known or potentially *contaminated land* are to be identified. Once sites are identified, the protection of human health is managed by the ~~National Environmental Standard for Assessing and Managing Contaminants in Soil to Protect Human Health 2012 (NESCS)~~ NESCS¹⁸⁴⁸. It is the role of *regional plans* to minimise the adverse *effects* of the *contaminants* on the *environment* by avoiding the creation of new *contaminated land* and minimising the adverse *effects* of *waste* material on the *environment*. The provisions within this chapter also encourage the application of the *waste* management hierarchy.

Principal reasons

¹⁸⁴⁷ 00223.119 Ngāi Tahu ki Murihiku

¹⁸⁴⁸ Clause 16(2), Schedule 1, RMA

HAZ-CL-PR2 – Principal reasons

Resources need to be carefully used to minimise the material disposed of as *waste*. Waste materials and hazardous substances need to be carefully managed to avoid creating environmental problems or adversely affecting human health.

In order to protect people and the *environment* from the adverse *effects* of *contaminated land*, the first task is to identify *land* that could be contaminated. The Ministry for the Environment's Hazardous Activities and Industries List (HAIL) is a list of activities and industries that may have involved the use of hazardous substances. Such use of hazardous substances may have resulted in *land* becoming contaminated. Once known or potentially *contaminated land* has been identified, assessments can be made to determine the nature or existence of contamination.

The ~~National Environmental Standard for Assessing and Managing Contaminants in Soil to Protect Human Health 2012 (NESCS)~~ NESCS¹⁸⁴⁹ sets out a nationally consistent set of planning controls and soil *contaminant* values. It applies to assessing and managing the actual or potential adverse *effects* of *contaminants* in soil on human health when undertaking *subdivision*, *land* use change, *earthworks*, soil sampling or removing the underground portions of any fuel storage or dispensing systems. The NESCS does not apply to assessing and managing the actual or potential adverse *effects* of *contaminants* on other receptors, including ecology, *water* quality or *amenity values*. Therefore, it is the role of the *regional plans* to manage these adverse *effects*.

The *waste* management hierarchy is an internationally recognised management model for the reduction of residual *waste*. The *waste* management hierarchy can be applied to all *waste* streams. When making decisions about a *land* use or activity, it is possible to include methods that will reduce *waste* over the lifetime of that *land* use or activity.

Anticipated environmental results

- | | |
|-------------|---|
| HAZ-CL-AER6 | The environment, people and communities are not harmed by <i>waste</i> materials. |
| HAZ-CL-AER7 | The waste hierarchy is implemented, resulting in less <i>waste</i> requiring disposal and a reduction of the environmental <i>effects</i> generated from <i>waste</i> . |

¹⁸⁴⁹ Clause 16(2), Schedule 1, RMA

HCV – Historical and cultural values

HCV–WT – *Wāhi tūpuna*

Objectives

HCV–WT–O1 – Kāi Tahu wāhi tūpuna cultural landscapes¹⁸⁵⁰

Wāhi tūpuna and their associated cultural values are identified and protected.

HCV–WT–O2 – Rakatirataka

The rakatirataka of *mana whenua* over *wāhi tūpuna* is recognised, and *mana whenua* are able to exercise their role as kaitiaki¹⁸⁵¹ ~~kaitiakitaka~~ within these areas.

Policies

HCV–WT–P1 – Recognise and identify *wāhi tūpuna*

Sustain the enduring Kāi Tahu relationships ~~relationship~~ with *wāhi tūpuna* are sustained¹⁸⁵², including by:

- (1) enabling Kāi Tahu to identify ~~identifying~~¹⁸⁵³ as *wāhi tūpuna* any sites and areas of significance to *mana whenua*, along with the cultural values that contribute to each *wāhi tūpuna* being significant,
- (2) recognising the rakatirataka of *mana whenua* over *wāhi tūpuna* and providing for their ability to exercise their role as kaitiaki ~~kaitiakitaka~~¹⁸⁵⁴ within these areas,
- (3) recognising and providing for connections and associations between different *wāhi tūpuna*, and
- (4) recognising and using traditional place names.

HCV–WT–P2 – Management of effects on¹⁸⁵⁵ *wāhi tūpuna*

Wāhi tūpuna are protected by:

- (1) avoiding significant adverse *effects* on the cultural values ~~associated with~~¹⁸⁵⁶ of identified *wāhi tūpuna*,
- (1A) avoiding, as the first priority, other adverse effects on the cultural values of identified *wāhi tūpuna*¹⁸⁵⁷,
- (2) where other adverse *effects* demonstrably cannot be completely avoided, then either remedying or mitigating adverse *effects* in a manner that maintains the values of the *wāhi tūpuna*,

¹⁸⁵⁰ 00226.275 Kāi Tahu ki Otago; 00234.034 Te Rūnanga o Ngāi Tahu

¹⁸⁵¹ 00226.276 Kāi Tahu ki Otago; 00234.035 Te Rūnanga o Ngāi Tahu

¹⁸⁵² 00226.277 Kāi Tahu ki Otago

¹⁸⁵³ 00226.277 Kāi Tahu ki Otago

¹⁸⁵⁴ 00226.277 Kāi Tahu ki Otago

¹⁸⁵⁵ 00226.278 Kāi Tahu ki Otago

¹⁸⁵⁶ 00226.278 Kāi Tahu ki Otago

¹⁸⁵⁷ 00137.142 DOC

HCV–WT–P2A – Management of wāhi tūpuna

Wāhi tūpuna are protected by:

- (3) managing identified *wāhi tūpuna* in accordance with tikaka Māori, and
- ~~(4) avoiding any activities that may be considered inappropriate in *wāhi tūpuna* as identified by Kāi Tahu, and~~
- (5) encouraging the enhancement of access to *wāhi tūpuna* to the extent compatible with the particular *wāhi tūpuna*.

Methods

HCV–WT–M3 – Treaty Partnership Collaboration¹⁸⁵⁸ with Kāi Tahu¹⁸⁵⁹

Local authorities must include Kāi Tahu in all decision making concerning protection of the values of *wāhi tūpuna* sites and areas and collaborate with Kāi Tahu to:

- (1) include Kāi Tahu in all decision-making concerning identification and protection of *wāhi tūpuna* sites and areas and the values that contribute to their significance, and identify and protect places, areas or landscapes of cultural, spiritual or traditional significance to them,¹⁸⁶⁰
- ~~(2) identify and protect the values that contribute to their significance, and~~¹⁸⁶¹
- (3) collaborate with Kāi Tahu to¹⁸⁶² share information relevant to Kāi Tahu interests.

HCV–WT–M1 – Identification

Local authorities must:

- (1) enable Kāi Tahu to identify, in accordance with tikaka,¹⁸⁶³ *wāhi tūpuna* sites, areas and values, using the guide set out in APP7,
- ~~(2) identify *wāhi tūpuna* using the guide set out in APP7,~~¹⁸⁶⁴
- (3) recognise that *wāhi tūpuna* span jurisdictional boundaries and work together to ensure the identification process under (1) enables *wāhi tūpuna* sites, areas and values to be treated uniformly across district boundaries, and
- (4) identify, ~~map, describe~~ record using methods determined by *mana whenua* (which may include mapping)¹⁸⁶⁵ and protect the sites,¹⁸⁶⁶ areas and values identified under (1) in the relevant *regional plans*¹⁸⁶⁷ and *district plans* or, if a site is a sensitive cultural site, use alert layers to advise of sensitive cultural sites without disclosure in plans.

¹⁸⁵⁸ 00226.281 Kāi Tahu ki Otago

¹⁸⁵⁹ Note that this method is deliberately out of order – it has been proposed to be moved from third position in the methods to first by the reporting officer.

¹⁸⁶⁰ 00201.042 CODC

¹⁸⁶¹ 00226.281 Kāi Tahu ki Otago

¹⁸⁶² Clause 10(2)(b)(i), Schedule 1, RMA – consequential amendment arising from 00226.281 Kāi Tahu ki Otago

¹⁸⁶³ 00223.121 Ngāi Tahu ki Murihiku

¹⁸⁶⁴ 00226.279 Kāi Tahu ki Otago

¹⁸⁶⁵ 00223.121 Ngāi Tahu ki Murihiku

¹⁸⁶⁶ Clause 16(2), Schedule 1, RMA

¹⁸⁶⁷ Clause 16(2), Schedule 1, RMA

HCV–WT–M2 – Regional plans¹⁸⁶⁸ and district plans

Local authorities must prepare or amend and maintain their regional plans¹⁸⁶⁹ and district plans to include methods that are in accordance with tikaka to:

- (1) control activities in, or adjacent to, wāhi tūpuna sites and areas,
- (2) require cultural impact assessments where activities have the potential to adversely affect values of¹⁸⁷⁰ wāhi tūpuna and Kāi Tahu have identified the need for an assessment to protect particular values,¹⁸⁷¹
- (3) require including¹⁸⁷² conditions on resource consents or designations to provide buffers or setbacks between protect¹⁸⁷³ wāhi tūpuna values and from¹⁸⁷⁴ incompatible activities,
- (4) require including¹⁸⁷⁵ accidental discovery protocols as an advice note¹⁸⁷⁶ conditions on resource consents or designations for activities that may unearth archaeological sites, in accordance with APP11,¹⁸⁷⁷ and
- (5) maintain existing access to identified wāhi tūpuna sites and areas and promote improved access where practicable.

Explanation

HCV–WT–E1 – Explanation

Providing for wāhi tūpuna plays a role in recognising the resource management principles in sections 6(e), 7(a) and 8 of the RMA. The policies in this chapter recognise the cultural and contemporary significance of wāhi tūpuna to Kāi Tahu and acknowledge that the identification of wāhi tūpuna and the associated values can only be undertaken by Kāi Tahu.

Wāhi tūpuna can be impacted by a range of activities, requiring a range of different management responses.¹⁸⁷⁸ The policies in this chapter are designed to achieve active protection of wāhi tūpuna from inappropriate subdivision, use and development. The policies recognise the significance of wāhi tūpuna to Kāi Tahu, and enable the relationship of Kāi Tahu with their culture and traditions by acknowledging that the identification of wāhi tūpuna and the associated values can only be undertaken by Kāi Tahu, then protecting or managing those sites or areas to ensure that activities do not have any significant adverse effects on the values of of associated with¹⁸⁷⁹ the identified wāhi tūpuna. The policies also direct that the management of activities within or affecting adjacent to wāhi tūpuna must occur in accordance with tikaka.¹⁸⁸⁰ a culturally appropriate manner.

¹⁸⁶⁸ Clause 16(2), Schedule 1, RMA

¹⁸⁶⁹ Clause 16(2), Schedule 1, RMA

¹⁸⁷⁰ 00226.280 Kāi Tahu ki Otago

¹⁸⁷¹ 00223.122 Ngāi Tahu ki Murihiku

¹⁸⁷² 00226.280 Kāi Tahu ki Otago

¹⁸⁷³ 00239.152 Federated Farmers

¹⁸⁷⁴ 00239.152 Federated Farmers

¹⁸⁷⁵ 00239.152 Federated Farmers

¹⁸⁷⁶ 00123.007 Heritage NZ

¹⁸⁷⁷ Consequential amendment to APP11: 00123.007, Heritage NZ

¹⁸⁷⁸ 00223.123 Ngāi Tahu ki Murihiku

¹⁸⁷⁹ Clause 10(2)(b)(i), Schedule 1, RMA – consequential amendment arising from 00226.278 Kāi Tahu ki Otago

¹⁸⁸⁰ 00226.282 Kāi Tahu ki Otago; 00223.123 Ngāi Tahu ki Murihiku

Principal reasons

HCV–WT–PR1 – Principal reasons

Wāhi tūpuna are landscapes that embody the customary and contemporary relationship of Kāi Tahu and their culture and traditions with Otago. The sites and resources used by Kāi Tahu are spread throughout Otago, reflecting the relationship of Kāi Tahu with the *land, coastal waters* and *wai Māori*. *Wāhi tūpuna* have significant cultural value to Kāi Tahu.

The provisions in this chapter play a role in recognising the resource management principles in assist in implementing¹⁸⁸¹ sections 6(e), 7(a) and 8¹⁸⁸² of the RMA 1991¹⁸⁸³ and the NZCPS, as well as providing for the principles of te Tiriti o Waitangi,¹⁸⁸⁴ by requiring:

- the identification of *wāhi tūpuna* ~~in consultation with~~ by Kāi Tahu in accordance with tikaka Māori,¹⁸⁸⁵
- the protection of *wāhi tūpuna* from inappropriate *subdivision*, use and development, and
- specified actions on the part of Otago's *local authorities* in managing activities that may impact *wāhi tūpuna*.

Implementation of the provisions in this chapter will occur primarily through *regional plans*¹⁸⁸⁶ and *district plan* provisions, however *local authorities* may also choose to adopt additional non-regulatory methods to support the achievement of the objectives.

Anticipated environmental results

HCV–WT–AER1 *Wāhi tūpuna* areas and sites ~~The areas and places of *wāhi tūpuna*~~¹⁸⁸⁷ are identified in the relevant *regional plans*¹⁸⁸⁸ and *district plans* using tikaka for identification of *wāhi tūpuna* and their values and the manner of recording those being determined by Kāi Tahu.¹⁸⁸⁹

HCV–WT–AER2 *Wāhi tūpuna* and their values are protected¹⁸⁹⁰ and improved where their values have been degraded by human activities. ~~maintained.~~¹⁸⁹¹

¹⁸⁸¹ Clause 10(2)(b)(i), Schedule 1, RMA – Consequential amendment arising from 00226.282 Kāi Tahu ki Otago; 00223.123 Ngāi Tahu ki Murihiku

¹⁸⁸² Clause 10(2)(b)(i), Schedule 1, RMA – Consequential amendment arising from 00226.282 Kāi Tahu ki Otago; 00223.123 Ngāi Tahu ki Murihiku

¹⁸⁸³ Clause 16(2), Schedule 1, RMA

¹⁸⁸⁴ 00101.052 Toitū Te Whenua

¹⁸⁸⁵ 00226.283 Kāi Tahu ki Otago

¹⁸⁸⁶ Clause 16(2), Schedule 1, RMA

¹⁸⁸⁷ 00239.156 Federated Farmers; 00226.284 Kāi Tahu ki Otago

¹⁸⁸⁸ Clause 16(2), Schedule 1, RMA

¹⁸⁸⁹ 00101.053 Toitū Te Whenua

¹⁸⁹⁰ 00226.285 Kāi Tahu ki Otago

¹⁸⁹¹ 00223.124 Ngāi Tahu ki Murihiku

HCV–HH – Historic heritage

Objective

HCV–HH–O3 – *Historic heritage resources*

Otago’s unique *historic heritage* contributes to the region’s character, sense of identity, and social, cultural and economic well-being, and people’s understanding and appreciation of it is enhanced, and that it is protected¹⁸⁹² is preserved for future generations- against inappropriate subdivision, use and development.¹⁸⁹³

Policies

HCV–HH–P3 – Recognising *historic heritage*

Recognise that Otago’s *historic heritage* includes:

- (1) Māori cultural and *historic heritage* values and sites, and places and areas,¹⁸⁹⁴
- (2) archaeological sites,
- (3) residential and commercial *buildings*,
- (4) pastoral sites,
- (5) surveying equipment, communications and transport, including *roads*, bridges railway infrastructure¹⁸⁹⁵ and routes,
- (6) industrial *historic heritage*, including mills, quarries, limekilns, grain stores, water supply infrastructure¹⁸⁹⁶ and brickworks,
- (7) gold, limestone¹⁸⁹⁷ and other mining systems and settlements,
- (8) dredge and ship wrecks, and coastal structures and buildings, including breakwaters, jetties and lighthouses,¹⁸⁹⁸
- (9) ruins,
- (10) coastal *historic heritage*, particularly Kāi Tahu occupation sites and those associated with early European activities such as whaling,
- (11) memorials, ~~and~~
- (12) trees and vegetation¹⁸⁹⁹ ~~and,~~
- (13) military structures or remains, and¹⁹⁰⁰

¹⁸⁹² 00139.231 DCC

¹⁸⁹³ 00139.231 DCC

¹⁸⁹⁴ 00239.158 Federated Farmers 00226.287 Kāi Tahu ki Otago, 00140.029 Waitaki DC

¹⁸⁹⁵ 00140.029 Waitaki DC

¹⁸⁹⁶ 00140.029 Waitaki DC

¹⁸⁹⁷ 00140.029 Waitaki DC

¹⁸⁹⁸ 00140.029 Waitaki DC

¹⁸⁹⁹ 00239.158 Federated Farmers

¹⁹⁰⁰ 00140.029 Waitaki DC

(14) Historic places within the meaning under section 6 of the Heritage New Zealand Pouhere Taonga Act 2014.¹⁹⁰¹

HCV-HH-P4 – Identifying *historic heritage*

Identify the places and areas of *historic heritage* in Otago in accordance with APP8 and categorise them as:

~~(1) places and areas with special or outstanding *historic heritage* values or qualities, or~~

~~(2) places and areas with *historic heritage* values or qualities.~~¹⁹⁰²

HCV-HH-P5 – Managing *historic heritage*

Except as provided for in EIT-INF-P13¹⁹⁰³, protect *historic heritage* from inappropriate subdivision, use and development¹⁹⁰⁴ by:

(1) requiring the use of accidental discovery protocols in accordance with APP11¹⁹⁰⁵,

(2) avoiding adverse *effects* on areas or places which have been identified as having¹⁹⁰⁶ with special or outstanding *historic heritage* or qualities, except that in circumstances (a) to (f) below, they are remedied or mitigated to the extent practicable:

(a) where HCV-HH-P6 applies¹⁹⁰⁷, or

(b) a project has significant public benefit that outweighs the loss of historic heritage¹⁹⁰⁸; or

(c) the activity has functional or locational constraints and has a significant public benefit¹⁹⁰⁹

(d) the area or place is already impacted by an existing, lawfully established activity¹⁹¹⁰; or

(e) there is significant risk to safety or property¹⁹¹¹; or

(f) any adverse effects are minor and relate to work necessary to adapt a historic heritage building to modern use.¹⁹¹²

(3) avoiding, remedying or mitigating significant adverse *effects* on other areas or places with *historic heritage* values or qualities¹⁹¹³,

~~(4) avoiding, as the first priority, other adverse *effects* on areas or places with *historic heritage* values or qualities;~~

~~(5) where adverse *effects* demonstrably cannot be completely avoided, remedying or mitigating them, and~~

~~(6) recognising that for *infrastructure*, EIT-INF-P13 applies instead of HCV-HH-P5(1) to (5).~~

¹⁹⁰¹ 00137.143 Director General of Conservation

¹⁹⁰² 00206.060 Trojan

¹⁹⁰³ 00310.013 Aurora Energy –

¹⁹⁰⁴ 00313.028 Queenstown Airport Corporation

¹⁹⁰⁵ Consequential amendment to APP11: 00123.007, Heritage NZ

¹⁹⁰⁶ Consequential amendment due removing the two-tier process

¹⁹⁰⁷ 00137.145 DOC and DCC as now P6 and P7 are a combined policy.

¹⁹⁰⁸ 00139.234 DCC

¹⁹⁰⁹ 00115.029 Oceana Gold

¹⁹¹⁰ 00022.024 Graymont

¹⁹¹¹ 00139.234 DCC

¹⁹¹² 00310.013 Telecommunication Companies

¹⁹¹³ 00239.159 Federated Farmers

HCV-HH-P6 – Enhancing *historic heritage*

Enhance places and areas of *historic heritage* wherever possible through the implementation of plan provisions, decisions on applications for *resource consent* and notices of requirement and non-regulatory methods.

HCV-HH-P7 – Integration of *historic heritage*

Maintain *historic heritage* values through the integration of *historic heritage* values into new activities and the adaptive reuse or upgrade of *historic heritage* places and areas.¹⁹¹⁴

HCV-HH-P6A – Maintenance and enhancement of *historic heritage*

Encourage the ongoing use and adaptive re-use of *historic heritage* in a way that, as far as practicable, maintains and enhances the identified heritage values.¹⁹¹⁵

Methods

HCV-HH-M4 – *Regional plans*

Otago Regional Council must prepare or amend and maintain its *regional plans* to:

- (1) identify places and areas with *historic heritage* in accordance with HCV-HH-P4 that are located in the *beds of lakes and rivers, wetlands* and the *coastal marine area*,
- (2) control the following where they may adversely affect *historic heritage*:
 - (a) the character, location, scale and form of *structures* in the *beds of lakes and rivers, wetlands* and in the *coastal marine area*,
 - (b) indigenous vegetation removal in the *beds of lakes and rivers, wetlands* and the *coastal marine area*,
 - (c) *earthworks*, deposition and disturbance to and in the *beds of lakes and rivers* and in the *coastal marine area*,
 - (d) *discharges* to air,
 - (e) taking, use, damming and diversion of, and *discharges* to, *water*, and
 - (f) the disturbance, demolition or alteration of physical elements or *structures of historic heritage* in the *beds of lakes and rivers* and in the *coastal marine area*,
- (2A) enable Kāi Tahu to identify places and areas with historic heritage values for mana whenua in accordance with HCV-HH-P4 that are located on the beds of lakes and rivers, and in wetlands and the coastal marine areas,¹⁹¹⁶

¹⁹¹⁴ 00226.291 Kāi Tahu ki Otago

¹⁹¹⁵ 00016.021 Alluvium and Stoney Creek, 00017.019 Danny Walker and others; 00311.056 and 057 Manawa Energy; 00305.076 Waka Kotahi; 00016.021 Alluvium and Stoney Creek, 00017.019 Danny Walker and other, 00139.235 and 236 DCC

¹⁹¹⁶ 00226.292 Kāi Tahu ki Otago

- (3) include implementation methods to protect *historic heritage* that are in accordance with HCV–HH–P5 and may also include:
 - (a) assessment criteria, development standards or thresholds to control the scale, intensity, form and location of activities (including for the purposes of controlling cumulative adverse effects), and
 - (b) conditions on *resource consents* to provide buffers or setbacks between *historic heritage* places or areas and other incompatible activity, and
- (4) require the use of accidental discovery protocols as conditions on *resource consents* for *earthworks* or other activities that may encounter archaeological features.

HCV–HH–M5 – District Plans

Territorial authorities must prepare or amend and maintain their *district plans* to the extent necessary to:

- (1) identify places and areas with *historic heritage* in accordance with HCV-HH-P4 that are located outside the *beds of lakes and rivers, wetlands* and the *coastal marine area*,
- (2) control the following where they may adversely affect *historic heritage*:
 - (a) the location, intensity and form of *subdivision*,
 - (b) the character, location, scale and form of activities (including *structures*) outside the *beds of lakes and rivers* and the *coastal marine area*,
 - (c) the location and scale of *earthworks* and indigenous vegetation removal outside the *beds of lakes and rivers* and the *coastal marine area*,
 - (d) the disturbance, demolition or alteration of physical elements or *structures* with special or outstanding *historic heritage* value or qualities outside the *coastal marine area, beds of lakes and rivers*,
- (2A) enable Kāi Tahu to identify places and areas with historic heritage values for mana whenua in accordance with HCV-HH-P4 that are located on the beds of lakes and rivers, and in wetlands and the coastal marine areas,¹⁹¹⁷
- (3) include implementation methods to protect *historic heritage* places and areas required by HCV–HH–P5, and may also include:
 - (a) assessment criteria, development standards or thresholds to control the scale, intensity, form and location of activities (including for the purposes of controlling cumulative adverse effects),
 - (b) conditions on *resource consents* and designations to provide buffers or setbacks between *historic heritage* places or areas and other incompatible activity,
 - (c) accidental discovery protocols as conditions on *resource consents* for *earthworks* or other activities that may unearth archaeological features,
 - (d) providing for activities seeking to retain *historic heritage* places, areas or landscapes, including adaptive reuse, maintenance and seismic strengthening,
 - (e) including heritage alert layers in plans to inform the public about areas where there is a high probability of the presence of heritage values, particularly archaeological values, and
- (4) require the use of accidental discovery protocols as conditions on *resource consents* and

¹⁹¹⁷ 00226.292 Kāi Tahu ki Otago

designations for *earthworks* or other activities that may unearth archaeological features.

HCV–HH–M6 – Incentives and education

Local authorities are encouraged to use other mechanisms or incentives to assist in achieving Policies¹⁹¹⁸ HCV–HH–P3 to HCV–HH–P7, including:

- (1) promoting public awareness of *historic heritage* values through providing information and education, and
- (2) rates differentials and *resource consent* fee waivers for activities that involve the retention of historic places or areas.
- (3) enabling Kāi Tahu to interpret places and areas with *historic heritage* values for *mana whenua*.¹⁹¹⁹

Explanation

HCV–HH–E2 – Explanation

The policies in this section are designed to ensure that Otago’s unique *historic heritage* continues to contribute to the region’s character, sense of identity, and social and economic well-being by requiring places and areas of significant *historic heritage* to be identified using regionally consistent methodology, then protecting or managing those sites or areas ~~in particular ways~~ to ensure that ~~other~~¹⁹²⁰ activities do not detract from the region’s special character and sense of identity. This also includes ~~enhancing places and areas of *historic heritage* by~~ encouraging the ongoing use and adaptive re-use of historic heritage integration of *historic heritage* values into new activities and enabling the adaptive reuse or upgrade of *historic heritage* places in certain circumstances.

Principal reasons

HCV–HH–PR2 – Principal reasons

Otago is a region rich in *historic heritage*, with a diversity of significant cultural and *historic heritage* places and areas that contribute to its special character and identity. *Historic heritage* encompasses historic sites, *structures*, places, and areas; archaeological sites; sites of significance to Māori (including wāhi tapu and wāhi taoka sites)¹⁹²¹ and the broader surroundings and landscape in which they are situated. The heritage resources in Otago are reflective of the history that helped to shape the region, and is representative of the different cultures, industries and institutions that contributed to its development. Historic landscapes in the coastal *environment* are specifically recognised in Policy 17 of the NZCPS.

The provisions in this chapter assist in implementing section 6(f) of the RMA ~~1991~~¹⁹²² and the NZCPS by requiring:

- the identification of places and areas with *historic heritage* values and qualities ~~and places and areas with special or outstanding *historic heritage* values and qualities~~ using clear criteria and methodology that is regionally consistent and providing for the assessing of special or outstanding values and qualities with a regionally consistent criteria and methodology where this is required.

¹⁹¹⁸ Clause 16(2), Schedule 1, RMA

¹⁹¹⁹ 00226.294 Kāi Tahu ki Otago

¹⁹²⁰ 00226.295 Kāi Tahu ki Otago

¹⁹²¹ 00226.296 Kāi Tahu ki Otago

¹⁹²² Clause 16(2), Schedule 1, RMA

- the protection of *historic heritage* from inappropriate *subdivision*, use and development,
- the *maintenance and* enhancement of *historic heritage* through *encouraging its ongoing use and adaptive re-use* ~~the integration~~¹⁹²³ of *historic heritage* values into new activities and enabling the adaptive reuse or upgrade of *historic heritage* places and areas in certain circumstances, and
- specified actions on the part of Otago’s *local authorities* in managing *historic heritage*.

Implementation of the provisions in this chapter will occur primarily through *regional plan*¹⁹²⁴ and *district plan* provisions, however *local authorities* may also choose to adopt additional non-regulatory methods to support the achievement of the objectives.

Anticipated environmental results

- | | |
|--------------------|---|
| HCV-HH-AER3 | Heritage resources that make a significant contribution towards Otago’s <i>historic heritage</i> are identified and protected. |
| HCV-HH-AER4 | The number, type, extent and distribution of <i>historic heritage</i> sites and places with special or outstanding values or qualities are maintained. |
| HCV-HH-AER5 | Otago’s existing built <i>historic heritage</i> is maintained <u>and</u> enhanced and integrated through efficient use, or adaptive reuse, where appropriate. |

¹⁹²³ Consequential amendments from 00016.021 Alluvium and Stoney Creek, 00017.019 Danny Walker and others; 00311.056 and 057 Manawa Energy; 00305.076 Waka Kotahi; 00016.021 Alluvium and Stoney Creek, 00017.019 Danny Walker and other, 00139.235 and 236 DCC

¹⁹²⁴ Clause 16(2), Schedule 1, RMA

NFL – Natural features and landscapes

Advice note: Pursuant to CE-P1 the provisions within this chapter do not apply in the coastal environment.¹⁹²⁵

Objectives

NFL-O1 – Outstanding ~~and highly valued~~¹⁹²⁶ natural features and landscapes

The areas and values of Otago's outstanding ~~and highly valued~~¹⁹²⁷ natural features and landscapes are identified, and the use and development of Otago's natural and physical resources results in:

- (1) the protection of ~~them outstanding natural features and landscapes~~ from inappropriate subdivision, use and development.¹⁹²⁸, and
- (2) the maintenance or enhancement of ~~highly valued natural features and landscapes.~~¹⁹²⁹

Policies

NFL-P1 – Identification

~~In order to manage~~ Identify the areas and values of¹⁹³⁰ outstanding ~~and highly valued~~¹⁹³¹ natural features and landscapes, identify:

- (1) ~~the areas and values of outstanding and highly valued~~¹⁹³² natural features and landscapes in accordance with Te Tangi a te Manu: Aotearoa New Zealand Landscape Assessment Guidelines', Tuia Pito Ora New Zealand Institute of Landscape Architects, July 2022.¹⁹³³ APP9, and
- (2) ~~the capacity of those natural features and landscapes to accommodate use or development while protecting the values that contribute to the natural feature and landscape being considered outstanding or highly valued.~~

¹⁹²⁵ 00301.054 Port Otago.

¹⁹²⁶ 00211.039 LAC Properties Trustees Limited, 00210.039 Lane Hocking, 00118.063 Maryhill Limited, 00306.073 and 00306.068 Meridian Energy Limited, 00114.063 Mt Cardrona Station, 00209.039 Universal Developments Hawea Limited.

¹⁹²⁷ 00211.039 LAC Properties Trustees Limited, 00210.039 Lane Hocking, 00118.063 Maryhill Limited, 00306.073 and 00306.068 Meridian Energy Limited, 00114.063 Mt Cardrona Station, 00209.039 Universal Developments Hawea Limited.

¹⁹²⁸ 00411.076 Wayfare, 00206.062 Trojan, and 00311.059 Trustpower.

¹⁹²⁹ 00306.003, 00306.068, 00306.069, 00306.070; 00306.071, 00306.072, 00306.073, 00306.085 Meridian; 00020.024 Rayonier Matariki Forests; 00320.028 Network Waitak; 00318.035 Contact; 00511.028 PowerNet ; 00115.03 Oceana Gold; 00211039 LAC; 00210.039 Lane Hocking; 00118.063 Maryhill Limited; 00014.063, 00014.065 Mt Cardrona Station; 00209.039 Universal Developments; 00126.041 Harbour Fish

¹⁹³⁰ 00014.065 Mt Cardrona Station

¹⁹³¹ 00211.039 LAC Properties Trustees Limited, 00210.039 Lane Hocking, 00118.063 Maryhill Limited, 00306.073 and 00306.068 Meridian Energy Limited, 00114.063 Mt Cardrona Station, 00209.039 Universal Developments Hawea Limited.

¹⁹³² 00211.039 LAC Properties Trustees Limited, 00210.039 Lane Hocking, 00118.063 Maryhill Limited, 00306.073 and 00306.068 Meridian Energy Limited, 00114.063 Mt Cardrona Station, 00209.039 Universal Developments Hawea Limited.

¹⁹³³ 00310.015 Telecommunications Companies, 00311.066 Trustpower; 00137.161 DOC.

NFL-P2 – Protection of outstanding natural features and landscapes

Protect outstanding natural features and landscapes from inappropriate subdivision, use and development¹⁹³⁴ by:

- (1A) avoiding exceeding the landscape capacity of the natural feature or landscape,¹⁹³⁵
- (1) maintaining ~~avoiding adverse effects on~~¹⁹³⁶ the values that contribute to the natural feature or landscape being considered outstanding, even if those values are not themselves outstanding, and
- (2) avoiding, remedying or mitigating other adverse ~~effects~~; and
- (3) managing the adverse effects of infrastructure on the values of outstanding natural features and landscapes in accordance with EIT-INF-P13.¹⁹³⁷

NFL-P3 – Maintenance of highly valued natural features and landscapes

Maintain or enhance *highly valued natural features and landscapes* by:

- (1) ~~avoiding significant adverse effects on the values of the natural feature or landscape, and~~
- (2) ~~avoiding, remedying or mitigating other adverse effects~~.¹⁹³⁸

NFL-P4 – Restoration

Promote restoration of the areas and values of outstanding and *highly valued natural features and landscapes* where those areas or values have been reduced or lost.¹⁹³⁹

NFL-P5 – Wilding conifers

Reduce the impact of *wilding conifers* on outstanding and *highly valued*¹⁹⁴⁰ ~~natural features and landscapes~~ by:

- (1) ~~avoiding afforestation and replanting of plantation forests with wilding conifer species listed in APP5 within:~~
 - (a) ~~areas identified as outstanding natural features or landscapes, and~~
 - (b) ~~buffer zones adjacent to outstanding natural features and landscapes where it is necessary to protect the outstanding natural feature or landscape, and~~
- (2) ~~supporting initiatives to control existing wilding conifers and limit their further spread.~~

¹⁹³⁴ 00301.054 Port Otago.

¹⁹³⁵ 00014.063 Mt Cardrona Station.

¹⁹³⁶ 00014.063 Mt Cardrona Station.

¹⁹³⁷ 00139.243 DCC

¹⁹³⁸ 00211.039 LAC Properties Trustees Limited, 00210.039 Lane Hocking, 00118.063 Maryhill Limited, 00306.073 and 00306.068 Meridian Energy Limited, 00114.063 Mt Cardrona Station, 00209.039 Universal Developments Hawea Limited.

¹⁹³⁹ 00121.096 Ravensdown

¹⁹⁴⁰ 00211.039 LAC Properties Trustees Limited, 00210.039 Lane Hocking, 00118.063 Maryhill Limited, 00306.073 and 00306.068 Meridian Energy Limited, 00114.063 Mt Cardrona Station, 00209.039 Universal Developments Hawea Limited.

NFL-P6 – Coastal features and landscapes

Natural features and landscapes located within the coastal environment are managed by CE-P6 and implementation of CE-P6 also contributes to achieving NFL-O1.¹⁹⁴¹

Methods

NFL-M1 – Identification

Territorial authorities must:

- (1) include in their *district plans* a map or maps and a statement of the values of the areas of outstanding and ~~highly valued~~¹⁹⁴² *natural features and landscapes* in accordance with NFL-P1,
- (2) in areas likely to face development or growth pressure,¹⁹⁴³ include in their *district plans* a statement of the capacity of outstanding and ~~highly valued~~¹⁹⁴⁴ *natural features and landscapes* to accommodate use or development while protecting the values that contribute to the natural feature and landscape being considered outstanding, ~~change in use and development without their values being materially compromised or lost,~~ in accordance with NFL-P1,¹⁹⁴⁵
- (2A) collaborate with Kāi Tahu to identify the areas, values, and capacity of natural features and landscapes of significance for Kāi Tahu in accordance with tikaka, and record and apply appropriate management responses as determined by *mana whenua*,¹⁹⁴⁶
- (3) recognise that natural features and landscapes may span jurisdictional boundaries and work together, including with the Regional Council and adjoining Regional Councils¹⁹⁴⁷, to identify areas under (1) to ensure that the identification of outstanding natural features and landscapes are treated uniformly across district boundaries and, where appropriate, regional boundaries¹⁹⁴⁸, and
- (4) prioritise identification under (1) in areas that are likely to contain outstanding natural features or landscapes and are likely to face development or growth pressure over the life of this RPS.

NFL-M2 – Regional plans

Otago Regional Council must prepare or amend and maintain its *regional plans* to:

- (1) control the use and development of *water bodies*, the *beds of rivers and lakes*, and *wetlands* in order to protect outstanding natural features and landscapes in accordance with NFL-P2, ~~and maintain and enhance highly valued natural features or landscapes~~ in accordance with NFL-P3,

¹⁹⁴¹ 00301.054 Port Otago

¹⁹⁴² 00211.039 LAC Properties Trustees Limited, 00210.039 Lane Hocking, 00118.063 Maryhill Limited, 00306.073 and 00306.068 Meridian Energy Limited, 00114.063 Mt Cardrona Station, 00209.039 Universal Developments Hawea Limited.

¹⁹⁴³ 00014.065 Mt Cardrona Station.

¹⁹⁴⁴ 00211.039 LAC Properties Trustees Limited, 00210.039 Lane Hocking, 00118.063 Maryhill Limited, 00306.073 and 00306.068 Meridian Energy Limited, 00114.063 Mt Cardrona Station, 00209.039 Universal Developments Hawea Limited.

¹⁹⁴⁵ 00014.065 Mt Cardrona Station.

¹⁹⁴⁶ 00223.128 Ngāi Tahu ki Murihiku, 00234.036, 00234.037 Te Rūnanga o Ngāi Tahu.

¹⁹⁴⁷ 00013.016 CRC.

¹⁹⁴⁸ 00013.016 CRC.

and

- ~~(2) provide for and encourage activities undertaken for the primary purpose of restoring *highly valued natural features or landscapes* in accordance with NFL-P4.~~¹⁹⁴⁹

NFL-M3 – District plans

Territorial authorities must prepare or amend and maintain their *district plans* to:

- (1) control the *subdivision*, use and development of *land* and the use of the surface of *water bodies* in order to protect outstanding natural features or landscapes in accordance with NFL-P2, ~~and maintain and enhance *highly valued natural features or landscapes* in accordance with NFL-P3,~~¹⁹⁵⁰
- (2) ~~provide for and encourage activities undertaken for the primary purpose of restoring *highly valued natural features or landscapes* in accordance with NFL-P4, and~~¹⁹⁵¹
- (3) manage *wilding conifer* spread in accordance with LF-LS-P16A. ~~NFLP5.~~¹⁹⁵²

NFL-M4 – Other incentives and mechanisms

Local authorities are encouraged to consider the use of other mechanisms or incentives to assist in achieving the outcomes sought by the policies in this chapter, including:

- (1) funding assistance for restoration projects (for example, through the Regional Council's ECO Fund),
- (2) purchase of *land* that forms part of a natural feature or landscape,
- (3) development or design guidelines (for example, colour palettes for *structures* in or on natural features or landscapes),
- (4) rates relief for *land* that is protected due to its status as an outstanding natural feature or landscape,
- (5) education and advice,
- (6) waiver or reduction of processing fees for activities where the primary purpose is to enhance the values of ~~*highly valued*~~¹⁹⁵³ *natural features or landscapes*, and
- (7) advocating for a collaborative approach between central and local government to fund and carry out *wilding conifer* control.

¹⁹⁴⁹ 00211.039 LAC Properties Trustees Limited, 00210.039 Lane Hocking, 00118.063 Maryhill Limited, 00306.073 and 00306.068 Meridian Energy Limited, 00114.063 Mt Cardrona Station, 00209.039 Universal Developments Hawea Limited.

¹⁹⁵⁰ 00211.039 LAC Properties Trustees Limited, 00210.039 Lane Hocking, 00118.063 Maryhill Limited, 00306.073 and 00306.068 Meridian Energy Limited, 00114.063 Mt Cardrona Station, 00209.039 Universal Developments Hawea Limited.

¹⁹⁵¹ 00211.039 LAC Properties Trustees Limited, 00210.039 Lane Hocking, 00118.063 Maryhill Limited, 00306.073 and 00306.068 Meridian Energy Limited, 00114.063 Mt Cardrona Station, 00209.039 Universal Developments Hawea Limited.

¹⁹⁵² Clause 10(2)(b)(i), Schedule 1, RMA – consequential amendment arising from 00411.006 Wayfare, 00137.084 DOC (insertion of new LF-LS-P16A)

¹⁹⁵³ 00211.039 LAC Properties Trustees Limited, 00210.039 Lane Hocking, 00118.063 Maryhill Limited, 00306.073 and 00306.068 Meridian Energy Limited, 00114.063 Mt Cardrona Station, 00209.039 Universal Developments Hawea Limited.

Explanation

NFL-E1 – Explanation

The policies in this chapter are designed to require outstanding ~~and highly valued~~¹⁹⁵⁴ *natural features and landscapes* to be identified using regionally consistent attributes, then managing activities to either protect outstanding natural features and landscapes in accordance with section 6(b) of the RMA, 1991 or maintain ~~highly valued natural features or landscapes~~ in accordance with section 7 of the RMA 1991. This distinction recognises that these areas have values with differing degrees of significance and that, generally, those classified as ‘highly valued’ will have greater capacity to accommodate ~~land use change and development without values being adversely affected.~~¹⁹⁵⁵ The policies seek to control the impact of *wilding conifers* which are a particular threat to Otago’s natural features and landscapes, in a way that recognises the regulations in the NESPF¹⁹⁵⁶.

Principal reasons

NFL-PR1 – Principal reasons

Natural features include resources that are the result of natural processes, particularly those reflecting a particular geology, topography, geomorphology, hydrology, ecology, or other physical attribute that creates a natural feature or combination of natural features. Landscapes include the natural and physical attributes of *land* together with air and *water*, which change over time and which is made known by people’s evolving perceptions and associations. Natural features and landscapes also have significant cultural value to Kāi Tahu. There are many sites of significance across Otago, reflecting the relationship of Kāi Tahu with the *land, water* and sea.

The provisions in this chapter assist in protecting Otago’s outstanding ~~and highly valued~~¹⁹⁵⁷ *natural features and landscapes* by requiring:

- the identification of outstanding ~~and highly valued~~¹⁹⁵⁸ *natural features and landscapes* using regionally consistent criteria,
- the protection of outstanding *natural features and landscapes* and maintenance of ~~highly valued natural features and landscapes~~¹⁹⁵⁹,

¹⁹⁵⁴ 00211.039 LAC Properties Trustees Limited, 00210.039 Lane Hocking, 00118.063 Maryhill Limited, 00306.073 and 00306.068 Meridian Energy Limited, 00114.063 Mt Cardrona Station, 00209.039 Universal Developments Hawea Limited.

¹⁹⁵⁵ Clause 10(2)(b)(i).

¹⁹⁵⁶ Clause 10(2)(b)(i), Schedule 1, RMA – consequential amendment arising from 00411.006 Wayfare, 00137.084 DOC (insertion of new LF-LS-P16A)

¹⁹⁵⁷ 00211.039 LAC Properties Trustees Limited, 00210.039 Lane Hocking, 00118.063 Maryhill Limited, 00306.073 and 00306.068 Meridian Energy Limited, 00114.063 Mt Cardrona Station, 00209.039 Universal Developments Hawea Limited.

¹⁹⁵⁸ 00211.039 LAC Properties Trustees Limited, 00210.039 Lane Hocking, 00118.063 Maryhill Limited, 00306.073 and 00306.068 Meridian Energy Limited, 00114.063 Mt Cardrona Station, 00209.039 Universal Developments Hawea Limited.

¹⁹⁵⁹ 00211.039 LAC Properties Trustees Limited, 00210.039 Lane Hocking, 00118.063 Maryhill Limited, 00306.073 and 00306.068 Meridian Energy Limited, 00114.063 Mt Cardrona Station, 00209.039 Universal Developments Hawea Limited.

- ~~an ongoing reduction in the impact of *wilding conifers* on natural features and landscapes, and~~¹⁹⁶⁰
- specified actions on the part of Otago’s *local authorities* in managing natural features and landscapes.

Implementation of the provisions in this chapter will occur primarily through *regional* and *district plan* provisions, however *local authorities* may also choose to adopt additional non-regulatory methods to support the achievement of the objectives.

Anticipated environmental results

- NFL–AER1** The number, type, extent and distribution of identified outstanding ~~and highly valued~~¹⁹⁶¹ *natural features and landscapes* are maintained over the life of this RPS.
- NFL–AER2** The values of outstanding and *highly valued natural features and landscapes* are not reduced or lost.
- ~~**NFL–AER3** Within areas identified as outstanding or highly valued¹⁹⁶² *natural features or landscapes*, the area of *land vegetated by wilding conifers* is reduced over the life of this RPS.~~¹⁹⁶³

¹⁹⁶⁰ Clause 10(2)(b)(i), Schedule 1, RMA – consequential amendment arising from 00411.006 Wayfare, 00137.084 DOC (insertion of new LF-LS-P16A)

¹⁹⁶¹ 00211.039 LAC Properties Trustees Limited, 00210.039 Lane Hocking, 00118.063 Maryhill Limited, 00306.073 and 00306.068 Meridian Energy Limited, 00114.063 Mt Cardrona Station, 00209.039 Universal Developments Hawea Limited.

¹⁹⁶² 00211.039 LAC Properties Trustees Limited, 00210.039 Lane Hocking, 00118.063 Maryhill Limited, 00306.073 and 00306.068 Meridian Energy Limited, 00114.063 Mt Cardrona Station, 00209.039 Universal Developments Hawea Limited.

¹⁹⁶³ Clause 10(2)(b)(i), Schedule 1, RMA – consequential amendment arising from 00411.006 Wayfare, 00137.084 DOC (insertion of new LF-LS-P16A)

UFD – Urban form and development

Note to readers: As a result of reporting officer recommendations, the following provisions have been moved to the LF-LS chapter:

- UFD-O4 – Development in rural areas
- UFD-P7 – Rural areas
- UFD-P8 – Rural lifestyle and rural residential zones
- UFD-M2(8) and (9)
- UFD-E1 – Explanation (third paragraph)
- UFD-PR1 – Principal reasons (sixth paragraph)

The notified numbering of UFD-O4 and UFD-P7 has been retained in the LF-LS chapter as an interim measure so that it is easier to link submission points to provisions. The numbering of both chapters will be updated and made chronological following a final decision by Council.

Objectives

UFD-O1 – ~~Form and function~~ Development¹⁹⁶⁴ of urban areas

The development and change form and functioning of Otago’s urban areas occurs in a strategic and coordinated way, which¹⁹⁶⁵:

- (1) ~~reflects~~ accommodates¹⁹⁶⁶ the diverse and changing needs and preferences of Otago’s people and communities, now and in the future, ~~and~~¹⁹⁶⁷
- (2) integrates effectively with surrounding urban areas and rural areas,¹⁹⁶⁸ ~~maintains or enhances the significant values and features identified in this RPS, and the character and resources of each urban area.~~
- (2A) results in a consolidated, well-connected and well-designed urban form which is integrated with infrastructure, and¹⁹⁶⁹
- (2B) supports climate change adaptation and climate change mitigation.¹⁹⁷⁰

UFD-O2 – ~~Development of urban areas~~

The ~~development and change of Otago’s urban areas:~~

- ~~(1) improves housing choice, quality, and affordability,~~
- ~~(2) allows business and other non-residential activities to meet the needs of communities in appropriate locations,~~
- ~~(3) respects and wherever possible enhances the area’s history, setting, and natural and built environment,~~

¹⁹⁶⁴ 00211.045 LAC, 00210.045 Lane Hocking, 00209.045 Universal Developments, 00139.001, 00139.250 & 00139.251 DCC

¹⁹⁶⁵ 00211.045 LAC, 00210.045 Lane Hocking, 00209.045 Universal Developments, 00139.250 & 00139.251 DCC

¹⁹⁶⁶ 00139.250 DCC

¹⁹⁶⁷ 00321.084 New Zealand Infrastructure Commission, 00139.250 & 00139.251 DCC

¹⁹⁶⁸ 00139.001, 00139.250 & 00139.251 DCC

¹⁹⁶⁹ 00211.045 LAC, 00210.045 Lane Hocking, 00209.045 Universal Developments, 00139.250 & 00139.251 DCC

¹⁹⁷⁰ 00139.250 DCC, 00136.010 Minister for the Environment

- ~~(4) — delivers good urban design outcomes, and improves liveability,~~
- ~~(5) — improves connectivity within urban areas, particularly by *active transport* and *public transport*,~~
- ~~(6) — minimises conflict between incompatible activities,~~
- ~~(7) — manages the exposure of *risk* from *natural hazards* in accordance with the HAZ-NH—Natural hazards section of this RPS,~~
- ~~(8) — results in sustainable and efficient use of *water, energy, land, and infrastructure*,~~
- ~~(9) — achieves integration of *land use* with existing and planned *development infrastructure* and *additional infrastructure* and facilitates the safe and efficient ongoing use of *regionally significant infrastructure*,~~
- ~~(10) — achieves consolidated, well designed and located, and sustainable development in and around existing *urban areas* as the primary focus for accommodating the region’s urban growth and change, and~~
- ~~(11) — is guided by the input and involvement of *mana whenua*.¹⁹⁷¹~~

UFD-03 — Strategic planning

Strategic planning is undertaken in advance of significant development, expansion or redevelopment of *urban areas* to ensure that

- ~~(1) — there is sufficient *development capacity* supported by integrated *infrastructure* provision for Otago’s housing and business needs in the short, medium and long term,~~
- ~~(2) — development is located, designed and delivered in a way and at a rate that recognises and provides for locationally relevant regionally significant features and values identified by this RPS, and~~
- ~~(3) the involvement of *mana whenua* is facilitated, and their values and aspirations are provided for.¹⁹⁷²~~

UFD-04 — Development in rural areas

Development in Otago’s *rural areas* occurs in a way that:

- ~~(1) avoids impacts on significant values and features identified in this RPS,~~
- ~~(2) avoids as the first priority, land and soils identified as highly productive by LF-LS-P19 unless there is an *operational need* for the development to be located in *rural areas*,~~
- ~~(3) only provides for urban expansion, rural lifestyle and rural residential development and the establishment of *sensitive activities*, in locations identified through strategic planning or zoned within *district plans* as suitable for such development; and~~
- ~~(4) outside of areas identified in (3), maintains and enhances the *natural and physical resources* that support the productive capacity, rural character, and long term visibility of the rural sector and rural communities.¹⁹⁷³~~

¹⁹⁷¹ 00139.001, 00139.251 DCC

¹⁹⁷² 00139.252 DCC

¹⁹⁷³ Moved to LF-LS chapter (00236.096 Horticulture NZ, 00239.197 Federated Farmers, 00237.045 and 00237.063 Beef + Lamb and DINZ)

~~UFD-O5 – Urban development and *climate change*~~

The impacts of *climate change* are responded to in the development and change of Otago's *urban areas* so that:

- ~~(1) the contributions of current communities and future generations to *climate change* impacts are reduced,~~
- ~~(2) community resilience increases,~~
- ~~(3) adaptation to the effects of *climate change* is facilitated,~~
- ~~(4) energy use is minimised, and energy efficiency improves, and~~
- ~~(5) establishment and use of *small and community scale distributed electricity generation* is enabled.¹⁹⁷⁴~~

Policies

UFD-P1 – Strategic planning

Strategic planning processes, undertaken at an appropriate scale and detail, precede urban growth and development and:

- (1) identify how housing choice, quality, and affordability will be improved,¹⁹⁷⁵
- (1A) ensure integration of *land use* and *infrastructure*, including how, where and when necessary *development infrastructure* and *additional infrastructure* will be provided, and by whom,
- (2) demonstrate at least sufficient *development capacity* supported by integrated *infrastructure* provision for Otago's housing and business needs in the short, medium and long term,
- (3) maximise current and future opportunities for increasing *resilience* and reducing contributions of communities to *climate change*,¹⁹⁷⁶ and facilitating¹⁹⁷⁷ adaptation to changing demand, needs, preferences and *climate change*,
- (4) ~~minimise *risks* from and improve resilience to *natural hazards*, including those exacerbated by *climate change*, while not increasing *risk* for other development,~~¹⁹⁷⁸
- (5) indicate how connectivity will be improved and connections will be provided within *urban areas*,
- (6) provide opportunities for iwi, hapū and whānau involvement in planning processes, including in decision making, to ensure provision is made for their needs and aspirations, and cultural practices and values,
- (7) facilitate involvement of the current community and respond to the reasonably foreseeable needs of future communities, and
- ~~(8) identify, maintain and where possible, enhance important features and values identified by this RPS.~~

¹⁹⁷⁴ 00139.254 DCC

¹⁹⁷⁵ Shifted from UFD-O2. Clause 10(2)(b)(i), Schedule 1, RMA – consequential amendment arising from 00139.001, 00139.250, 00139.251 DCC

¹⁹⁷⁶ 00226.312 Kāi Tahu ki Otago

¹⁹⁷⁷ Clause 16(2), Schedule 1, RMA

¹⁹⁷⁸ 00139.001 DCC

(8A) identify areas of potential conflict between incompatible activities and sets out the methods by which these are to be resolved.¹⁹⁸⁰

UFD-P2 – Sufficiency of development capacity

Ensure that at least sufficient¹⁹⁸¹ ~~urban area~~ housing and business *development capacity* is provided in urban areas, including any required competitiveness margin, is provided in the short, medium and long term, including by:¹⁹⁸²

- ~~(1) — undertaking strategic planning in accordance with UFD-P1~~
- ~~(2) — identifying areas for urban intensification in accordance with UFD-P3,~~
- ~~(3) — identifying areas for urban expansion in accordance with UFD-P4,~~
- ~~(4) — providing for commercial and industrial activities in accordance with UFD-P5 and UFD-P6~~¹⁹⁸³
- (5) responding to any demonstrated insufficiency in housing or business *development capacity* by increasing *development capacity* or providing more *development infrastructure* as required, as soon as practicable,
- (5A) being responsive to plan changes that demonstrate compliance with UFD-P10,¹⁹⁸⁴ and
- (6) requiring Tier 2 *urban environments* to meet, at least, the relevant housing bottom lines in APP10.

UFD-P3 – Urban intensification

Manage ~~Within urban areas~~ intensification in urban areas, so that as a minimum, is enabled where it:¹⁹⁸⁵

- (1) contributes to establishing or maintaining the qualities of a *well-functioning urban environment*,
- (2) is well-served by existing or planned *development infrastructure* and *additional infrastructure*,
- (3) enables heights and densities that¹⁹⁸⁶ meets the greater of demonstrated demand for housing and/or business use or the level of accessibility provided for by existing or planned *active transport* or *public transport*,
- ~~(4) — addresses an identified shortfall for housing or business space, in accordance with UFD-P2,~~¹⁹⁸⁷
- (5) addresses issues of concern to iwi and hapū, including those identified in any relevant iwi planning documents, and
- ~~(6) — manages adverse effects on values or resources identified by this RPS that require specific management or protection.~~¹⁹⁸⁸

¹⁹⁷⁹ 00226.312 Kāi Tahu ki Otago

¹⁹⁸⁰ 00306.077 Meridian, 00322.039 Fulton Hogan, 00313.031 Queenstown Airport, 00235.150 OWRUG, 00236.100 Horticulture NZ, 00239.176 Federated Farmers, 00204.005 Daisy Link

¹⁹⁸¹ 00211.047 LAC, 00210.046 Lane Hocking, 00118.066 Maryhill Ltd, 00014.066 Mt Cardrona Station, 00209.046 Universal Developments, 00139.001 DCC

¹⁹⁸² 00139.001 DCC

¹⁹⁸³ 00139.256 DCC

¹⁹⁸⁴ 00204.005 Daisy Link

¹⁹⁸⁵ 00139.257 Dunedin City Council

¹⁹⁸⁶ 00139.001 DCC

¹⁹⁸⁷ 00139.257 DCC

¹⁹⁸⁸ 00266.314 Kāi Tahu ki Otago, 00138.213 QLDC

UFD-P4 – Urban expansion

Expansion of existing *urban areas* may occur¹⁹⁸⁹ ~~is facilitated~~ where at a minimum¹⁹⁹⁰ the expansion:

(1) contributes to establishing or maintaining the qualities of a *well-functioning urban environment*,

(1A) is identified by and undertaken consistent with strategic plans prepared in accordance with UFD-P1, or is required to address a shortfall identified in accordance with UFD-P2,¹⁹⁹¹

(1B) achieves consolidated, well designed and sustainable development in and around existing *urban areas*,¹⁹⁹²

(2) is logically and appropriately staged, and¹⁹⁹³ will not result in inefficient or sporadic patterns of settlement and residential growth,

(3) is integrated efficiently and effectively with *development infrastructure* and *additional infrastructure* in a strategic, timely and co-ordinated way,

(4) addresses issues of concern to iwi and hapū, including those identified in any relevant iwi planning documents,

(5) manages adverse *effects* on other values or resources identified by this RPS that require specific management or protection,

~~(6) avoids, as the first priority, highly productive land except as provided for in the NPS-HPL,~~¹⁹⁹⁴ and ~~identified in accordance with LF-LS-P19,~~

~~(7) locates the new urban/rural zone boundary interface by considering:-~~

~~(a) —considers adverse *effects*, particularly *reverse sensitivity effects*, on *rural areas* and existing and anticipated¹⁹⁹⁵ or potential productive *primary production*¹⁹⁹⁶ or *rural industry*¹⁹⁹⁷ activities when determining the location of the new urban/rural beyond the new boundary, and~~¹⁹⁹⁸

~~(b) —key natural or built barriers or physical features, significant values or features identified in this RPS, or cadastral boundaries that will result in a permanent, logical and defensible long-term limit beyond which further urban expansion is demonstrably inappropriate and unlikely, such that provision for future development infrastructure expansion and connectivity beyond the new boundary does not need to be provided for, or~~

~~(c) —reflects a short or medium term, intermediate or temporary zoning or infrastructure servicing boundary where provision for future *development infrastructure* expansion and connectivity should not be foreclosed, even if further expansion is not currently anticipated.~~¹⁹⁹⁹

¹⁹⁸⁹ 00139.258 Dunedin City Council

¹⁹⁹⁰ 00136.011 MfE, 00139.258 DCC.

¹⁹⁹¹ 00136.011 Minister for the Environment, 00413.006 NZ Cherry Corp, 00204.008 Daisy Link

¹⁹⁹² Shifted from UFD-O2(10). Clause 10(2)(b)(i), Schedule 1, RMA – consequential amendment arising from 00139.001 DCC

¹⁹⁹³ 00139.258 DCC

¹⁹⁹⁴ Clause 10(2)(b)(i), Schedule 1, RMA – consequential amendment arising from 00014.031 Mt Cardrona Station, 00209.01 Universal Developments, 00210.012 Lane Hocking, 00211.01 LAC Properties

¹⁹⁹⁵ 00213.042 Fonterra

¹⁹⁹⁶ 00208.010 AgResearch, 00233.040 Fonterra, 00322.040 Fulton Hogan

¹⁹⁹⁷ 00410.008 Rural Contractors NZ

¹⁹⁹⁸ 00213.042 Fonterra

¹⁹⁹⁹ 00139.258 DCC

UFD–P5 – Commercial activities

Provide for *commercial activities* in *urban areas* by:

- (1) enabling a wide variety and scale of *commercial activities*, *social activities*, *recreational*²⁰⁰⁰ and *cultural activities* to concentrate in ~~central business districts~~ *city, metropolitan*,²⁰⁰¹ *town centres* and *commercial zoned*²⁰⁰² *areas, where appropriate*,²⁰⁰³ especially if they are highly accessible by *public transport* ~~and or~~²⁰⁰⁴ *active transport*,
- (2) enabling smaller local and neighbourhood centres, *mixed use zones*²⁰⁰⁵ and rural settlements to accommodate a variety of *commercial activities*, *social*, *recreational activities*²⁰⁰⁶ and *cultural activities* of a scale appropriate to service local community needs, *and*
- ~~(3) providing for the expansion of existing areas or establishment of new areas identified in (1) and (2) by first applying UFD–P1 and UFD–P2, and~~²⁰⁰⁷
- (4) outside the areas described in (1) and (2), ~~allow~~ *provide*²⁰⁰⁸ for small scale retail and service activities, home occupations and *community services* to establish within or close to the communities they serve.

UFD–P6 – Industrial activities

Provide for *industrial activities* in *urban areas* by:

- (1) identifying specific locations and applying zoning suitable for accommodating *industrial activities* and their reasonable needs and *effects* including supporting or *ancillary activities*,
- (2) identifying a range of *land* sizes and locations suitable for different *industrial activities*, and their *operational needs* including land-extensive activities,
- ~~(3) managing the establishment of non-industrial activities, in industrial zones, by to avoid activities likely to result in the likelihood of~~²⁰⁰⁹ *reverse sensitivity effects* on *existing or potential*²⁰¹⁰ *industrial activities* *arising, unless the potential for reverse sensitivity is insignificant*.²⁰¹¹ ~~or likely to result in an inefficient use of industrial zoned land or infrastructure, particularly where:~~
 - ~~(a) the area provides for a significant operational need for a particular industrial activity or grouping of industrial activities that are unlikely or are less efficiently able to be met in alternative locations, or~~²⁰¹²
 - ~~(b) the area contains nationally or regionally significant infrastructure and the requirements of EIT–INF–P15 apply, and~~²⁰¹³

²⁰⁰⁰ 00206.071 Trojan, 00411.086 Wayfare

²⁰⁰¹ 00139.260 DCC

²⁰⁰² 00139.260 DCC

²⁰⁰³ 00139.260 DCC

²⁰⁰⁴ 00401.013 Tussock Rise

²⁰⁰⁵ 00206.071 Trojan, 00411.086 Wayfare

²⁰⁰⁶ 00206.071 Trojan, 00411.086 Wayfare

²⁰⁰⁷ 00139.260 DCC

²⁰⁰⁸ 00139.260 DCC

²⁰⁰⁹ 00139.260 DCC

²⁰¹⁰ 00233.043 Fonterra

²⁰¹¹ 00139.260 DCC

²⁰¹² 00139.260 DCC

²⁰¹³ 00139.261 DCC

~~(4) in areas that are experiencing or expected to experience high demand from other urban activities, and the criteria in (3)(a) or (3)(b) do not apply, managing the establishment of non-industrial activities and the transition of industrial zoned areas to other purposes, by first applying (1) and (2).~~²⁰¹⁴

UFD-P7 – Rural areas

The management of *rural areas*:

~~(1) provides for the maintenance and, wherever possible, enhancement of important features and values identified by this RPS,~~

~~(2) outside areas identified in (1), maintains the productive capacity, amenity and character of *rural areas*,~~

~~(3) enables *primary production* particularly on land or soils identified as highly productive in accordance with LF-LS-P19,~~

~~(4) facilitates *rural industry* and supporting activities,~~

~~(5) directs rural residential and rural lifestyle development to areas zoned for that purpose in accordance with UFD-P8,~~

~~(6) restricts the establishment of residential activities, *sensitive activities*, and non-rural businesses which could adversely affect, including by way of reverse sensitivity, the productive capacity of *highly productive land*, *primary production* and *rural industry* activities, and~~

~~(7) otherwise limit the establishment of activities, *sensitive activities*, and non-rural businesses to those that can demonstrate an *operational need* to be located in *rural areas*.~~²⁰¹⁵

UFD-P9 – Iwi, hapū and whānau

~~Facilitate the development of Native Reserves and *Te Ture Whenua Māori land*, for *papakāika*, *kāika*, *nohoaka*, and *marae*, where existing or planned *development infrastructure* of sufficient capacity is or can be provided (including allowance for self-servicing systems).~~²⁰¹⁶

UFD-P10 – Criteria for significant development capacity

~~‘*Significant development capacity*’²⁰¹⁷ is provided for where a proposed plan change affecting an *urban environment* meets all of the following criteria:~~

~~(1) the location, design and layout of the proposal will positively contribute to achieving a *well-functioning urban environment*,~~

~~(2) the proposal is well-connected to the existing or planned urban area, particularly if it is located along existing or planned transport corridors,~~²⁰¹⁸

~~(3) required *development infrastructure* can be provided effectively and efficiently for the proposal, and without material impact on planned *development infrastructure* provision to, or reduction in *development infrastructure* capacity available for, other feasible, likely to be realised developments, in the short-medium term,~~

~~(4) the proposal makes a significant contribution to meeting a need identified in a *Housing and Business Development Capacity Assessment*, or a shortage identified in monitoring for:~~

²⁰¹⁴ 00139.001 DCC

²⁰¹⁵ Moved to LF-LS chapter (00236.096 Horticulture NZ, 00239.197 Federated Farmers, 00237.045 and 00237.063 Beef + Lamb and DINZ)

²⁰¹⁶ 00139.264 DCC

²⁰¹⁷ Clause 16(2), Schedule 1, RMA – not a defined term

²⁰¹⁸ 00139.265 DCC

- (a) housing of a particular price range or typology, particularly more affordable housing,
 - (b) business space or *land* of a particular size or locational type, or
 - (c) community or educational facilities, and
- (5) when considering the significance of the proposal's contribution to a matter in (4), this means that the proposal's contribution:
- (a) is of high yield relative to either the forecast demand or the identified shortfall,
 - (b) will be realised in a timely (i.e. rapid) manner,
 - (c) is likely to be taken up, and
 - (d) will facilitate a net increase in district-wide up-take in the short to medium term.

Methods

UFD–M1 – Strategic planning

Otago Regional Council and *territorial authorities*:

- (1) must, where they are Tier 2 local authorities, jointly determine housing *development capacity* that is feasible and likely to be taken up in the medium and long terms through *Housing and Business Development Capacity Assessments*,
- (2) should, for other districts, jointly determine demand and potential supply responses through similar, but appropriately scaled strategic planning approaches,
- (3) must, where they are Tier 2 and Tier 3 local authorities, monitor and regularly assess and report on the supply of, and demand for, residential, commercial and industrial zoned *land development capacity* available at the regional, district and *urban environment* scales, and other local authorities are encouraged to do so,
- (4) must coordinate the redevelopment and intensification of *urban areas* and the development of ~~extensions~~ expansions²⁰¹⁹ to *urban areas* with *infrastructure* planning and development programmes, to:
 - (a) provide the required *development infrastructure* and *additional infrastructure* in an integrated, timely, efficient and effective way, and
 - (b) to identify *major existing and future activities, constraints and opportunities*²⁰²⁰ ~~and manage impacts on key values and resources identified by this RPS,~~²⁰²¹

and for Tier 2 local authorities to achieve this through jointly developed *Future Development Strategies* and/or strategic planning, and for all other *local authorities* through strategic planning in accordance with UFD-P1,
- (5) must, where they are Tier 2 local authorities, develop housing bottom lines for *urban environments* and include those bottom lines in APP10 and in the relevant *district plans*,
- (6) must individually or jointly develop further regulatory or non-regulatory methods and actions to implement strategic and spatial plans, including to guide the detail of how, when and where development occurs, including matters of urban design, requirements around the timing, provision,

²⁰¹⁹ Clause 16(2), Schedule 1, RMA – for consistency

²⁰²⁰ 00411.088 Wayfare, 00206.073 Trojan, 00219.012 FENZ

²⁰²¹ Clause 10(2)(b)(i), Schedule 1, RMA – consequential amendment arising from 00137.151 DOC, 00226.307 Kāi Tahu ki Otago

and responsibilities for open space, connections and infrastructure, including by third parties, and the ongoing management of effects of urban development on matters of local importance, and must involve *mana whenua*, and provide opportunities for iwi, hapū and whānau involvement in planning processes, including in decision making, ~~to ensure provision is made for their needs and aspirations, and cultural practices and values and to ensure the requirements of the MW chapter are met, and the issues and values identified in RMIA are recognised and provided for.~~²⁰²²

UFD-M2 – District plans

Territorial authorities must prepare or amend their *district plans* as soon as practicable, and maintain thereafter, to:

- (1) identify and provide for urban expansion and intensification,²⁰²³ to occur in accordance with:
 - (a) any adopted *future development strategy* for the relevant district or region, which must be completed in time to inform the 2024 Long Term Plan, or
 - (b) where there is no *future development strategy*, a *local authority* adopted strategic plan developed in accordance with UFD-P1, for the relevant area, district or region,
- (2) in accordance with any required *Housing and Business Development Capacity Assessments* or monitoring, including any *competitiveness margin*, ensure there is always at least²⁰²⁴ sufficient *development capacity* that is feasible and likely to be taken up and, for Tier 2 urban environments, at a minimum meets the bottom lines for housing in APP-10, and meets the identified *land* size and locational needs of the commercial and industrial sectors, and where there is a shortage, respond in accordance with UFD-P2,²⁰²⁵
- (3) ensure that urban development is designed to:
 - (a) achieve a built form that relates well to its surrounding *environment*, ~~including by identifying and managing impacts of urban development on values and resources identified in this RPS,~~²⁰²⁶
 - (b) provide for a diverse range of housing, *commercial activities*, industrial and service activities, social and cultural opportunities,
 - (c) achieve an efficient use of *land*, energy, *water* and *infrastructure*,
 - (d) ~~promote the use of water sensitive design wherever practicable,~~²⁰²⁷
 - (e) minimise the potential for reverse sensitivity *effects* to arise, by managing the location of incompatible activities, within the *urban area*, and at the rural-urban interface²⁰²⁸ and
 - (f) reduce the adverse *effects* of Otago's cooler winter climate through designing new subdivision and development to maximise passive winter solar gain and winter heat retention, including through roading, lot size, dimensions, layout and orientation,
- (4) identify and provide for locations that are suitable for urban intensification in accordance with

²⁰²² 00139.266 DCC

²⁰²³ Clause 16(2), Schedule 1, RMA – grammatical correction

²⁰²⁴ 00204.003 Daisy Link, 00405.009 Glenpanel, 00402.012 Sipka Holdings, 00401.006 Tussock Rise

²⁰²⁵ 00401.012 Tussock Rise

²⁰²⁶ Clause 10(2)(b)(i), Schedule 1, RMA – consequential amendment arising from 00137.151 DOC, 00226.307 Kāi Tahu ki Otago

²⁰²⁷ 00139.267 DCC

²⁰²⁸ 00236.104 Horticulture NZ, 235.154 OWRUG

UFD-P~~23~~,²⁰²⁹

- (5) identify and provide for locations that are suitable for urban expansion, if any, in accordance with UFD-P~~34~~,²⁰³⁰
- (6) identify and provide for *commercial activities* in accordance with UFD-P5,
- (7) identify and provide for *industrial activities* in accordance with UFD-P6, and
- (8) ~~manage development in rural areas in accordance with UFD-P7,~~²⁰³¹
- (9) ~~manage rural residential and rural lifestyle activities in rural areas in accordance with UFD-P8,~~²⁰³²
- (10) ~~provide for papakāika, kāika, nohoaka, and marae, in accordance with UFD-P9, and~~²⁰³³
- (11) ~~must~~²⁰³⁴ involve *mana whenua* and provide opportunities for iwi, hapū and whānau involvement in planning processes, including in decision making, ~~to ensure provision is made for their needs and aspirations, and cultural practices and values and ensure the requirements of the MW chapter are met, and the issues and values identified in RMIA are recognised and provided for at the local level.~~²⁰³⁵

UFD-M3 – Design of public spaces and surrounds

Territorial authorities must design and maintain public places and spaces, including streets, open spaces, public *buildings* and publicly accessible spaces so that they are safe, attractive, accessible and usable by everyone in the community.

Explanation

UFD-E1 – Explanation

The policies in this chapter are designed to facilitate the provision of sufficient housing and business capacity and ensure all of the region's *urban areas* demonstrate the features of *well-functioning urban environments* and meet the needs of current and future communities. Urban intensification ~~must be enabled,~~ and urban expansion ~~should be facilitated, however these important~~²⁰³⁶ decisions should be preceded and guided by strategic planning processes that consider how best this can be achieved, ~~while also maintaining and, wherever possible, enhancing the important values and features identified in other chapters of this RPS,~~²⁰³⁷ and in consideration of local context, values and pressures. The strategic planning process will also consider and demonstrate where, when, how and by whom the necessary *development infrastructure* and *additional infrastructure* will be provided in order to both facilitate development and change and minimise environmental impacts from it, ~~including avoiding impacts on the operation of regionally and nationally significant infrastructure.~~²⁰³⁸

²⁰²⁹ Clause 16(2), Schedule 1, RMA, 00138.222 QLDC, 00235.154 OWRUG

²⁰³⁰ Clause 16(2), Schedule 1, RMA, 00138.222 QLDC, 00235.154 OWRUG

²⁰³¹ Shifted into LF-LS chapter (00236.096 Horticulture NZ, 00239.197 Federated Farmers, 00237.045 and 00237.063 Beef + Lamb and DINZ)

²⁰³² Shifted into LF-LS chapter (00236.096 Horticulture NZ, 00239.197 Federated Farmers, 00237.045 and 00237.063 Beef + Lamb and DINZ)

²⁰³³ 00139.267 DCC

²⁰³⁴ Clause 16(2), Schedule 1, RMA

²⁰³⁵ 00139.267 DCC

²⁰³⁶ Clause 10(2)(b)(i), Schedule 1, RMA – consequential amendment arising from 00139.001, 00139.257, 00139.258 DCC

²⁰³⁷ Clause 10(2)(b)(i), Schedule 1, RMA – consequential amendment arising from 00137.151 DOC, 00226.307 Kāi Tahu ki Otago

²⁰³⁸ Clause 10(2)(b)(i), Schedule 1, RMA – consequential amendment arising from 00139.001 DCC

In addition, this chapter seeks to maintain the character and *amenity values* of Otago's rural areas, including by facilitating the use of the *natural and physical resources* that support the viability of the rural sector. Otago's rural and *urban areas* also contain significant natural, cultural and historic values and features as identified by other parts of this RPS. In all cases while facilitating urban development and managing rural productive activities these values must also be identified, maintained and, wherever possible, enhanced. This approach includes direction on different types of development within *rural areas*, managing the expansion and location of *urban areas*, and rural lifestyle and rural residential development, and directing that growth be enabled in *urban areas* to minimise the need for development to occur within *rural areas*, other than what is needed to facilitate rural community and rural productive activities. The provisions in this chapter also include direction on managing the expansion and location of *urban areas* in terms of the effects on and interface with *rural areas*. These provisions work closely with those in the LF-LS chapter which apply to *rural areas*.²⁰³⁹

In addition, this chapter seeks to maintain the character and *amenity values* of Otago's rural areas, including by facilitating the use of the *natural and physical resources* that support the viability of the rural sector. Otago's rural and urban areas also contain significant natural, cultural and historic values and features as identified by other parts of this RPS. In all cases while facilitating urban development and managing rural productive activities these values must also be identified, maintained and, wherever possible, enhanced. This approach includes direction on different types of development within rural areas, managing the expansion and location of *urban areas*, and rural lifestyle and rural residential development, and directing that growth be enabled in *urban areas* to minimise the need for development to occur within rural areas, other than what is needed to facilitate rural community and rural productive activities.²⁰⁴⁰

The policies in this chapter are primarily focused on directing where *urban*²⁰⁴¹ development is and is not appropriate and under what circumstances, but provides discretion for *local authorities* to determine the detail of how that development is managed, its ultimate density, height, bulk and location, timing and sequencing, the detail of any required *development infrastructure* and *additional infrastructure* that may be needed, and allows for the consideration of particular locally significant features values and needs that contribute to the attractiveness or uniqueness of the diverse communities, landscapes, and *environments* of the region.

This more detailed determination must, however, be informed by evidence and information collated through appropriately scaled *strategic planning* processes ~~and~~ which will identify how constraints to urban development, such as hazards, landscapes, *highly productive land*, and limits are responded to, and opportunities for meeting demand, integration with lifeline utilities, *infrastructure* and other requirements may be provided for. They²⁰⁴² will be implemented by a range of regulatory and non-regulatory methods, including joint development of *Housing and Business Assessments* and *Future Development Strategies* for Tier 2 local authorities, and similar but appropriately scaled processes undertaken in and for other areas, including regular regional, district and *urban environment* scale monitoring, analysis and evaluation. In delivering on the objectives and policies in this chapter, which relate largely to human activities and settlements, the natural, physical, and built values and features of importance to the region must be recognised and provided for. These values and features are largely identified within other chapters and provision of the RPS. They also provide detail on how they should be identified and managed. Achieving the objectives of this chapter requires consideration of those other relevant parts of this RPS.²⁰⁴³

²⁰³⁹ Clause 10(2)(b)(i), Schedule 1, RMA – consequential amendment arising from 00236.096 Horticulture NZ, 00239.197 Federated Farmers, 00237.045 and 00237.063 Beef + Lamb and DINZ

²⁰⁴⁰ 00239.178 Federated Farmers

²⁰⁴¹ Clause 10(2)(b)(i), Schedule 1, RMA – consequential amendment arising from 00236.096 Horticulture NZ, 00239.197 Federated Farmers, 00237.045 and 00237.063 Beef + Lamb and DINZ

²⁰⁴² 00219.020 FENZ, 0139.268 DCC

²⁰⁴³ 00139.268, and 00139.259 DCC

The following chapters of this Regional Policy Statement have particular relevance to the achievement of the objectives of this chapter by identifying particular aspects of Domains or Topics to be managed, and where there is an apparent conflict, must be balanced in accordance with the directions outlined in the Integrated Management chapter:

- ~~MW – Mana Whenua~~
- ~~AIR – Air~~
- ~~CE – Coastal environment~~
- ~~LF – Land and freshwater~~
- ~~ECO – Ecosystems and indigenous biodiversity~~
- ~~EIT – Energy, infrastructure and transport~~
- ~~HAZ – Hazards and risks~~
- ~~HCV – Historical and cultural values~~
- ~~NFL – Natural features and landscapes²⁰⁴⁴~~

Principal reasons

UFD-PR1 – Principal reasons

The provisions in this chapter assist in fulfilling the functions of the regional council under section 30(ba) and *territorial authorities* under section 31(aa) of the RMA 1991²⁰⁴⁵ to ensure sufficient *development capacity* in relation to housing and *business land* to meet the expected demands of the region and districts respectively. They also assist in giving effect to the similar but more detailed requirements of the NPSUD.

Urban areas are important for community well-being and are a reflection the inherently social nature of humans. Well-functioning urban areas enable social interactions and provide a wide variety (across type, location and price) of housing, employment and recreational opportunities to meet the varied and variable needs and preferences of communities, in a way that maximises the well-being of its present and future inhabitants, and respects its history, its setting and the *environment*. The combination of population growth and demographic change will result in changes in the quantity and qualities demanded of housing, employment, business, *infrastructure*, social facilities emergency services and lifeline utilities²⁰⁴⁶ and other²⁰⁴⁷ and services across the region. Upgrade and replacement of the existing development and infrastructure will also continue to be required even where growth is limited, resulting in changes in the built environment. Some of these changes will also be driven by changes in the *natural environment*, including the impacts of climate change. Urban areas are highly dynamic by nature, so the provisions in this chapter seek to manage, rather than limit, the form, function, growth and development of urban areas in a way that best provides for the community's well-being both now and into the future.

The pace and scale of growth and change, and the scale and nature of urban environments and areas in the region is variable, meaning no single response at a regional level is appropriate in all cases. Accordingly, the process identified in this RPS remains flexible and responsive (outside of Tier 2 urban environments, which have specific requirements under the NPSUD). Key requirements of strategic planning include considering and providing for reasonably expected changes in overall quantum of demand and supply as well as changes in needs and preferences that may drive or add to these changes in demand, designing to maximise the efficient use of energy, land and infrastructure (including transport

²⁰⁴⁴ 00120.006 Yellow-eyed Penguin Trust

²⁰⁴⁵ Clause 16(2), Schedule 1, RMA

²⁰⁴⁶ 00219.020 FENZ

²⁰⁴⁷ Clause 10(2)(b)(i), Schedule 1, RMA – consequential amendment arising from 00219.020 FENZ

infrastructure). This can best be achieved by prioritising development in and around the region’s existing urban areas as the primary focus of the region’s growth and change, by enabling development within and adjacent to those urban areas, where it generally is most suitable and most efficient to do so.

These strategic planning processes provide the mechanism by which longer term issues can be considered, integration between land use and infrastructure can be achieved, and various constraints, opportunities and key trade-offs can be identified and appropriately resolved, while identifying and managing the values and resources identified in this RPS. These processes, and others should always involve *mana whenua*, at all levels of the process to ensure their views and values can be incorporated and celebrated, and their needs and aspirations appropriately provided for.

All development should seek to maximise efficient use of *water* consumption (through *water* efficient design) and disposal. ~~{Reduced²⁰⁴⁸ consumption reduces sewerage loads, and the²⁰⁴⁹ *water* sensitive design reduces impacts on both supplying and receiving natural systems and can reduce flooding from *stormwater*}²⁰⁵⁰, and maximise the winter capture and retention of the suns energy, which will also assist with reducing the energy needed to heat homes in winter and can also help reduce air pollution from *solid fuel* burning for home heating. Development in more central parts of the region also need to be designed to be cognisant of minimising excess sun capture in the summer months. ~~Enabling the establishment and use of small-scale renewable energy generation also facilitates local energy resilience, contributes to national renewable energy generation targets with associated *climate change* benefits, and may reduce the need for additional large-scale generation and transmission infrastructure and associated impacts.~~²⁰⁵¹~~

~~Rural areas are attractive as residential living areas, and for other non-rural activities. However, they contain areas, activities and resources critical for rural production that can be impacted by sensitive activities. Non-urban areas also contain a wide range of other values that can be negatively impacted by the impacts of rural residential and other activities, that do not have a functional need to be in rural areas. The provisions in this chapter focus on managing where rural living opportunities and other non-rural activities are provided for, so that the potential effects on the rural character, productive potential and the wide range of environmental values, features and resources that rural areas also contain are appropriately managed. The supply of rural lifestyle opportunities to meet demand should be directed to suitably located and zoned areas to minimise impacts on values in rural areas. In designing and planning for rural residential and rural lifestyle development, local authorities will need to be aware of the potential future constraints on future urban expansion and development, including the cumulative impacts of infrastructure servicing irrespective of whether this is onsite, community or through connections to urban reticulated schemes.~~²⁰⁵²

Implementation of the provisions in this chapter will occur partially through *regional plans* but primarily *district plan* provisions, as well as through preparation of *future development strategies* and *structure plans* and the financial and *infrastructure* planning processes they inform. While the functions and duties of regional and territorial authorities are different, each brings different focus and responsibilities to the task of achieving well-functioning urban environments. Working together, and with others, in accordance with specified joint responsibilities under the NPSUD, will assist with achieving the purpose of the RMA and the outcomes sought by this RPS.²⁰⁵³

To appropriately and efficiently achieve the objectives and policies, other non-regulatory spatial planning exercises and associated action plans, agreements and *infrastructure* delivery programs will be needed to

²⁰⁴⁸ Clause 16(2), Schedule 1, RMA

²⁰⁴⁹ Clause 16(2), Schedule 1, RMA

²⁰⁵⁰ Clause 16(2), Schedule 1, RMA

²⁰⁵¹ Clause 10(2)(b)(i), Schedule 1, RMA – consequential amendment arising from 00139.254 DCC

²⁰⁵² Clause 10(2)(b)(i), Schedule 1, RMA – consequential amendment arising from 00236.096 Horticulture NZ, 00239.197 Federated Farmers, 00237.045 and 00237.063 Beef + Lamb and DINZ

²⁰⁵³ 00139.268 DCC

complement regulatory approaches, including setting aside the necessary funding for delivery, and partnering with *mana whenua*, central government, communities and developers to deliver the quality and quantity of urban development needed to meet demand and provide for change, improve *land* and development market competitiveness, and achieve *resilient*, efficient and attractive urban places.

Anticipated environmental results

- UFD–AER1** Appropriately scaled strategic planning occurs in advance of regulatory planning, and regulatory plans are changed in a timely manner to facilitate the outcomes identified in these processes.
- UFD–AER2** Urban expansion only occurs when suitable and sufficient *development infrastructure* is in place or will be provided at the time of expansion and provision is made for the needs of *additional infrastructure*.
- UFD–AER3** *Development infrastructure* is in place in time to facilitate reasonably expected urban intensification or planned expansion.
- UFD–AER4** New developments including redevelopments are designed to maximise energy and transport efficiency and minimise impacts on *water* quality and quantity.
- UFD–AER5** The majority of new urban²⁰⁵⁴ development is located close to services, jobs, and other urban amenities and can access those amenities by a range of transport modes including *active transport* and, where available, *public transport*.
- UFD–AER6** The mode share and use of *active transport* and where available,²⁰⁵⁵ *public transport* increases.
- ~~**UFD–AER7** New developments are at minimal *risk* from *natural hazards* including changes to *risk* due to the impacts of *climate change*, and do not increase *risk* to existing or planned developments.~~²⁰⁵⁶
- ~~**UFD–AER8** In existing urban areas at *risk* from *natural hazards*, including changes to *risk* due to the impacts of *climate change*, communities are informed, *resilient* and prepared for the effects of known *natural hazard risks*.~~²⁰⁵⁷
- UFD–AER9** There is an increased range of housing types and locations and an increased number of *dwelling*s, particularly more affordable housing in existing and planned *urban areas*.
- UFD–AER10** The current and future needs of business are met by the availability of a range of opportunities for *land* and space that meets their requirements.
- UFD–AER11** ~~All n~~New rural residential or rural²⁰⁵⁸ lifestyle development occurs within areas

²⁰⁵⁴ Clause 10(2)(b)(i), Schedule 1, RMA – consequential amendment arising from Boxer Hills Trust, 00023.005 Waterfall Park

²⁰⁵⁵ 00139.272 DCC

²⁰⁵⁶ Clause 10(2)(b)(i), Schedule 1, RMA – consequential amendment arising from 00139.001 DCC

²⁰⁵⁷ Clause 10(2)(b)(i), Schedule 1, RMA – consequential amendment arising from 00139.001 DCC

²⁰⁵⁸ Clause 10(2)(b)(i), Schedule 1, RMA – consequential amendment arising from 00221.016 Silver Fern Farms, 00236.103 Horticulture NZ.

~~zoned~~ appropriate for this use.²⁰⁵⁹

UFD-AER12

Urban expansion and urban activities are appropriately planned so that they do not adversely affect the long-term viability of the rural sector and rural communities.²⁰⁶⁰

UFD-AER13

Mana whenua are involved in strategic planning and other planning processes.²⁰⁶¹

²⁰⁵⁹ Clause 10(2)(b)(i), Schedule 1, RMA – consequential amendment arising from 00025.004 Boxer Hills Trust, 00023.005 Waterfall Park Developments Limited

²⁰⁶⁰ 00236.107 Horticulture NZ, 00208.001 AgResearch, 00239.180 Federated Farmers

²⁰⁶¹ 00139.259 DCC

PART 4 – EVALUATION AND MONITORING

Monitoring the efficiency and effectiveness of the policy statement

ORC must monitor the efficiency and effectiveness of its RPS provisions and publish the results every five years.²⁰⁶² The RPS needs to include the procedures for monitoring its methods and policies.²⁰⁶³

Existing monitoring procedure

ORC has policies and procedures in place to gather information and to monitor and report on how well Otago's *natural and physical resources* are managed. These include State of the Environment reporting, *resource consent* monitoring, and annual reporting against objectives in the Council's Long-Term Plan. These policies and procedures will be reviewed and updated to reflect ORPS environmental goals (objectives) and ensure the right information is being gathered to monitor the environmental results anticipated.

The ORPS is relevant to all decision making under the RMA ~~1991~~²⁰⁶⁴ and must be given effect through *regional plans*²⁰⁶⁵ and *district plans*. As the ORPS is given effect through *regional plans*²⁰⁶⁶ and *district plans*, much of the data needed for monitoring will be gathered for the purpose of, or will be relevant to, the monitoring of *regional plans*²⁰⁶⁷ and *district plans*. ORC will undertake a work programme to identify data the *territorial authorities* collect in the course of their normal monitoring regimes and make arrangements for collection and sharing of data, including information that the regional council collects that may be of benefit to *territorial authorities*.

Specific environmental indicators will be developed to monitor the impact that ORPS policies and methods are having on Otago's social, economic, cultural and environmental well-being, and whether they remain the most appropriate for achieving the ~~RMA 1991's~~ RMA's²⁰⁶⁸ purpose. These environmental indicators will be developed outside of the ORPS. This approach enables the frequency or type of indicators to be amended, in order to respond to emerging issues, improved technology and best practice, changes in the local *environment*, or societal expectations. It forms part of a continuous review and reporting cycle, resulting in policy changes and adjustments as necessary.

The ORPS needs to reflect the needs and aspirations of *mana whenua tangata whenua*²⁰⁶⁹ and the wider community, so ~~*mana whenua tangata whenua*~~²⁰⁷⁰ and stakeholders will be encouraged to be involved with monitoring the provisions of the ORPS.

Regional Monitoring Strategy

To address the undertakings described above, ORC must develop a comprehensive integrated Regional

²⁰⁶² Section 35 of the Resource Management Act 1991

²⁰⁶³ Section 62(1)(j) of the Resource Management Act 1991

²⁰⁶⁴ Clause 16(2), Schedule 1, RMA

²⁰⁶⁵ Clause 16(2), Schedule 1, RMA

²⁰⁶⁶ Clause 16(2), Schedule 1, RMA

²⁰⁶⁷ Clause 16(2), Schedule 1, RMA

²⁰⁶⁸ Clause 16(2), Schedule 1, RMA

²⁰⁶⁹ 00226.325 Kāi Tahu ki Otago

²⁰⁷⁰ 00226.325 Kāi Tahu ki Otago

Monitoring Strategy (RMS). This strategy will link ORC's various monitoring procedures together to reduce double handling, identify connections, and improve interrelationships, both between ORC functions and with other agencies. The strategy will help monitor the effectiveness and efficiency of the ORPS, using both quantitative and qualitative assessments, and sit alongside it as a non-statutory document.

The RMS will assist ORC with expanding its monitoring activities to respond to ORPS provisions and ensure the things measured accurately reflect policy success, including environmental,²⁰⁷¹ ~~natural~~, social, economic, cultural and *historic heritage* values. It will increase transparency by stating what is monitored and why.

This goes hand in hand with increasing the ORC's leadership and facilitation role in several areas, including *climate change*.

PART 5 – APPENDICES AND MAPS

Appendices

APP1 – Criteria for identifying *outstanding water bodies*

Outstanding water bodies include any *water body* with one or more of the following outstanding values, noting that sub-values are not all-inclusive:

Table 4: Values of outstanding water bodies

Values	Description	Example sub-values
Cultural and spiritual ²⁰⁷²	A <i>water body</i> which has outstanding cultural and spiritual values.	Wāhi tapu, wāhi taoka, wai tapu, rohe boundary, battle sites, pa, kāika, tauraka waka, mahika kai, pa tuna; and acknowledged in korero tuku iho, pepeha, whakatauki or waiata
Ecology	A <i>water body</i> which has outstanding ecological value as a habitat for: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Native birds • Native fish • Salmonid fish²⁰⁷³ • Other aquatic species 	Native birds, native fish, native plants, aquatic macroinvertebrates
Landscape	A <i>water body</i> that: <ol style="list-style-type: none"> (1) is an essential which forms a key component of a landscape or natural feature that is “conspicuous, eminent, remarkable or iconic” within the region, and or is critical to an outstanding natural feature. (2) has landscape, wild and/or scenic values that contain distinctive qualities which are outstanding in the context of the region.²⁰⁷⁴ 	Scenic, association, natural characteristics (includes hydrological, ecological and geological features)
Natural character	A <i>water body</i> with high naturalness that: <ol style="list-style-type: none"> (1) exhibits an exceptional combination of natural processes, natural patterns and natural elements with low levels of modification to its form, ecosystems and the surrounding landscape that is exceptional in the context of the region, and (2) has little to no human modification to its form, ecosystems, and the surrounding landscape.²⁰⁷⁵ 	Natural characteristics (includes hydrological, ecological and geological features)
Recreation	A <i>water body</i> which is recognised as providing an outstanding recreational experience for an activity which is directly related to the <i>water</i> .	Angling, fishing, kayaking, rafting, jetboating
Physical	A <i>water body</i> which has an outstanding geomorphological, geological or hydrological feature which is dependent on the <i>water body’s</i> condition and functioning.	Science

²⁰⁷² 00226.326 Kāi Tahu ki Otago

²⁰⁷³ 00239.184 Federated Farmers, 00237.066 Beef + Lamb and DINZ

²⁰⁷⁴ 00311.062 Manawa, 00239.184 Federated Farmers

²⁰⁷⁵ 00311.062 Manawa

APP2 – Criteria for identifying areas that qualify as indigenous natural areas (SNAs) Significance criteria for indigenous biodiversity²⁰⁷⁶

This appendix sets out the criteria for identifying significant indigenous vegetation or significant *habitats* of indigenous fauna in a specific area, so that the area qualifies as an SNA.

The assessment must be done using the assessment criteria in Appendix 1 and in accordance with the following principles:

- (a) partnership: territorial authorities engage early with mana whenua and land owners and share information about *indigenous biodiversity*, potential management options, and any support and incentives that may be available:
- (b) transparency: territorial authorities clearly inform mana whenua and landowners about how any information gathered will be used and make existing information, draft assessments and other relevant information available to mana whenua and relevant landowners for review:
- (c) quality: wherever practicable, the values and extent of natural areas are verified by physical inspection; but if a physical inspection is not practicable (because, for instance, the area is inaccessible, or a landowner does not give access) the local authority uses the best information available to it at the time:
- (d) access: if a physical inspection is required, permission of the landowner is first sought and the powers of entry under section 333 of the Act are used only as a last resort:
- (e) consistency: the criteria in Appendix 1 are applied consistently, regardless of who owns the land:
- (f) boundaries: the boundaries of areas of significant indigenous vegetation or significant *habitat* if indigenous fauna are determined without regard to artificial margins (such as property boundaries) that would affect the extent or ecological integrity of the area identified.

1 What qualifies as an SNA

- (1) An area qualifies as an SNA if it meets any one of the attributes of the following four criteria:
 - (a) representativeness:
 - (b) diversity and pattern:
 - (c) rarity and distinctiveness:
 - (d) ecological context.
- (2) If an area would quality as an SNA solely on the grounds that it provides *habitat* for a single indigenous fauna species that is At Risk (declining), and that the species is widespread in at least three other regions, the area does not quality as an SNA unless:
 - (a) the species is rare within the region or *ecological district* where the area is located; or
 - (b) the protection of the species at that location is important for the persistence of the species as a whole.
- (3) If an area would qualify as an SNA solely on the grounds that it contains one or more indigenous flora species that are Threatened or At Risk (declining), and those species are widespread in at least three other regions, the area does not qualify as an SNA unless:
 - (a) the species is rare within the region or *ecological district* where the area is located; or
 - (b) the protection of the species at that location is important for the persistence of the species as a whole.

2 Context for assessment

²⁰⁷⁶ 00139.129 DCC, 00237.049 Beef & Lamb NZ

- (1) The context for an assessment of an area is: (a) its *ecological district*; and (b) for the ratiry assessment only, its *ecological district*, its region and the national context.

3 Manner and form of assessment

- (1) Every assessment must include at least:
- (a) a map of the area; and
 - (b) a general description of its significant attributes, with reference to relevant criteria (as specified below); and
 - (c) a general description of the indigenous vegetation, indigenous fauna, *habitat*, and ecosystems present; and
 - (d) additional information, such as the key threats, pressures, and management requirements; and
 - (e) for SNAs in areas of Crown-owned land referred to in clause 3.8(8), the conservation management strategy or plan or national park management plan that applies to the area.
- (2) An assessment under this appendix must be conducted by a suitably qualified ecologist (which, in the case of an assessment of a geothermal ecosystem, requires an ecologist with geothermal expertise).

A Representativeness criterion

- (1) Representativeness is the extent to which the indigenous vegetation or *habitat* of indigenous fauna in an area is typical or characteristic of the *indigenous biodiversity* of the relevant *ecological district*.
- (2) Significant indigenous vegetation has ecological integrity typical of the indigenous vegetation of the *ecological district* in the present-day environment. It includes seral (regenerating) indigenous vegetation that is recovering following natural or induced disturbance, provided species composition is typical of that type of indigenous vegetation.
- (3) Significant indigenous fauna *habitat* is that which supports the typical suite of indigenous animals that would occur in the present-day environment. *Habitat* of indigenous fauna may be indigenous or exotic.
- (4) Representativeness may include commonplace indigenous vegetation and the *habitats* of indigenous fauna, which is where most *indigenous biodiversity* is present. It may also include degraded indigenous vegetation, ecosystems and *habitats* that are typical of what remains in depleted *ecological districts*. It is not restricted to the best or most representative examples, and it is not a measure of how well that indigenous vegetation or *habitat* is protected elsewhere in the *ecological district*.
- (5) When considering the typical character of an *ecological district*, any highly developed land or built-up areas should be excluded.
- (6) The application of this criterion should result in identification of indigenous vegetation and *habitats* that are representative of the full range and extent of ecological diversity across all environmental gradients in an *ecological district*, such as climate, altitude, landform, and soil sequences. The ecological character and pattern of the indigenous vegetation in the *ecological district* should be described by reference to the types of indigenous vegetation and the landforms on which it occurs,

Attributes of representativeness

- (7) An area that qualifies as an SNA under this criterion has at least one of the following attributes:
- (a) Indigenous vegetation that has ecological integrity that is typical of the character of the *ecological district*;
 - (b) *habitat* that supports a typical suite of indigenous fauna that is characteristic of the *habitat*

type in the *ecological district* and retains at least a moderate range of species expected for that *habitat* type in the *ecological district*.

B Diversity and pattern criterion

- (1) Diversity and pattern is the extent to which the expected range of diversity and patter of biological and physical components within the relevant *ecological district* is present in an area.

Key assessment principles

- (2) **Diversity of biological components** is expressed in the variation of species, communities, and ecosystems. Biological diversity is associated with variation in physical components, such as geology, soils/substrate, aspect/exposure, altitude/depth, temperature, and salinity.
- (3) **Pattern** includes changes along environmental and landform gradients, such as ecotones and sequences.
- (4) **Natural areas** that have a wider range of species, *habitats* or communities or wider environmental variation due to ecotones, gradients, and sequences in the context of the *ecological district*, rate more highly under this criterion.

Attributes of diversity and pattern

- (5) An area that qualifies as a significant natural area under this criterion has at least one of the following attributes:
- (a) at least a moderate diversity of indigenous species , vegetation, *habitats* of indigenous fauna or communities in the context of the *ecological district*:
 - (b) presence of indigenous ecotones, complete or partial gradients or sequences.

C Rarity and distinctiveness criterion

- (1) Rarity and distinctiveness is the presence of rare or distinctive indigenous taxa, *habitats* of indigenous fauna, indigenous vegetation or ecosystems

Key assessment principles

- (2) **Rarity** is the scarcity (natural or induced) of indigenous elements: species, *habits*, vegetation, or ecosystems. Rarity includes elements that are uncommon or threatened.
- (3) **The list of Threatened and At Risk species** is regularly updated by the Department of Conservation. Rarity at a regional or *ecological district* scale is defined by regional or district lists or determined by expert ecological advice. The significance of nationally listed Threatened and At Risk species should not be downgraded just because they are common within a region or *ecological district*.
- (4) **Depletion of indigenous vegetation or ecosystems** is assessed using *ecological districts* and land environments.
- (5) **Distinctiveness** includes distribution limits, type localities, local endemism, relict distributions and species ecological or scientific features.

Attributes of rarity and distinctiveness

- (6) An area that qualifies as an *SNA* under this criterion has at least one of the following attributes:
- (a) provides *habitat* for an indigenous species that is listed as Threatened or At Risk (declining) in the New Zealand Threat Classification System lists:
 - (b) an indigenous vegetation type or an indigenous species that is uncommon within the region or *ecological district*:
 - (c) an indigenous species or plant community at or near its natural distributional limit:
 - (d) indigenous vegetation that has been reduced to less than 20 per cent of its prehuman extent in the *ecological district*, region, or land environment:

- (e) indigenous vegetation or *habitat* of indigenous fauna occurring on naturally uncommon ecosystems:
- (f) the type locality of an indigenous species:
- (g) the presence of a distinctive assemblage or community of indigenous species:
- (h) the presence of a special ecological or scientific feature.

D Ecological context criterion

- (1) Ecological context is the extent to which the size, shape, and configuration of an area within the wider surrounding landscape contributes to its ability to maintain *indigenous biodiversity* or affects the ability of the surrounding landscape to maintain its *indigenous biodiversity*.

Key assessment principles

- (2) Ecological context has two main assessment principles:
- (a) the characteristics that help maintain *indigenous biodiversity* (such as size, shape, and configuration) in the area; and
 - (b) the contribution the area makes to protecting *indigenous biodiversity* in the wider landscape (such as by linking, connecting to or buffering other natural areas, providing 'stepping stones' of *habitat* or maintaining ecological integrity).

Attributes of ecological context

- (3) An area that qualifies as an SNA under this criterion has at least one of the following attributes:
- (a) at least moderate size and compact shape, in the context of the relevant *ecological district*:
 - (b) well-buffered relative to remaining *habitats* in the relevant *ecological district*:
 - (c) provides an important full or partial buffer to, or link between, one or more important *habitats* of indigenous fauna or *significant natural areas*:
 - (d) important for the natural functioning of an ecosystem relative to remaining *habitats* in the *ecological district*; and
 - (e) an area that is important for a population of indigenous fauna during a critical part of their lifecycle, either seasonally or permanently, e.g. for feeding, resting, nesting, breeding, spawning or refuges from predation.

An area is considered to be a *significant natural area* if it meets any one or more of the criteria below:

Representativeness

- (a) — An area that is an example of an indigenous vegetation type or habitat that is typical or characteristic of the original natural diversity of the relevant ecological district or coastal marine biogeographic region. This may include *degraded* examples of their type or represent all that remains of indigenous vegetation and habitats of indigenous fauna in some areas.
- (b) — An indigenous marine ecosystem (including both intertidal and sub-tidal habitats, and including both faunal and floral assemblages) that makes up part of at least 10% of the natural extent of each of Otago's original marine ecosystem types and reflecting the environmental gradients of the region.
- (c) — An indigenous marine ecosystem, or habitat of indigenous marine fauna (including both intertidal and sub-tidal habitats, and including both faunal and floral components), that is characteristic or typical of the natural marine ecosystem diversity of Otago.

Rarity

- (d) — An area that supports:
 - (i) — An indigenous species that is threatened, at *risk*, or uncommon, nationally or within an ecological district or coastal marine biogeographic region, or
 - (ii) — Indigenous vegetation or habitat of indigenous fauna that has been reduced to less than 20% of its former extent nationally, regionally or within a relevant *land environment*, ecological district, coastal marine biogeographic region or *freshwater environment* including *wetlands*, or
 - (iii) — Indigenous vegetation and habitats within originally rare ecosystems, or
 - (iv) — The site contains indigenous vegetation or an indigenous species that is endemic to Otago or that are at distributional limits within Otago.

Diversity

- (e) — An area that supports a high diversity of indigenous ecosystem types, indigenous *taxa* or has changes in species composition reflecting the existence of diverse natural features or gradients.

Distinctiveness

- (f) — An area that supports or provides habitat for:
 - (i) — Indigenous species at their distributional limit within Otago or nationally, or
 - (ii) — Indigenous species that are endemic to the Otago region, or
 - (iii) — Indigenous vegetation or an association of indigenous species that is distinctive, of restricted occurrence, or has developed as a result of an unusual environmental factor or combinations of factors.

Ecological context

- (g) — The relationship of the area with its surroundings (both within Otago and between Otago and the adjoining regions), including:
 - (i) — An area that has important connectivity value allowing dispersal of indigenous flora and fauna between different areas, or
 - (ii) — An area that has an important buffering function that helps to protect the values of an adjacent area or feature, or
 - (iii) — An area that is important for indigenous fauna during some part of their life cycle, either regularly or on an irregular basis, e.g. for feeding, resting, nesting, breeding, spawning or refuges from predation, or
 - (iv) — A *wetland* which plays an important hydrological, biological or ecological role in the natural functioning of a *river* or coastal ecosystem.

APP3 – Principles for biodiversity offsetting ~~Criteria for biodiversity offsetting~~²⁰⁷⁷

These principles apply to the use of biodiversity offsets for adverse effects on *indigenous biodiversity*. An applicant is to comply with principles 1 to 6 and have regard to the remaining principles as appropriate.

- (1) **Adherence to effects management hierarchy:** A biodiversity offset is a commitment to redress more than minor residual adverse effects and should be contemplated only after steps to avoid, minimise, and remedy adverse effects are demonstrated to have been sequentially exhausted.
- (2) **When *biodiversity offsetting* is not appropriate:** Biodiversity offsets are not appropriate in situations where *indigenous biodiversity* values cannot be offset to achieve a net gain. Examples of an offset not being appropriate include where:
 - (a) residual adverse effects cannot be offset because of the irreplaceability or vulnerability of the *indigenous biodiversity* affected:
 - (b) effects on *indigenous biodiversity* are uncertain, unknown, or little understood, but potential effects are significantly adverse or irreversible:
 - (c) there are no technically feasible options by which to secure gains within an acceptable timeframe.
 - (d) the loss from an *ecological district* of any individuals of Threatened *taxa*, other than *kanuka* (*Kunzea robusta* and *Kunzea serotina*), under the New Zealand Threat Classification System (Townsend et al, 2008); or
 - (e) the likely worsening of the conservation status of any *indigenous biodiversity* as listed under the New Zealand Threat Classification System (Townsend et al, 2008); or
 - (f) the removal or loss of health and *resilience* of a naturally uncommon ecosystem type that is associated with *indigenous vegetation* or *habitat* of indigenous fauna.
- (3) **Net gain:** This principle reflects a standard of acceptability for demonstrating, and then achieving, a net gain in *indigenous biodiversity* values. Net gain is demonstrated by a like-for-like quantitative loss/gain calculation of the following, and is achieved when the *indigenous biodiversity* values at the offset site are equivalent to or exceed those being lost at the impact site:
 - (a) types of *indigenous biodiversity*, including when indigenous species depend on introduced species for their persistence; and
 - (b) amount; and
 - (c) condition (structure and quality).
- (4) **Additionality:** A biodiversity offset achieves gains in *indigenous biodiversity* above and beyond gains that would have occurred in the absence of the offset, such as gains that are additional to any minimisation and remediation undertaken in relation to the adverse effects of the activity.
- (5) **Leakage:** Biodiversity offset design and implementation avoids displacing hard to other *indigenous biodiversity* in the same or any other location.
- (6) **Long-term outcomes:** A biodiversity offset is managed to secure outcomes of the activity that last at least as long as the impacts, and preferably in perpetuity. Consideration must be given to long-term issues around funding, location, management and monitoring.
- (7) **Landscape context:** *Biodiversity offsetting* is undertaken where this will result in the best

ecological outcome, preferably close to the impact site or within the same *ecological district*. The action considers the landscape context of both the impact site and the offset site, taking into account interactions between species, *habitats* and ecosystems, special connections, and *ecosystem function*.

- (8) **Time lags:** The delay between loss of, or effects on, *indigenous biodiversity* values at the impact site and the gain or maturity of *indigenous biodiversity* at the offset site is minimised so that the calculated gains are achieved within the consent period or, as appropriate, a longer period (but not more than 35 years).
- (9) **Science and mātauraka Māori:** The design and implementation of a biodiversity offset is a documented process informed by science and mātauraka Māori.
- (10) **Mana whenua and stakeholder participation:** Opportunity for the effective and early participation of mana whenua and stakeholders is demonstrated when planning biodiversity offsets, including their evaluation, selection, design, implementation, and monitoring.
- (11) **Transparency:** The design and implementation of a biodiversity offset, and communication of its results to the public, is undertaken in a transparent and timely manner.

~~(1) — Biodiversity offsetting is not available if the activity will result in:~~

- ~~(a) — the loss of any individuals of Threatened *taxa*, other than kānuka (*Kunzea robusta* and *Kunzea serotina*), under the New Zealand Threat Classification System (Townsend et al, 2008), or~~
- ~~(b) — reasonably measurable loss within the ecological district to an At Risk Declining *taxon*, other than manuka (*Leptospermum scoparium*), under the New Zealand Threat Classification System (Townsend et al, 2008).~~

~~(2) — Biodiversity offsetting is available if the following criteria are met:~~

- ~~(a) — the offset addresses residual adverse *effects* that remain after implementing the sequential steps required by ECO-P6(1) to (3),~~
- ~~(b) — the offset achieves no net loss and preferably a net gain in indigenous *biodiversity*, as measured by type, amount and condition at both the impact and offset sites using an explicit loss and gain calculation,~~
- ~~(c) — the offset is undertaken where it will result in the best ecological outcome, and as the first priority be:~~
- ~~(i) — close to the location of the activity, and~~
- ~~(ii) — within the same ecological district or coastal marine biogeographic region,~~
- ~~(d) — the offset is applied so that the ecological values being achieved are the same or similar to those being lost,~~
- ~~(e) — the positive ecological outcomes of the offset endure at least as long as the impact of the activity and preferably in perpetuity,~~
- ~~(f) — the offset achieves *biodiversity* outcomes beyond results that would have occurred if the offset was not proposed,~~
- ~~(g) — the time delay between the loss of *biodiversity* and the realisation of the offset is the least necessary to achieve the best possible outcome,~~

- ~~(h) — the outcome of the offset is achieved within the duration of the *resource consent*, and~~
- ~~(i) — any offset developed in advance of an application for *resource consent* must be shown to have been created or commenced in anticipation of the specific *effect* of the proposed activity and would not have occurred if that *effect* was not anticipated.~~

APP4 – Principles for biodiversity compensation ~~Criteria for biodiversity compensation~~²⁰⁷⁸

These principles apply to the use of *biodiversity compensation* for adverse effects on *indigenous biodiversity*. An applicant is to comply with principles 1 to 6 and have regard to the remaining principles as appropriate.

- (1) Adherence to effects management hierarchy: *Biodiversity compensation* is a commitment to redress more than minor residual adverse effects, and should be contemplated only after steps to avoid, minimise, remedy, and offset adverse effects are demonstrated to have been sequentially exhausted.
- (2) When *biodiversity compensation* is not appropriate: *Biodiversity compensation* is not appropriate where *indigenous biodiversity* values are not able to be compensated for.
Examples of *biodiversity compensation* not being appropriate include where:
 - (a) the *indigenous biodiversity* affected is irreplaceable or vulnerable;
 - (b) effects on *indigenous biodiversity* are uncertain, unknown, or a little understood, but potential effects are significantly adverse or irreversible;
 - (c) there are no technically feasible options by which to secure a proposed net gain within acceptable timeframes.
 - (d) the loss from an ecological district of Threatened taxa, other than kanuka (*Kunzea robusta* and *Kunzea serotina*), under the New Zealand Threat Classification System (Townsend et al, 2008); or,
 - (e) removal or loss of viability of the *habitat* of a Threatened *indigenous species* of fauna or flora under the New Zealand Threat Classification System (Townsend et al, 2008),
 - (f) removal or loss of health and *resilience* of a naturally uncommon ecosystem type that is associated with *indigenous vegetation* or *habitat* of indigenous fauna,
 - (g) the likely worsening of the conservation status of any Threatened or At Risk *indigenous biodiversity* listed under the New Zealand Threat Classification System (Townsend et al, 2008).
- (3) scale of biodiversity compensation: The *indigenous biodiversity* values lost through the activity to which the *biodiversity compensation* applies are addressed by positive effects to *indigenous biodiversity* (including when indigenous species depend on introduced species for their persistence), that outweigh the adverse effects.
- (4) Additionality: *Biodiversity compensation* achieves gains in *indigenous biodiversity* above and beyond gains that would have occurred in the absence of the compensation, such as gains that are additional to any minimisation and remediation or offsetting undertaken in relation to the adverse effects of the activity.
- (5) Leakage: *Biodiversity compensation* design and implementation avoids displacing harm to other *indigenous biodiversity* in the same or any other location.
- (6) Long-term outcomes: *Biodiversity compensation* is managed to secure outcomes of the activity that last as least as long as the impacts, and preferably in perpetuity. Consideration must be given to long-term issues around funding, location, management, and monitoring.
- (7) Landscape context: *Biodiversity compensation* is undertaken where this will result in the best ecological outcome, preferably close to the impact site or within the same *ecological district*. The

²⁰⁷⁸ 00139.129 DCC, 00237.049 Beef & Lamb NZ

action considers the landscape context of both the impact site and the compensation site taking into account interactions between species, *habitats*, and ecosystems, spatial connections, and *ecosystem function*.

- (8) Time lags: The delay between loss of, or effects on, *indigenous biodiversity* values at the impact site and the gain or maturity of *indigenous biodiversity* at the compensation site is minimised so that the calculated gains are achieved within the consent period or, as appropriate, a longer period (but not more than 35 years)
- (9) Trading up: When trading up forms part of biodiversity compensation, the proposal demonstrates that the *indigenous biodiversity* gains are demonstrably greater or higher than those lost. The proposal also shows the values are not to *Threatened or At Risk (declining) species* or to species considered vulnerable or irreplaceable.
- (10) Financial contributions: A financial contribution is only considered if:
- (a) there is no effective option available for delivering biodiversity gains on the ground; and
 - (b) it directly funds an intended biodiversity gain or benefit that complies with the rest of these principles.
- (11) Science and mātauraka Māori: The design and implementation of *biodiversity compensation* is a documented process informed by science, and mātauraka Māori.
- (12) Mana whenua and stakeholder participation: Opportunity for the effective and early participation of mana whenua and stakeholders is demonstrated when planning for biodiversity compensation, including its evaluation, selection, design, implementation, and monitoring.
- (13) Transparency: The design and implementation of biodiversity compensation, and communication of its results to the public, is undertaken in a transparent and timely manner.
- (14) Achievability: The *biodiversity compensation* outcome is demonstrably achievable.

~~(1) — *Biodiversity* compensation is not available if the activity will result in:~~

- ~~(a) — the loss of an indigenous *taxon* (excluding *freshwater* fauna and flora) or of any ecosystem type from an ecological district or coastal marine biogeographic region,~~
- ~~(b) — removal or loss of viability of habitat of a Threatened or At Risk indigenous species of fauna or flora under the New Zealand Threat Classification System (Townsend et al, 2008),~~
- ~~(c) — removal or loss of viability of a *naturally rare* or uncommon ecosystem type that is associated with indigenous vegetation or habitat of indigenous fauna, or~~
- ~~(d) — worsening of the New Zealand Threat Classification System (Townsend et al, 2008) conservation status of any Threatened or At Risk indigenous fauna.~~

~~(2) — *Biodiversity* compensation is available if the following criteria are met:~~

- ~~(a) — compensation addresses only residual adverse effects that remain after implementing the sequential steps required by ECO-P5(1) to (4),~~
- ~~(b) — compensation is undertaken where it will result in the best practicable outcome and preferably:
 - ~~(i) — close to the location of the activity, and~~
 - ~~(ii) — within the same ecological district or coastal marine biogeographic region,~~~~

- ~~(c) — compensation achieves positive *biodiversity* outcomes that would not have occurred without that compensation,~~
- ~~(d) — the positive *biodiversity* outcomes of the compensation are enduring,~~
- ~~(e) — the time delay between the loss of *biodiversity* through the proposal and the gain or maturation of the compensation's *biodiversity* outcomes is the least necessary to achieve the best possible outcome,~~
- ~~(f) — the outcome of the compensation is achieved within the duration of the *resource consent*,~~
- ~~(g) — *biodiversity* compensation developed in advance of an application for *resource consent* must be shown to have been created or commenced in anticipation of the specific *effect* of the proposed activity and would not have occurred if that *effect* was not anticipated, and~~
- ~~(h) — the *biodiversity* compensation is demonstrably achievable.~~

APP4A – Principles for aquatic offsetting

These principles apply to the use of aquatic offsets for the loss of extent or values of natural inland wetlands and rivers (“extent or values” below).

1. Adherence to effects management hierarchy: An aquatic offset is a commitment to redress more than minor residual adverse effects, and should be contemplated only after steps to avoid, minimise, and remedy adverse effects are demonstrated to have been sequentially exhausted.

2. When aquatic offsetting is not appropriate: Aquatic offsets are not appropriate in situations where, in terms of conservation outcomes, the extent or values cannot be offset to achieve no net loss, and preferably a net gain, in the extent and values. Examples of an offset not being appropriate would include where:

(a) residual adverse effects cannot be offset because of the irreplaceability or vulnerability of the extent or values affected:

(b) effects on the extent or values are uncertain, unknown, or little understood, but potential effects are significantly adverse:

(c) there are no technically feasible options by which to secure proposed no net loss and preferably a net gain outcome within an acceptable timeframe.

3. No net loss and preferably a net gain: This is demonstrated by a like-for-like quantitative loss/gain calculation, and is achieved when the extent or values gained at the offset site (measured by type, amount and condition) are equivalent to or exceed those being lost at the impact site.

4. Additionality: An aquatic offset achieves gains in extent or values above and beyond gains that would have occurred in the absence of the offset, such as gains that are additional to any minimisation and remediation undertaken in relation to the adverse effects of the activity.

5. Leakage: Aquatic offset design and implementation avoids displacing harm to other locations (including harm to existing biodiversity at the offset site).

6. Long-term outcomes: An aquatic offset is managed to secure outcomes of the activity that last at least as long as the impacts, and preferably in perpetuity. Consideration must be given to long-term issues around funding, location, management and monitoring.

7. Landscape context: An aquatic offset action is undertaken where this will result in the best ecological outcome, preferably close to the impact site or within the same ecological district. The action considers the landscape context of both the impact site and the offset site, taking into account interactions between species, habitats and ecosystems, spatial and hydrological connections, and ecosystem function.

8. Time lags: The delay between loss of extent or values at the impact site and the gain or maturity of extent or values at the offset site is minimised so that the calculated gains are achieved within the consent period or, as appropriate, a longer period (but not more than 35 years).

9. Science and mātauranga Māori: The design and implementation of an aquatic offset is a documented process informed by science where available, and mātauranga Māori at place.

10. Tangata whenua or stakeholder participation: Opportunity for the effective and early participation of tangata whenua or stakeholders is demonstrated when planning aquatic offsets, including their evaluation, selection, design, implementation, and monitoring.

11. Transparency: The design and implementation of an aquatic offset, and communication of its results

to the public, is undertaken in a transparent and timely manner.

APP4B – Principles for aquatic compensation

These principles apply to the use of aquatic compensation for the loss of extent or values of natural inland wetlands and rivers (“extent or values” below).

1. Adherence to effects management hierarchy: Aquatic compensation is a commitment to redress more than minor residual adverse effects, and should be contemplated only after steps to avoid, minimise, remedy, and offset adverse effects are demonstrated to have been sequentially exhausted.

2. When aquatic compensation is not appropriate: Aquatic compensation is not appropriate where, in terms of conservation outcomes, the extent or values are not able to be compensated for. Examples of aquatic compensation not being appropriate would include where:

(a) the affected part of the natural inland wetland or river bed, or its values, including species, are irreplaceable or vulnerable:

(b) effects on the extent or values are uncertain, unknown, or little understood, but potential effects are significantly adverse:

(c) there are no technically feasible options by which to secure gains within an acceptable timeframe.

3. Scale of aquatic compensation: The extent or values to be lost through the activity to which the aquatic compensation applies are addressed by positive effects that outweigh the adverse effects.

4. Additionality: Aquatic compensation achieves gains in extent or values above and beyond gains that would have occurred in the absence of the compensation, such as gains that are additional to any minimisation and remediation or offsetting undertaken in relation to the adverse effects of the activity.

5. Leakage: Aquatic compensation design and implementation avoids displacing harm to other locations (including harm to existing biodiversity at the compensation site).

6. Long-term outcomes: Aquatic compensation is managed to secure outcomes of the activity that last as long as the impacts, and preferably in perpetuity. Consideration must be given to long-term issues around funding, location, management, and monitoring.

7. Landscape context: An aquatic compensation action is undertaken where this will result in the best ecological outcome, preferably close to the impact site or within the same ecological district. The action considers the landscape context of both the impact site and the compensation site, taking into account interactions between species, habitats and ecosystems, spatial and hydrological connections, and ecosystem function.

8. Time lags: The delay between loss of extent or values at the impact site and the gain or maturity of extent or values at the compensation site is minimised so that the calculated gains are achieved within the consent period or, as appropriate, a longer period (but not more than 35 years).

9. Trading up: When trading up forms part of aquatic compensation, the proposal demonstrates that the aquatic extent or values gained are demonstrably of greater or higher value than those lost. The proposal also shows the values lost are not to Threatened or At Risk/Declining species or to species considered vulnerable or irreplaceable.

10. Financial contribution: A financial contribution is only considered if it directly funds an intended aquatic gain or benefit that complies with the rest of these principles.

11. Science and mātauranga Māori: The design and implementation of aquatic compensation is a documented process informed by science where available, and mātauranga Māori at place.

12. Tangata whenua or stakeholder participation: Opportunity for the effective and early participation of tangata whenua or stakeholders is demonstrated when planning aquatic compensation, including its evaluation, selection, design, implementation, and monitoring.

13. Transparency: The design and implementation of aquatic compensation, and communication of its results to the public, is undertaken in a transparent and timely manner.

APP5 – Species prone to *wilding conifer* spread

Table 5: Species prone to *wilding conifer* spread

Common name	Botanical name
Big cone pine	<i>Pinus coulteri</i>
Bishops pine	<i>Pinus muricata</i>
Contorta (lodgepole) pine	<i>Pinus contorta</i>
Corsican pine, Black pine	<i>Pinus nigra</i>
Douglas fir	<i>Pseudotsuga menziesii</i>
Dwarf mountain pine	<i>Pinus uncinata</i>
Japanese cedar	<i>Cryptomeria japonica</i>
Japanese larch	<i>Larix kaempferi</i>
Larch	<i>Larix decidua</i>
Lawson's cypress	<i>Chamaecyparis lawsoniana</i>
Macrocarpa	<i>Cupressus macrocarpa</i>
Maritime pine	<i>Pinus pinaster</i>
Mountain pine	<i>Pinus mugo</i>
Norfolk Island pine	<i>Araucaria heterophylla</i>
Norway spruce	<i>Picea abies</i>
Patula pine	<i>Pinus patula</i>
Pine	<i>Pinus sp./Pine</i>
Ponderosa pine	<i>Pinus ponderosa</i>
Radiata pine	<i>Pinus radiata</i>
Scots pine	<i>Pinus sylvestris</i>
Sitka spruce	<i>Picea sylvestris</i>
Slash pine	<i>Pinus elliottii</i>
Spruce	<i>Picea sp.</i>
Strobus pine	<i>Pinus strobus</i>
Western red cedar	<i>Thuja plicata</i>
Western white pine	<i>Pinus monticola</i>

APP6 – Methodology for *natural hazard risk assessment*

Undertake the following four step process to determine the *natural hazard risk*.

Step 1 – Determine the likelihood

- (1) Using Table 6, assess the likelihood of three *natural hazard* scenarios occurring, representing a high likelihood, median likelihood, and the maximum credible event, using the best available information;
- (2) Use table 6 to assign a likelihood descriptor to the three natural hazard scenarios.
- (3) The likelihood assessment shall include consideration of the *effect of climate change* and should use the Shared Socio-Economic Pathway (SSP) scenarios or Representative Concentration Pathways (RCP) scenarios provided in the National Adaptation Plan.²⁰⁷⁹

Table 6: Likelihood scale

Likelihood	Indicative frequency
Almost certain	Up to once every 50 years (2% AEP)
Likely	Once every 51 – 100 years (2 – 1% AEP)
Possible	Once every 101 – 1,000 years (1 – 0.11% AEP)
Unlikely	Once every 1,001 – 2,500 years (0.1 – 0.04% AEP)
Rare	2,501 years plus (<0.04% AEP)

Step 2 – *Natural hazard consequence*

Advice note 1: Table 7 shall be utilised by *local authorities* determining the level of *risk* presented by a hazard(s) when undertaking plan change or plan review processes.

Advice note 2: The matters listed in (1) to (11) provide useful considerations for *local authorities* and are the primary considerations for resource consent applications triggering a *risk assessment* requirement in accordance with HAZ-NH-M3(7)(a) or HAZ-NH-M4(7)(a).²⁰⁸⁰

Using Table 7 and the matters listed in (1) to (10) below, assess the consequence (catastrophic, major, moderate, minor, or insignificant) of the *natural hazard* scenarios identified in step 1 considering:

- (1) the nature and scale²⁰⁸¹ of activities in the area,
- (2) individual and community vulnerability and resilience,²⁰⁸²
- (3) impacts on individual and community health and safety,
- (4) impacts on social, cultural and economic well-being,
- (5) impacts on *infrastructure* and property, including access and services,
- (6) available and viable *risk* reduction and hazard mitigation measures,
- (7) *lifeline utilities*, essential and emergency services, and their co-dependence,

²⁰⁷⁹ 00138.147 QLDC

²⁰⁸⁰ 00301.055 Port Otago

²⁰⁸¹ 00411.091 Wayfare

²⁰⁸² 00411.091 Wayfare

- (8) implications for civil defence agencies and emergency services,
- (9) the changing *natural hazard* environment,
- (10) cumulative *effects* including *multiple* and *cascading hazards*, where present, and
- (11) factors that may exacerbate a *natural hazard* event including the *effects* of *climate change*.

Table 7: Consequence table

Severity of Impact	Built				Health & Safety
	Social/Cultural	Buildings	Critical Buildings	Lifelines	
Catastrophic (V)	≥25% of <i>buildings</i> of social/cultural significance within hazard <u>impact area zone</u> ²⁰⁸³ have functionality compromised	≥50% of affected ²⁰⁸⁴ <i>buildings</i> within hazard <u>impact area zone</u> ²⁰⁸⁵ have functionality compromised	≥25% of critical facilities within hazard <u>impact area zone</u> ²⁰⁸⁶ have functionality compromised	Out of service for > 1 month (affecting ≥20% of the town/city population) OR suburbs out of service for > 6 months (affecting < 20% of the town/city population)	> 101 dead and/or > 1001 injured ²⁰⁸⁷
Major (IV)	11-24% of <i>buildings</i> of social/cultural significance within hazard <u>impact area zone</u> ²⁰⁸⁸ have functionality compromised	21-49% of <i>buildings</i> within hazard <u>impact area zone</u> ²⁰⁸⁹ have functionality compromised	11-24% of <i>buildings</i> within hazard <u>impact area zone</u> ²⁰⁹⁰ have functionality compromised	Out of service for 1 week – 1 month (affecting ≥20% of the town/city population) OR suburbs out of service for 6 weeks to 6 months (affecting < 20% of the town/city population)	11 – 100 dead and/or 101 – 1000 injured ²⁰⁹¹
Moderate (III)	6-10% of <i>buildings</i> of social/cultural significance within hazard <u>impact area zone</u> ²⁰⁹² have functionality compromised	11-20% of <i>buildings</i> within hazard <u>impact area zone</u> ²⁰⁹³ have functionality compromised	6-10% of <i>buildings</i> within hazard <u>impact area zone</u> ²⁰⁹⁴ have functionality compromised	Out of service for 1 day to 1 week (affecting ≥20% of the town/city population) OR suburbs out of service for 1 week to 6 weeks (affecting < 20% of the town/city population)	2 – 20 dead and/or 11 – 100 injured ²⁰⁹⁵
Minor (II)	1-5% of <i>buildings</i> of social/cultural significance within hazard <u>impact area</u>	2-10% of <i>buildings</i> within hazard <u>impact area</u>	1-5% of <i>buildings</i> within hazard <u>impact area</u>	Out of service for 2 hours to 1 day (affecting ≥20% of the town/city population) OR suburbs out of service for 1 day to 1 week (affecting < 20% of the town/city population)	1 dead and/or 1 – 10 injured

²⁰⁸³ 00138.147 QLDC

²⁰⁸⁴ Clause 16(2), Schedule 1, RMA

²⁰⁸⁵ 00138.147 QLDC

²⁰⁸⁶ 00138.147 QLDC

²⁰⁸⁷ 00138.147 QLDC

²⁰⁸⁸ 00138.147 QLDC

²⁰⁸⁹ 00138.147 QLDC

²⁰⁹⁰ 00138.147 QLDC

²⁰⁹¹ 00138.147 QLDC

²⁰⁹² 00138.147 QLDC

²⁰⁹³ 00138.147 QLDC

²⁰⁹⁴ 00138.147 QLDC

²⁰⁹⁵ 00138.147 QLDC

	zone ²⁰⁹⁶ have functionality compromised	area zone ²⁰⁹⁷ have functionality compromised	zone ²⁰⁹⁸ have functionality compromised		
Insignificant (I)	No <i>buildings</i> of social/cultural significance within hazard <u>impact area</u> zone ²⁰⁹⁹ have functionality compromised	< 1% of affected ²¹⁰⁰ <i>buildings</i> within hazard <u>impact area</u> zone ²¹⁰¹ have functionality compromised	No damage within hazard <u>impact area</u> zone ²¹⁰² , fully functional	Out of service for up to 2 hours (affecting ≥20% of the town/city population) OR suburbs out of service for up to 1 day (affecting < 20% of the town/city population)	No dead No injured

When assessing consequences within this matrix, the final level of impact is assessed on the ‘first past the post’ principle, in that the consequence with the highest severity of impact applies. For example, if a *natural hazard* event resulted in moderate severity of impact across all of the categories, with the exception of critical *buildings* which had a ‘major’ severity of impact, the major impact is what the proposal would be assessed on. If a *natural hazard* event resulted in all of the consequences being at the same level (for example, all of the consequences are rated moderate), then the level of consequence is considered to be moderate.

When this assessment is being undertaken in accordance with HAZ-NH-M3(7)(a) or HAZ-NH-M4(7)(a) the text within Step 2 shall guide the assessment of *natural hazard* consequence.²¹⁰³

Step 3 – Assessing ~~activities for~~²¹⁰⁴ *natural hazard risk*

Using the information within steps 1 and 2 above, complete Table 8 for each of the hazard scenarios considered, and identify if the risk from each of the scenarios is and Table 8, assess whether the *natural hazard* scenarios will have an²¹⁰⁵ acceptable, tolerable, or significant *risk* to people, property and communities, by considering:

- ~~(1) the *natural hazard risk* identified, including residual risk,~~
- ~~(2) any measures to avoid, remedy or mitigate those risks, including relocation and recovery methods,~~
- ~~(3) the long-term viability and affordability of those measures,~~
- ~~(4) flow on effects of the risk to other activities, individuals and communities, and~~
- ~~(5) the availability of, and ability to provide, *lifeline utilities*, and essential and emergency services, during and after a *natural hazard* event.~~²¹⁰⁶

²⁰⁹⁶ 00138.147 QLDC

²⁰⁹⁷ 00138.147 QLDC

²⁰⁹⁸ 00138.147 QLDC

²⁰⁹⁹ 00138.147 QLDC

²¹⁰⁰ Clause 16(2), Schedule 1, RMA

²¹⁰¹ 00138.147 QLDC

²¹⁰² 00138.147 QLDC

²¹⁰³ 00301.055 Port Otago

²¹⁰⁴ 00138.147 QLDC

²¹⁰⁵ 00138.147 QLDC

²¹⁰⁶ 00138.147 QLDC

Table 8: Risk table

Likelihood	Consequences				
	Insignificant	Minor	Moderate	Major	Catastrophic
Almost certain					
Likely					
Possible					
Unlikely					
Rare					
Green, Acceptable Risk: Yellow, Tolerable Risk: Red, Significant Risk, <u>Hatching: Quantitative assessment required</u> ²¹⁰⁷					

Notes:

Table 8 above has been included as a region-wide baseline. As set out in HAZ–NH–M2(1) *local authorities* are required to undertake a consultation process with communities, stakeholders and partners regarding *risk* levels thresholds and develop a *risk* table at a district or community scale. This region-wide baseline is to be used in the absence of a district or community scale *risk* table being developed.

When this assessment is being undertaken in accordance with HAZ–NH–M3(7)(a) or HAZ–NH–M4(7)(a) the text within Step 3 shall guide the assessment of *natural hazard risk*.²¹⁰⁸

Step 4 – Undertake a quantitative *risk* assessment

While Steps 1-3 will qualitatively categorise *natural hazard risk* based on a community’s understanding and acceptance level of *risk*, it will not provide quantitative understanding of the *risk* a *natural hazard* presents to the built environment, or health and safety.

If the assessment undertaken in Steps 1-3 determines that one of the three *natural hazard* scenarios generate *risk* that is significant, or a tolerable risk with a catastrophic consequence,²¹⁰⁹ undertake a quantitative *risk* assessment utilising the following methodology:²¹¹⁰

- (1) Based on the likelihood of a *natural hazard* event within the hazard zone (see Step 1), and including the potential impacts of *climate change* and sea level rise, select a representative range

²¹⁰⁷ 00415.002 ORC

²¹⁰⁸ 00138.147 QLDC

²¹⁰⁹ 00415.002 ORC

²¹¹⁰ This methodology has been developed in general accordance with the Australian Geomechanics Society, 2007 methodology, which may usefully provide additional guidance. (New footnote attributed to 00138.147 QLDC)

of at least ~~three~~ five²¹¹¹ hazard scenarios with varying likelihoods to model,²¹¹² including the maximum credible event.

- (2) Model the Annual Individual Fatality Risk (AIFR)²¹¹³ and Annual Property Risk (APR)²¹¹⁴ for the range of hazard scenarios across the hazard zone, and create loss exceedance distributions.
- (3) Analyse loss exceedance distributions and determine losses.
- (4) Assign the risk level ~~Implementing a first-past-the-post principle for the AIFR and APR:~~²¹¹⁵
 - (a) for areas of new development where the greatest AIFR or APR is:
 - (i) less than 1×10^{-6} per year, the *risk* is re-categorised as acceptable,
 - (ii) between 1×10^{-6} and 1×10^{-5} per year, the *risk* is re-categorised as tolerable, or
 - (iii) greater than 1×10^{-5} per year, the *risk* is re-categorised as significant.
 - (b) for areas with existing development, where the greatest AIFR or APR is:
 - (i) less than 1×10^{-5} per year, the *risk* is re-categorised as acceptable;
 - (ii) between 1×10^{-5} and 1×10^{-4} per year, the *risk* is re-categorised as tolerable; or
 - (iii) greater than 1×10^{-4} per year, the *risk* is re-categorised as significant.

~~(5) Following the quantitative risk assessment, a risk level is assigned to the hazard area.~~

AIFR and APR are the selected *risk* metrics as they represent the likely consequences of a wide range of *natural hazards*. For example, some *natural hazards*, generally, do not have the capacity to cause fatalities, but may result in widespread damage to property, while other *natural hazards* have a high capacity to cause fatalities. A first-past-the-post principle to the re-categorisation of *risk* is applied to ensure that decisions are based on the greatest *risk* present between the two metrics.

If the level of knowledge or uncertainty regarding the likelihood or consequences of a *natural hazard* event precludes the use of Step 4, then a precautionary approach to assessing and managing the *risk* should be applied, as set out in HAZ–NH–P5.

²¹¹¹ 00138.147 QLDC

²¹¹² The model should include an analysis of uncertainty.

²¹¹³ Annual probability that an individual most at risk is killed in any one year as a result of the hazards occurring.

²¹¹⁴ Annual probability of total property loss (relating to permanent structures) as a result of the hazards occurring.

²¹¹⁵ 00138.147 QLDC

APP7 – Identifying *wāhi tūpuna*

This appendix is a guide to assist in identifying *wāhi tūpuna*. It is not a complete list of all *wāhi tūpuna* in Otago.

Kāi Tahu use the term '*wāhi tūpuna*' to describe landscapes ~~that embody the customary and contemporary relationship of Kāi Tahu and their culture and traditions with Otago.~~ and places that embody the relationship of mana whenua and their culture and traditions with their ancestral lands, water, sites, wāhi tapu and other taoka.²¹¹⁶ It is important to understand this concept in the context of the distinctive seasonal lifestyle that Kāi Tahu evolved in the south. The sites and resources used by Kāi Tahu are spread throughout Otago. These places did not function in isolation from one another but were part of a wider cultural setting and pattern of seasonal resource use. The different elements of these areas sites²¹¹⁷ of significance include:

Table 9: Areas Sites²¹¹⁸ of significance to Kāi Tahu

Area Site²¹¹⁹ of significance	Explanation
Ara Tawhito	Ancient trails. A network of trails crossed the region linking the permanent villages with seasonal inland campsites and along the coast, providing access to a range of <u><i>mahika kai mahika kai</i></u> ²¹²⁰ resources and inland stone resources, including pounamu and silcrete.
Kāika	Permanent settlements or occupation sites. These occurred throughout Otago, particularly in coastal areas.
Nohoaka	These were a network of seasonal settlements. Kāi Tahu were based largely on the coast in permanent settlements and ranged inland on a seasonal basis. Iwi history shows, through place names and whakapapa, continuous occupation of a network of seasonal settlements, which were distributed along the main river systems from the source lakes to the sea.
Wāhi <u><i>mahika kai mahika kai</i></u> ²¹²¹	The places where the customary gathering of food or natural materials occurs. <u><i>Mahika kai Mahika kai</i></u> ²¹²² is one of the cornerstones of Kāi Tahu culture.
Mauka	Important mountains. Mountains are of great cultural importance to Kāi Tahu. Many are places of spiritual presence, and prominent peaks in the district are linked to Kāi Tahu creation stories, identity and mana.
Marae	The marae atea and the buildings around it, including the wharenuī, wharekai, church and urupā. The sheltering havens of Kāi Tahu cultural expression, a place to gather, kōrero and to welcome visitors. Maraе are expressions of Kāi Tahu past and present.
Repo <u>raupō raupō</u> ²¹²³	Wetlands or swamps. These provide valued habitat for taoka species and <u><i>mahika kai mahika kai</i></u> ²¹²⁴ resources.
<u>Taumanu</u> ²¹²⁵	<u>Fishing sites. These are traditional fishing easements which have been gazetted by the South Island Māori Land Court.</u>

²¹¹⁶ 00223.135 Ngāi Tahu ki Murihiku

²¹¹⁷ 00226.327 Kāi Tahu ki Otago

²¹¹⁸ 00226.327 Kāi Tahu ki Otago

²¹¹⁹ Clause 10(2)(b)(i), Schedule 1, RMA – consequential amendment arising from 00226.327 Kāi Tahu ki Otago

²¹²⁰ Clause 10(2)(b)(i) – consequential amendment arising from 00226.038 Kāi Tahu ki Otago

²¹²¹ Clause 10(2)(b)(i) – consequential amendment arising from 00226.038 Kāi Tahu ki Otago

²¹²² Clause 10(2)(b)(i) – consequential amendment arising from 00226.038 Kāi Tahu ki Otago

²¹²³ 00226.327 Kāi Tahu ki Otago

²¹²⁴ Clause 10(2)(b)(i) – consequential amendment arising from 00226.038 Kāi Tahu ki Otago

²¹²⁵ Clause 16(2), Schedule 1, RMA

Tauraka waka	Canoe mooring sites. These were important for transport and gathering kai.
Tūāhu	Places of importance to Māori identity. These are generally sacred ground and marked by an object, or a place used for purposes of divination.
<u>Tuhituhi neherā</u> ²¹²⁶	<u>Rock art sites.</u>
Taumanu ²¹²⁷	Fishing sites. These are traditional fishing easements which have been gazetted by the South Island Māori Land Court.
Umu, Umu-tī	Earth ovens. Used for cooking tī-kōuka (cabbage tree), are found in a diversity of areas, including old stream banks and ancient river terraces, on low spurs or ridges, and in association with other features, such as kāika nohoaka.
Urupā	Human burial sites. These include historic burial sites associated with kāika, and contemporary sites, such as the urupā at Ōtākou and Puketeraki marae.
Wāhi kōhatu	Rock outcrops. Rocky outcrops provided excellent shelters and were intensively occupied by Māori from the moa-hunter period into early European settlement during seasonal hikoī. Tuhituhi neherā (rock art) may be present due to the occupation of such places by the tūpuna.

Wāhi pakaka	Battle sites. Historic battle sites occur throughout Otago, such as that at Ohinepouwera (<u>Waikōuaiti</u> Waikouaiti ²¹²⁸ sandspit) where Taoka's warriors camped for six months while they laid siege on Te Wera on the Huriawa Peninsula.
Wāhi paripari	Cliff areas.
Wāhi taoka	Resources, places and sites treasured by <i>mana whenua</i> . These valued places reflect the long history and association of Kāi Tahu with Otago.
Wāhi tapu	Places sacred to Kāi Tahu. These occur throughout Otago and include urupā (human burial sites).
Wāhi tohu	Features used as location markers within the landscape. Prominent landforms formed part of the network of trails along the coast and inland.
Wai Māori	Freshwater areas important to Māori, including wai puna (springs), roto (lakes) and awa (rivers).

²¹²⁶ 00226.327 Kāi Tahu ki Otago

²¹²⁷ See above.

²¹²⁸ 00226.024 Kāi Tahu ki Otago

APP8 – Identification criteria for places and areas of *historic heritage*

1. Identifying Areas and Places with Historic Heritage²¹²⁹

A place or area is considered to have *historic heritage* if it meets any one or more of criteria below:

²¹³⁰

Aesthetic	The place has, or includes, aesthetic qualities that are considered to be especially pleasing, particularly beautiful, or overwhelming to the senses, eliciting an emotional response. These qualities are demonstrably valued, either by an existing community or the general public, to the extent that they could be expected to experience a sense of loss if the qualities which evoke the aesthetic value were no longer there.
Archaeological	The place provides, or is demonstrably likely to provide, physical evidence of human activity that could be investigated using archaeological methods. Evidence obtained from an archaeological investigation could be expected to be of significance in answering research questions, or as a new or important source of information about an aspect of New Zealand history.
Architectural	The place reflects identifiable methods of construction or architectural styles or movements. When compared with other similar examples, or in the view of experts or relevant practitioners, it has characteristics reflecting a significant development in this country's architecture. Alternatively, or in conjunction with this, the place is an important or representative example of architecture associated with a particular region or the wider New Zealand landscape.
Cultural	The place reflects significant aspects of an identifiable culture and it can be demonstrated that the place is valued by the associated cultural group as an important or representative expression of that culture.
Historic	The place contributes to the understanding of a significant aspect of New Zealand history and has characteristics making it particularly useful for enhancing understanding of this aspect of history, especially when compared to other similar places.
Scientific	The place includes, or is demonstrably likely to include, fabric expected to be of significance in answering research questions or a new or important source of information about an aspect of New Zealand's cultural or historical past through the use of specified scientific methods of enquiry.

²¹²⁹ Clause 16(2), Schedule 1, RMA

²¹³⁰ The identification criteria in APP8 follows O'Brian, R and Barnes-Wylie J, Guidelines for Assessing Historic Places and Historic Areas for the New Zealand Heritage List/Rārangī Kōrero (2019) which has been adopted by Heritage New Zealand Pouhere Taonga as its Significance Assessment Guidelines, with the exception that the 'Aesthetic' criterion has been removed. (00123.003 Heritage New Zealand Pouhere Taonga, 00139.239 DCC)

- Social** The place has a clearly associated community that developed because of the place, and its special characteristics. The community has demonstrated that it values the place to a significant degree because it brings its members together, and they might be expected to feel a collective sense of loss if they were no longer able to use, see, experience or interact with the place.
- Spiritual** The place is associated with a community or group who value the place for its religious, mystical or sacred meaning, association or symbolism. The community or group regard the place with reverence, veneration and respect, and they might be expected to feel a collective sense of loss if they were no longer able to use, see, experience or interact with the place.
- Technological** The place includes physical evidence of a technological advance or method that was widely adopted, particularly innovative, or which made a significant contribution to New Zealand history
OR
The place reflects significant technical accomplishment in comparison with other similar examples or, in the view of experts or practitioners in the field, has characteristics making the place particularly able to contribute towards our understanding of this technology.
- Traditional** The place reflects a tradition that has been passed down by a community or culture for a long period, usually generations and especially since before living memory, and has characteristics reflecting important or representative aspects of this tradition to a significant extent.

The significance of areas and places with *historic heritage* will be assessed having regard to the following criteria:

Identification of Special or Outstanding Heritage Values or Qualities

Where, for example, in a resource consent or notice of requirement process, a place or an area that has been identified as having historic heritage values or qualities, and is required to be assessed to determine whether those values or qualities are special or outstanding, that assessment must:²¹³¹

(1) utilise the following criteria:

- (1a) the extent to which the place reflects important or representative aspects of Otago or New Zealand history,
- (2b) the association of the place with events, persons, or ideas of importance in Otago or New Zealand history,
- (3c) the potential of the place to provide knowledge of Otago or New Zealand history,
- (4d) the importance of the place to *mana whenuas*, ~~mana whenuas~~,
- (5e) the community association with, or public esteem for, the place,
- (6f) the potential of the place for public education,
- (7g) the technical accomplishment, value, or design of the place,

²¹³¹ 00137.144 Director General of Conservation

- (8h) the symbolic or commemorative value of the place,
 - (9i) the importance of identifying historic places known to date from an early period of Otago's or New Zealand's settlement,
 - (10j) the importance of identifying rare types of historic places, and
 - (11k) the extent to which the place forms part of a wider historical and cultural area, and
- (2) apply the method set out in "Part Two: Applying the section 66(3) criteria" of Assessing Historic Places and Historic Areas for the New Zealand Heritage List/Rārangi Kōrero (2019).

~~APP9 – Identification criteria for outstanding and highly valued natural features, landscapes and seascapes~~

The areas and the values of outstanding and *highly valued natural features, landscapes and seascapes* are identified using the following attributes:

- | | |
|--|--|
| Physical attributes | <ul style="list-style-type: none">(a) Natural science factors, including geological, topographical, ecological and dynamic components.(b) The presence of <i>water</i> including in seas, <i>lakes, rivers</i> and streams.(c) Vegetation (native and exotic). |
| Sensory attributes | <ul style="list-style-type: none">(d) Legibility or expressiveness – how obviously the feature, landscape or seascape demonstrates its formative processes.(e) Aesthetic values including memorability and naturalness.(f) Transient values, including presence of wildlife or other values at certain times of the day or year.(g) Wild or scenic values.(h) – |
| Associative attributes | <ul style="list-style-type: none">(h) Whether the values are shared and recognised.(i) Cultural and spiritual values for Kāi Tahu, identified by working, as far as practicable, in accordance with tikanga Māori, including their expression as cultural landscapes and features.(j) Historical and heritage associations. |

APP10 – Housing bottom lines

Table 10: Bottom lines for development capacity

Tier 2 Urban Environment	Short- Medium Term (0-10 years)	Long Term (11-30 years)
Queenstown		
Dunedin		

Note: This schedule will be amended or reamended in accordance with the National Policy Statement for Urban Development 2020, without using RMA Schedule 1, as soon as practicable following the publication of any relevant *Housing and Business Development Capacity Assessment*, the first of which is due to be completed by 31 July 2021.

APP11 – Accidental Discovery Protocol²¹³²

If an unidentified *archaeological site* is located during works, the following applies:

1. Work must cease immediately at that place and within 20m around the site.
2. The contractor must shut down all machinery, secure the area, and advise the Site Manager.
3. The Site Manager must secure the site and notify the Heritage New Zealand Regional Archaeologist. Further assessment by an archaeologist may be required.
4. If the site is of Māori origin, the Site Manager must notify the Heritage New Zealand Regional Archaeologist and the appropriate papatipu rūnaka of the discovery and ensure site access to enable appropriate cultural procedures and tikaka to be undertaken, as long as all statutory requirements under legislation are met (Heritage New Zealand Pouhere Taonga Act, Protected Objects Act).
5. If human remains (kōiwi) are uncovered the Site Manager must advise the Heritage New Zealand Regional Archaeologist, NZ Police and the appropriate papatipu rūnaka and the above process under 4 must apply. Papatipu rūnaka will lead the management of any kōiwi tangata (human remains of a Māori person) that have been uncovered, in line with the Te Rūnanga o Ngāi Tahu Kōiwi Tangata policy 2019. Remains are not to be moved until such time as papatipu rūnaka and Heritage New Zealand have responded.
6. Works affecting the *archaeological site* and any human remains (kōiwi) must not resume until Heritage New Zealand Pouhere Taonga gives written approval for work to continue. Works affecting a site of Māori origin or containing kōiwi tangata must not resume until papatipu rūnaka give written approval for work to continue. Further assessment by an archaeologist may be required.
7. Where iwi so request, any information recorded as the result of the find such as a description of location and content, is to be provided for their records.
8. Heritage New Zealand Pouhere Taonga will advise if an archaeological authority under the Heritage New Zealand Pouhere Taonga Act 2014 is required for works to continue.

It is an offence under Section 87 of the Heritage New Zealand Pouhere Taonga Act 2014 to modify or destroy an *archaeological site* without an authority from Heritage New Zealand irrespective of whether the works are permitted or consent has been issued under the Resource Management Act.

APP12 – Specified highly mobile fauna²¹³³

<u>Scientific Name</u>	<u>Common name</u>	<u>Ecosystem</u>	<u>Threat category</u>	<u>Found in Otago?</u>	<u>Listed in ORC's Schedule?</u>
<u><i>Anarhynchus frontalis</i></u>	<u>ngutu parore/wrybill</u>	<u>Coastal/riverine</u>	<u>Threatened (Nationally Increasing)</u>	<u>Yes</u>	<u>Yes</u>
<u><i>Anas chlorotis</i></u>	<u>pāteke/brown teal</u>	<u>wetland/riverine</u>	<u>Threatened (Nationally increasing)</u>		<u>Yes</u>
<u><i>Anas superciliosa superciliosa</i></u>	<u>pārera/grey duck</u>	<u>wetland/riverine</u>	<u>Threatened (Nationally Vulnerable)</u>		<u>Yes</u>
<u><i>Anthus novaeseelandiae novaeseelandiae</i></u>	<u>pīhoihoi/NZ pipit</u>	<u>forest/open</u>	<u>At Risk (Declining)</u>	<u>Yes</u>	
<u><i>Apteryx australis 'northern Fiordland'</i></u>	<u>northern Fiordland tokoeka</u>	<u>forest/open</u>	<u>Threatened (Nationally Vulnerable)</u>		
<u><i>Apteryx australis australis</i></u>	<u>southern Fiordland tokoeka</u>	<u>forest/open</u>	<u>Threatened (Nationally Endangered)</u>		
<u><i>Apteryx haastii</i></u>	<u>roa/great spotted kiwi</u>	<u>forest/open</u>	<u>Threatened (Nationally Vulnerable)</u>		
<u><i>Ardea modesta</i></u>	<u>kotuku/white heron</u>	<u>wetland/riverine</u>	<u>Threatened (Nationally Critical)</u>		<u>Yes</u>
<u><i>Botaurus poiciloptilus</i></u>	<u>matuku/bittern</u>	<u>wetland/riverine</u>	<u>Threatened (Nationally Critical)</u>	<u>Yes</u>	<u>Yes</u>
<u><i>Bowdleria punctata stewartiana</i></u>	<u>mātātā/Stewart Island fernbird</u>	<u>wetland/riverine</u>	<u>Threatened (Nationally Vulnerable)</u>		
<u><i>Bowdleria punctata punctata</i></u>	<u>koroātito/South Island fernbird</u>	<u>wetland/riverine</u>	<u>At Risk (Declining)</u>	<u>Yes</u>	
<u><i>Bowdleria punctata vealeae</i></u>	<u>mātātā/North Island fernbird</u>	<u>wetland/riverine</u>	<u>At Risk (Declining)</u>		
<u><i>Calidris canutus rogersi</i></u>	<u>huahou/lesser knot</u>	<u>coastal/riverine</u>	<u>At Risk (Declining)</u>	<u>Maybe?</u>	

<u><i>Chalinolobus tuberculatus</i></u>	<u>pekapeka/long-tailed bat</u>	<u>forest/open</u>	<u>Threatened (Nationally Critical)</u>	<u>Yes</u>	<u>yes</u>
<u><i>Charadrius bicinctus bicinctus</i></u>	<u>pohowera/banded dotterel</u>	<u>coastal/riverine</u>	<u>At Risk (Declining)</u>	<u>Yes</u>	
<u><i>Charadrius obscurus aquilonius</i></u>	<u>tūtiriwhatu/northern NZ dotterel</u>	<u>coastal/riverine</u>	<u>Threatened (Nationally Increasing)</u>		
<u><i>Charadrius obscurus obscurus</i></u>	<u>tūtiriwhatu/southern NZ dotterel</u>	<u>coastal/riverine</u>	<u>Threatened (Nationally Critical)</u>		
<u><i>Chlidonias albostratus</i></u>	<u>tara pirohe/blackfronted tern</u>	<u>coastal/riverine</u>	<u>Threatened (Nationally Endangered)</u>	<u>Yes</u>	<u>Yes</u>
<u><i>Egretta sacra sacra</i></u>	<u>matuku moana/reef heron</u>	<u>coastal/riverine</u>	<u>Threatened (Nationally Endangered)</u>	<u>Yes</u>	<u>Yes</u>
<u><i>Falco novaeseelandiae ferox</i></u>	<u>kārearea/bush falcon</u>	<u>forest/open</u>	<u>Threatened (Nationally Increasing)</u>		
<u><i>Falco novaeseelandiae novaeseelandiae</i></u>	<u>kārearea/eastern falcon</u>	<u>forest/open</u>	<u>Threatened (Nationally Vulnerable)</u>		
<u><i>Falco novaeseelandiae 'southern'</i></u>	<u>kārearea/southern falcon</u>	<u>forest/open</u>	<u>Threatened (Nationally Endangered)</u>		
<u><i>Gallirallus australis greyi</i></u>	<u>North Island weka</u>	<u>forest/open</u>	<u>At Risk (Relict)</u>		
<u><i>Gallirallus philippensis assimilis</i></u>	<u>moho pererū/banded rail</u>	<u>wetland/riverine</u>	<u>At Risk (Declining)</u>		
<u><i>Haematopus finschi</i></u>	<u>tōrea/South Island pied oystercatcher</u>	<u>coastal/riverine</u>	<u>At Risk (Declining)</u>	<u>Yes</u>	
<u><i>Haematopus unicolor</i></u>	<u>tōrea tai/variable oystercatcher</u>	<u>coastal/riverine</u>	<u>At Risk (Recovering)</u>	<u>Yes</u>	
<u><i>Himantopus novaeseelandiae</i></u>	<u>kakī/black stilt</u>	<u>wetland/riverine</u>	<u>Threatened (Nationally Critical)</u>	<u>Yes</u>	<u>Yes</u>
<u><i>Hydroprogne caspia</i></u>	<u>taranui/Caspian tern</u>	<u>coastal/riverine</u>	<u>Threatened (Nationally Vulnerable)</u>	<u>Yes</u>	<u>Yes</u>

<i>Hymenolaimus malacorhynchos</i>	<u>whio/blue duck</u>	<u>riverine</u>	<u>Threatened (Nationally Vulnerable)</u>	<u>Yes</u>	<u>Yes</u>
<i>Larus bulleri</i>	<u>tarāpukā/black-billed gull</u>	<u>coastal/riverine</u>	<u>At Risk (Declining)</u>	<u>Yes</u>	
<i>Larus novaehollandiae scopulinus</i>	<u>tarāpunga/red-billed gull</u>	<u>coastal/riverine</u>	<u>At Risk (Declining)</u>	<u>Yes</u>	
<i>Limosa lapponica baueri</i>	<u>kuaka/eastern bartailed godwit</u>	<u>coastal/riverine</u>	<u>At Risk (Declining)</u>	<u>Yes</u>	
<i>Mystacina tuberculata aupourica</i>	<u>pekapeka/northern short-tailed bat</u>	<u>forest/open</u>	<u>Threatened (Nationally Endangered)</u>		
<i>Mystacina tuberculata rhyacobia</i>	<u>pekapeka/central shorttailed bat</u>	<u>forest/open</u>	<u>At Risk (Declining)</u>		
<i>Mystacina tuberculata tuberculata</i>	<u>pekapeka/southern short-tailed bat</u>	<u>forest/open</u>	<u>At Risk (Recovering)</u>	<u>Yes / maybe?</u>	
<i>Nestor meridionalis meridionalis</i>	<u>kākā/South Island kākā</u>	<u>forest/open</u>	<u>Threatened (Nationally Vulnerable)</u>	<u>Yes</u>	
<i>Nestor meridionalis septentrionalis</i>	<u>kākā/North Island kākā</u>	<u>forest/open</u>	<u>At Risk (Recovering)</u>		
<i>Nestor notabilis</i>	<u>kea</u>	<u>forest/open</u>	<u>Threatened (Nationally Endangered)</u>	<u>Yes</u>	
<i>Petroica australis australis</i>	<u>kakariwai/South Island robin</u>	<u>forest/open</u>	<u>At Risk (Declining)</u>	<u>Yes</u>	
<i>Phalacrocorax varius varius</i>	<u>kāruhiruhi/pied shag</u>	<u>coastal/riverine</u>	<u>At Risk (Recovering)</u>	<u>Yes</u>	
<i>Podiceps cristatus australis</i>	<u>kāmana/southern crested grebe</u>	<u>wetland/riverine</u>	<u>Threatened (Nationally Vulnerable)</u>	<u>Yes</u>	<u>Yes</u>
<i>Poliiocephalus rufopectus</i>	<u>weweia/NZ dabchick</u>	<u>wetland/riverine</u>	<u>Threatened (Nationally Increasing)</u>		
<i>Porzana pusilla affinis</i>	<u>koitareke/marsh crake</u>	<u>wetland/riverine</u>	<u>At Risk (Declining)</u>	<u>Yes</u>	
<i>Porzana tabuensis</i>	<u>pūweto/spotless crake</u>	<u>wetland/riverine</u>	<u>At Risk (Declining)</u>		
<i>Sterna striata striata</i>	<u>tara/white-fronted tern</u>	<u>coastal/riverine</u>	<u>At Risk (Declining)</u>	<u>Yes</u>	

<u><i>Sternula nereis davisae</i></u>	<u>tara iti/NZ fairy tern</u>	<u>coastal/riverine</u>	<u>Threatened (Nationally Critical)</u>		
<u><i>Thinornis novaeseelandiae</i></u>	<u>tuturuatu/NZ shore plover</u>	<u>coastal/riverine</u>	<u>Threatened (Nationally Critical)</u>		
<u><i>Xenicus gilviventris 'northern'</i></u>	<u>pīwauwau/northern rock wren</u>	<u>forest/open</u>	<u>Threatened (Nationally Critical)</u>		
<u><i>Xenicus gilviventris 'southern'</i></u>	<u>pīwauwau/southern rock wren</u>	<u>forest/open</u>	<u>Threatened (Nationally Endangered)</u>	<u>Yes</u>	

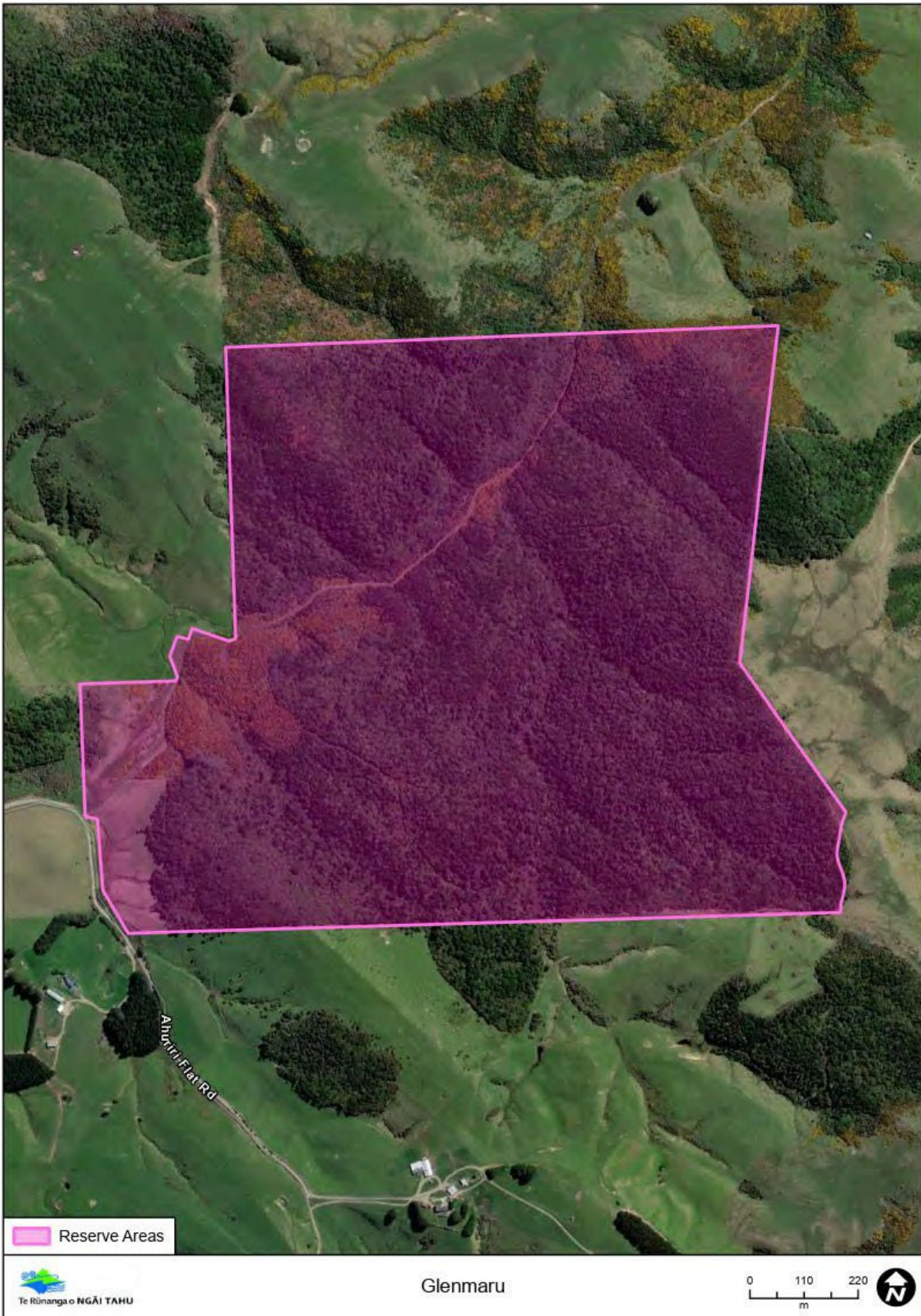
Maps

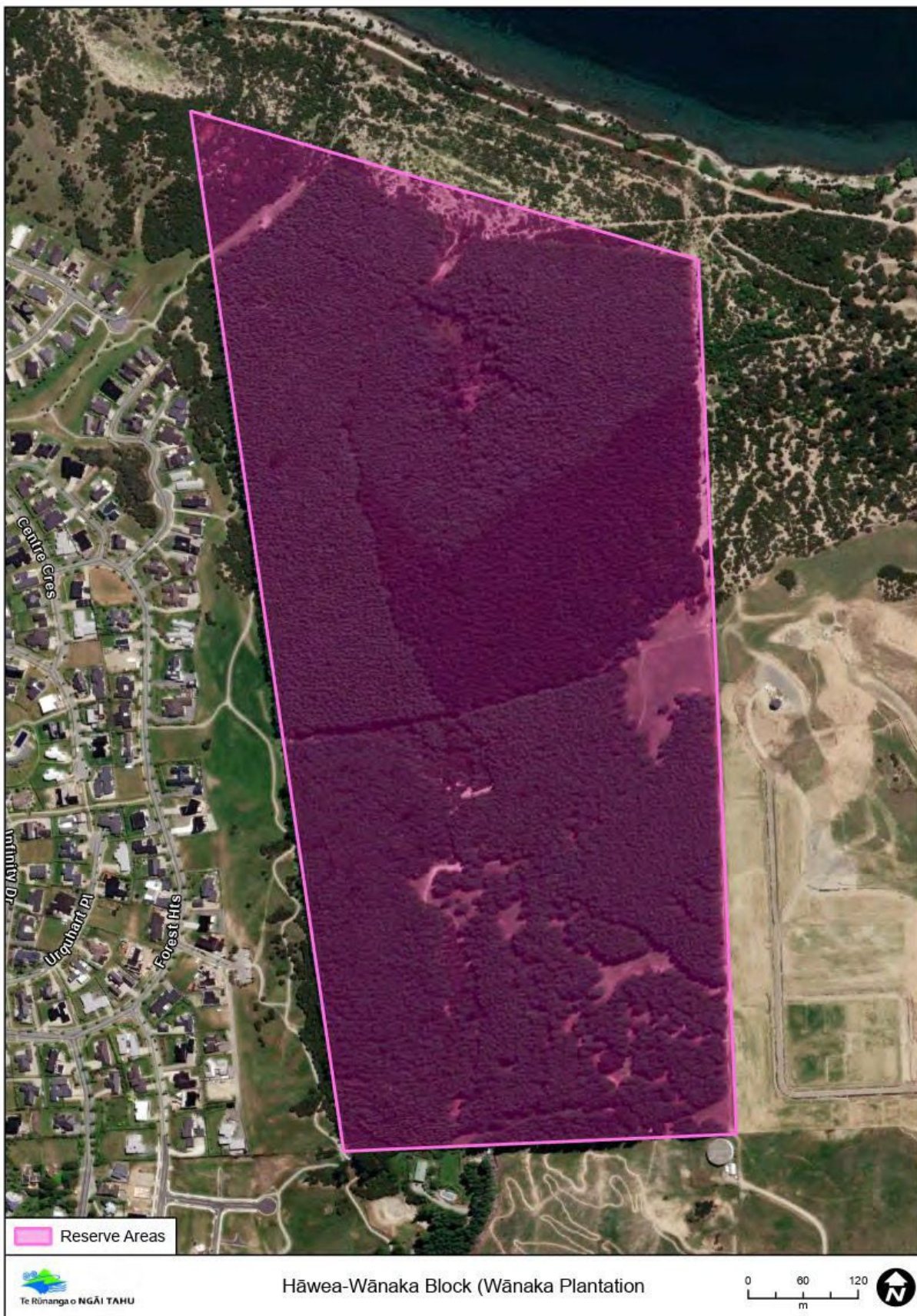
MAP0 – Native Reserves²¹³⁴

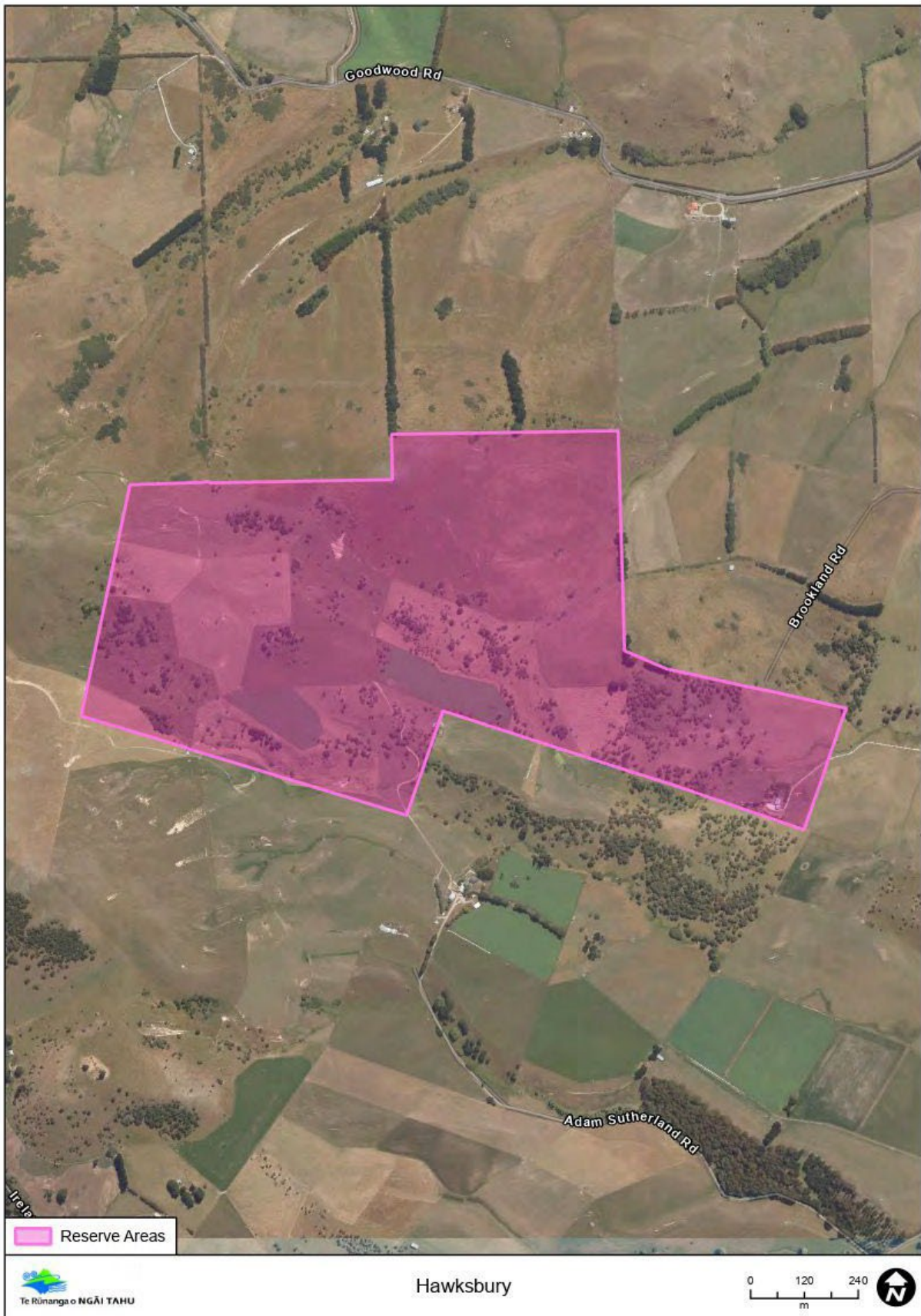


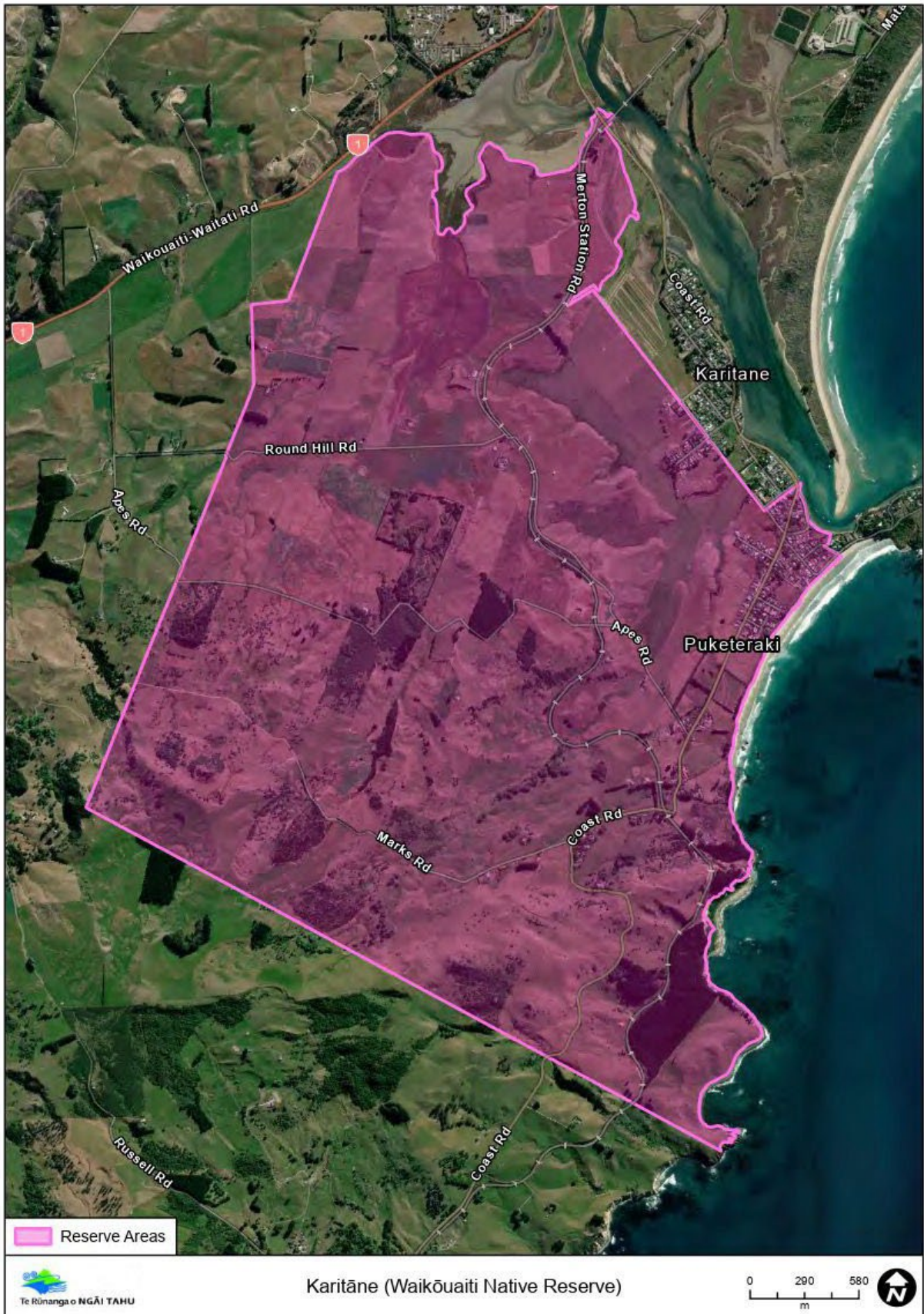






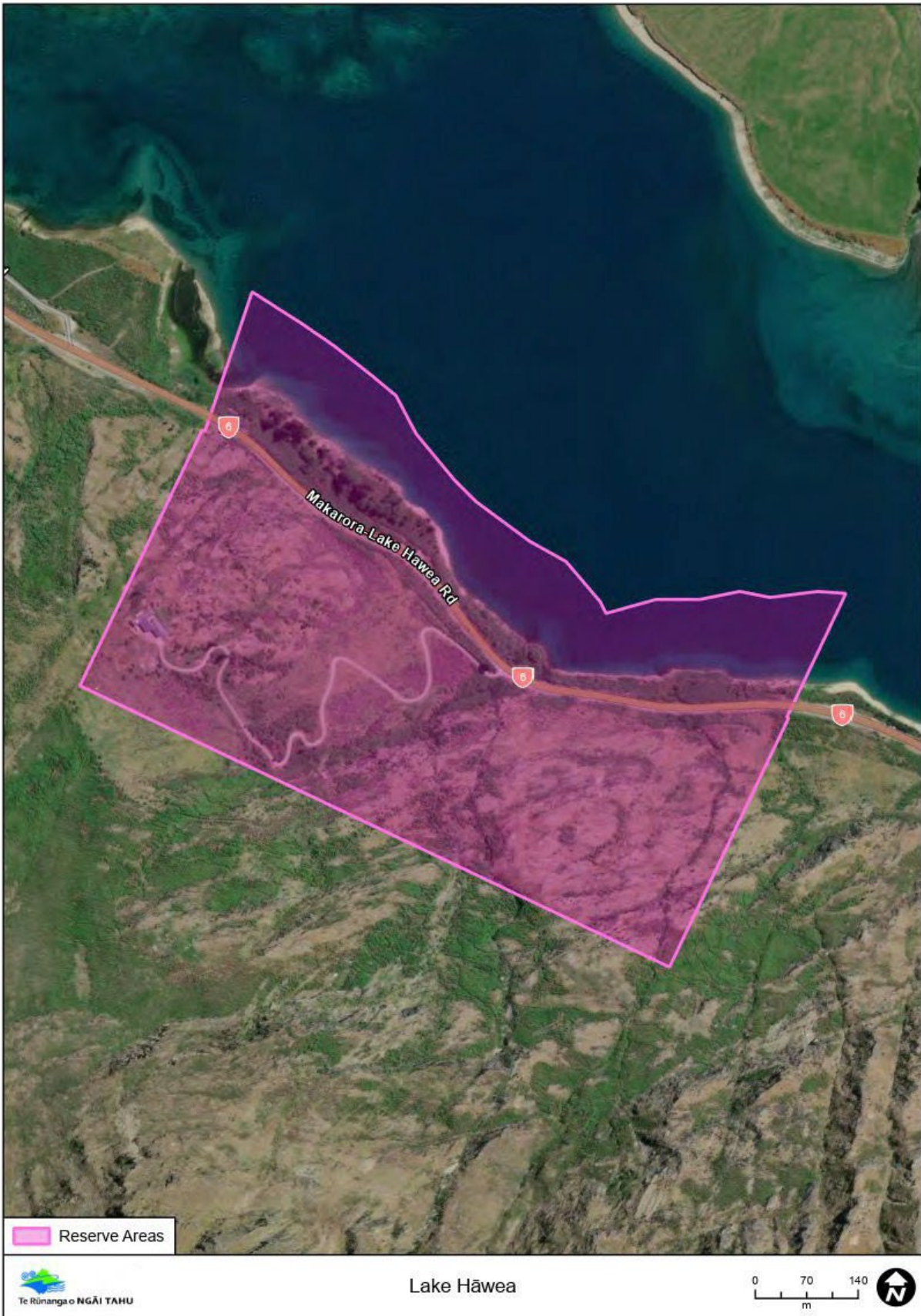














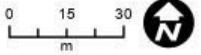


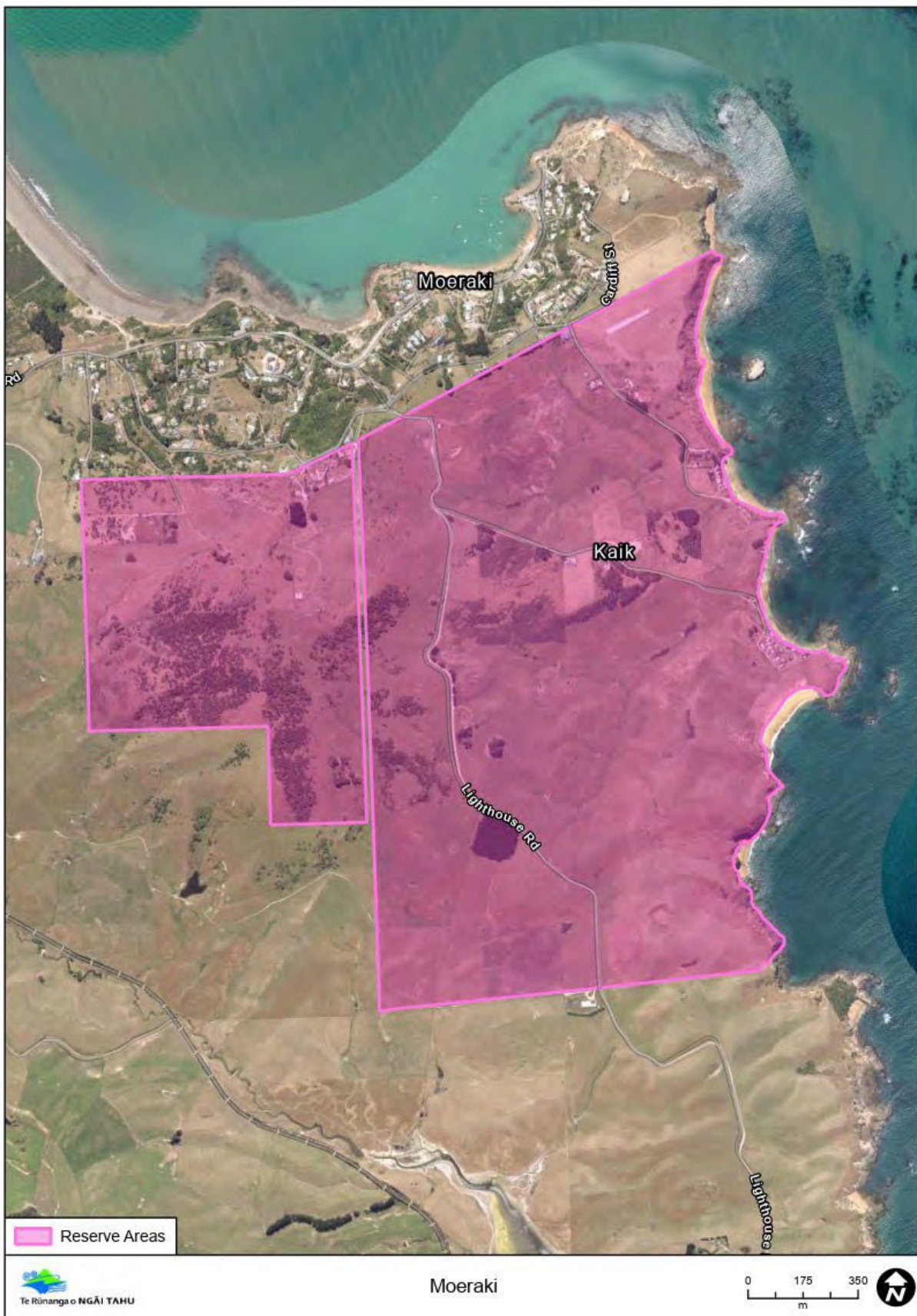


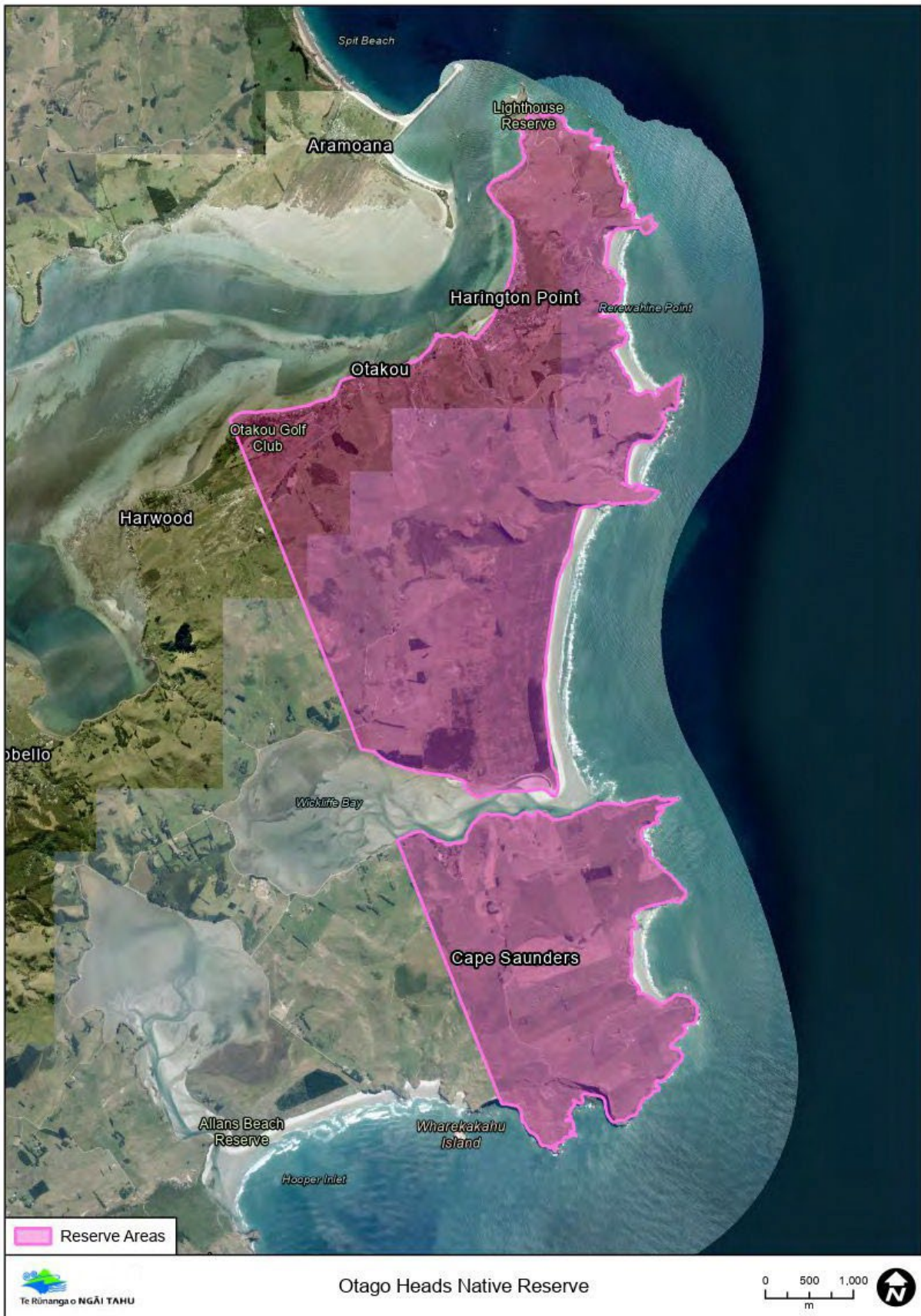
 Reserve Areas



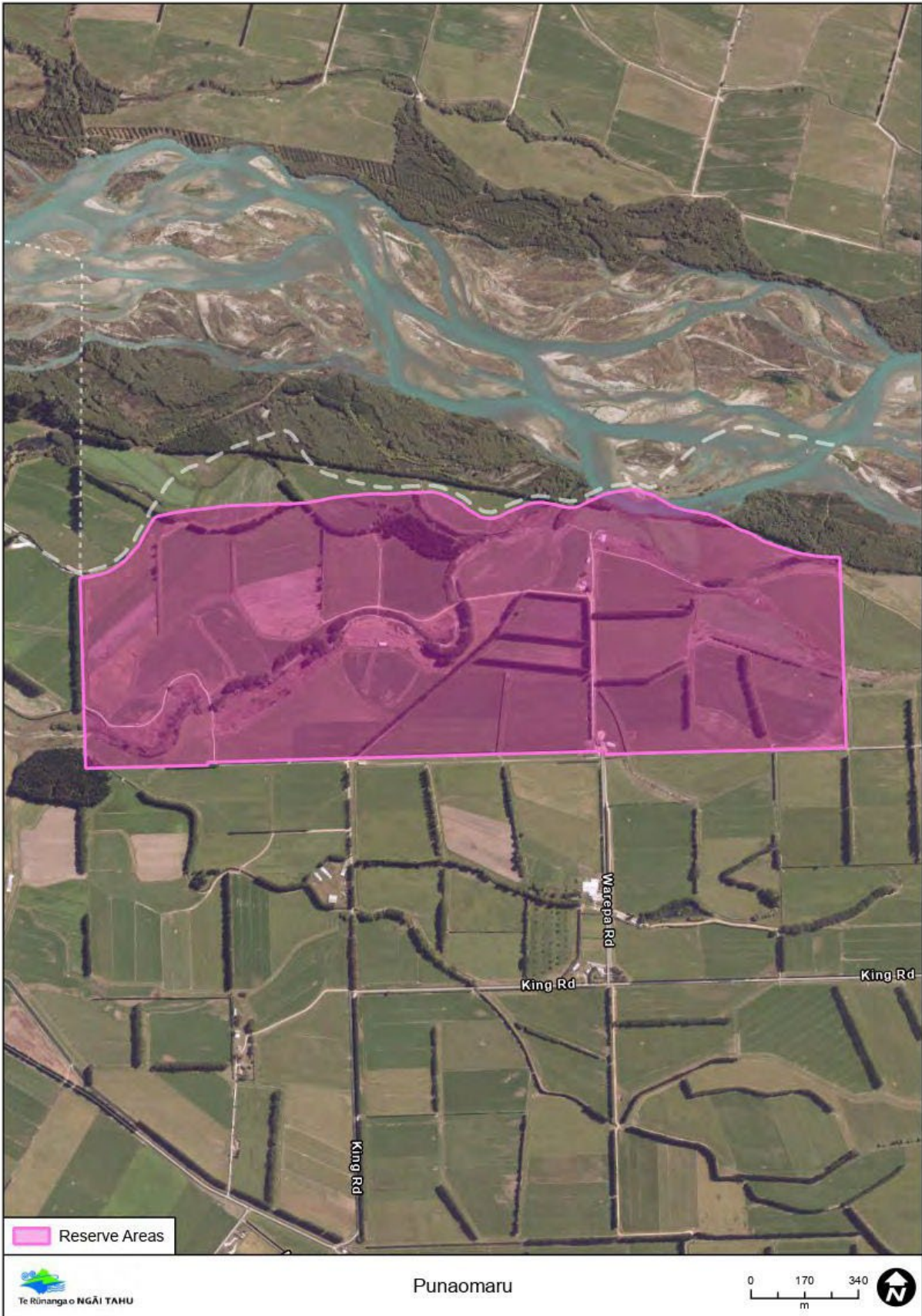
Matainaka and Hawksbury Fishing Easement

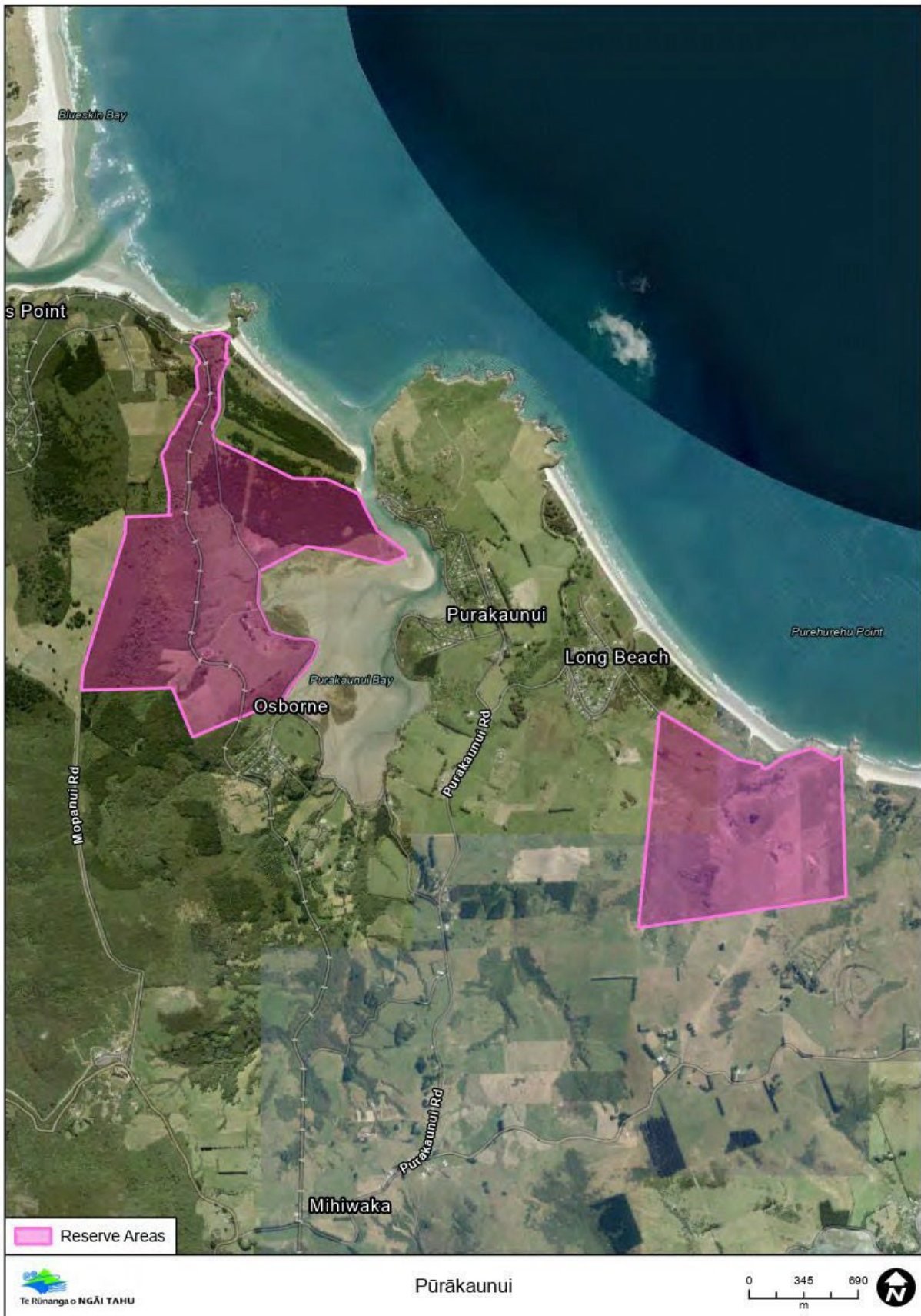


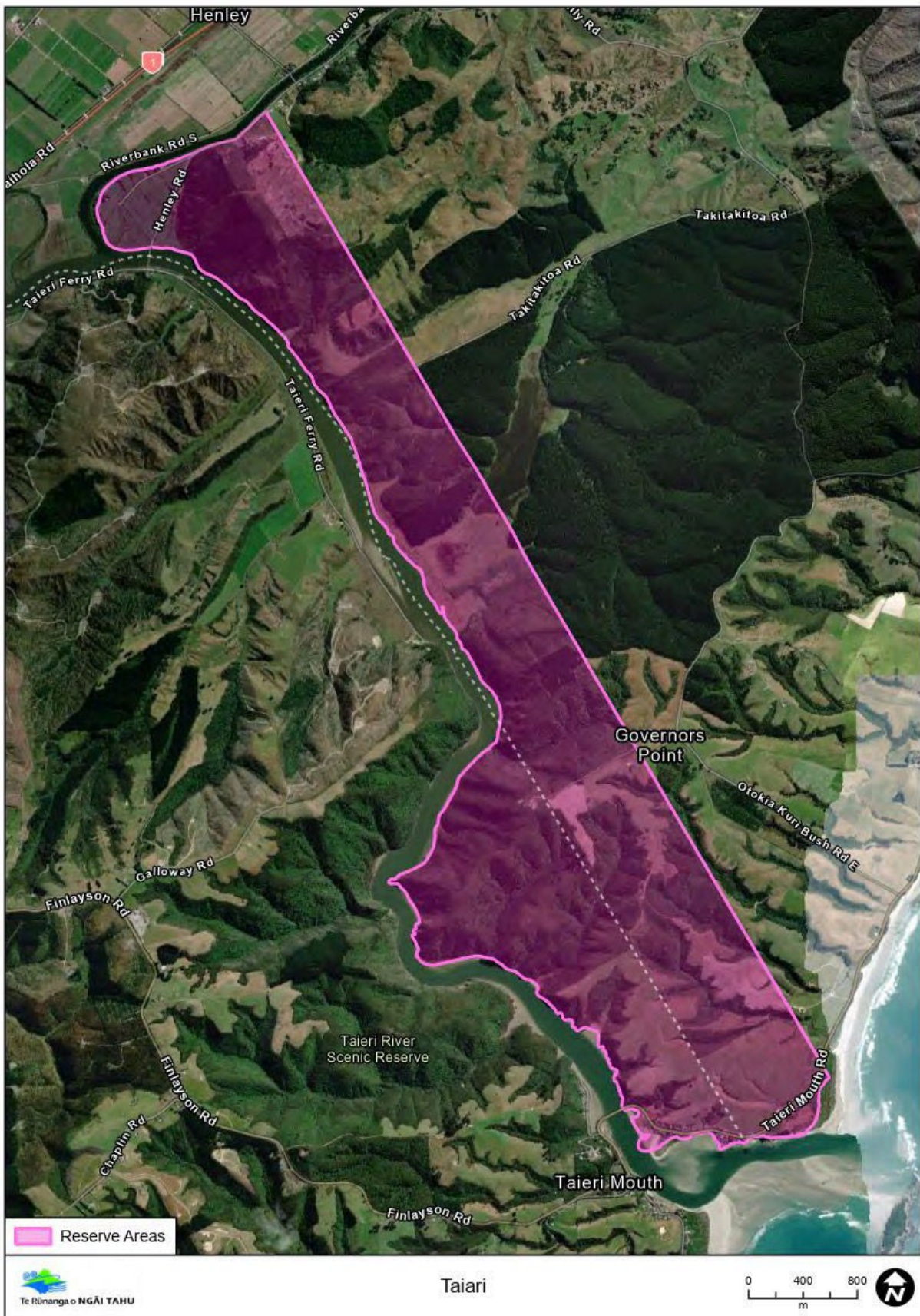


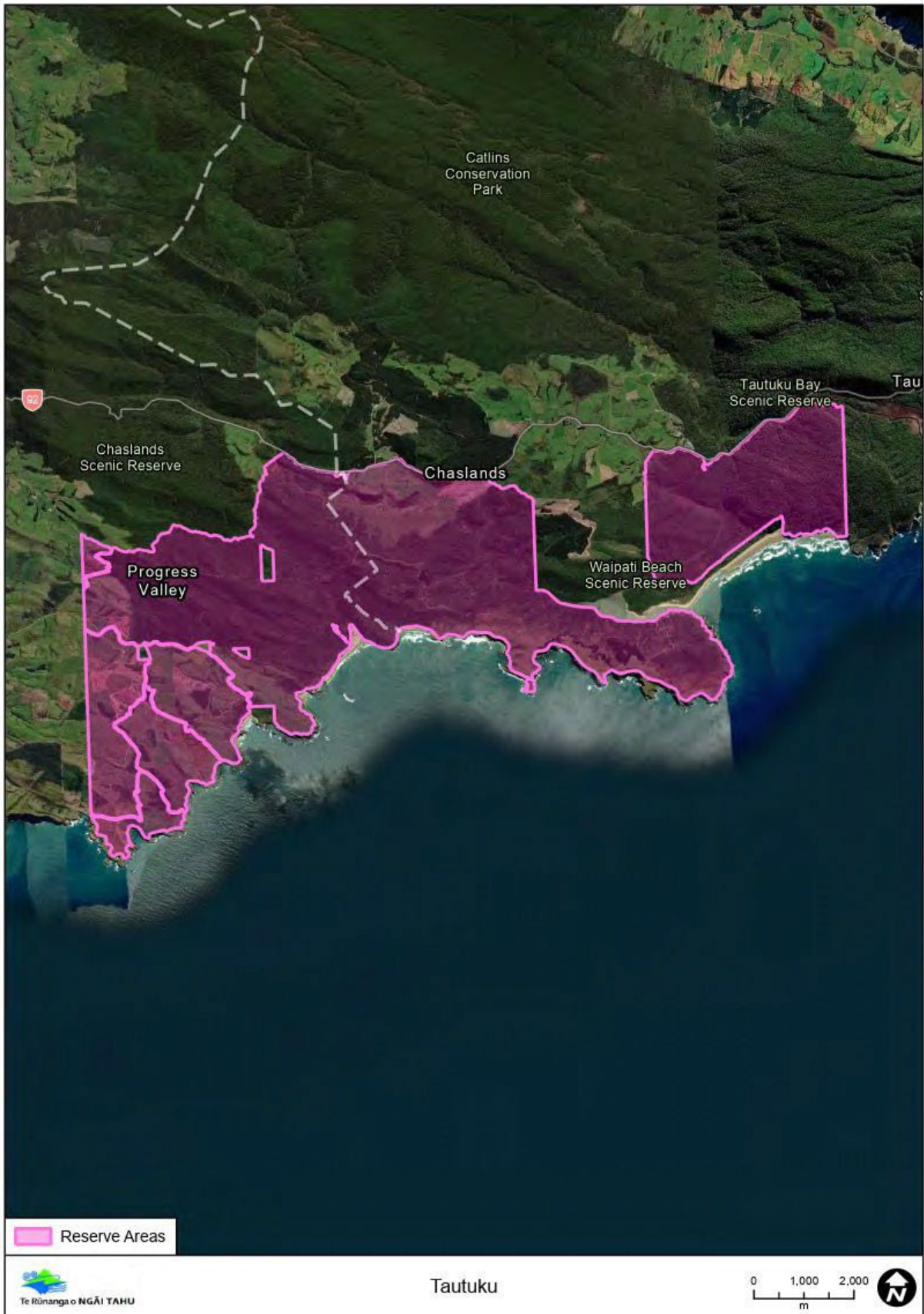


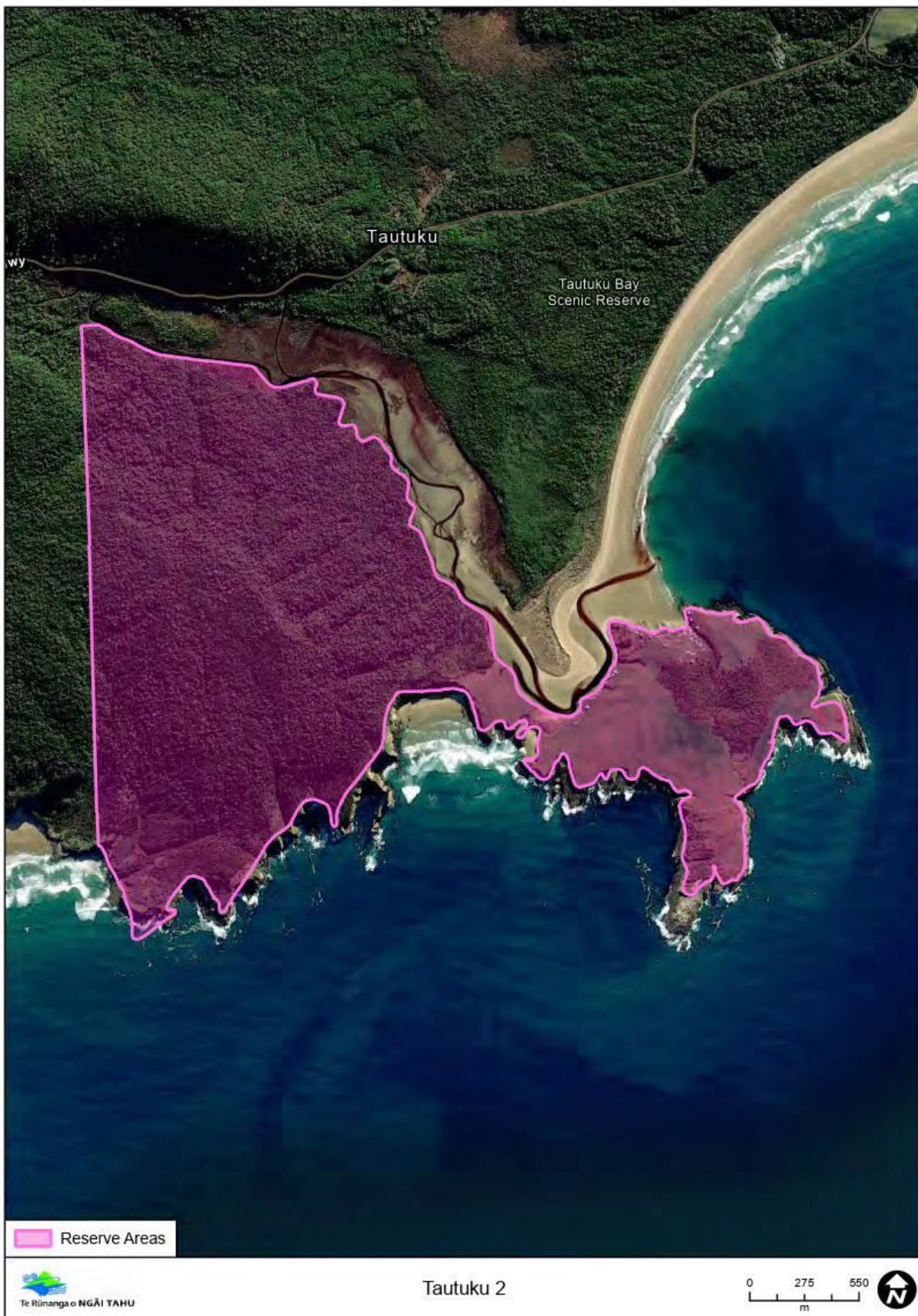




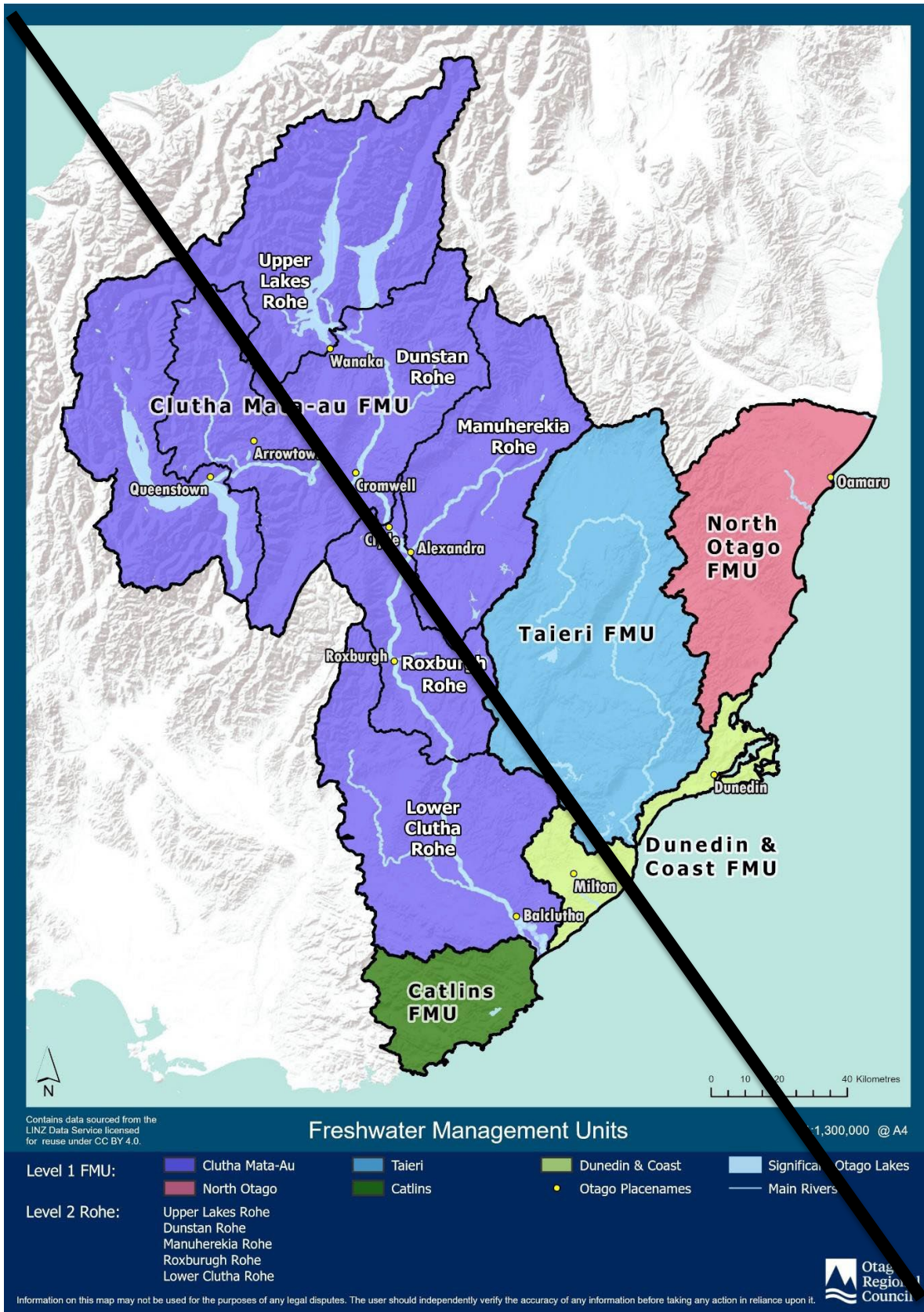






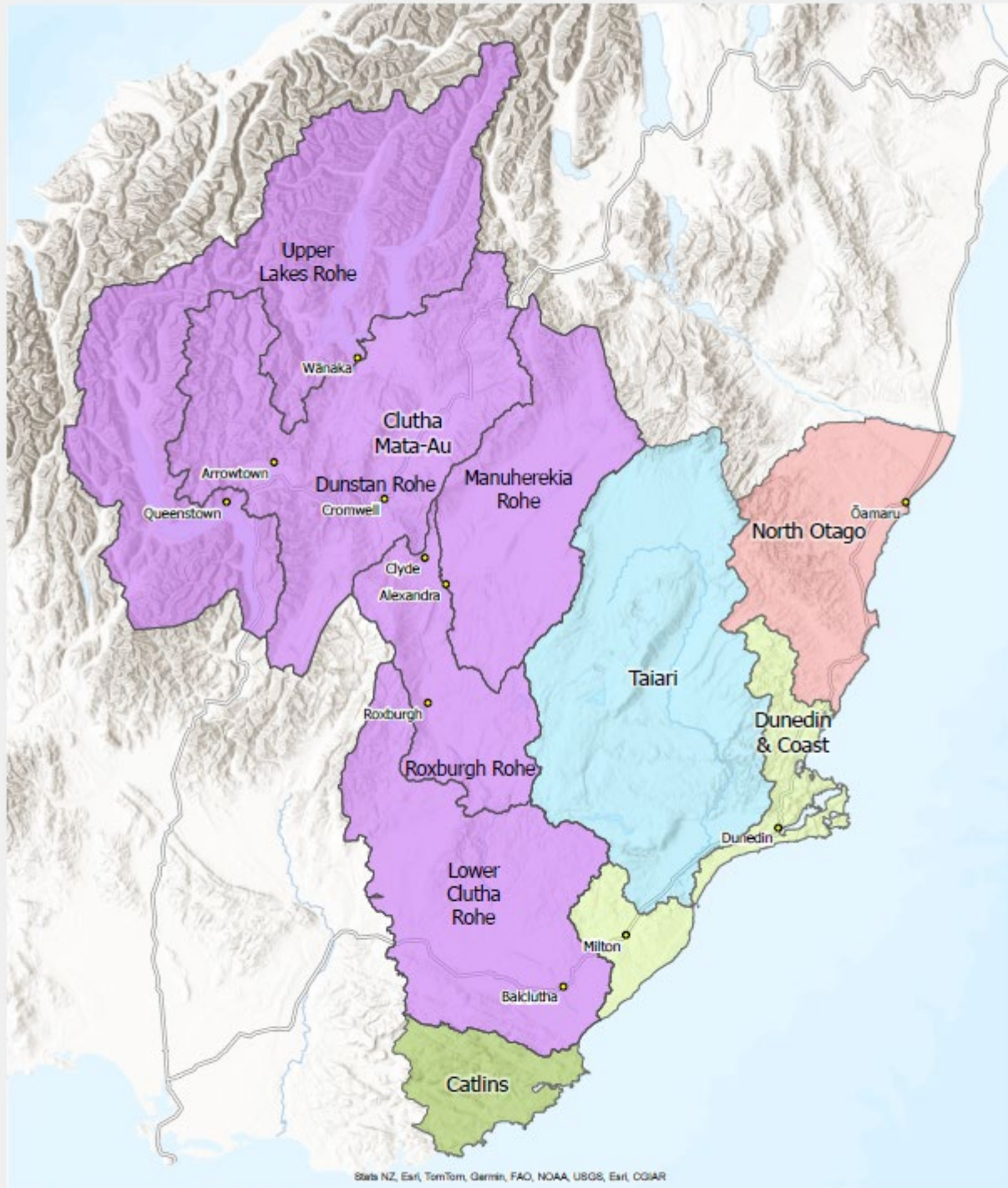


MAP1 – Freshwater Management Units



Otago FMU and Rohe

Otago Freshwater Management Units and Rohe



- | | | |
|----------------|-----------------|------------------|
| FMUs | Dunedin & Coast | Rohe |
| Catlins | North Otago | Otago Placenames |
| Clutha Mata-Au | Taiari | |

Information on this map may not be used for the purposes of any legal disputes. The user should independently verify the accuracy of any information before taking any action in reliance upon it. This map was generated for A4 printing on 14/03/2024 at the scale of 1:1,333,081.

²¹³⁵ Amended map added through Clause 49(2)(b), Schedule 1, RMA

MAP2 – EIT-TRAN-M7 Port Activities

